Reference:

Straub, R. O. (2014). *Health Psychology: A Biopsychosocial Approach, 4th Edition.* [VitalSource Bookshelf Online]. Retrieved from <https://kaplan.vitalsource.com/#/books/9781464193880/>

***Chapter 1*: Introducing Health Psychology**

[**Health and Illness: Lessons from the Past**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-1-1)

* [**Ancient Views**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-2-2) [**The Middle Ages and the Renaissance**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-2-6) [**Post-Renaissance Rationality**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-2-7)[**Discoveries of the Nineteenth Century**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-2-8) [**The Twentieth Century and the Dawn of a New Era**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-2-9)

[**Biopsychosocial (Mind–Body) Perspective**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-1-13)

* [**The Biological Context**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-2-14) [**The Psychological Context**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-2-16) [**The Social Context**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-2-17) [**Diversity and Healthy Living:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B1-31) [**The Immigrant Paradox: SES and the Health of Immigrants**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B1-31)[**Biopsychosocial “Systems”**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-3-20) [**Applying the Biopsychosocial Model**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-3-21)

[**Frequently Asked Questions about a Health Psychology Career**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-1-22)

* [**What Do Health Psychologists Do?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-2-23) [**Your Health Assets:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B1-35) [**College Does a Mind and Body Good**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B1-35) [**Where Do Health Psychologists Work?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-2-24) [**How Do I Become a Health Psychologist?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-2-25)

*Caroline Flynn stepped aboard the 32-ton steamer* Mauretania *on what must have been an uncertain morning in the early 1880s. Bound for the United States, her journey of hope began in Liverpool, England, in a desperate attempt to escape the economic distress and religious persecution that she and her family suffered in Ireland. The country’s troubles had begun decades earlier with “an Gorta Mór” (the Great Hunger)—a famine caused by the potato fungus that destroyed the primary, and often only, food of most Irish families*.

*Caroline’s journey was hardly unique. Between 1861 and 1926, four million Irish left the country for similar reasons, and young people like Caroline were brought up for “export” overseas. After a harrowing five- to six-week voyage across the Atlantic, crowded with other emigrants into a steerage compartment that was rarely cleaned, they endured the humiliating processing of immigrants at Ellis Island. Many of those who were sick or without financial means or sponsors were forced to return to their homeland*.

*As Caroline doggedly made her way in her adopted country, first north to upstate New York and then west to Chicago, she found that things were better, but life was still hard. Doctors were expensive (and few in number), and she always had to guard against drinking impure water, eating contaminated foods, or becoming infected with typhoid fever, diphtheria, or one of the many other diseases that were prevalent in those days. Despite her vigilance, her survival (and later that of her husband and newborn baby) remained uncertain. Life expectancy was less than 50 years, and one of every six babies died before his or her first birthday. “It would keep you poor, just burying your children,” wrote one Irishwoman to her family back home (Miller & Miller, 2001). Equally troubling was the attitude of many native-born* *Americans, who viewed the Irish as inferior, violent, and drunken. Most of the new immigrants toiled as laborers in the lowest-paid and most dangerous occupations, and were banished to ghettolike “Paddy” towns that sprang up on the outskirts of cities such as New York and Chicago*.

*More than a century later, I smile as my mother recounts the saga of my great-grandmother’s emigration to the United States. Her grandmother lived a long, productive life and left a legacy of optimism and “indomitable Irishy” that fortified her against the hardships in her life—and carried down through the generations. “How different things are now,” I think as our phone call ends, “but how much of Caroline’s spirit is still alive in my own children!”*

*Things are very different now. Advances in hygiene, public health measures, and microbiology have virtually eradicated the infectious diseases that Caroline feared most. Women born in the United States today enjoy a life expectancy of over 80 years, and men often reach the age of 73. This gift of time has helped us realize that health is much more than freedom from illness. More than ever before, we can get beyond survival mode and work to attain lifelong vitality by modifying our diets, exercising regularly, and remaining socially connected and emotionally centered*.

My great-grandmother’s story makes clear that many factors interact in determining health. This is a fundamental theme of [**health psychology**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term167), a subfield of psychology that applies psychological principles and research to the enhancement of health and the treatment and prevention of illness. Its concerns include social conditions (such as the availability of health care and support from family and friends), biological factors (such as family longevity and inherited vulnerabilities to certain diseases), and even personality traits (such as optimism).

**health psychology**

The application of psychological principles and research to the enhancement of health and the prevention and treatment of illness.

The word *health* comes to us from an old German word that is represented, in English, by the words *hale* and *whole*, both of which refer to a state of “soundness of body.” Linguists note that these words derive from the medieval battlefield, where loss of *haleness*, or health, was usually the result of grave bodily injury. Today, we are more likely to think of health as the absence of disease rather than as the absence of a debilitating battlefield injury. Because this definition focuses only on the absence of a negative state, however, it is incomplete. Although it is true that healthy people are free of disease, complete health involves much more. A person may be free of disease but still not enjoy a vigorous, satisfying life. [**Health**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term160) involves physical as well as psychological and social well-being.

**health**

A state of complete physical, mental, and social well-being.

**The health of women is inextricably linked to their status in society. It benefits from equality and suffers from discrimination.**

**—World Health Organization**

We are fortunate to live in a time when most of the world’s citizens have the promise of a longer and better life than their great-grandparents, with far less disability and disease than ever before. However, these health benefits are not universally enjoyed. Consider:

* The number of healthy years of life that can be expected by a child born today differs substantially from country to country, ranging from 37.1 (Haiti) to 71.7 years (Japan) for women and from 27.9 (Haiti) to 68.8 years (Japan) for men (Salomon and others, 2012). Infections continue to have a profound impact in populations deprived of social and economic resources (Semenza, 2010).
* The number of new cases of cancer among minority populations in the United States is projected to double in upcoming decades (U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, 2011a).
* Within the United States, states in the southeast region generally have higher death rates than those in other regions of the country (Minino & Murphy, 2012).
* Violence, drug- and alcohol-related deaths and injuries, accidents, and sexual perils such as abuse and sexually transmitted infections often mark the transition from adolescence to adulthood (OECD, 2012).
* At every age, these and other [**health disparities**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term163) abound. For instance, death rates vary by ethnic group. Among American men and women, those of European ancestry have a longer life expectancy than African-Americans, but both groups have shorter life expectancies than people in Japan, Canada, Australia, the United Kingdom, Italy, France, and many other countries (U.S. Census Bureau, 2012). It is estimated that nearly 1 million deaths each year in this country (among all age groups) are preventable (see [**Table 1.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T1-1)).

**Table 1.1: Preventable Injury and Death**

|  |
| --- |
| * + Control of underage and excess use of alcohol could prevent 100,000 deaths from automobile accidents and other alcohol-related injuries.   + Elimination of public possession of firearms could prevent 35,000 deaths.   + Elimination of all forms of tobacco use could prevent 400,000 deaths from cancer, stroke, and heart disease.   + Better nutrition and exercise programs could prevent 300,000 deaths from heart disease, diabetes, cancer, and stroke.   + A reduction in risky sexual behaviors could prevent 30,000 deaths from sexually transmitted diseases.   + Full access to immunizations for infectious diseases could prevent 100,000 deaths. |
| **Source:** U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. (2007). *Healthy People 2010 midcourse review*. Retrieved January 10, 2010, from [**http://www.healthypeople.gov/Data/midcourse/**](http://www.healthypeople.gov/Data/midcourse/). |

**health disparities**

Preventable differences in the burden of disease, injury, violence, or opportunities to achieve optimal health that are experienced by socially disadvantaged populations.

* Although men are twice as likely as women to die of any cause, beginning in middle age, women have higher disease and disability rates (U.S. Census Bureau, 2012).
* Health care costs have risen sharply in the past 50 years. In 1960, health care costs represented only 5.1 percent of the gross domestic product (GDP) of the United States. Today, the United States spends $8233 per person (17.6 percent of GDP) on health care. Although this amount is more than two-and-one-half times more than most developed nations in the world, the United States has a lower average life expectancy than that in other affluent countries, fewer physicians and hospital beds per person, and was ranked by the World Health Organization only 37th out of 191 countries in terms of the overall performance of its health care system, as measured by such factors as responsiveness, fairness of funding, and accessibility by all individuals (OECD, 2011; WHO, 2000a).

**Data related to health disparities can be found through the WHO (**[**http://www.who.int/research/en**](http://www.who.int/research/en)**), which documents disparities across and within countries. For the United States, the Kaiser Family Foundation (**[**www.kff.org**](http://www.kff.org/)**) provides monthly updates on health disparities and maintains an interactive Web site (**[**www.statehealthfacts.org**](http://www.statehealthfacts.org/)**) with data on ethnic and racial differences on a state-by-state basis.**

These statistics reveal some of the challenges in the quest for global wellness. Health professionals are working to reduce the 30-year discrepancy in life expectancy between developed and developing countries, to help adolescents make a safe, healthy transition to adulthood, and to achieve a deeper understanding of the relationships among gender, ethnicity, sociocultural status, and health.

In the United States, the Department of Health and Human Services report *Healthy People 2010*focused on improving access to health services; eliminating health disparities between women and men, as well as among various age and sociocultural groups; and in general on substantially improving the health and quality of life and well-being for all Americans. It also noted that nearly 1 million deaths in this country each year are preventable. *Healthy People 2020* expands these goals into specific actions and targets for reducing chronic diseases such as cancer and diabetes, improving health in people of all ages, preventing injuries and violence, and taking steps in 32 other areas (see [**Table 1.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T1-2)). Specifically, the overarching goals are to:

* attain high-quality, longer lives free of preventable disease, disability, injury, and premature death.
* achieve health equity, eliminate disparities, and improve the health of all groups.
* create social and physical environments that promote good health for all.
* promote quality of life, healthy development, and healthy behaviors across all life stages.

**Table 1.2: Select Topic Area Goals and Targets of *Healthy People 2020***

|  |
| --- |
| **Adolescent Health** |
| * Increase the proportion of adolescents who have had a wellness checkup in the past 12 months (target: 75.6 percent) * Reduce the proportion of adolescents who have been offered, sold, or given an illegal drug on school property (target: 20.4 percent) |
| **Physical Activity** |
| * Increase the proportion of adults who engage in aerobic physical activity of at least moderate intensity for at least 150 minutes/week, or 75 minutes/week of vigorous intensity, or an equivalent combination * Increase the proportion of the nation’s public and private schools that require daily physical education for all students |
| **Nutrition and Weight Status** |
| * Increase the proportion of schools that do not sell or offer calorically sweetened beverages to students (target: 21.3 percent) * Increase the proportion of adults who are at a healthy weight (target: 33.9 percent) |
| **Injury and Violence Prevention** |
| * Reduce unintentional injury deaths (target: 36.0 deaths per 100,000 population) * Reduce motor vehicle crash-related deaths (target: 12.4 deaths per 100,000 population) |
| **Sleep Health** |
| * Increase the proportion of adults who get sufficient sleep (target: 70.9 percent) * Reduce the rate of vehicular crashes per 100 million miles traveled that are due to drowsy driving (target: 2.1 vehicular crashes per 100 million miles traveled) |
| **Source:** [**http://healthypeople.gov/2020/topicsobjectives2020/pdfs/HP2020objectives.pdf**](http://healthypeople.gov/2020/topicsobjectives2020/pdfs/HP2020objectives.pdf). |

To help the nation meet these goals, on March 23, 2010, President Barack Obama signed the [**Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (PPACA)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term252), the most significant overhaul of the U.S. health care system in nearly 50 years. The primary goals of the new law, which is being implemented incrementally and will be in full effect by 2015, are to decrease the number of people who do not have health insurance and to lower the costs of health care. Other reforms are aimed at improving health care outcomes and streamlining the delivery of health care. In addition, under PPACA, insurers will be required to cover certain types of preventive care at no cost to the consumer, including blood pressure and cholesterol tests, mammograms, colonoscopies, and screenings for osteoporosis.

**Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act (PPACA)**

A new federal law aimed at reducing the number of people in the United States who do not have health insurance, as well as lowering the costs of health care.

This chapter introduces the field of health psychology, which plays an increasingly important role in meeting the world’s health challenges. Consider a few of the more specific questions that health psychologists seek to answer: How do your attitudes, beliefs, self-confidence, and personality affect your physiology and your overall health? Why are so many people turning to acupuncture, yoga, herbal supplements (plus other forms of alternative medicine), as well as do-it-yourself preventive care? Do these interventions really work? Why do so many people ignore unquestionably sound advice for improving their health, such as quitting smoking, moderating food intake, and exercising more? Why are certain health problems more likely to occur among people of a particular age, gender, or ethnic group? Why is being poor, uneducated, or lonely a potentially serious threat to your health? Conversely, why do those who are relatively affluent, well educated, and socially active enjoy better health?

Health psychology is the science that seeks to answer these and many other questions about how our wellness interacts with how we think, feel, and act. We begin by taking a closer look at the concept of health and how it has changed over the course of history. Next, we’ll examine the biopsychosocial perspective on health psychology, including how it draws on and supports other health-related fields. Finally, we’ll take a look at the kind of training needed to become a health psychologist and what you can do with that training.

**Health and Illness: Lessons from the Past**

Although all human civilizations have been affected by disease, each one has understood and treated it differently. At one time, people thought that disease was caused by demons. At another, they saw it as a form of punishment for moral weakness. Today, we wrestle with very different questions, such as, “Can disease be caused by an unhealthy personality?” We will consider how views regarding health and illness have changed by following a case study through the ages—the story of Mariana, who in 2013 was a 20-year-old college sophomore. Mariana presents to her family doctor with a bad headache, shortness of breath, sleeplessness, a racing heart, and a wild, frightened expression. How will she be treated? Current understanding of these symptoms would probably lead most health professionals to suggest that Mariana is suffering from anxiety. Her treatment today might be a combination of talk therapy, relaxation techniques, and possibly targeted drug therapy. But as we will see, her treatment through the ages would have varied widely. (You may want to refer to [**Figure 1.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F1-1) throughout this section to get a sense of the chronology of changing views toward health and illness.)

**Figure 1.1: A Timeline of Historical and Cultural Variations in Illness and Healing**

**From the ancient use of trephination to remove evil spirits to the current use of noninvasive brain scans to diagnose disease, the treatment of health problems has seen major advances over the centuries. A collection of treatments across the ages is shown (from left to right): trephination (on an ancient Peruvian skull); acupuncture from China; early surgery in seventeenth-century Europe; and vaccination by the district vaccinator in nineteenth-century London.**

Credits (left to right): Trephinated skull engraving by English School (nineteenth century) published 1878 in “Incidents of Travel and Exploration in the Land of the Incas” by E. George Squier: private collection/Bridgeman Art Library; illustration showing acupuncture: © Bettman/Corbis; “The Surgeon,” engraving by German School (seventeenth century): private collection/Bridgeman Art Library; “Vaccination” engraving, 1871: Hulton Archive/Stringer/Getty Images.

**Ancient Views**

**Prehistoric Medicine**

Our efforts at healing can be traced back 20,000 years. A cave painting in southern France, for example, which is believed to be 17,000 years old, depicts an Ice Age shaman wearing the animal mask of an ancient witch doctor. In religions based on a belief in good and evil spirits, only a shaman (priest or medicine man) can influence these spirits.

For preindustrial men and women, confronted with the often-hostile forces of their environment, survival was based on constant vigilance against these mysterious forces of evil. When a person became sick, there was no obvious physical reason for it. Rather, the stricken individual’s condition was misattributed to weakness in the face of a stronger force, bewitchment, or possession by an evil spirit (Amundsen, 1996).

During this period of time, Mariana’s symptoms might have been treated with rituals of sorcery, exorcism, or even a primitive form of surgery called [**trephination**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term348). Archaeologists have unearthed prehistoric human skulls containing irregularly shaped holes that were apparently drilled by early healers to allow disease-causing demons to leave patients’ bodies. Historical records indicate that trephination was a widely practiced form of treatment in Europe, Egypt, India, and Central and South America.

**trephination**

An ancient medical intervention in which a hole was drilled into the human skull, presumably to allow “evil spirits” to escape.

About 4000 years ago, some peoples realized that hygiene also played a role in health and disease, and they made attempts at improving public hygiene. The ancient Egyptians, for example, engaged in cleansing rites intended to discourage illness-causing worms from infesting the body. In Mesopotamia (a part of what is now Iraq), soap was manufactured, bathing facilities designed, and public sewage treatment systems constructed (Stone, Cohen, & Adler, 1979).

**Greek and Roman Medicine**

The most dramatic advances in public health and sanitation were made in Greece and Rome during the sixth and fifth centuries B.C.E. In Rome, a great drainage system was built to drain a swamp that later became the site of the Roman Forum. Over time, this drainage system assumed the broader function of a modern sewage system. Public bathrooms, for which there was a small admission charge, were commonplace in Rome by the first century C.E.

**… I will prevent disease whenever I can, for prevention is preferable to cure.**

**I will remember that I remain a member of society, with special obligations to all my fellow human beings, those sound of mind and body as well as the infirm.**

**If I do not violate this oath, may I enjoy life and art, respected while I live and remembered with affection thereafter. May I always act so as to preserve the finest traditions of my calling and may I long experience the joy of healing those who seek my help.**

**—Written in 1964 by Louis Lasagna, Academic Dean of the School of Medicine at Tufts University, this is the modern version of the Hippocratic Oath used in many medical schools today.**

The first aqueduct brought pure water into Rome as early as 312 B.C.E., and cleaning of public roads was supervised by a group of appointed officials who also controlled the food supply. This group passed regulations to ensure the freshness of meat and other perishable foods, and they arranged for the storage of vast quantities of grain, for example, in an effort to forestall famine.

In ancient Greece, the philosopher Hippocrates (460–377 B.C.E.) was establishing the roots of Western medicine when he rebelled against the ancient focus on mysticism and superstition. Hippocrates, who is often called the “father of modern medicine,” was the first to argue that disease is a natural phenomenon and that the causes of disease (and therefore their treatment and prevention) are knowable and worthy of serious study. In this way, he built the earliest foundation for a scientific approach to healing. Historically, physicians took the Hippocratic Oath, with which they swore to practice medicine ethically. Over the centuries, the oath has been rewritten to suit the values of various cultures that were influenced by Greek medicine. A version widely used in U.S. medical schools today was written in 1964 by Dr. Louis Lasagna of Tufts University.

Hippocrates proposed the first rational explanation of why people get sick, and the healers of this period in history may have been influenced by his ideas in addressing Mariana’s problems. According to his [**humoral theory**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term175), a healthy body and mind resulted from equilibrium among four bodily fluids called *humors*: blood, yellow bile, black bile, and phlegm. To maintain a proper balance, a person had to follow a healthy lifestyle that included exercise, sufficient rest, a good diet, and the avoidance of excesses. When the humors were out of balance, however, both body and mind were affected in predictable ways depending on which of the four humors was in excess. Mariana, for example, might have been considered choleric, with an excess of yellow bile and a fiery temperament. She might have been treated with bloodletting (opening a vein to remove blood), liquid diets, enemas, and cooling baths.

**humoral theory**

A concept of health proposed by Hippocrates that considered wellness a state of perfect equilibrium among four basic body fluids, called *humors*. Sickness was believed to be the result of disturbances in the balance of humors.

Although humoral theory was discarded as advances were made in anatomy, physiology, and microbiology, the notion of personality traits being linked with body fluids still persists in the folk and alternative medicines of many cultures, including those of traditional Eastern and Native American cultures. Moreover, as we’ll see in the next chapter, we now know that many diseases involve an imbalance (of sorts) among the brain’s neurotransmitters, so Hippocrates was not too far off.

Hippocrates made many other notable contributions to a scientific approach to medicine. For example, to learn what personal habits contributed to gout, a disease caused by disturbances in the body’s metabolism of uric acid, he conducted one of the earliest public health surveys of gout sufferers’ habits, as well as of their temperatures, heart rates, respiration, and other physical symptoms. Hippocrates was also interested in patients’ emotions and thoughts regarding their health and treatment, and thus he called attention to the psychological aspects of health and illness. “It is better to know the patient who has the disease,” Hippocrates said, “than it is to know the disease which the patient has” (quoted in Wesley, 2003).

The next great figure in the history of Western medicine was the physician Claudius Galen (129–200 C.E.). Galen was born in Greece but spent many years in Rome conducting dissection studies of animals and treating the severe injuries of Roman gladiators. In this way, he learned much that was previously unknown about health and disease. Galen wrote voluminously on anatomy, hygiene, and diet, building on the Hippocratic foundation of rational explanation and the careful description of each patient’s physical symptoms.

Galen also expanded the humoral theory of disease by developing an elaborate system of pharmacology that physicians followed for almost 1500 years. His system was based on the notion that each of the four bodily humors has its own elementary quality that determined the character of specific diseases. Blood, for example, is hot and moist. Galen believed that drugs, too, have elementary qualities; thus, a disease caused by an excess of a hot and moist humor could be cured only with drugs that were cold and dry. Although such views may seem archaic, Galen’s pharmacology was logical, based on careful observation, and similar to the ancient systems of medicine that developed in China, India, and other non-Western cultures. Many forms of alternative medicine today use similar ideas.

**Non-Western Medicine**

At the same time that Western medicine was emerging, different traditions of healing were developing in other cultures. For example, more than 2,000 years ago, the Chinese developed an integrated system of healing, which we know today as *traditional Oriental medicine* (*TOM*). TOM is founded on the principle that internal harmony is essential for good health. Fundamental to this harmony is the concept of *qi* (sometimes spelled *chi*), a vital energy or life force that ebbs and flows with changes in each person’s mental, physical, and emotional well-being. Acupuncture, herbal therapy, tai chi, meditation, and other interventions are said to restore health by correcting blockages and imbalances in *qi*.

*Ayurveda* is the oldest-known medical system in the world, having originated in India around the sixth century B.C.E., coinciding roughly with the lifetime of the Buddha. The word *ayurveda* comes from the Sanskrit roots *ayuh*, which means “longevity,” and *veda*, meaning “knowledge.” Widely practiced in India, ayurveda is based on the belief that the human body represents the entire universe in a microcosm and that the key to health is maintaining a balance between the microcosmic body and the macrocosmic world. The key to this relationship is held in the balance of three bodily humors, or *doshas: vata, pitta*, and *kapha*, or, collectively, the *tridosha*. We’ll explore the history, traditions, and effectiveness of these and other non-Western forms of medicine in [**Chapter 15**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch15).

**The Middle Ages and the Renaissance**

The fall of the Roman Empire in the fifth century C.E. ushered in the Middle Ages (476–1450), an era between ancient and modern times characterized by a return to supernatural explanations of health and disease in Europe. The church exerted a powerful influence over all areas of life at this time. Religious interpretations colored medieval scientists’ ideas about health and disease. In the eyes of the medieval Christian church, humans were regarded as creatures with free will who were not subject to the laws of nature. Because they had souls, neither humans nor animals were considered to be appropriate objects of scientific scrutiny, and dissection of both was strictly prohibited. Illness was viewed as God’s punishment for evildoing, and [**epidemic**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term132) diseases, such as the two great outbursts of *plague* (a bacterial disease carried by rats and other rodents) that occurred during the Middle Ages, were believed to be a sign of God’s wrath. Mariana’s “treatment” in this era surely would have involved attempts to force evil spirits out of her body. There were few scientific advances in European medicine during these thousand years.

**epidemic**

Literally, *among the people;* an epidemic disease is one that spreads rapidly among many individuals in a community at the same time. *A pandemic* disease affects people over a large geographical area.

In the late fifteenth century, a new age—the Renaissance—was born. Beginning with the reemergence of scientific inquiry, this period saw the revitalization of anatomical study and medical practice. The taboo on human dissection was lifted sufficiently that the Flemish anatomist and artist Andreas Vesalius (1514–1564) was able to publish an authoritative, seven-volume study of the internal organs, musculature, and skeletal system of the human body. The son of a druggist, Vesalius was fascinated by nature, especially the anatomy of humans and animals. In the pursuit of knowledge, no stray dog, cat, or mouse was safe from his scalpel.

**The Middle Ages began with an outbreak of plague that originated in Egypt in 540 C.E. and quickly spread throughout the roman empire, killing as many as 10,000 people a day. So great in number were the corpses that gravediggers could not keep up. The solution was to load ships with the dead, row them out to sea, and abandon them.**

In medical school, Vesalius turned his dissection scalpel on human cadavers. What he found proved some of the medical writings of Galen and earlier physicians to be clearly inaccurate. How, he wondered, could an unquestionable authority such as Galen have made so many errors in describing the body? Then he realized why: Galen had never dissected a human body. Vesalius’s volumes became the cornerstones of a new scientific medicine based on anatomy (Sigerist, 1958, 1971).

**First Anatomical Drawings**

**By the sixteenth century, the taboo on human dissection had been lifted long enough that the Flemish anatomist and artist Andreas Vesalius (1514–1564) was able to publish a complete study of the internal organs, musculature, and skeletal system of the human body.**

Musculature of a man by Andreas Vesalius, 1543. Fratelli Fabbri, Milan, Italy/Bridgeman Art Library.

One of the most influential Renaissance thinkers was the French philosopher and mathematician René Descartes (1596–1650), whose first innovation was the concept of the human body as a machine. He described all the basic reflexes of the body, constructing elaborate mechanical models to demonstrate his principles. He believed that disease occurred when the machine broke down, and the physician’s task was to repair the machine.

Descartes is best known for his beliefs that the mind and body are autonomous processes that interact minimally, and that each is subject to different laws of causality. This viewpoint, which is called [**mind–body dualism**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term219) (or *Cartesian dualism*), is based on the doctrine that humans have two natures, mental and physical. Descartes and other great thinkers of the Renaissance, in an effort to break with the mysticism and superstitions of the past, vigorously rejected the notion that the mind influences the body. Mariana’s condition and its connection to her emotional well-being were now even less likely to be properly understood. Although this viewpoint ushered in a new age of medical research based on confidence in science and rational thinking, it created a lasting bias in Western medicine against the importance of psychological processes in health. As we’ll see, this bias has been rapidly unraveling since the 1970s.

**mind–body dualism**

The philosophical viewpoint that mind and body are separate entities that do not interact.

**Post-Renaissance Rationality**

Following the Renaissance, physicians were expected to focus exclusively on the biological causes of disease. The ancient humoral theory of Hippocrates was finally discarded in favor of this new [**anatomical theory**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term22) of disease. Physicians at this time would have considered internal causes for Mariana’s symptoms, such as heart or brain malfunctions.

**anatomical theory**

The theory that the origins of specific diseases are found in the internal organs, musculature, and skeletal system of the human body.

Science and medicine changed rapidly during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, spurred on by numerous advances in technology. Perhaps the single most important invention in medicine during this period was the microscope. Although a ground lens had been used for magnification in ancient times, it was a Dutch cloth merchant (and part-time scientist) named Anton van Leeuwenhoek (1632–1723) who fashioned the first practical microscope. Using his microscope, Leeuwenhoek was the first to observe blood cells and the structure of skeletal muscles.

**Discoveries of the Nineteenth Century**

Once individual cells became visible, the stage was set for the [**cellular theory**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term75) of disease—the idea that disease results when body cells malfunction or die. It was the French scientist Louis Pasteur (1822–1895), however, who truly rocked the medical world with a series of meticulous experiments showing that life can only come from existing life. Until the nineteenth century, scholars believed in *spontaneous generation*—the idea that living organisms can be formed from nonliving matter. For example, maggots and flies were believed to emerge spontaneously from rotting meat. To test his hypothesis, Pasteur filled two flasks with a porridgelike liquid, heating both to the boiling point to kill any microorganisms. One of the flasks had a wide mouth into which air could flow easily. The other flask was also open to air, but had a long curved neck that kept any airborne microbes from falling into the liquid. To the amazement of skeptics, no new growth appeared in the curved flask. However, in the flask with the ordinary neck, microorganisms contaminated the liquid and multiplied rapidly. By showing that a genuinely sterile solution remains lifeless, Pasteur set the stage for the later development of *aseptic* (germ-free) surgical procedures. Even more important, Pasteur’s successful challenge of a 2000-year-old belief is a powerful demonstration of the importance of keeping an open mind in scientific inquiry.

**cellular theory**

Formulated in the nineteenth century, the theory that disease is the result of abnormalities in body cells.

Pasteur’s discoveries helped shape the [**germ theory**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term156) of disease—the idea that bacteria, viruses, and other microorganisms that invade body cells cause them to malfunction. The germ theory, which is basically a refinement of the cellular theory, forms the theoretical foundation of modern medicine.

**germ theory**

The theory that disease is caused by viruses, bacteria, and other microorganisms that invade body cells.

**Louis Pasteur in His Laboratory**

**Pasteur’s meticulous work in isolating bacteria in the laboratory, then showing that life can come only from existing life, paved the way for germ-free surgical procedures.**

© Bettman/Corbis

Following Pasteur, medical knowledge and procedures developed rapidly. In 1846, William Morton (1819–1868), an American dentist, introduced the gas ether as an anesthetic. This great advance made it possible to operate on patients, who experienced no pain and thus remained completely relaxed. The German physicist Wilhelm Roentgen (1845–1943) discovered x-rays 50 years later, and, for the first time, physicians were able to observe internal organs in a living person directly. Before the end of the century, researchers had identified the microorganisms that caused malaria, pneumonia, diphtheria, syphilis, typhoid, and other diseases that my great-grandmother’s generation feared. Armed with this information, medicine began to bring under control diseases that had plagued the world since antiquity.

**The Twentieth Century and the Dawn of a New Era**

As the field of medicine continued to advance during the early part of the twentieth century, it looked more and more to physiology and anatomy, rather than to the study of thoughts and emotions, in its search for a deeper understanding of health and illness. Thus was born the [**biomedical model**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term53) of health, which maintains that illness always has a biological cause. Under the impetus of the *germ* and *cellular theories* of disease, this model first became widely accepted during the nineteenth century and continues to represent the dominant view in medicine today.

**biomedical model**

The dominant view of twentieth-century medicine that maintains that illness always has a physical cause.

The biomedical model has three distinguishing features. First, it assumes that disease is the result of a [**pathogen**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term250)—a virus, bacterium, or some other microorganism that invades the body. The model makes no provision for psychological, social, or behavioral variables in illness. In this sense, the biomedical model embraces *reductionism*, the view that complex phenomena (such as health and disease) derive ultimately from a single primary factor. Second, the biomedical model is based on the Cartesian doctrine of *mind–body dualism* that, as we have seen, considers the mind and the body as separate and autonomous entities that interact minimally. Finally, according to the biomedical model, health is nothing more than the absence of disease. Accordingly, those who work from this perspective focus on investigating the causes of physical illnesses rather than on those factors that promote physical, psychological, and social vitality. Physicians working strictly from the biomedical perspective would focus on the physiological causes of Mariana’s headaches, racing heart, and shortness of breath, rather than considering whether a psychological problem could be contributing to these symptoms.

**pathogen**

A virus, bacterium, or some other microorganism that causes a particular disease.

**Psychosomatic Medicine**

The biomedical model advanced health care significantly through its focus on pathogens. However, it was unable to explain disorders that had no observable physical cause, such as those uncovered by Sigmund Freud (1856–1939), who was initially trained as a physician. Freud’s patients exhibited symptoms such as loss of speech, deafness, and even paralysis. Freud believed these maladies were caused by unconscious emotional conflicts that had been “converted” into a physical form. Freud labeled such illnesses *conversion disorders*, and the medical community was forced to accept a new category of disease.

In the 1940s, Franz Alexander advanced the idea that an individual’s psychological conflicts could cause specific diseases. When physicians could find no infectious agent or other direct cause for rheumatoid arthritis, Alexander became intrigued by the possibility that psychological factors might be involved. According to his *nuclear conflict* model, each physical disease is the outcome of a fundamental, or nuclear, psychological conflict (Alexander, 1950). For example, individuals with a “rheumatoid personality,” who tended to repress anger and were unable to express emotion, were believed to be prone to developing arthritis. Alexander helped establish [**psychosomatic medicine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term280), a reformist movement within medicine named from the root words *psyche*, which means “mind,” and *soma*, which means “body.” Psychosomatic medicine is concerned with the diagnosis and treatment of physical diseases thought to be caused by faulty processes within the mind. This new field flourished, and soon the journal *Psychosomatic Medicine* was publishing psychological explanations of a range of health problems that included hypertension, migraine headaches, ulcers, hyperthyroidism, and bronchial asthma. At this time, Mariana might have been treated by Freud’s *psychoanalysis*—talk therapy that delves into one’s childhood and attempts to uncover unresolved conflicts.

**psychosomatic medicine**

Anoutdated branch of medicine that focused on the diagnosis and treatment of physical diseases caused by faulty psychological processes.

Psychosomatic medicine was intriguing and seemed to explain the unexplainable. However, it had several weaknesses that ultimately caused it to fall out of favor. Most significantly, psychosomatic medicine was grounded in Freudian theory. As Freud’s emphasis on unconscious, irrational urges in personality formation lost popularity, the field of psychosomatic medicine faltered. Psychosomatic medicine, like the biomedical model, was also based on reductionism—in this case, the outmoded idea that a single psychological problem or personality flaw is sufficient to trigger disease. We now know that disease, like good health, is based on the combined interaction of multiple factors, including heredity and environment, as well as the individual’s psychological makeup.

Although Freud’s theories and psychosomatic medicine were flawed, they laid the groundwork for a renewed appreciation of the connections between medicine and psychology. This was the start of the contemporary trend toward viewing illness and health as *multifactorial*. That is, many diseases are caused by the interaction of several factors, rather than by a single, invading bacterial or viral agent. Among these are *host factors* (such as genetic vulnerability or resiliency), *environmental factors* (such as exposure to pollutants and hazardous chemicals), *behavioral factors* (such as diet, exercise, and smoking), and *psychological factors* (such as optimism and overall “hardiness”).

**Behavioral Medicine**

During the first half of the twentieth century, the behaviorist movement dominated American psychology. Behaviorists defined *psychology* as the scientific study of observable behavior, and they emphasized the role of learning in the acquisition of most human behavior.

By the early 1970s, [**behavioral medicine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term46) began to explore the role of learned behaviors in health and disease. One of its early successes was the research of Neal Miller (1909–2002), who used operant conditioning techniques to teach laboratory animals (and later humans) to gain control over certain bodily functions. Miller demonstrated, for example, that people could gain some control over their blood pressure and resting heart rate when they were made aware of these physiological states. Miller’s technique, called *biofeedback*, is discussed more fully in [**Chapter 4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch04). By this time in history, our anxiety sufferer, Mariana, would most likely have been diagnosed correctly and treated in a way that brought her some relief from her symptoms—perhaps including a combination of biofeedback and other relaxation techniques.

**behavioral medicine**

An interdisciplinary field that integrates behavioral and biomedical science in preventing, diagnosing, and treating illness.

Although the wellspring for behavioral medicine was the behaviorist movement in psychology, a distinguishing feature of this field is its interdisciplinary nature. It draws its membership from such diverse academic fields as anthropology, sociology, molecular biology, genetics, biochemistry, and psychology, as well as the healing professions of nursing, medicine, and dentistry. Behavioral medicine integrates these various fields with the goal of improving the prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of disease. The practice of behavioral medicine thus includes health psychology, along with occupational therapy, rehabilitation medicine, and other applied therapies.

**The Emergence of Health Psychology**

In 1973, the American Psychological Association (APA) appointed a task force to explore psychology’s role in the field of behavioral medicine, and in 1978, the APA created the division of health psychology (Division 38). Four years later, the first volume of its official journal, *Health Psychology*, was published. In this issue, Joseph Matarazzo, the first president of the division, laid down the four goals of the new field:

* *To study scientifically the causes or origins of specific diseases*, that is, their [**etiology**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term135). Health psychologists are primarily interested in the psychological, behavioral, and social origins of disease. They investigate why people engage in *health-compromising behaviors*, such as smoking or unsafe sex.

**etiology**

The scientific study of the causes or origins of specific diseases.

* *To promote health*. Health psychologists consider ways to get people to engage in *health-enhancing behaviors* such as exercising regularly and eating nutritious foods.
* *To prevent and treat illness*. Health psychologists design programs to help people stop smoking, lose weight, manage stress, and minimize other risk factors for poor health. They also assist those who are already ill in their efforts to adjust to their illnesses or comply with difficult treatment regimens.
* *To promote public health policy and the improvement of the health care system*. Health psychologists are very active in all facets of health education and consult frequently with government leaders who formulate public policy in an effort to improve the delivery of health care to all people.

As noted in [**Table 1.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T1-3), a number of twentieth-century trends helped shape the new field of health psychology, pushing it toward the broader biopsychosocial perspective, which is the focus of this text.

**Table 1.3: Twentieth-Century Trends That Shaped Health Psychology**

| **Trend** | **Result** |
| --- | --- |
| Increased life expectancy | Recognize the need to take better care of ourselves to promote vitality through a longer life |
| Rise of lifestyle disorders (for example, cancer, stroke, and heart disease) | Educate people to avoid the behaviors that contribute to these diseases (for example, smoking and eating a high-fat diet) |
| Rising health care costs | Focus efforts on ways to prevent disease and maintain good health to avoid these costs |
| Rethinking the biomedical model | Develop a more comprehensive model of health and disease—the biopsychosocial approach |

**Biopsychosocial (Mind–Body) Perspective**

As history tells us, looking at just one causative factor paints an incomplete picture of a person’s health or illness. Health psychologists therefore work from a [**biopsychosocial (mind–body) perspective**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term54). As depicted in [**Figure 1.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F1-2), this perspective recognizes that *bio*logical, *psycho*logical, and *sociocultural* forces act together to determine an individual’s health and vulnerability to disease; that is, health and disease must be explained in terms of multiple contexts.

**Figure 1.2: The Biopsychosocial Model of Mariana’s Anxiety**

**According to the biopsychosocial perspective, all health behaviors are best explained in terms of three contexts: biological processes, psychological processes, and social influences. This diagram illustrates how these three processes could influence anxiety, as experienced by Mariana in the case study example (**[**p. 7**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-1-1)**).**

**biopsychosocial (mind–body) perspective**

The viewpoint that health and other behaviors are determined by the interaction of biological mechanisms, psychological processes, and social influences.

**The Biological Context**

All behaviors, including states of health and illness, occur in a biological context. Every thought, mood, and urge is a biological event made possible because of the characteristic anatomical structure and biological function of a person’s body. Health psychology draws attention to those aspects of our bodies that influence health and disease: our genetic makeup and our nervous, immune, and endocrine systems (see [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03)).

Genes provide a guideline for our biology and predispose our behaviors—healthy and unhealthy, normal and abnormal. For example, the tendency to abuse alcohol has long been known to run in some families (see [**Chapter 9**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch09)). One reason is that alcohol dependency is at least partly genetic, although it does not seem to be linked to a single, specific gene. Instead, some people may inherit a greater sensitivity to alcohol’s physical effects, experiencing intoxication as pleasurable and the aftermath of a hangover as minor. Such people may be more likely to drink, especially in certain psychological and social contexts. The complete set of genetic instructions that make a living organism is called its *genome*. Rapid advances in the new field of [**genomics**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term154) (the study of genomes) reflect the increasing scientific evidence supporting the benefits of using genetic tests and family history to improve health. As evidence mounts, these benefits are being incorporated as new target areas that will appear in *Healthy People 2020*.

**genomics**

The study of the structure, function, and mapping of the genetic material of organisms.

A key element of the biological context is our species’ evolutionary history, and an *evolutionary perspective* guides the work of many health psychologists. Our characteristic human traits and behaviors exist as they do because they helped our distant ancestors survive long enough to reproduce and send their genes into the future. For example, natural selection has favored the tendency of people to become hungry in the presence of a mouthwatering aroma (see [**Chapter 8**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch08)). This sensitivity to food-related cues makes evolutionary sense in that eating is necessary for survival—particularly in the distant past when food supplies were unpredictable and it was advantageous to have a healthy appetite when food was available.

At the same time, biology and behavior constantly interact. For example, some individuals are more vulnerable to stress-related illnesses because they angrily react to daily hassles and other environmental “triggers” (see [**Chapter 4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch04)). Among men, these triggers are correlated with aggressive reaction related to increased amounts of the hormone testosterone. This relationship, however, is reciprocal: Angry outbursts can also lead to elevated testosterone levels. One of the tasks of health psychology is to explain how (and why) this mutual influence between biology and behavior occurs.

It is also important to recognize that biology and behavior do not occur in a vacuum. At first, the remarkable success of the Human Genome Project in mapping all the genes that make up a person seemed to suggest that genes might determine everything; that every aspect of you, including your health, will become whatever you are biologically destined to be. We now know otherwise. It is true that genes influence all traits, both psychological and physical. But even identical twins, who share identical genes, do *not* have identical traits (Poulsen and others, 2007). Increasingly, we’re learning that most important traits are [**epigenetic**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term134). Epigenetic effects occur throughout our lifetimes. Some “epi-” influences impede our chances for optimal health (for example, environmental toxins, child abuse, and poverty), and some improve them (for example, nourishing food, safe places to grow up, and education). One example of this type of gene–environment interaction comes from research on the *MAOA* gene, which codes for an enzyme that affects key neurotransmitters in the brain. Boys who inherit one variation of the gene, and girls who inherit a different variation of the same gene, are more likely to engage in high-risk delinquent behavior as adolescents, but only if they were exposed to the “epi-” effect of maltreatment as children (Aslund and others, 2011). The variations in question are *gene promoters*, regions of DNA that regulate the expression of that gene.

**epigenetic**

The effects of environmental forces on how genes are expressed.

As another example, consider *DNA methylation*, a biochemical process that occurs in cells and is essential to the healthy functioning of nearly every body system. Occurring billions of time each second, methylation helps regulate the expression of genes that repair DNA, keep inflammation in check, and promote healthy blood vessels. A breakdown in methylation may promote the development of cancer, diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and even accelerate aging (Alashwal, Dosunmu, & Zawia, 2012). The degree of methylation changes over the life span and is also influenced by “epi-” effects such as diet, tobacco use, and exposure to environmental toxins (Davis & Uthus, 2004).

These examples of epigenetic research demonstrate that *gene–environment* effects are always important. Some genes are *expressed* and affect our health, while some genes are *silenced* and remain unnoticed from one generation to the next unless circumstances, such as the quality of nurturing during childhood, change (Riddihough & Zahn, 2010; Skipper, 2011).

**Life-Course Perspective**

Within the biological context, the [**life-course perspective**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term204) in health psychology focuses on important age-related aspects of health and illness. This perspective would consider, for example, how a pregnant woman’s malnutrition, smoking, or use of psychoactive drugs would affect her child’s lifelong development. Her child might be born early and suffer from *low birth weight* (less than 2500 grams [5 pounds]). Low birth weight is one of the most common, and most preventable, problems of prenatal development. Consequences include smaller brain volume; slowed motor, social, and language development; increased risk of cerebral palsy; heart disease and diabetes; long-term learning difficulties; and even death (Jalil and others, 2008; van Soelen and others, 2010).

**life-course perspective**

Theoretical perspective that focuses on age-related aspects of health and illness.

**The roots of the word are revealing: *epi* means “around” or “near.” *Epigenetic,* therefore, calls attention to environmental factors near and around genes that affect their expression.**

The life-course perspective also considers the leading causes of death in terms of the age groups affected. In 2011, five major causes of death (heart disease, cancer, chronic lower respiratory diseases, stroke, and accidents) accounted for nearly two-thirds of all deaths in the United States (Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2013). However, the profile of leading causes of death varies by age group. The chronic diseases that are the leading causes of death in the overall population are more likely to affect middle-aged and elderly adults. Young people between the ages of 1 and 24 years old are much more likely to die from external causes that include accidents, homicide, and suicide, followed by cancer and heart disease (see [**Figure 1.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F1-3)).

**Figure 1.3: The Leading Causes of Death in the United States by Age Group**

**The five leading causes of death in young people include external causes (accidents, homicide, and suicide), followed by cancer and heart disease. This pattern of external causes accounting for more deaths than chronic conditions changes as people get older. In older age groups, chronic conditions account for more deaths than do external causes. For example, accidents account for more than one-third of all deaths among persons aged 1–24 years. Accidental deaths are rarer in older age groups and do not even rank as one of the five leading causes of death in people 65 years and older.**

**Source:** Minino, A.M., and Murphy, S.L. (2012). Death in the United States, 2010. *NCHS data brief, no. 99*. Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics.

**The Psychological Context**

The central message of health psychology is, of course, that health and illness are subject to psychological influences. For example, a key factor in how well a person copes with a stressful life experience is how the event is appraised or interpreted (see [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05)). Events that are appraised as overwhelming, pervasive, and beyond our control take a much greater toll on us physically and psychologically than do events that are appraised as minor challenges that are temporary and surmountable. Indeed, some evidence suggests that, whether a stressful event is actually experienced or merely imagined, the body’s stress response is nearly the same. Health psychologists think that some people may be chronically depressed and more susceptible to certain health problems because they replay stressful events over and over again in their minds, which may be functionally equivalent to repeatedly encountering the actual event. The new field of *positive psychology* has given rise to many studies of the importance of [**subjective well-being**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term326)—our feelings of happiness and sense of satisfaction with life (see [**Table 1.4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T1-4)). Throughout this book, we will examine the health implications of thinking, perception, motivation, emotion, learning, attention, memory, and other topics of central importance to psychology.

**Table 1.4: Testing Yourself: Subjective Well-Being**

The WHO-5 Well-Being Index (WHO-5) is a self-report mood questionnaire developed by the World Health Organization’s Collaborating Center in Mental Health.

For each statement, please indicate which is closest to how you have been feeling over the last two weeks. For example, if you have felt cheerful and in good spirits more than half of the time during the last two weeks, put a tick in the box with the number 3 in the upper-right corner.

|  | **Over the last two weeks** | **All of the time** | **Most of the time** | **More then half of the time** | **Less then half of the time** | **Some of the time** | **At no time** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. | I have felt cheerful and in good spirits | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 2. | I have felt calm and relaxed | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 |  |
| 3. | I have felt active and vigorous | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 4. | I woke up feeling fresh and rested | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| 5. | My daily life has been filled with things that interest me | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |

The raw score is calculated by totaling the figures of the five answers. The raw score ranges from 0 to 25, 0 representing worst possible and 25 representing best possible quality of life. A score below 13 indicates poor subjective well-being and may be an indication for additional testing for depression.

**Source:** Bech, P. (2004). Measuring the dimensions of psychological general well-being by the WHO-5. *Quality of Life Newsletter*, vol. 32, 15–16.

**subjective well-being**

The cognitive and emotional evaluations of a person’s life.

Psychological factors also play an important role in the treatment of chronic conditions. The effectiveness of all health care interventions—including medication and surgery, as well as acupuncture and other alternative treatments—is powerfully influenced by a patient’s attitude. A patient who believes a drug or other treatment will only cause miserable side effects may experience considerable tension, which can actually worsen his or her physical response to the treatment. This reaction can set up a vicious cycle in which escalating anxiety before treatment is followed by progressively worse physical reactions as the treatment regimen proceeds. On the other hand, a patient who is confident that a treatment will be effective may actually experience a greater therapeutic response to that treatment.

Psychological interventions can help patients learn to manage their tension, thereby lessening negative reactions to treatment. Patients who are more relaxed are usually better able, and more motivated, to follow their doctors’ instructions. Psychological interventions can also assist patients in managing the everyday stresses of life, which seem to exert a cumulative effect on the immune system. Negative life events such as bereavement, divorce, job loss, or relocation have been linked to decreased immune functioning and increased susceptibility to illness. By teaching patients more effective ways of managing unavoidable stress, health psychologists may help patients’ immune systems combat disease.

**The Social Context**

Turn-of-the-century Irish immigrants like my great-grandmother surmounted poverty and prejudice in the United States by establishing Irish-American associations that strongly reflected an ethic of family and communal support. “Each for himself, but all for one another,” wrote recent immigrant Patrick O’Callaghan to his sister back home, as he described this system of patronage. In placing health behavior in its social context, health psychologists consider the ways in which we think about, influence, and relate to one another and to our environments. Your gender, for example, entails a particular, socially prescribed role that represents your sense of being a woman or a man. In addition, you are a member of a particular family, community, and nation; you also have a certain racial, cultural, and ethnic identity, and you live within a specific socioeconomic class. You are influenced by the same historical and social factors as others in your [**birth cohort**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term55)—a group of people born within a few years of each other. For example, those who lived 100 years ago were more likely to die from diseases that we in developed countries today consider preventable, such as tuberculosis and diphtheria ([**Table 1.5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T1-5)), and infant mortality in the United States has dropped significantly ([**Figure 1.4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F1-4)). Each of these elements of your unique social context affects your experiences and influences your beliefs and behaviors—including those related to health.

**Table 1.5: Leading Causes of Death in the United States, 1900 and 2010**

| **1900** | **Percent** | **2010**[**\***](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/NT1-1) | **Percent of All Deaths** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Pneumonia | 11.8 | Heart disease | 24.2 |
| Tuberculosis | 11.3 | Cancer | 23.3 |
| Diarrhea and enteritis | 8.3 | Chronic lower respiratory diseases | 5.6 |
| Heart disease | 5.2 | Cerebrovascular diseases (stroke) | 5.2 |
| Liver disease | 5.2 | Accidents | 4.8 |
| Accidents | 4.2 | Alzheimer’s disease | 3.4 |
| Cancer | 3.7 | Diabetes mellitus | 2.8 |
| Senility | 2.9 | Kidney disease | 2.0 |
| Diphtheria | 2.3 | Influenza and pneumonia | 2.0 |
|  |  | Intentional self-harm (suicide) | 1.5 |
| **Sources:** Murphy, S.L., Xu, J.Q., and Kochanek, K.D. (2012). Deaths: Preliminary data for 2010. *National Vital Statistics Reports; 60(4*). Table B. Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics. | | | |

\*

Note that the leading causes of death in 2010 were not new diseases; they were present in earlier times, but fewer people died from them, or they were called something else.

**Figure 1.4: Infant Mortality in the United States**

**Less than a century ago, 15 percent of babies born in the United States died before their first birthday. For those who survived, life expectancy was only slightly more than 50 years. With improved health care, today more than 90 percent of newborn babies survive to at least 1 year of age.**

**Sources:** *Historical Statistics of the United States: Colonial Times to 1970*, by U.S. Bureau of the Census, 1975, Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, p. 60; Infant mortality rates by race—States, *The 2010 Statistical Abstract*, by U.S. Census Bureau, Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, Table 113.

**birth cohort**

A group of people who, because they were born at about the same time, experience similar historical and social conditions.

Consider the social context in which a chronic disease such as cancer occurs. A spouse, significant other, or close friend provides an important source of social support for many cancer patients. Women and men who feel socially connected to a network of caring friends are less likely to die of all types of cancer than their socially isolated counterparts (see [**Chapter 11**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch11)). Feeling supported by others may serve as a buffer that mitigates the output of stress hormones and keeps the body’s immune defenses strong during traumatic situations. It may also promote better health habits, regular checkups, and early screening of worrisome symptoms—all of which may improve a cancer victim’s odds of survival.

**Sociocultural Perspective**

Within the social context, the [**sociocultural perspective**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term314) considers how social and cultural factors contribute to health and disease. When psychologists use the term *culture*, they refer to the enduring behaviors, values, and customs that a group of people have developed over the years and transmitted from one generation to the next. Within a culture, there may be two or more *ethnic groups*—large groups of people who tend to have similar values and experiences because they share certain characteristics.

**sociocultural perspective**

Theviewpoint that it is impossible to understand a person fully without understanding his or her culture and ethnic identity.

In multiethnic cultures such as those of the United States and most large nations, wide disparities still exist between the life expectancy and health status of ethnic minority groups and the majority population. These disparities were even greater among previous cohorts, such as the ethnic groups of my great-grandmother and others who emigrated to America. Some of these differences undoubtedly reflect variation in *socioeconomic status* (*SES*), which is a measure of several variables, including income, education, and occupation. For example, the highest rates of chronic disease occur among people who are at the lowest SES levels (AHRQ, 2012). Evidence also suggests that bias, prejudice, and stereotyping on the part of health care providers may be factors. Minorities tend to receive lower-quality health care than whites do, even when insurance status, income, age, and severity of conditions are comparable (AHRQ, 2012).

Sociocultural forces also play an important role in the variation in health-related beliefs and behaviors. For example, traditional Native American health care practices are holistic and do not distinguish separate models for mental and physical illnesses. As another example, Christian Scientists traditionally reject the use of medicine in their belief that sick people can be cured only through prayer. And Judaic law prescribes that God gives health, and it is the responsibility of each individual to protect it.

In general, health psychologists working from the sociocultural perspective have found wide discrepancies not only among ethnic groups, but also within these groups. Latinos, for example, are far from homogeneous. The three major nationality groups—Mexicans, Puerto Ricans, and Cubans—differ in education, income, overall health, and risk of disease and death (Angel, Angel, & Hill, 2008; Bagley and others, 1995). Socioeconomic, religious, and other cultural patterns also may explain why variations in health are apparent not just among ethnic groups, but also from region to region, state to state, and even from one neighborhood to another. For example, out of every 1,000 live births, the number of infants who die before reaching their first birthday is much greater in the District of Columbia (13.1 percent), Mississippi (10.0 percent), and Louisiana (9.2 percent) than in Washington (4.8 percent), Vermont (5.1 percent), and Utah (5.1 percent) (U.S. Census Bureau, 2011). In terms of your overall health, the way you age seems to depend on where you live.

**Gender Perspective**

Also within the social context, the [**gender perspective**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term150) in health psychology focuses on the study of gender-specific health behaviors, problems, and barriers to health care. With the exceptions of reproductive-system problems and undernourishment, men are more vulnerable than women to nearly every other health problem. Although biology certainly plays a part in gender differences in health, masculinity norms have also been implicated (Gough, 2013). Compared to women, men are more likely to:

* make unhealthy food choices,
* be overweight,
* exceed guidelines for alcohol consumption and engage in binge drinking,
* ignore illness symptoms and avoid seeing doctors,
* engage in risky competitive sports where there is a higher rate of injury, and
* be at greater risk for nearly all the major diseases that affect both sexes.

**gender perspective**

A focus on the study of gender-specific health behaviors, problems, and barriers to health care.

**Diversity and Healthy Living: The Immigrant Paradox: SES and the Health of Immigrants**

A dramatic example of research stemming from the sociocultural perspective concerns the surprising health of Latinos in the United States considering their generally lower incomes and education levels. In general, low SES correlates with poorer health outcomes. This is true for low birth weight, the rate of which increases worldwide as income falls. Immigrants to the United States, especially those from Spanish-speaking countries, have an average lower SES than native-born Americans. Logically, then, researchers would expect babies born to immigrants to weigh less than those born to native-born women. But, paradoxically, babies born to U.S. immigrants are healthier in every way, including birth weight, than babies of the same ethnicity whose mothers, like their babies, were born in the United States. This surprising finding, which was first documented among Mexican-Americans and is also true for U.S. immigrants from other Spanish-speaking countries, from the Caribbean, and from parts of Eastern Europe, continues after birth. Throughout childhood, children born to low-SES immigrants seem to do better in health and cognition than native-born children of the same ethnicity and income (García Coll & Marks, 2012). Remarkably, the [**immigrant paradox**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term184) (also called the *Hispanic paradox* or *Latino paradox*) is found throughout the life span. Although Latinos in the United States generally have lower SES, are less likely to have health insurance, use health care less often, and receive less in the way of highlevel care when they are sick, they appear to have lower rates of heart disease, cancer, and stroke—the biggest killers of Americans.

**immigrant paradox**

The finding that, although low socioeconomic status usually predicts poor health, this is not true for Hispanics and other ethnic groups in the United States.

Carry this out a generation or two, however, and things change. The children and grandchildren of immigrants typically surpass their elders in income and education, but as SES increases, so does the prevalence of virtually every illness and chronic condition, including obesity, diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and cancer (Garcia Coll & Marks, 2012). By the time an immigrant family has been in the United States for two generations, the “playing field” has been leveled: The grandchildren of immigrants die at the same rate as those of native-born Americans (Barger & Gallo, 2008).

Even within the life span of a single person, the immigrant paradox can be observed. Adults who immigrated to the United States within the past year are one-tenth as likely to be obese as are their counterparts who arrived as children and who have lived in this country for 15 years or more (Roshania and others, 2008). Similar disparities exist for diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and many other chronic conditions.

One possible explanation for the immigrant paradox, called the *healthy migrant effect*, is that people who choose to leave their native country are healthier to begin with, despite being poor. Although it may be true that some people do not emigrate because they are too sick to make what is often a hazardous journey, this effect is not sufficient to explain the immigrant health advantage (Garcia Coll & Marks, 2012).

The idea that masculinity is bad for men’s health is a strong theme in health psychology. The effect is cumulative, and by age 80, women outnumber men 2 to 1 (U.S. Census Bureau, 2011)

**Sociocultural Bias in Diagnosis**

**Physicians were told that these supposed “heart patients” were identical in occupation, symptoms, and every other respect except age, race, and gender. Although catheterization was the appropriate treatment for the described symptoms, the physicians were much more likely to recommend it for the younger, white, male patients than for the older, female, or black patients.**

**Source:** Schulman, K.A. and others. (1999). The effect of race and sex on physician’s recommendations for cardiac catherization. *New England Journal of Medicine, 340*, 618–625.

As another example of research guided by the gender perspective, consider that the medical profession has a long history of treating men and women differently. For example, research studies have shown that women treated for heart disease are more likely to be misdiagnosed (Chiaramonte & Friend, 2006); they are less likely than men to receive counseling about the heart-healthy benefits of exercise, nutrition, and weight reduction (Stewart and others, 2004) or to receive and use prescription drugs for the treatment of their heart disease (Vittinghoff and others, 2003). In a classic study, 700 physicians were asked to prescribe treatment for eight heart patients with identical symptoms (Schulman and others, 1999). The “patients” were actors who differed only in gender, race, and reported age (55 or 70). Although diagnosis is a judgment call, most cardiac specialists would agree that diagnostic catheterization is the appropriate treatment for the symptoms described by each hypothetical patient. However, the actual recommendations revealed a small, but nevertheless significant, antifemale and anti-African-American bias. For the younger, white, and male patients, catheterization was recommended 90, 91, and 91 percent of the time, respectively; for the older, female, and African-American patients, 86, 85, and 85 percent of the time, respectively.

Problems such as these, and the underrepresentation of women as participants in medical research trials, have led to the criticism of gender bias in health research and care. In response, the National Institutes of Health (NIH) issued detailed guidelines on the inclusion of women and minority groups in medical research (USDHHS, 2001). In addition, in 1991 the NIH launched the Women’s Health Initiative (WHI), a long-term study of more than 161,000 postmenopausal women focusing on the determinants and prevention of disability and death in older women. Among the targets of investigation in this sweeping study were osteoporosis, breast cancer, and coronary heart disease. The clinical trials that formed the basis of the WHI tested the effects of hormone therapy, diet modification, and calcium and vitamin D supplements on heart disease, bone fractures, and breast cancer (WHI, 2010).

Despite the significance of such sociocultural and gender influences, remember that it would be a mistake to focus exclusively on this, or any one context, in isolation. Health behavior is not an automatic consequence of a given social, cultural, or gender context. For example, although as a group cancer patients who are married tend to survive longer than unmarried persons, marriages that are unhappy and destructive offer no benefit in this regard and may even be linked to poorer health outcomes.

**Biopsychosocial “Systems”**

As these examples indicate, the biopsychosocial perspective emphasizes the mutual influences among the biological, psychological, and social contexts of health. It is also based on an [**ecological-systems approach**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term124) (Bronfenbrenner and Morris, 2006). Applied to health, this approach is based on the idea that our well-being—and all of nature—is best understood as a hierarchy of systems in which each system is simultaneously composed of smaller subsystems and part of larger, more encompassing systems (Kazak, Bosch, & Klonoff, 2012) ([**Figure 1.5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F1-5)).

**Figure 1.5: Ecological-Systems Approach and Health**

**The systems potentially influencing Mariana’s headache, shortness of breath, sleeplessness, and racing heart (review the case study example,**[**p. 7**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L1-1-1)**) include her body’s internal biological systems (immune, endocrine, cardiovascular, and nervous), as well as her family, neighborhood, culture, and other external systems of which she is part.**

**ecological-systems approach**

The viewpoint that nature is best understood as a hierarchy of systems, in which each system is simultaneously composed of smaller subsystems and larger, interrelated systems.

One way to understand the relationship among systems is to envision a target with a bull’s eye at the center and concentric rings radiating out from it. In this model, the individual is at the center. Now consider each of us as a system made up of interacting systems such as the endocrine system, the cardiovascular system, the nervous system, and the immune system. (Also keep in mind that, within each of our biological systems, there are smaller subsystems consisting of tissues, nerve fibers, fluids, cells, and genetic material.) If you move out from the individual at the center and into the radiating outer rings, you can see larger systems that interact with us—and these rings include our families, our schools and workplaces, our neighborhoods, our communities, our societies, and our cultures.

Applied to health, the model emphasizes a crucial point: A system at any given level is affected by and affects systems at other levels. For example, a weakened immune system affects specific organs in a person’s body, which affect the person’s overall biological health, which in turn might affect the person’s relationships with his or her family and friends. Conceptualizing health and disease according to a systems approach allows us to understand the whole person more fully. Recognizing the importance of this approach, a growing number of health psychologists are investigating *biopsychosocial health* as a specific outcome measure in their research (Ferris, Kline, & Bourdage, 2012).

**Applying the Biopsychosocial Model**

To get a better feeling for the usefulness of biopsychosocial explanations of healthy behaviors, consider the example of *alcohol abuse*, which is a maladaptive drinking pattern in which at least one of the following occurs: recurrent drinking despite its interference with role obligations; continued drinking despite legal, social, or interpersonal problems related to its use; and recurrent drinking in situations in which intoxication is dangerous. Like most disordered behavior, alcohol abuse is best explained in terms of several mechanisms that include both genetic and environmental components (Ball, 2008) ([**Figure 1.6**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F1-6)). Research studies of families, identical and fraternal twins, and adopted children clearly demonstrate that people (especially men) who have a biological relative who was alcohol dependent are significantly more likely to abuse alcohol themselves (NIAAA, 2010). In fact, for males, alcoholism in a first-degree relative is the single best predictor of alcoholism (Plomin and others, 2001). In addition, people who inherit a gene variant that results in a deficiency of a key enzyme for metabolizing alcohol are more sensitive to alcohol’s effects and far less likely to become problem drinkers (Zakhari, 2006).

**Figure 1.6: A Biopsychosocial Model of Alcohol Abuse**

**Alcohol abuse is best understood as occurring in three contexts: biological, psychological, and social.**

On the psychological side, although researchers no longer attempt to identify a single “alcoholic personality,” they do focus on specific personality traits and behaviors that are linked with alcohol dependence and abuse. One such trait is poor *self-regulation*, characterized by an inability to exercise control over drinking (Hustad, Carey, Carey, & Maisto, 2009). Another is *negative emotionality*, marked by irritability and agitation. Along with several others, these traits comprise the *alcohol dependency syndrome* that is the basis for a diagnosis of alcohol abuse (Li, Hewitt, & Grant, 2007).

On the social side, alcohol abuse sometimes stems from a history of drinking to cope with life events or overwhelming social demands. Peer pressure, difficult home and work environments, and tension reduction also may contribute to problem drinking. And more generally, as many college students know, certain social contexts promote heavy drinking. Research studies have shown that college students who prefer large social contexts involving both men and women tend to be heavier drinkers than those who prefer smaller mixed-sex contexts. In addition, men who often drink in same-sex groups (whether large or small) report more frequent drunkenness than men who drink more often in small mixed-sex groups. This suggests that college men who drink heavily may seek out social contexts in which this behavior will be tolerated (LaBrie, Hummer, & Pedersen, 2007). Fortunately, researchers have also found that heavy college drinking does not necessarily predict similar post-college drinking behavior. Students tend to stop heavy drinking sooner than nonstudents—*maturing out* of hazardous alcohol use before it becomes a long-term problem (NIAAA, 2006; White, Labouvie, & Papadaratsakis, 2005).

**Frequently Asked Questions about a Health Psychology Career**

We have seen how views regarding the nature of illness and health have changed over the course of history, examined trends that helped shape the new field of health psychology, and discussed the various theoretical perspectives from which health psychologists work. But you may still have questions about the profession of health psychology. Here are answers to some of the most frequently asked questions.

**What Do Health Psychologists Do?**

Like all psychologists, health psychologists may serve as *teachers, research scientists*, and/or *clinicians*. As teachers, health psychologists train students in health-related fields such as psychology, physical therapy, and medicine. As research scientists, they identify the psychological processes that contribute to health and illness, investigate issues concerning why people do not engage in healthful practices, and evaluate the effectiveness of specific therapeutic interventions.

Health psychologists are on the cutting edge of research, testing the biopsychosocial model in numerous areas, including Alzheimer’s disease, HIV/AIDS, adherence with medical treatment regimens, and immune functioning and various disease processes. Because the biopsychosocial model was first developed to explain health problems, until recently the majority of this research has focused on diseases and health-compromising behaviors. Historically, if you weren’t a patient, you were considered healthy. However, as part of the positive psychology movement, an increasing amount of research centers on [**positive health**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term263), the scientific study of *health assets* that produce longer life and optimal human functioning (APA, 2010). The premise of this movement is simple but critical: The absence of disease and distress is *not* the same thing as health and happiness. The scope of this research—covering assets as diverse as optimism and happiness, psychological hardiness, and the traits of people who live to a ripe old age—shows clearly that the biopsychosocial model guides much of it (see “[**Your Health Assets**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B1-35)”).

**positive health**

The scientific study of health assets, which are factors that produce longer life, reduce illness, and increase overall well-being.

*Clinical health psychologists*, who generally focus on health-promoting interventions, are licensed for independent practice in areas such as clinical and counseling psychology. As clinicians, they use the full range of diagnostic assessment, education, and therapeutic techniques in psychology to promote health and assist the physically ill. Assessment approaches frequently include measures of cognitive functioning, psychophysiological assessment, demographic surveys, and lifestyle or personality assessment. Interventions may include stress management, relaxation therapies, biofeedback, education about the role of psychological processes in disease, and cognitive-behavioral interventions. Interventions are not limited to those who are already suffering from a health problem. Healthy or at-risk individuals may be taught preventive healthy behaviors.

***Your Health Assets*: College Does a Mind and Body Good**

Depending on what your day has been like, it may be difficult for you to believe that attending college is most likely good for your health. To be sure, college can add additional sources of possible stress. Your hectic schedule may include squeezing in an online course between jobs or after putting children to bed at night, leaving you in a sleep-deprived state, with little time for exercising and maintaining a healthy diet. Some group settings on campus may also promote high-risk activities such as binge drinking, violence, and dangerous sexual behaviors. Despite these potential barriers to a healthy lifestyle, women and men who have attended college are healthier than those who have not. Worldwide, college students report fewer symptoms of poor health and lower levels of stress than do non-students (Grzywacz, Almeida, Neupert, & Ettner, 2004). Those who graduate from college have lower death rates from all causes, including accidents, infectious diseases, and chronic illness, and live about 10 years longer than those without a high school diploma (National Center for Health Statistics, 2012).

What factors might explain why higher education is a valuable health asset? One is the impact of college on cognition. According to one classic study (Perry, 1999), thinking advances through nine levels of increasing complexity over a typical four-year college experience. A first-year student may think in simple, dualistic terms (yes/no, right/wrong) on many issues. Over the next three years of college, thinking typically becomes broader and increasingly recognizes the validity of multiple perspectives on issues. Intelligent, educated people thus are more likely to develop higher [**health literacy**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term165) and become better informed consumers of information, doing their own research and becoming more knowledgeable and empowered when it comes to their health.

**health literacy**

The ability to understand health information and use it to make good decisions about one’s health.

A second factor in the college-health relationship is higher income. College students, especially those who graduate, generally find better jobs and have greater average incomes than those who do not (Batty and others, 2008). This gives them greater access to health care and the sometime costly choices of a healthy lifestyle that include nutritious food, flexible work and leisure time, and safe places to exercise. According to U.S. census data, averaged over a lifetime, a college degree adds about $20,000 per year to a worker’s salary.

A third factor is healthier lifestyle. Higher education is associated with better health habits, including avoiding tobacco, eating nutritious food, and exercising regularly. This may partly explain why among U.S. adults, the rate of obesity is 9 percent for those with a college degree, compared to 30 percent for those without (National Center for Health Statistics, 2012).

Throughout the world, the leaders of many nations have accepted the idea that increasing the number of students enrolled in college is an effective way to promote health and increase productivity. This has resulted in [**massification**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term212), the idea that higher education benefits everyone (that is, the masses) (Altbach, 2010). As a college student, you have an opportunity to acquire many assets that may be reflected in a long, healthy life—including higher income potential, greater health literacy, a social context in which you are surrounded by like-minded, health-conscious friends, and good lifestyle habits.

**massification**

The transformation of a product or service that was once only available to the wealthy such that it becomes accessible to everyone. Applied to education and health, it is the idea that college can benefit everyone.

**Where Do Health Psychologists Work?**

Traditionally, most psychologists accepted teaching or research positions at universities and four-year colleges. Employment opportunities for health psychologists with applied or research skills also include working in government agencies that conduct research, such as the National Institutes of Health and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC).

In medical settings, health psychologists teach health care providers, conduct research, become involved in health care policy development, and provide a variety of other services. They help patients cope with illness and the anxiety associated with surgery and other medical interventions, as well as intervene to promote patients’ adherence to complicated medical regimens. In this capacity, clinical health psychologists often work on interdisciplinary hospital teams. As part of a new model of *integrated care*, these teams improve medical treatment outcomes, lower costs, and offer a successful model for future health care systems (Novotney, 2010a).

In addition, medical residency programs in the United States now have a clear mandate to improve physician training in areas such as sensitivity and responsiveness to patients’ culture, age, gender, and disabilities. Increasingly, health psychologists are helping physicians become better listeners and communicators. As we’ll see, this mandate stems from mounting evidence that this type of care results in better health outcomes and helps control health care costs (Novotney, 2010a).

Health psychologists may also be found working in health maintenance organizations (HMOs), medical schools, pain and rehabilitation clinics, and private practice ([**Figure 1.7**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F1-7)). An increasing number of health psychologists also may be found in the corporate world, where they advise employers and workers on a variety of health-related issues. They also establish on-the-job interventions to help employees lose weight, quit smoking, and learn more adaptive ways of managing stress.

**Figure 1.7: Where Do Health Psychologists Work?**

**Besides colleges, universities, and hospitals, health psychologists work in a variety of venues, including HMOs, medical schools, pain and rehabilitation clinics, and independent practices. An increasing number of health psychologists can be found in the workplace, where they advise employers and workers on a variety of health-related issues.**

**Source:** *2009 Doctoral Psychology Workforce Fast Facts*. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

**How Do I Become a Health Psychologist?**

Preparing for a career in health psychology usually requires an advanced degree in any of a number of different educational programs. Some students enroll in medical or nursing school and eventually become nurses or doctors. Others train for one of the allied health professions, such as nutrition, physical therapy, social work, occupational therapy, or public health. An increasing number of interested undergraduates continue on to graduate school in psychology and acquire research, teaching, and intervention skills. Those who ultimately hope to provide direct services to patients typically take their training in clinical or counseling psychology programs.

Many students who wish to pursue a career in health psychology begin with general psychology training at the undergraduate level. Because of health psychology’s biopsychosocial orientation, students are also encouraged to take courses in anatomy and physiology, abnormal and social psychology, learning processes and behavior therapies, community psychology, and public health.

Most health psychologists eventually obtain a doctoral degree (Ph.D. or Psy.D.) in psychology. To earn a Ph.D. in psychology, students complete a four- to six-year program, at the end of which they conduct an original research project. Psy.D. programs generally provide slightly more clinical experience and clinical courses, but less research training and experience, than Ph.D. programs.

Graduate training in health psychology is generally based on a curriculum that covers the three basic domains of the biopsychosocial model. Training in the biological domain includes courses in neuropsychology, anatomy, physiology, and psychopharmacology. Training in the psychological domain includes courses in each of the major subfields (biological, developmental, personality, and so on) and theoretical perspectives (social-cultural, cognitive, behavior, neuroscience, and so on). And training in the social domain includes courses on group processes and ways in which the various groups (family, ethnic, and so on) influence their members’ health.

Following graduate training, many health psychologists complete two or more years of specialized training in the form of an internship in a hospital, clinic, or other medical setting. Some advocates have suggested that such training should culminate in board certification of health psychologists as primary health care providers themselves (Tovian, 2004, 2010).

**Graduate training in the social domain includes courses on group processes and ways in which the various groups to which people belong influence their health.**

GlobalStock/[**iStockphoto.com**](http://istockphoto.com/)

**Weigh In on Health**

Respond to each question below based on what you learned in the chapter. **(Tip:** Use the items in “Summing Up” to take into account related biological, psychological, and social concerns.)

* **1.** Considering how views of health have changed over time, what would be a good description of health for an individual today? How do gender, culture, and the practice of health influence your description?
* **2.** How does the overall health of your school population benefit when different contexts, systems, models, and theories about health are taken into consideration?
* **3.** Your friend Tran is thinking about pursuing a career in health psychology. What general advice would you give him, and how would you suggest he choose a specific career in the field?

**Summing Up**

* **1.** Health is a state of complete physical, mental, and social well-being. The goals of health psychology are to promote health; prevent and treat illness; investigate the role of biological, behavioral, and social factors in disease; and evaluate and improve the formulation of health policy and the delivery of health care to all people.
* **2.** Although many of the world’s citizens have the promise of a longer and better life than their ancestors, these health benefits are not universally enjoyed. Health disparities such as ethnic and socioeconomic group differences in the rates of disease occur in every nation.

**Health and Illness: Lessons from the Past**

* **3.** In the earliest-known cultures, illness was believed to result from mystical forces and evil spirits that invaded the body. Hippocrates, Galen, and other Greek scholars developed the first rational approach to the study of health and disease. Non-Western forms of healing, including TOM and ayurveda, developed simultaneously.
* **4.** In Europe during the Middle Ages, scientific studies of the body (especially dissection) were forbidden, and ideas about health and disease took on religious overtones. Illness was viewed as punishment for evildoing, and treatment frequently involved what amounted to physical torture.
* **5.** French philosopher René Descartes advanced his theory of mind–body dualism—the belief that the mind and body are autonomous processes, each subject to different laws of causality. During the Renaissance, Descartes’ influence ushered in an era of medical research based on the scientific study of the body. This research gave rise to the anatomical, cellular, and germ theories of disease.
* **6.** The dominant view in modern medicine is the biomedical model, which assumes that disease is the result of a virus, bacterium, or some other pathogen invading the body. Because it makes no provision for psychological, social, or behavioral factors in illness, the model embraces both reductionism and mind–body dualism.
* **7.** Freud and Franz Alexander promoted the idea that specific diseases could be caused by unconscious conflicts. These views were expanded into the field of psychosomatic medicine, which is concerned with the treatment and diagnosis of disorders caused by faulty processes within the mind. Psychosomatic medicine fell out of favor because it was grounded in psychoanalytic theory and predicated on the outmoded idea that a single problem is sufficient to trigger disease.
* **8.** Behavioral medicine was an outgrowth of the behaviorist movement in American psychology. Today, the field is an interdisciplinary subspecialty of medicine concerned with the integration of behavioral and biomedical information to the prevention, diagnosis, and treatment of physical and psychological disorders.

**Biopsychosocial (Mind–Body) Perspective**

* **9.** Health psychologists approach the study of health and illness from several overlapping perspectives. The life-course perspective in health psychology focuses attention on how aspects of health and illness vary with age, as well as how birth cohort experiences (such as shifts in public health policy) influence health.
* **10.** The sociocultural perspective calls attention to how social and cultural factors, such as ethnic variations in dietary practice and beliefs about the causes of illness, affect health.
* **11.** The gender perspective calls attention to male–female differences in the risk of specific diseases and conditions, as well as in various health-enhancing and health-compromising behaviors.
* **12.** The biopsychosocial perspective in effect combines these perspectives, recognizing that biological, psychological, and social forces act together to determine an individual’s health and vulnerability to disease.
* **13.** Biology and behavior do not occur in a vacuum. The new field of epigenetics focuses environmental factors near and around genes that affect their expression.
* **14.** A key element of the biological context is our species’ evolutionary history, and an evolutionary perspective guides the work of many health psychologists
* **15.** According to the ecological-systems model, health is best understood as a hierarchy of systems in which each system is simultaneously composed of smaller subsystems and part of larger, more encompassing systems.

**Frequently Asked Questions about a Health Psychology Career**

* **16.** Health psychologists are engaged in three primary activities: teaching, research, and clinical intervention. Health psychologists work in a variety of settings, including hospitals, universities and medical schools, health maintenance organizations, rehabilitation clinics, private practice, and, increasingly, the workplace.
* **17.** A growing body of research centers in health psychology focuses on positive health, the scientific study of health assets that produce longer life and optimal human functioning.
* **18.** Preparing for a career in health psychology usually requires a doctoral degree. Some students enter health psychology from the fields of medicine, nursing, or one of the allied health professions. An increasing number enroll in graduate programs in health psychology.

***Chapter 2*: Research in Health Psychology**

[**Critical Thinking and the Evidence Base**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L2-1-1)

* [**The Dangers of “Unscientific” Thinking**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L2-2-2)

[**Health Psychology Methods**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L2-1-3)

* [**Descriptive Studies**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L2-2-4) [**Interpreting Data: Association Versus Causation**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B2-11) [**Experimental Studies**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L2-2-9)[**Quasi-Experiments**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L2-2-10) [**Developmental Studies**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L2-2-11)

[**Epidemiological Research: Tracking Disease**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L2-1-13)

* [**Objectives in Epidemiological Research**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L2-2-14) [**Diversity and Healthy Living: Hypertension in African-Americans: An Epidemiological “Whodunit”**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B2-29) [**Interpreting Data: Tables and Graphs**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B2-30)[**Research Methods in Epidemiology**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L2-2-25) [**Inferring Causality**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L2-2-30) [**Interpreting Data: Measuring Risk**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B2-37)

*Darryl Andrew Kile, the 33-year-old pitching ace for the St. Louis Cardinals, died of coronary disease on June 22, 2002. As news of his sudden death spread, the collective reaction was disbelief. How could an elite athlete die suddenly at such a young age? Kile’s death was (wrongly) taken by many as proof that exercise offered no protection against cardiovascular disease. After several weeks of public speculation about drug use or other causes, the coroner attributed Kile’s death to a massive heart attack caused by a strong family history of heart disease (his father died of a heart attack at age 44) and 90 percent blockage in two coronary arteries*.

*About two decades earlier, the world had similarly been shocked by the sudden death of another high-profile athlete—52-year-old running guru Jim Fixx, who helped launch the running boom in the United States. As with Kile, Fixx’s sudden death while running was, regrettably, taken by many as proof that exercise was useless to prevent cardiovascular disease. However, this quick explanation was wrong, too. For most of his life, Fixx was overweight and consumed a high-fat, high-cholesterol diet. In addition, he had been a chain smoker, smoking three to four packs of cigarettes a day, and a workaholic, working 16 hours or more each day and getting only a few hours of sleep each night. Fixx was also at high risk of heart disease because his father had died from a heart attack at the young age of 43 years*.

*Fixx ignored early warning symptoms as well. His fiancée said that he complained of chest tightness during exercise and had planned to travel to Vermont to see whether the fresh air there would alleviate his symptoms, which he believed to be due to allergies. The change of air did not help, and Fixx died while running on his first day in Vermont*.

*Fixx’s autopsy showed severe coronary artery disease, with near-total blockage of one coronary artery and 80 percent blockage of* *another. There was also evidence of a recent heart attack. On the day Fixx died, more than 1000 other American men and women succumbed to heart attacks. There is overwhelming evidence that heart attacks occur most commonly in males who have high blood pressure, smoke heavily, have high cholesterol levels, and maintain a sedentary lifestyle. Fixx’s midlife change to a healthy lifestyle may very well be what allowed him to outlive his father by nine years*.

*Beware of the trap of believing easy, untested explanations for the causes of diseases or seemingly unexpected physiological events. Medical researchers and health psychologists investigate such cases, comparing situations and considering all relevant factors. Researchers must adopt a formal, systematic approach that has a proven ability to find reliable explanations. This approach is called the scientific method. In this chapter, we will consider how the scientific method is applied to answer questions about health psychology*.

**Critical Thinking and the Evidence Base**

Health psychology touches on some of the most intriguing, personal, and practical issues of life. Does my family history place me at risk of developing breast cancer? Which of my lifestyle choices are healthy and which are unhealthy? Why can’t I quit smoking? Every day, we seem to be bombarded with new, “definitive” answers to these and countless other vital health questions. For example, in the 1980s, researchers reported that caffeine led to a higher risk of heart disease and pancreatic cancer. In the early 1990s, new research asserted that limited amounts of caffeine were safe, even during pregnancy. In 1996, mothers-to-be were alarmed by reports that pregnant women who drank three or more cups of coffee or tea daily were at increased risk of spontaneous abortion, while caffeine drinkers who were trying to conceive were twice as likely as non–caffeine drinkers to delay conception by a year or more. Less than two years later, still more research concluded that women who drink more than half a cup of caffeinated tea every day might actually *increase* their fertility. Researchers also announced that caffeine might offer protection against Parkinson’s disease by reducing the destruction of nerve cells in the brain (Hughes and others, 2000). More recently, a study reported an increase in symptoms of depression among adolescents who consume large amounts of caffeine (Luebbe & Bell, 2009). In addition, results from Harvard University’s long-running Health Professionals Follow-Up study demonstrated that coffee reduces the risk of dying early from a heart attack or stroke, and offers some protection against Type 2 diabetes, gallstones, and Parkinson’s disease (Abnet and others, 2012). So, is caffeine safe? What are you to believe?

At the heart of all scientific inquiry is a skeptical attitude that encourages us to evaluate evidence and scrutinize conclusions. This attitude is called *critical thinking*, and it involves a questioning approach to all information and arguments. Whether listening to the evening news report, reading a journal article, or pondering a friend’s position, critical thinkers ask questions. How did she arrive at that conclusion? What evidence forms the basis for this person’s conclusions? Is there an ulterior motive? Can the results of a particular study be explained in another way? Until you know the answers to these and other questions, you should be cautious—indeed, downright skeptical—of all persuasive arguments, including health reports that appear in the media. Learning which questions to ask will make you a much more informed consumer of health information.

**The Dangers of “Unscientific” Thinking**

In our quest for greater understanding of healthy behavior, we draw on the available information to formulate *cause-and-effect relationships* about our own and other people’s behaviors. If this information derives solely from our personal experiences, beliefs, and attitudes, then we may be like the quick-reacting reporters who tried to make sense of the deaths of Darryl Kile and Jim Fixx—making snap judgments with little attention to accuracy. It is dangerous to base our explanations on hearsay, conjecture, anecdotal evidence, or unverified sources of information. For example, upon seeing a lean, statuesque female gymnast or dancer, we may admire what we believe to be her healthy eating and exercise habits, wishing that we too could possess such willpower and well-being. But we may be shocked to learn that she is actually anorexic and suffering from a stress fracture related to poor diet and excessive, exercise-induced skeletal trauma.

Examples of faulty reasoning unfortunately abound in all fields of science. In the early twentieth century, for example, thousands of Americans died from *pellagra*, a disease marked by dermatitis (skin sores), gastrointestinal disorders, and memory loss. Because the homes of many pellagra sufferers had unsanitary means of sewage removal, many health experts believed that the disease was carried by a microorganism and transmitted through direct contact with infected human excrement. Although hygienic plumbing was certainly a laudable goal, when it came to pinpointing the cause of pellagra, the “experts” fell into a faulty reasoning trap—failing to consider alternative explanations for their observations. This type of leaping to unwarranted (untested) conclusions is an example of [**belief bias**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term48), which explains why two people can look at the same situation (or data) and draw radically different conclusions.

**belief bias**

A form of faulty reasoning in which our expectations prevent us from seeing alternative explanations for our observations.

Fortunately, U.S. Surgeon General Joseph Goldberger’s keener powers of observation allowed him to see that many pellagra victims also were malnourished. To pinpoint the cause of the disease, Goldberger conducted a simple, if distasteful, empirical test: He mixed small amounts of the feces and urine from two pellagra patients with a few pinches of flour and rolled the mixture into little dough balls, which he, his wife, and several assistants ate! When none of them came down with the disease, Goldberger then fed a group of Mississippi prisoners a diet deficient in niacin and protein (a deficiency that he suspected caused the disease), while another group was fed the normal, more balanced prison diet. Confirming his hypothesis, the former group developed symptoms of pellagra within months, while the latter remained disease-free (Stanovich & West, 1998). As this example illustrates, seeking information that confirms preexisting beliefs causes researchers to overlook alternative explanations of observed phenomena.

**All cultures develop incorrect beliefs about human behavior. Some people believe the myths that couples who adopt a child are later more likely to conceive a child of their own, and that more babies are born when the Moon is full. Be on guard for examples of unscientific psychology in your own thinking.**

**Health Psychology Methods**

Health psychologists use various research methods in their search to learn how psychological factors affect health. The method used depends in large measure on what questions the researcher is seeking to answer. To answer questions regarding how people cope with medical procedures or cancer, for example, a psychologist might observe or ask questions of a large sample of cancer patients. On the other hand, researchers investigating whether lifestyle factors contribute to the onset of cancer might conduct laboratory studies under controlled conditions.

There are two major categories of research methods in psychology—descriptive and experimental ([**Table 2.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T2-1)). Health psychologists also borrow methods from the field of [**epidemiology**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term133), which seeks to determine the frequency, distribution, and causes of a particular disease or other health outcome in a population. This section describes the research methods employed by psychologists and the tools they use to gather, summarize, and explain their data. The next section will explore the research methods of epidemiologists.

**Table 2.1: Comparing Research Methods**

| **Research Method** | **Research Setting** | **Data Collection Method** | **Strengths** | **Weaknesses** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Descriptive studies | Field or laboratory | Case studies, surveys and interviews, naturalistic observation | In-depth information about one person; often leads to new hypotheses; detects naturally occurring relationships among variables | No direct control over variables; subject to bias of observer; single cases may be misleading; cannot determine causality; correlation may mask extraneous variables |
| Experimental studies | Usually laboratory | Statistical comparison of experimental and control groups | High degree of control over independent and dependent variables; random assignment eliminates preexisting differences among groups | Artificiality of laboratory may limit the generalizability of results; certain variables cannot be investigated for practical or ethical reasons |
| Epidemiological studies | Usually conducted in the field | Statistical comparisons between groups exposed to different risk factors | Useful in determining disease etiology, easy to replicate, good generalizability | Some variables must be controlled by selection rather than by direct manipulation; time-consuming; expensive |
| Meta-analysis | No new data are collected | Statistical combination of the results of many studies | Helps make sense of conflicting reports, replicable | Potential bias due to selection of studies included |

**epidemiology**

The scientific study of the frequency, distribution, and causes of a particular disease or other health outcome in a population.

**Descriptive Studies**

Think about how a health psychologist might set about answering the following three questions: What are the psychological and physiological health outcomes for victims of a grave national crisis, such as the massive earthquake and tsunami that struck Japan in 2011, or catastrophic Superstorm Sandy, which made landfall along the New Jersey coastline on October 29, 2012? How can hospital staff reduce the anxiety of family members waiting for a loved one to come out of surgery? Does binge drinking occur more often among certain types of college students? Clearly, the answers to each of these important questions will not be found in a research laboratory. Instead, researchers look for answers about the behavior of an individual or a group of people as it occurs in the home, at work, or wherever people spend their time. In such a study, called a [**descriptive study**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term112), the researcher observes and records the participants’ behavior in a natural setting, often forming hunches that are subjected later to more systematic study.

**descriptive study**

A research method in which researchers observe and record participants’ behaviors, often forming hypotheses that are later tested more systematically; includes case studies, interviews and surveys, and observational studies.

Several types of descriptive studies are commonly used: case studies, interviews and surveys, and observational studies.

**Case Studies**

As we noted in [**Chapter 1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch01), among the oldest and best-known methods of investigating human behavior is the [**case study**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term72), in which psychologists study one or more individuals extensively over a considerable period of time in order to uncover principles that are true of people in general. The major advantage of the case study is that it permits a researcher to gather a much more complete analysis of the individual than ordinarily can be obtained in studies involving larger groups. A recent case study examined the presence of specific types of positive and negative emotional words in the autobiographies of 88 well-known deceased psychologists. The researchers found that those who used more active, positive-emotion words, such as *lively, vigorous*, and *humorous*, tended to live longer lives (Pressman & Cohen, 2012).

**case study**

A descriptive study in which one person is studied in depth in the hope of revealing general principles.

Although case studies are useful in suggesting hypotheses for further study, they do have one serious disadvantage: Any given person may be atypical, limiting the “generalizability” of the results. In fact, case studies can be highly misleading. We have to be careful not to leap from especially memorable (although unrepresentative) case studies to broad conclusions. For example, although a mountain of research supports runners’ longevity, many people were quick to discount this reality when they heard of baseball great Darryl Kile’s death. (“Darryl Kile was a professional athlete, wasn’t he? He didn’t live as long as my grandfather, who never exercised and was a lifelong cigar smoker.”) Personal experience and especially vivid case studies often can overshadow much stronger scientific evidence. In the case study just described, the researchers recognized that the use of positive or negative words might be associated with the gender, health, native language, or year of birth of the psychologists. However, even after these factors were ruled out, the use of active, positive-emotion words was associated with three to six additional years of life.

The point to remember: Individual case studies can provide fruitful leads and direct researchers to other research designs to uncover general truths. At the same time, they also can be highly misleading.

**Surveys**

[**Surveys**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term329) examine individual attitudes and beliefs in larger numbers and in much less depth than the case study. In these *self-report measures*, research participants are asked to rate or describe some aspect of their own behavior, attitudes, or beliefs, such as what they think of a new health product or how often they exercise. Surveys are among the most widely used research tools in health psychology because they are easy to administer, require only a small investment of time from participants, and quickly generate a great deal of useful data.

**survey**

A questionnaire used to ascertain the self-reported attitudes or behaviors of a group of people.

Clinical health psychologists use the face-to-face interview as a start for developing a supportive working relationship with a patient. Clinicians also often use surveys for diagnostic assessment as a first step in developing intervention programs. For example, chronic-pain patients may be asked to complete a questionnaire related to their problem that sheds light on the effectiveness of previous treatments and the impact of their condition on their daily functioning.

Although surveys are quick and relatively easy to conduct, they are not necessarily accurate. Survey answers may change with the sequence and wording of the questions. For instance, “global warming” and “climate change” are two ways of wording the same phenomenon, yet survey respondents are more likely to say they believe in climate change than in global warming (McCright & Dunlap, 2011). This is one reason why two surveys that seem to focus on the same issue may reach opposite conclusions.

Another limitation of survey research is that respondents sometimes answer questions in ways that they would like to be perceived or that they believe the investigator expects. For instance, every two years since 1991, a representative sample of all high school students in the United States have been surveyed regarding six categories of health-risk behaviors. The most recent Youth Risk Behavior Surveillance (YRBS) survey included 15,503 students from all 50 states and from schools large and small, public and private (MMWR, June 8, 2012). Among many other topics, students are asked whether they had sexual intercourse before age 13. Every year, compared to the responses of boys who are high school seniors, about twice as many ninth-grade boys say they had sexual intercourse before age 13 (see [**Figure 2.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F2-1)). Why might this be? Have students simply forgotten by the time they reach twelfth grade? Are ninth-graders more likely to lie?

**Figure 2.1: Did You Have Sexual Intercourse before Age 13?**

**Survey responses from the 2011 Youth Risk Behavior Surveillance survey of high school students throughout the United States reveal that about twice as many ninth-grade girls and boys say they had sex before age 13, compared to twelfth-grade students**.

**Source:** MMWR (June 8, 2012). Youth Risk Behavior Surveillance, United States, 2011. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Table 63. [**http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/ss/ss6104.pdf**](http://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/pdf/ss/ss6104.pdf).

**In an observational study, the researcher observes participants’ behavior and records relevant data, such as the responses that this child makes in a classroom setting.**

Burger/Phanie/SuperStock

**Observational Studies**

In [**observational studies**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term241), the researcher observes participants’ behavior and records relevant data. For example, a researcher interested in the physiological effects of everyday hassles might have participants wear a heart-rate monitor while commuting to and from school or work in rush-hour traffic.

**observational study**

A nonexperimental research method in which a researcher observes and records the behavior of a research participant.

Observational studies may be structured or unstructured. Those studies that feature structured observations often take place in the laboratory and involve tasks such as role-playing or responding to a very cold stimulus. In unstructured observations, referred to as naturalistic observation, the researcher attempts to be as unobtrusive as possible in observing and recording the participants’ behaviors. For example, a health psychologist might observe family members visiting a parent in a nursing home to gain insight into how people cope with watching a parent decline. These observations may be audiotaped or videotaped and then quantified through rating methods or frequency scores. Positive health researchers have used this type of observational study to record smiling in infants and adults as measures of their attachment and subjective well-being, respectively (Diener & Chan, 2011).

**Correlation**

Descriptive studies often reveal information about two variables that may be related, such as caffeine consumption and high blood pressure, or hypertension. To determine the extent of a suspected relationship between two variables, psychologists often calculate the [**correlation coefficient**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term103), using a formula that yields a number, or *r value*, ranging from +1.00 to −1.00. The sign (+ or −) of the coefficient indicates the direction of the correlation (positive or negative). A *positive correlation* is one in which increases in one variable are accompanied by increases in another variable. In contrast, when two variables are *negatively correlated*, as one goes up, the other tends to go down. Remember that a negative correlation says nothing about the strength or weakness of the relationship between the variables; it simply means the variables are inversely related. The researcher’s ability to predict is no less with a negative correlation than it is with a positive correlation.

**correlation coefficient**

A statistical measure of the strength and direction of the relationship between two variables, and thus of how well one predicts the other.

The absolute value of the correlation coefficient (from 0 to 1.00, regardless of whether the number is positive or negative) indicates the strength of the correlation—the closer to 1.00, the stronger the relationship, and the more accurately a researcher can predict one variable from a known value of another.

Suppose, for example, that you are interested in the relationship between body weight and blood pressure. Perhaps you are testing your theory that a lean build lowers a person’s risk of cardiovascular disease by reducing hypertension, a documented risk factor. To test your theory with an experiment would require manipulating the body-weight variable and then recording blood pressure. Although measuring blood pressure is certainly possible, manipulating body weight would be unethical. So, instead, you calculate a correlation coefficient. Richard Cooper, Charles Rotimi, and Ryk Ward (1999) did just that, measuring body mass index, or BMI (a measure of a person’s weight-to-height ratio), and prevalence of hypertension in a large sample of participants of African descent from several countries. [**Figure 2.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F2-2) displays a [**scatterplot**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term302) of the results of their study. Each point on the graph represents two numbers for a sample of participants from one country: average BMI and prevalence of hypertension.

**Figure 2.2: The Relationship between Body Mass Index and Hypertension in People of African Descent**

**Body mass index (BMI) measures a person’s weight-to-height ratio; BMIs over 25 are generally considered a sign of being overweight. In a study comparing key locations in the westward African migration, researchers found that as BMI increased, so did the prevalence of hypertension. The scatterplot reveals a strong positive correlation between BMI and hypertension. The solid line confirms this, showing an upward slope and fairly tight clustering of the data points**.

**Source:** Based on data in Cooper, R.S., Rotimi, C.N., & Ward, R. (1999). The puzzle of hypertension in African-Americans. *Scientific American, 280(2)*, 59.

**scatterplot**

A graphed cluster of data points, each of which represents the values of two variables in a descriptive study.

The *strength* of a correlation is revealed by how closely the points in a scatterplot are clustered together along an imaginary line. In a *perfect correlation*, the points would align themselves in a perfectly straight line. The *direction—* “positive” or “negative”—is shown by the angle of the line. In a positive correlation, the points in the scatterplot sweep upward, from the lower left to the upper right. In a negative, or inverse, correlation, the points sweep downward, from the upper left to the lower right. Notice in [**Figure 2.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F2-2) that the relationship appears to be both fairly strong (the points fall roughly along a straight line) and positive (the points sweep upward from the lower left to the upper right). So, body mass and hypertension tend to increase together.

It is tempting to draw cause-and-effect conclusions from the Cooper, Rotimi, and Ward study results. However, even when two variables are strongly correlated, one does not necessarily cause the other. Maybe high blood pressure and a high BMI are both caused by a third factor, such as not enough exercise. Correlations do not rule out the possible contributions of other variables. Even if two variables *are* causally related, correlations do not pinpoint directionality—in this case, whether a high BMI elevates blood pressure or vice versa (see [**Interpreting Data: Association Versus Causation**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B2-11)).

**INTERPRETING DATA: Association Versus Causation**

[**Statistical literacy**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term315) is the ability to read and interpret statistics in graphs, tables, surveys, and research studies, and to think critically about arguments that use statistics as evidence (Schield, 2010). It focuses on the skills of understanding what is being asserted in a research report, asking good questions, and evaluating evidence.

**statistical literacy**

The ability to read and interpret statistics and to think critically about arguments that use statistics as evidence.

A common error in reasoning about the results of research is mistaking statements of association for statements of causation. Consider three claims from a hypothetical observational study of body weight and height:

* **1.** People who weigh more tend to be taller (than people who weigh less).
* **2.** Weight is positively associated with height.
* **3.** If you gain weight, you can expect to get taller.

Statement 1 is clearly an example of an association between the variables weight and height. Statement 2 may be misinterpreted as implying causation; that is, changes in weight are mistakenly viewed *as a physical change within one participant in the study*. Statement 3, which is obviously false, is an example of an implied causal relationship. In this example, it is easy to see that the truth of statement 2 doesn’t mean that statement 3 is also true. A common mistake, however, is to conclude that if statement 3 is false, then statement 2 also must be false.

Let’s look at another example.

* **1.** Teenagers who play violent video games are more likely to engage in antisocial behavior.
* **2.** Violent video game playing is positively associated with antisocial behavior.
* **3.** If juveniles played fewer violent video games, they would exhibit less antisocial behavior.

In this context, it is more likely that a person will conclude that if statement 2 is true, then statement 3 also must be true. To be statistically literate, one must understand that the difference between the two statements is the difference between association and causation. If the results of an observational study demonstrate that statement number 2 is true, this finding is *evidence* for the possible truth of statement 3.

Another important consideration in investigating whether there is a correlation between two variables is the possibility that the nature of a relationship might differ from one region of a measured variable to another region. So far, we’ve been discussing *linear relationships*, which exist between two variables if, when you depict their values in a scatterplot, the result is a straight line. Many variables in health are related, but in ways in which the relationship does not follow a straight line. An example of a *curvilinear relationship* is that between age and the use of health care. Young children and older adults use much more health care services than teenagers and young adults. Another example is the relationship between the administered dose of a medication and its anticipated effect. Too little or too much of a drug is less effective than the optimal amount. A graph of either example curves, indicating greater complexity in the relationship than if the variables were related in a simpler, linear fashion (see [**Figure 2.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F2-3)). Despite these limitations, descriptive studies are often an important first step in research. In health psychology, correlations identify relationships, often among several variables, that later may be studied more closely with experiments.

**Figure 2.3: Curvilinear Relationships**

**Many variables in health research are related, but in ways that do not follow a straight line. For instance, health care tends to be used more often by the very old and the very young.**

**Experimental Studies**

Although descriptive studies are useful, they cannot tell us about the causes of the behaviors that we observe. To pinpoint causal relationships, researchers conduct experiments. Considered the pinnacle of the research methods, experiments are commonly used in health psychology to investigate the effects of health-related behaviors (such as exercise, diet, and so on) on an illness (such as heart disease).

In contrast to descriptive studies, experiments test hypotheses by systematically manipulating (varying) one or more [**independent variables**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term189) (the “causes”) while looking for changes in one or more [**dependent variables**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term111) (the “effects”) and *controlling* (holding constant) all other variables. By controlling all variables except the independent variable, the researcher ensures that any change in the dependent variable is *caused* by the independent variable rather than by another extraneous variable.

**independent variable**

The factor in an experiment that an experimenter manipulates; the variable whose effect is being studied.

**dependent variable**

The behavior or mental process in an experiment that may change in response to manipulations of the independent variable; the variable that is being measured.

Experiments often involve testing the effects of several different *levels* of the independent variable on different groups. For example, in an experiment testing the level at which noise (an independent variable) begins to cause stress (the dependent variable), participants in three different groups might be asked to complete a checklist of behavioral and psychological symptoms of stress (an *operational definition* of the dependent variable) while listening to 10-, 25-, or 50-decibel noise over headphones (different levels of the independent variable *noise*).

Typically, the researcher randomly assigns a sample of participants to two or more study groups and administers the condition or treatment of interest (the independent variable) to one group, the *experimental group*, and a different or no treatment to the other group, the *control group*. [**Random assignment**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term283) is crucial, because assigning research participants to groups by chance ensures that the members of all of the research groups are similar in every important aspect except in their exposure to the independent variable. For instance, random assignment would help prevent a large number of participants who were hypersensitive to noise from ending up in one group, thereby potentially masking the true effects of the independent variable.

**random assignment**

Assigning research participants to groups by chance, thus minimizing preexisting differences among the groups.

Health psychology is somewhat unique among the subfields of psychology in that it studies a variety of variables as cause and effect. As possible “causes,” health psychologists examine internal states (such as optimism and feelings of self-efficacy), overt behaviors (such as exercise and cigarette smoking), and external stimuli (such as a stressful job or a therapeutic program to promote relaxation). As possible “effects,” they investigate overt behaviors (such as coping reactions to stressful employment), physiological measurements (such as blood pressure or cholesterol levels), and psychological states (such as anxiety levels).

The purpose of research studies is to get an answer to a question, not to seek support of a predicted outcome. To reduce the possibility of [**expectancy effects**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term137) in experiments, the person who collects data from participants is often “blind”; that is, unaware of either the purpose of the research or of which participants are in each condition. This is a *single-blind study*. To further ensure that expectancy effects do not contaminate the study, a [**double-blind study**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term117) may be conducted. In such a case, neither the data collector nor the participants know the true purpose of the study or which participant is in which condition. This way, neither the researchers nor the participants will bias the outcome based on what they expect to happen. See [**Figure 2.4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F2-4) for an example of how psychological methods may be used to assess an issue of interest to health psychologists.

**expectancy effects**

A form of bias in which the outcome of a study is influenced either by the researcher’s expectations or by the study participants’ expectations.

**double-blind study**

A technique designed to prevent observer- and participant-expectancy effects in which neither the researcher nor the participants know the true purpose of the study or which participants have each condition.

**Figure 2.4: Psychological Research Methods**

**A psychologist interested in studying the relationship between exercise and depression might follow these steps:**

* 1. Using observation, surveys, interviews, and case study results, determine that there is a *negative correlation* between the amount of exercise and depression levels. Higher exercise levels predict lower levels of depression.
* 2. Use an *experiment* to test the *hypothesis* that exercising more will lower depression levels in mildly depressed individuals. *Independent variable:* exercise *Dependent variable:* depression levels **McCann & Holmes (1984) Study Results**
* 3. Readminister surveys that assess depression levels. Compare depression levels before and after for each participant, and calculate any differences between the experimental and control conditions.

**A growing body of research evidence demonstrates that symptoms of depression often improve with exercise (Harvard Medical School, 2010).**

JTPhoto/Brand X Pictures/[**Thinkstock.com**](http://thinkstock.com/)

**Quasi-Experiments**

When health psychologists cannot manipulate the variable of interest or randomly assign participants to experimental and control groups, they have other options: quasi-experiments, animal research, or qualitative research. A quasi-experiment (*quasi* means “resembling”) is similar to an experiment in that it involves two or more *comparison* groups. A [**quasi-experiment**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term282) is not a true experiment, however, because it uses groups that differ from the outset on the variable under study (the *subject variable*). Therefore, no cause-and-effect conclusions can be drawn. (Notice that we refer to a *comparison group* rather than a *control group* because the group naturally differs from the experimental group and no variable is being controlled.)

**quasi-experiment**

A study comparing two groups that differ naturally on a specific variable of interest.

For example, suppose that researchers wish to investigate the effect of exercise on academic achievement. In a quasi-experiment, the subject variable would be a sedentary lifestyle, with the group consisting of students who by their own admission get little or no exercise. The comparison group would be students who exercise regularly. Health psychologists would collect data on the participants’ base levels of daily physical activity over a defined period of time, and then identify separate “active” and “sedentary” groups. The researchers would follow these comparison groups for a period of years, regularly reassessing the groups’ activity levels and academic achievement. As another example, in one ongoing quasi-experiment, researchers are comparing the diet and health of people living in urban and rural neighborhoods that vary in the local availability of fruits, vegetables, and other healthy foods (Pennsylvania Fresh Food Financing Initiative, 2012).

Subject variables commonly used in quasi-experiments include age, gender, ethnicity, and socioeconomic status—all variables that are either impossible or unethical to manipulate. Researchers also cannot manipulate variables to produce extreme environmental stress, physical abuse, or natural disasters. In such cases, the researcher finds events that have already occurred and studies the variables of interest.

**Developmental Studies**

Health psychologists working from the life-span perspective are interested in the ways that people change or remain the same over time. To answer questions about the process of change, researchers use two basic research techniques: *cross-sectional* and *longitudinal studies*.

**In a classic study of expectancy effects (Roethlisberger & Dickson, 1939), researchers tried to increase worker productivity at an electric plant by shortening or lengthening coffee breaks, changing lighting conditions, and providing or taking away bonuses. Remarkably, no matter how conditions changed, productivity increased, indicating that the workers were simply responding to the knowledge that they were being studied.**

In a [**cross-sectional study**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term106), the researcher compares groups of people of various ages to determine the possible effects of age on a particular dependent variable. In the YRBS study, for instance, researchers compared six types of risky health behaviors (the dependent variables) among 9th- through 12th-grade students in the United States. A challenge in cross-sectional research is to make sure that the various age groups are similar in other ways, such as socioeconomic status, that might affect the characteristic being investigated. If the groups are similar, then any differences in early patterns among them may be attributed to age-related processes.

**cross-sectional study**

A study comparing representative groups of people of various ages on a particular dependent variable.

Matching different age groups for all subject variables other than age is difficult to do. Despite their best efforts, researchers using a cross-sectional design are well aware that the outcomes of such studies often produce *cohort differences* that reflect the impact of participants having been born and raised at a particular moment in history. A *cohort* (see [**Chapter 1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch01)) is a group of people who share at least one demographic characteristic, such as age or socioeconomic status, in common. A cohort is similar to a generation, but the number of years separating two cohorts often is less than the number of years separating two adjacent generations.

If researchers want to be very sure that age, rather than some other variable, is the reason for differences in the characteristics of different age groups, they may conduct a [**longitudinal study**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term206), in which a single group of individuals is observed over a long span of time. This allows information about a person at one age to be compared with information about the same person at another age, revealing how this person changed over time.

**longitudinal study**

A study in which a single group of people is observed over a long span of time.

Suppose that you are interested in studying age-related changes in how people cope with stress. If you choose a cross-sectional approach, you might interview a sample of, say, 25 adults at each of five ages—for example 20, 30, 40, 50, and 60 years—and gather information about the ways in which they handle job stress, family quarrels, financial problems, and so forth. On the other hand, if you choose a longitudinal study to explore the same span of years, you (or, more likely, the researchers who will continue your study 40 years from now) would interview a group of 20-year-olds today and again when they are 30, 40, 50, and 60 years of age. The longitudinal study thus eliminates confounding factors, such as differences in the types of stress encountered.

Longitudinal studies may be the “design of choice” from the life-span perspective, but they have several drawbacks. Such studies are very time consuming and expensive to conduct. More important, over the span of years of longitudinal studies, it is common for some participants to drop out because they move away, die, or simply fail to show up for the next scheduled interview or observation. When the number of dropouts is large, the results of the study may become skewed. Another potential problem is that people who remain in longitudinal studies may change in the characteristic of interest, but for reasons that have little to do with their advancing age. For example, our study of age-related coping responses to stress may show that older people cope more adaptively by not allowing everyday hassles to get to them. But suppose that a large number of the participants dropped out of the study midway (or perhaps died of stress-related illnesses!), and those who remained tended to be those employed in low-stress occupations. Can the researcher conclude that age has produced the results? Despite these drawbacks, longitudinal studies are relatively common in health psychology because they afford a unique opportunity for researchers to observe health changes that occur gradually, over long periods of time.

**Behavior Genetics Research Techniques**

A fundamental question in life-span research is: To what extent is our health—including our health behaviors and attitudes—shaped by our heredity (our nature) and by our life history (our nurture)? In an effort to answer questions about nature–nurture interactions, researchers estimate the [**heritability**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term169) of a trait, that is, the amount of variation in a trait among a group of individuals that can be attributed to genes. In doing so, they employ two principal methods: twin studies and adoption studies.

**heritability**

The amount of variation in a trait among individuals that can be attributed to genes.

Twin studies compare identical twins with fraternal twins. Observed differences between genetically identical twins are generally attributable to environmental factors. In contrast, observed differences between fraternal twins can be attributed to a combination of environmental and genetic factors, just as with regular siblings. For example, cognitive impairment appears to be highly heritable. A person whose identical twin has Alzheimer’s disease has a 60 to 75 percent chance of also developing the disease. When a person’s fraternal twin has the disease, the risk drops to 30 to 45 percent (Plomin and others, 2000; Whitfield and others, 2009a). Such a difference suggests that genes play a considerable role in predisposing individuals to Alzheimer’s disease.

However, we must be very careful in interpreting twin studies. Identical twins also share a more nearly identical environment than fraternal twins do. They are of the same sex, often are dressed alike, and are frequently confused with each other. Researchers therefore prefer to compare the characteristics of identical twins raised together with those of identical twins raised apart. Unfortunately, because of the time, expense, and relatively infrequent occurrence of identical twins reared apart and unaware of the other’s existence, only a small number of such studies have been reported.

**Identical Twins**

**Identical twins develop from a single fertilized egg and are genetically identical. Therefore, any observed difference between them must be attributable to environmental factors.**

by golf9c9333/Getty Images

Adoption studies provide a way around the problem of similar environments. When a child is placed for adoption, two groups of relatives are created: genetic relatives (biological parents and siblings) and environmental relatives (adoptive parents and siblings). Determining whether an adopted child more closely resembles his or her biological or adoptive parents in specific characteristics or behaviors tells us a lot about the relative effects of genes and environment on those characteristics.

The strongest evidence of a genetic influence comes from the convergence of evidence from family studies, twin studies, and adoption studies. For example, if behavior geneticists discover that hypertension runs in families at a rate that is higher than would be expected by chance, that identical twins are significantly more similar than fraternal twins in their susceptibility to the disorder, and that adopted children resemble their biological parents more than their adopted parents in their levels of hypertension, then a strong argument for genetic influence on hypertension has been made.

**Epidemiological Research: Tracking Disease**

When researchers consider the role of psychological and behavioral factors in health, among the first questions asked are: Who contracts which diseases, and what factors determine whether a person gets a particular disease? Such questions are addressed by the field of epidemiology.

Although health recordkeeping can be traced back to ancient Greece and Rome (see [**Chapter 1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch01)), epidemiology was not formalized as a modern science until the nineteenth century, when epidemic outbreaks of cholera, smallpox, and other infectious diseases created grave public health threats. As with efforts to pinpoint the cause of more recent conditions, such as the increase in resistant bacterial infections, these diseases were conquered largely as a result of the work of epidemiologists whose painstaking research gradually pinpointed their causes.

The modern era of epidemiology began with the work of John Snow during the 1848 outbreak of cholera in London (Frerichs, 2000). Snow laboriously recorded each death from cholera throughout the city, and he noticed that death rates were nearly 10 times higher in one part of the city than elsewhere. In some instances, residents on one side of a residential street were stricken with the disease far more often than were their neighbors on the opposite side of the street. Like a good detective solving a mystery, Snow kept looking for clues until he found something different in the backgrounds of the high-risk groups: polluted drinking water. Although two separate water companies supplied most of the residents of south London, their boundaries were laid out in patchwork fashion, so residents living on the same street often received their water from different sources. By comparing the death rates with the distribution of customers getting polluted and nonpolluted water, Snow inferred that the cholera came from an as-yet-unidentified “poison” in the polluted water, and thus the field of epidemiology was born.

One incident during this epidemic became legendary. In the neighborhood at the intersection of Cambridge Street and Broad Street, the incidence of cholera cases was so great that the number of deaths reached more than 500 in 10 days. After investigating the site, Snow concluded that the cause was centered on the Broad Street pump. After the doubtful but panicky town officials ordered the pump handle removed, the number of new cases of cholera dropped dramatically. Although the bacterium responsible for transmitting cholera would not be discovered for another 30 years, Snow devised an obvious intervention that broke the citywide epidemic: He simply forced the city to shut down the polluted water main.

Since Snow’s time, epidemiologists have described in detail the distribution of many different infectious diseases. In addition, they have identified many of the *risk factors* linked to both favorable and unfavorable health outcomes. In a typical study, epidemiologists measure the occurrence of a particular health outcome in a population, and then attempt to discover why it is distributed as it is by relating it to specific characteristics of people and the environments in which they live. For example, some forms of cancer are more prevalent in certain parts of the country than in others. By investigating these geographical areas, epidemiologists have been able to link certain cancers with the toxic chemicals found in these environments.

Epidemiologists record [**morbidity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term222), which is the number of cases of unfavorable health outcomes in a given group of people at a given time. They also track [**mortality**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term223), which is the number of deaths due to a specific cause, such as heart disease, in a given group at a given time. Morbidity and mortality are outcome measures that are usually reported in terms of *incidence* or *prevalence*. [**Incidence**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term188) (also called *absolute risk*) refers to the number of new cases of a disease, infection, or disability, such as whooping cough, that occur in a specific population within a defined period of time. [**Prevalence**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term269) is defined as the *total* number of diagnosed cases of a disease or condition that exist at a given time. It includes both previously reported cases and new cases at a given moment in time. Thus, if an epidemiologist wished to know how many people overall have hypertension, she would examine prevalence rates. If, however, she sought to determine the frequency with which hypertension is diagnosed, she would look at incidence rates.

**morbidity**

As a measure of health, the number of cases of a specific illness, injury, or disability in a given group of people at a given time.

**mortality**

As a measure of health, the number of deaths due to a specific cause in a given group of people at a given time.

**incidence**

The number of new cases of a disease or condition that occur in a specific population within a defined time interval.

**prevalence**

The total number of diagnosed cases of a disease or condition that exist at a given time.

**The Pump Handle—Symbol of Effective Epidemiology**

**Since John Snow’s pioneering efforts to eradicate cholera in nineteenth-century London, the pump handle has remained a symbol of effective epidemiology. Today, the John Snow Pub, located near the site of the once-troublesome pump, boasts of having the original handle. This cartoon was published in 1866 in the London periodical *Fun* with the caption “Death’s Dispensary, Open to the Poor, Gratis, By Permission of the Parish.”**

The Granger Collection, New York

To clarify the distinction between incidence and prevalence, consider [**Figure 2.5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F2-5), which compares the incidence and prevalence of leading causes of death in the United States between 1980 and 2010. Over this time period, deaths due to accidents and cancer have had a high prevalence and stable incidence, while deaths due to diseases of the heart and stroke have declined.

**Figure 2.5: Age-Adjusted U.S. Death Rates for Leading Causes of Death**

**Between 1980 and 2010, deaths due to malignant neoplasms (cancer) and accidents had a high prevalence and stable incidence, while deaths due to diseases of the heart and cerebrovascular disease (stroke) were highly prevalent but had a decreasing incidence. In contrast, deaths attributed to hypertension, Parkinson’s disease, and Alzheimer’s disease had a lower prevalence but rising incidence**.

**Sources:** Heron, M. (2012). Deaths: Leading causes for 2010. *National Vital Statistics Reports, 61(7)*. Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics.

Xu, J.Q., Kochanek, K.D., Murphy, S.L., Tejada-Vera, B. (2007). National Vital Statistics Reports Web release, *58*(19). Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics. Released May 2010.

**Objectives in Epidemiological Research**

Epidemiologists use several research methods to obtain data on the incidence, prevalence, and [**etiology**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term135) (origins) of disease. Like research methods in psychology, epidemiological research follows the logical progression from description to explanation to prediction and control. Epidemiologists have three fundamental objectives:

* **1.** Pinpoint the etiology of a particular disease in order to generate hypotheses.
* **2.** Evaluate the hypotheses.
* **3.** Test the effectiveness of specific preventive health interventions.

**etiology**

The scientific study of the causes or origins of specific diseases.

Epidemiologists start by counting current cases of an illness (prevalence) or measuring the rate at which new cases appear (incidence) to describe the overall health status of a population. Then they analyze this information to generate hypotheses about which subgroup differences are responsible for the disease, just as John Snow found water source differences that affected cholera prevalence in different groups. A more recent example comes from epidemiologists’ efforts to discern the etiology of hypertension in African-Americans (see [**Diversity and Healthy Living**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B2-29)).

Once epidemiologists have identified the origins of a disease or health condition and generated hypotheses about its causes, they evaluate those hypotheses. For example, some doctors have noted that women who smoke are more likely than men who smoke to develop lung cancer. Could hormonal differences, or some other factor linked to gender, allow the cellular damage that cigarette smoking causes to occur more rapidly in women than in men? Indeed, large-scale epidemiological studies have reported this very finding (Iarmarcovai and others, 2008; Hakim and others, 2012).

**Diversity and Healthy Living: Hypertension in African-Americans: An Epidemiological “Whodunit”**

Although almost 25 percent of all Americans experience rising blood pressure with age, for non-Hispanic black persons the situation is much more serious: 42.5 percent suffer from hypertension that contributes to heart disease, stroke, and kidney failure (Fryar and others, 2010). Hypertension accounts for 20 percent of the deaths among blacks in the United States—twice the number for whites.

In their effort to understand and control disease, epidemiologists have sought to determine whether the disparity between blacks and whites is due to differences in genetic susceptibility, environmental factors, or some combination of the two. As discussed in [**Chapter 1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch01), evolutionary theory offers one perspective on why a certain ethnic or racial group is at greater risk for a particular health outcome. The argument goes as follows: As a result of natural selection, some members of the group in question (and their genes) survived, while others did not. If the survivors primarily mate with members of the same population, their genes are not mixed with those of other groups, and the resulting genetic traits begin to appear with increasing frequency among group members.

Some researchers have suggested that the voyages in slave ships caused exactly the kind of environmental pressure that would select for a predisposition to high blood pressure. During the voyages, many died, often from “salt-wasting conditions” such as diarrhea, dehydration, and infection. Thus, the ability to retain salt might have had a survival value for Africans transported to America against their will. Today, of course, salt retention is *not* adaptive, and it is linked to hypertension.

In 1991, Richard Cooper and his colleagues began a research project that concentrated on the forced migration of West Africans between the sixteenth and nineteenth centuries caused by the slave trade. Knowing that the incidence and prevalence of hypertension in rural West Africa is among the lowest of any place in the world, the researchers compared the prevalence of hypertension in West Africa with that in people of African descent in other parts of the world. The researchers found that people of African descent in other parts of the world, especially in the United States and the United Kingdom, have much higher incidences of hypertension. Perhaps the genes predisposing hypertension have largely disappeared from the West African population, where they are not adaptive. But more likely there is something about the way of life of European and American blacks that is contributing to their susceptibility to high blood pressure.

The researchers then conducted widespread testing of people of African descent in Nigeria, Cameroon, Zimbabwe, St. Lucia, Barbados, Jamaica, and the United States. In addition to monitoring blood pressure, the researchers focused on highsalt diets, obesity, activity levels, and other common risk factors for hypertension. After several years of investigation, the researchers concentrated on Africans in Nigeria, Jamaica, and Chicago as representative of three key points in the westward movement of Africans from their native lands (see [**Figure 2.6**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F2-6)). The findings were startling: Only 7 percent of those in rural Nigeria had high blood pressure, compared with 26 percent of black Jamaicans and 33 percent of black Americans. In addition, several risk factors for high blood pressure became increasingly prevalent as testing moved westward across the Atlantic. As we saw earlier (see [**Figure 2.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F2-2)), body mass index (BMI), a measure of weight relative to height, rose steadily from Africa to Jamaica to the United States, along with hypertension. Being overweight, with an associated lack of exercise and poor diet, explained nearly 50 percent of the increased risk for hypertension that African-Americans face, as compared with Nigerians

**Figure 2.6: Incidence of the 235T Gene and Hypertension among Different Ethnic Groups**

**Epidemiologists expected that people who carried the 235T gene would have a higher incidence of hypertension. Surprisingly, 235T is common in certain groups (such as Nigerians), in whom hypertension is exceedingly rare. These findings suggest that both nature and nurture play a role in the development of high blood pressure**.

**Source:** Redrawn from data in Cooper, R.S., Rotimi, C.N., & Ward, R. (1999). The puzzle of hypertension in African-Americans. *Scientific American, 280*(2), 62.

The researchers’ data suggest that rising blood pressure is not an unavoidable hazard of modern life for people of all skin colors. The human cardiovascular system evolved in a rural African setting in which obesity was uncommon, salt intake was moderate, the diet was low in fat, and high levels of physical activity were common. The life of subsistence farmers in Nigeria has not changed much, so their blood pressure hardly rises with age, and cardiovascular disease is virtually unknown. This group functions as an epidemiological comparison group against which researchers can test hypotheses about what causes elevated blood pressure in those of African descent.

For instance, blood pressure is higher in the nearby city of Ibadan, Nigeria, than in neighboring rural areas, despite only small differences in the overall level of obesity and salt intake. The researchers suspect that other variables, such as psychological and social stress and lack of physical activity, may help account for the increase. In North America and Europe, those of African descent face a unique kind of stress—racial discrimination. The effect of racism on blood pressure is difficult to establish, of course, but it is worth noting that the average blood pressure of blacks in certain parts of the Caribbean, including Cuba and rural Puerto Rico, is nearly the same as that of other racial groups. Could it be that the relationships among races in these societies impose fewer insults on the cardiovascular system than those in the continental United States do?

Newer research considering physiological factors seems to lend some support to the genetic, slave-ship theory (Fryar and others, 2010). Researchers have found that many hypertensive people of African descent have elevated levels of angiotensinogen II, a hormone that increases blood pressure by causing blood vessels to constrict excessively, thereby increasing the risk for hypertension (Whitfield and others, 2009b). However, they have discovered that the average level of angiotensinogen for each sample studied increased significantly from Nigeria to Jamaica to the United States, paralleling increases in the rate of hypertension. The levels of the hormone, and the gene that produces it, should have been the same in all three populations if it had been selected for on the slave ships.

No single gene or environmental factor can explain why hypertension occurs and why it is so common in African-Americans, although health psychologists continue moving toward a better understanding.

Epidemiologists test new hypotheses by attempting to predict the incidence and prevalence of diseases. If the predictions are borne out by the epidemiological data, researchers gain confidence that their understanding of the etiology of the disease is increasing. The emerging science of molecular epidemiology, which relates genetic, metabolic, and biochemical factors to epidemiological data on disease incidence and prevalence, also promises to improve researchers’ ability to pinpoint the causes of human disease.

**INTERPRETING DATA: Tables and Graphs**

The ability to interpret information presented in tables and graphs is a key element of statistical literacy. Lacking *graph literacy*, for instance, makes us more likely to rely on the interpretation of others, including those who may present information in carefully chosen ways that support a particular point of view (Gaissmaier and others, 2012). It may be a politician arguing against a policy on climate science, a pharmaceutical company representative presenting evidence for the efficacy of a new drug for the treatment of cancer, or simply a person debating a social problem such as gun control regulation. The information may be presented via printed material in books and journals, during an evening news program or a political speech, on websites, or in survey or opinion-poll data. Whatever the source, learning to scrutinize such information carefully will help you to understand that “all statistics are products of social activity” and should be subject to careful scrutiny (Best, 2002). The following is a *five-step framework* that you can use for interpreting tables and graphs.

**Step 1: Getting started**

Carefully examine the title; the labels of columns, rows, and graph axes; legends; footnotes; and other details of the table or graph.

**Step 2: *What* do the numbers mean?**

Make sure that you know what all the numbers represent. Find the largest and smallest values in each category of the graph or table to get an overall impression of the data.

**Step 3: *How* do they differ?**

Look at the differences in the values of the data in a single row, column, or part of a graph or table. This may involve changes over time, or comparison with a category, such as male and female.

**Step 4: *Where* are the differences?**

What are the relationships that connect the variables being presented in the table or graph? Use information from step 3 to help you make comparisons across two or more categories.

**Step 5: *Why* do they change?**

If you see differences in the data, why do you think they are occurring?

Now let’s apply the framework to actual data that are illustrated in [**Figure 2.7**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F2-7). Make sure that you understand the importance of—and answers to—each of the questions listed below.

**Figure 2.7: Estimated Rate of New HIV Infections in the United States, 2010**

**The latest estimates of new HIV infections (HIV incidence) in the United States indicate that HIV remains a serious health problem. Certain groups continue to be disproportionately affected by HIV, including men who have sex with men (MSM) and intravenous drug users (IDUs).**

**Step 1: Getting started**

*Scope*

What topic is being examined?

From the vertical axis, what is being measured?

What do the columns (bars) represent?

*Data quality*

From the note, what is the source of the data? Is it trustworthy?

*Definitions*

What do the terms *HIV, heterosexual, MSM*, and *IDUs* mean?

**Step 2: WHAT do the numbers mean?**

What is the number of expected new HIV infections among white heterosexual women?

What is the number of expected new HIV infections among Hispanic men?

**Step 3: HOW do they differ?**

What subpopulation has the highest number of expected new HIV infections?

What subpopulation has the lowest number of expected new HIV infections?

**Step 4: WHERE are the differences?**

Compare the values for African-American MSM and African-American heterosexual men, which involve individuals of the same gender. Why might these values be different?

Compare the values for white heterosexual women and Hispanic heterosexual women, which also involve individuals of the same gender. Why might these values be different?

**Step 5: WHY do they change?**

What subpopulations are missing in the figure? Why are they missing? What other observations can you make about what you see in these data?

Source: Kemp, M., and Kissane, B. (2010). A five-step framework for interpreting tables and graphs in their contexts. In C. Reading (Ed.), *Data and context in statistics education: Towards an evidence-based society. Proceedings of the Eighth International Conference on Teaching Statistics*. Voorburg, The Netherlands: International Statistical Institute.

The final goal of epidemiological research is to determine the effectiveness of intervention programs created as a result of this research. For example, AIDS intervention programs, such as needle-exchange and safer-sex initiatives, tested in large groups of high-risk participants have been determined to be effective in reducing the incidence of new cases of AIDS in targeted groups (see [**Chapter 11**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch11)).

**Research Methods in Epidemiology**

To achieve their purposes, epidemiologists use a variety of research methods, including *retrospective studies, prospective studies*, and *experimental studies*. Like research methods in psychology, each epidemiological method has its strengths and weaknesses.

**Retrospective and Prospective Studies**

Like the cross-sectional studies described earlier, [**retrospective studies**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term297) (also referred to as *case-control studies*) compare a group of people who have a certain disease or condition with a group of people who do not; those with the condition of interest are considered “cases,” and those without are “controls.” Whereas cross-sectional studies compare characteristics that are present in the cases and controls at the time of the study, retrospective studies attempt to determine whether the characteristics were present in the cases in the past, usually by a review of records.

**retrospective study**

A backward-looking study in which a group of people who have a certain disease or condition are compared to a group of people who are free of the disease or condition, for the purpose of identifying background risk factors that may have contributed to the disease or condition.

Retrospective studies, looking backward in time, attempt to reconstruct the characteristics or conditions that led to the current health status of people who have a particular disease or condition. For example, retrospective research played an important role in identifying the risk factors that led to AIDS. Initially, researchers observed a sharp increase in the incidence of a rare and deadly form of cancer called Kaposi’s sarcoma among gay men and intravenous drug users. By taking extensive medical histories of the men who developed this cancer, epidemiologists were able to pinpoint unprotected anal sex as a common background factor among the first men to die from this deadly form of cancer. This was years before the AIDS virus, the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), was isolated (see [**Chapter 11**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch11)).

In contrast, [**prospective studies**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term275) look forward in time to determine how a group of individuals changes or how a relationship between two or more variables changes over time. Does this sound like longitudinal research in developmental studies? The methods are identical. A prospective epidemiological study identifies a group of healthy participants, then tests and retests them over a period of time to determine whether a given condition, such as sedentary living or a high-fat diet, is related to a later health outcome, such as cancer or cardiovascular disease. Health psychologists frequently conduct prospective studies to pinpoint the risk factors that relate to various health conditions.

**prospective study**

A forward-looking longitudinal study that begins with a healthy group of subjects and follows the development of a particular disease in that sample.

For example, there is some evidence that alcohol consumption may contribute to breast cancer. In one large prospective study that has followed a multiethnic cohort of 70,033 healthy women in the San Francisco Bay area for more than 20 years, researchers found that women who consumed one to two drinks per day (one drink equals 12 ounces of regular beer, 5 ounces of wine, or 1.5 ounces of 80-proof liquor) were 1.21 times more likely to be diagnosed with breast cancer than were women who did not drink. Among those who consumed three or more drinks a day, the relative likelihood risk rose to 1.38, whereas those who consumed one drink or fewer each day had a relative likelihood risk of only 1.08 (Li and others, 2009).

Prospective studies can yield more specific information than retrospective studies about potential causal relationships between health behaviors (or risk factors) and health outcomes. Suppose we know through retrospective research that men who have suffered recent heart attacks tend to score high on measures of hostility. Although it is tempting to assume that their hostility contributed to heart problems, perhaps suffering a heart attack increases one’s feelings of hostility. A prospective study would allow researchers to follow hostile men with healthy hearts over time, to see if they eventually develop cardiovascular disease.

**Experimental Studies in Epidemiology**

Although both retrospective and prospective studies are helpful in identifying various risk factors for illnesses, like the descriptive methods in psychology, neither study can demonstrate causation in health outcomes conclusively. To pinpoint cause and effect, epidemiologists rely on natural experiments, laboratory experiments, and clinical trials. In a *natural experiment*, a researcher attempts to study an independent variable under natural conditions that approximate a controlled study. Natural experiments are most common in health psychology when researchers compare two similar groups; for example, one group’s members are already exposing themselves to a health hazard (such as nicotine, occupational noise, or risky sexual behavior), and the other group’s members are not.

In a *laboratory experiment*, the researcher directly manipulates one independent variable rather than comparing groups of individuals who have self-selected their exposure to a particular independent variable. Like experiments in psychology, epidemiological laboratory experiments use random assignment to ensure that the experimental and control groups are similar in every important way except the level of the independent variable to which they are exposed.

**Clinical Trials**

The gold standard of biomedical research is the [**randomized clinical trial (RCT)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term284). This type of study is a true experiment, so researchers can draw conclusions safely about cause-and-effect relationships. RCTs test the effects of one or more independent variables on individuals or on groups of individuals.

**randomized clinical trial (RCT)**

A true experiment that tests the effects of one independent variable on individuals (single-subject design) or on groups of individuals (community field trials).

Although many variations are possible, the most common clinical trial for individuals involves measurement of a *baseline* (starting point) level of a condition, followed by a measure of the effectiveness of a treatment. For example, in testing the effectiveness of an analgesic drug on migraine headaches, the researcher first records each participant’s pretrial level of headache pain, perhaps using a self-report pain scale. Once the baseline establishes a pretreatment reference value in the dependent variable (the subject’s pain), treatment (the drug), which is the independent variable, is administered, and the dependent element (pain) is assessed once again. If the treatment data show improvement over the baseline data, the researcher concludes that the treatment is likely to be effective in the future. To be sure that the treatment itself, rather than some extraneous factor (such as the mere passage of time), produced the improvement, the researcher removes the medication and then observes whether the baseline condition returns and symptoms reappear. If they do, the researcher can be even more confident in accepting the hypothesis that the drug produces a significant (clinical) improvement.

In the most common type of clinical trial involving groups, baseline measures are taken and then the participants are randomly assigned to either an experimental group that receives the treatment of interest, such as a new headache medication, or a control group that receives a placebo. If outside variables have been controlled properly, then differences in the groups can be attributed to differences in the treatment.

In the final procedure, a *community field trial*, researchers compare people in one community to those in another. For example, children in one school might receive extensive educational information on the benefits of always wearing a helmet when bicycling, skateboarding, or using inline skates. A control group of children from another school would not receive the educational campaign. Researchers would compare pretrial and posttrial levels of some measure, such as head injuries, in both groups.

**Meta-Analysis**

Traditionally, when a researcher began investigating a phenomenon, such as the relationship between alcohol consumption and breast cancer, the first step was a thorough review of the relevant research literature. Although the *literature review* has a long and noble history in the annals of science, such reviews are qualitative in nature and therefore subject to bias in how they are interpreted. No matter how skilled the person reviewing the literature may be, the way that various results are interpreted essentially remains a subjective process, in which the reviewer’s own biases, beliefs, overconfidence, and so forth may influence the outcome.

To assist researchers in sifting through the sometimes dozens of research studies that pertain to a particular hypothesis, statisticians have developed [**meta-analysis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term215), a quantitative technique that combines the results of studies examining the same effect or phenomenon. Just as an experiment examines the consistency in the responses of individual participants, a meta-analysis determines the overall consistency of individual studies that address the same topics. A meta-analysis does not replace individual studies; rather, it provides a systematic procedure for summarizing existing evidence about focused research hypotheses that already appear in the health psychology literature.

**meta-analysis**

A quantitative technique that combines the results of many studies examining the same effect or phenomenon.

There are several steps to meta-analysis. First, individual research studies are coded according to specific categories, such as the size and composition of the sample, presence of a control group, use of randomization, and research methodology. The individual study outcomes then are translated into a common unit, called an *effect size*, to allow the results to be compared.

Meta-analysis has a number of advantages. First, by pooling the results of many studies, meta-analysis often reveals significant results simply because combined studies have more participants. Second, demonstrating that a finding holds up across different studies conducted by different researchers at different times and places and with different participants gives researchers much greater confidence in its validity. Finally, like good experiments, meta-analysis is subject to replication. That is, other researchers may repeat the series of statistical steps and should reach the same conclusions. One meta-analysis of 113 separate studies involving 77,539 women who were classified as light drinkers and 44,552 who did not use alcohol concluded that the association between drinking and breast cancer *may* be causal (Seitz and others, 2012; Hodgson and others, 2006).

**Inferring Causality**

No matter which research method they use (see [**Figure 2.8**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F2-8) for a summary), certain basic conditions must be met before epidemiologists can infer a cause-and-effect relationship between a particular risk factor and a particular disease or other adverse health outcome (Bonita, Beaglehole, & Kjellstrom, 2006):

**Figure 2.8: Epidemiological Research Methods**

**Epidemiologists working to help reduce the incidence and prevalence of sexually transmitted infections (STIs) have followed these steps:**

* 1. Measure *prevalence* and *incidence* of STIs in the general population. Determine whether certain subgroups of the population have higher STI levels.
* 2. Use *retrospective* studies to determine which health behaviors or other factors have affected STI levels in the subgroups with the highest prevalence rates.
* 3. Generate hypotheses about what causes STIs and how they are spread.
* 4. Test those hypotheses by using *prospective studies, natural experiments*, and *clinical trials*. Use *meta-analysis* to analyze results.
* 5. Develop intervention programs to stem the spread of STIs. Continue efforts to understand the etiology of the disease to develop effective treatments.
* *The evidence must be consistent*. Studies that report an association between a risk factor and a health outcome must be replicated. When evidence is not entirely consistent (as is often the case in health research), a convincing majority of the evidence must support the alleged association. If not, causality cannot be inferred.
* *The alleged cause must have been in place before the disease actually appeared*. This may seem obvious, but the importance of this criterion cannot be overstated. For example, if a woman suddenly increases her consumption of alcohol after her breast cancer is diagnosed, drinking alcohol could not have caused the disease. You would be surprised at how often this criterion is overlooked.
* *The relationship must make sense*. This means that the explanation must be consistent with known physiological findings. In the case of the relationship between alcohol and breast cancer, for example, a wealth of other evidence suggests several plausible biological links between alcohol and other forms of cancer, including that alcohol increases hormone levels or that alcohol makes cells more vulnerable to other cancer-causing compounds because of the way it is metabolized in the body.
* *There must be a dose-response relationship between the risk factor and health outcome. Dose-response relationships* are systematic associations between a particular independent variable, such as cigarette smoking, and a particular dependent variable, such as breast cancer. Such relationships pinpoint the relative risk associated with specific levels of an independent variable. Thus, the morbidity rate of breast cancer is highest among women who drink heavily, somewhat less for women who drink moderately, less still for light drinkers, and lowest among women who do not drink.
* *The strength of the association between the alleged cause and the health outcome (relative risk) must suggest causality*.[**Relative risk**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term290) is statistically defined as the ratio of the incidence or prevalence (absolute risk) of a health condition in a group exposed to a particular risk factor to the incidence or prevalence of that condition in a group not exposed to the risk factor. A relative risk value of 1.0 means there is no difference in risk between the two groups. A relative risk value above 1.0 indicates that there is a positive association between the risk factor and the health condition; that is, the exposed group has a greater risk than the unexposed group. For example, a relative risk of 2.0 indicates that the exposed group is twice as likely to develop a health outcome as an unexposed group. Conversely, a relative risk of 0.50 means that the incidence or prevalence rate of the condition in the exposed group is only half that of those in the unexposed group; that is, there is a negative association between the risk factor and the condition (see [**Interpreting Data: Measuring Risk**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B2-37)).

**relative risk**

A statistical indicator of the likelihood of a causal relationship between a particular health risk factor and a health outcome; computed as the ratio of the incidence (or prevalence) of a health condition in a group exposed to the risk factor to its incidence (or prevalence) in a group not exposed to the risk factor.

**INTERPRETING DATA: Measuring Risk**

Let’s look at an actual example of how measures of risk are used to estimate the impact of an actual risk factor on chronic disease. [**Table 2.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T2-2) displays the results of a classic 20-year study of death rates due to lung cancer and heart disease among British physicians. The researchers examined death rates due to both diseases among doctors who smoked at least one pack of cigarettes per day, comparing them to the death rates among those who did not smoke. For smokers, the incidence or absolute risk of developing heart disease during the course of the study (669 per 100,000 people) was much higher than the absolute risk of developing lung cancer (140 per 100,000 people). In contrast, the data demonstrate a very strong *relative* association between smoking and lung cancer (RR = 14.0), and a much smaller association between smoking and heart disease (RR = 1.6).

**Table 2.2: Relative Risk of Mortality from Lung Cancer among Cigarette Smokers**

|  | **Annual Mortality Rate per 100,000** | |
| --- | --- | --- |
|  | **Lung Cancer** | **Heart Disease** |
| Cigarette smokers | 140 | 669 |
| Nonsmokers | 10 | 413 |
| Relative risk | 14.0 | 1.6 |
| Attributable risk | 130/year | 256/year |

**Source:** Doll, R., Peto, R., Boreham, J., & Sutherland, I. (2004). Mortality in relation to smoking: 50 years’ observations on British male doctors. *British Medical Journal, 328*, p. 1519–1528.

RR for lung cancer = incidence (smokers)/incidence (nonsmokers) = 140/10 = 14.0

RR for heart disease = incidence (smokers)/incidence (nonsmokers) = 669/413 = 66 = 1.6

Thus, cigarette smoking is a much stronger risk factor for mortality from lung cancer than for heart disease. On the face of it, these data seem to offer powerful support to the idea that smoking causes lung cancer but leave plenty of doubt as to whether there is a causal relationship between smoking and heart disease. Given that there is a large body of evidence that smoking *does* cause both lung cancer and heart disease (see [**Chapters 10**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch10) and [**11**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch11)), how can we make sense of these differences in relative risk?

The explanation is that death from lung cancer is a relatively rare event among nonsmokers, accounting for only 10 deaths per 100,000 people. Because the background rate of lung cancer is very low, a small difference in absolute risk among those who smoke leads to a very high relative risk. In contrast, the annual death rate for heart disease among nonsmokers is much larger (413 per 100,000), so a much larger difference in the *absolute risk* among smokers would be needed before the *relative risk* changed substantially.

It is important to remember that these data are evidence of an *association* between a risk factor (smoking) and two health conditions (lung cancer and heart disease). Assuming that smoking is a causal factor in both diseases, eliminating smoking would prevent far more deaths from CHD than from lung cancer. A third measure or risk brings this to our attention. [**Attributable risk**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term37) measures the actual amount of a disease that can be attributed to exposure to a particular risk factor. Attributable risk is determined by subtracting the incidence rate of a disease in people who have been exposed to a risk factor from the incidence rate of the disease in people who have not been exposed to the risk factor.

**attributable risk**

The actual amount that a disease can be attributed to exposure to a particular risk factor. Attributable risk is determined by subtracting the incidence rate of a disease in people who have been exposed to a risk factor from the incidence rate of the disease in people who have not been exposed to the risk factor.

AR for lung cancer = incidence (smokers) − incidence (nonsmokers) = 140 − 10 = 130

AR for heart disease: incidence (smokers) − incidence (nonsmokers) = 669 − 413 = 256

In this study, differences in attributable risk demonstrate that the actual *public health impact* of smoking is twice as large for heart disease mortality as it is for lung cancer mortality. For every 100,000 people, there are 256 additional deaths from heart disease in smokers, compared to 130 additional deaths over the background rate among nonsmokers from lung cancer.

* *The incidence or prevalence of the disease or other adverse health outcome must drop when the alleged causal factor is removed*. Although dose-response and relative risk relationships are necessary to infer causality, they are not sufficient. Before we can infer that drinking causes breast cancer, we must have evidence that women who reduce or eliminate their consumption of alcohol have a reduced risk of this disease. Recent research has shown this very thing to be true, in fact, thus meeting our fifth criterion (NCI, 2010). When all conditions are met, epidemiologists are able to infer that a causal relationship has been established, even when a true experiment cannot be conducted.

While working to meet these conditions, health psychologists need to evaluate individual research studies very carefully. Quality rating forms, such as the one in [**Figure 2.9**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F2-9), are very helpful means of achieving this standard. In medicine, too, there is a new emphasis on the importance of basing patient care on the “best available evidence” for a given health condition. Medical residency programs today are required to train new physicians in [**evidence-based health care**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term136), which involves virtually all of the principles we have discussed in this chapter, including learning how to appraise research critically for its validity, reliability, and usefulness in clinical practice (CEBM, 2010).

**Figure 2.9: Putting Health Psychology into Practice: Evaluating Scientific Evidence**

**Health psychologists use quality rating forms similar to this to evaluate research studies. For each criterion, they rate the study by assigning a number from 0 (no evidence that the criterion was met) to 3 (strong evidence that the criterion was met). Overall scores on the rating system can range from 0 to 21, with higher scores justifying greater confidence in the study’s conclusions**.

**3 = Good, 2 = Fair, 1 = Poor, 0 = No evidence that the criterion has been met**

| **Criterion** | **Evidence** | **Score** |
| --- | --- | --- |
| * 1. Problem or Question Studied: *(clearly stated hypothesis, significant or relevant issue, operational definitions included)* |  |  |
| * 2. Sampling: *(representative of population, random selection and assignment, sample characteristics identified, group differences controlled, low dropout rate)* |  |  |
| * 3. Measurement: *(clearly stated methodology)* |  |  |
| * 4. Reliability: *(test yields consistent results, even among multiple raters; questions measure single construct, such as anxiety or degree of disability)* |  |  |
| * 5. Validity: *(constructs clearly explained, independent and dependent variable levels clear, generalized to appropriate populations)* |  |  |
| * 6. Statistical Significance: *(inferred relationships, accurate and appropriate significance supported by data)* |  |  |
| * 7. Justification for Conclusions: *(warranted by data and research design)* |  |  |
| Total | | |

Adapted from Ramons, K.D., Schafer, S., & Tracz, S.M. (2003). Learning in practice: Validation of the Fresno test of competence in evidence based medicine. *British Medical Journal, 326*, 319–321; and Bergstrom, N. (1994). Treating pressure ulcers: Methodology for guideline development. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Publication No. 96-N014.

**evidence-based health care**

The use of current best evidence in making decisions about the care of individual patients or the delivery of health services.

In this chapter, we have introduced a variety of research methods for studying biological, psychological, and social factors in health. It is natural to ask, Which one is best? Some researchers might answer quickly that the laboratory experiment is most desirable because only in such studies are the variables of interest directly manipulated while all other variables are controlled. But we also have seen that some questions of vital interest to health psychologists do not lend themselves to experimentation for ethical and/or practical reasons. Moreover, experiments are often criticized for being artificial and having little relevance to behavior in the real world.

Increasingly, researchers are combining experimental and nonexperimental methods in order to make their investigations more comprehensive. For example, suppose that a researcher is interested in determining whether an educational campaign about safer sex would induce college students to modify their behavior. Conceivably, the researcher might design an experiment in which a randomly assigned group of students who received educational materials related to this issue was compared to a control group that received unrelated materials. The students would be compared on their stated intentions to practice safer sex. However, the researcher surely would want to know whether the educational campaign was equally effective with women, men, members of various ethnic minorities, and so forth. Variables such as these, of course, cannot be manipulated experimentally. Together, however, experimental and nonexperimental methods complement one another, giving health psychologists a larger tool kit with which to study their subject.

This chapter has presented you with the basic tools of the health psychology trade—critical thinking that guards against faulty everyday reasoning and scientific methods that guide researchers in their quest for valid and reliable answers to health-related questions. Armed with this information, you are now ready to begin to address those questions.

**Weigh In on Health**

Respond to each question below based on what you learned in the chapter. **(Tip:** Use the items in “Summing Up” to take into account related biological, psychological, and social concerns.)

* **1.** Recently, you read about a study that indicated a link between taking a vitamin supplement and lessening the chance of developing Alzheimer’s disease in older adulthood. As a health scientist, what kinds of questions would you ask to determine the merits of this study? What kinds of unscientific thinking should you be aware of as you review the study?
* **2.** For each of the following methods of research in health psychology, develop a question that would provide focus for a study: a descriptive study, an experimental study, a quasi-experiment, and a developmental study. Why is the method of research that you chose well suited to each question?
* **3.** In the past, several health psychology professors at your school were involved in epidemiological research to help resolve the AIDS health crisis. They were involved in retrospective studies, clinical trials, meta-analysis, and intervention. In what way could each of these epidemiological research methods have helped resolve the AIDS health crisis?

**Summing Up**

**Critical Thinking and the Evidence Base**

* **1.** Our everyday thinking is prone to bias, including making snap judgments and inferring cause and effect inappropriately. Using scientific research methods to search for evidence will help you become a more careful consumer of health psychology reports.
* **2.** An important aspect of critical thinking in health psychology is statistical literacy, the ability to read and interpret statistics and to think critically about arguments that use statistics as evidence.

**Health Psychology Methods**

* **3.** Descriptive studies, which observe and record the behavior of participants, include case studies, interviews and surveys, and observation.
* **4.** The strength and direction of a relationship between two sets of scores are revealed visually by scatterplots and statistically by the correlation coefficient. Correlation does not imply causality.
* **5.** In an experiment, a researcher manipulates one or more independent variables while looking for changes in one or more dependent variables. Experiments typically compare an experimental group, which receives a treatment of interest, with a control group, which does not. To reduce the possibility of expectancy effects, researchers use double-blind controls.
* **6.** When health psychologists study variables that cannot be manipulated, they may conduct a quasi-experiment. In this design, participants are assigned to comparison groups on the basis of age, gender, ethnicity, or some other subject variable.
* **7.** Developmental studies focus on the ways people change or remain the same over time. In a cross-sectional study, researchers compare representative groups of people of various ages to determine the possible effects of age on a particular dependent variable.
* **8.** In a longitudinal study, a single group of individuals is followed over a long span of time. To correct the problem of subjects dropping out over the lengthy span of years that such studies require, researchers have developed a cross-sectional study, in which different age groups are tested initially and then retested later at various ages.
* **9.** Behavior genetics uses methods such as twin and adoption studies to pinpoint the heritability of specific characteristics and disorders. Identical twins develop from a single fertilized egg that splits in two. Fraternal twins develop from separate eggs. Differences between identical and fraternal twins raised in the same environment suggest a genetic influence.

**Epidemiological Research: Tracking Disease**

* **10.** Epidemiological research studies measure the distribution of health outcomes, seek to discover the etiology (causes) of those outcomes, and test the effectiveness of specific preventive health interventions. Among the commonly used epidemiological statistics are morbidity, mortality, incidence, and prevalence.
* **11.** Epidemiologists use several basic research designs. In a retrospective study, comparisons are made between a group of people who have a certain disease or condition and a group of people who do not. In contrast, prospective studies look forward in time to determine how a group of people changes or how a relationship between two or more variables changes over time. There are also several types of experiments in epidemiology, including laboratory experiments, natural experiments, and randomized clinical trials.
* **12.** Epidemiologists use several measures of risk. *Absolute risk* is the number of new cases of a disease or condition that occur in a specific population within a defined time interval. *Relative risk* is the ratio of the incidence (or prevalence) of a health condition in a group exposed to the risk factor to its incidence (or prevalence) in a group not exposed to the risk factor. *Attributable risk* measures the actual amount of a disease that can be attributed to exposure to a particular risk factor.
* **13.** Meta-analysis analyzes data from already published studies, statistically combining the size of the difference between the experimental and control groups to enable researchers to evaluate the consistency of findings.
* **14.** In order to infer causality in epidemiological research, research evidence must be consistent and logically sensible and exhibit a dose-response relationship. In addition, the alleged cause must have been in place before the health outcome in question was observed and must result in a reduced prevalence of the condition when removed.

## *Chapter 4*: Stress

[**Stress: Some Basic Concepts**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-1-1)

[**Stressors**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-1-2)

* [**Significant Life Events**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-3) [**Catastrophes**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-4) [**Daily Hassles**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-5) [**Environmental Stressors**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-6) [**Work**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-9) [**Your Health Assets:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B4-10) [**The Gallup Workplace Audit**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B4-10) [**Social Interactions**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-17) [**Diversity and Healthy Living:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B4-13) [**Sociocultural Factors in Stress**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B4-13)

[**The Physiology of Stress**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-1-21)

* [**The Role of the Brain and Nervous System**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-22) [**The Role of the Endocrine System: The SAM and HPA Systems**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-23) [**Measuring Stress**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-24) [**How Does Stress Make You Sick?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-26)

[**Other Major Models of Stress and Illness**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-1-32)

* [**Selye’s General Adaptation Syndrome**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-33) [**Cognitive Appraisal and Stress**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-34) [**The Diathesis–Stress Model**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-35) [**Tend-and-Befriend Theory**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-37)

*In 1934, Hungarian-born Hans Selye (1907–1982) was a promising young endocrinologist trying to make a name for himself at Montreal’s McGill University by identifying a new hormone. Working with an ovary extract, Selye devised a simple plan: Give daily injections of the extract to a sample of laboratory rats and watch for changes in their behavior and health. Easier said than done! Selye quickly learned that rats, like people, are not fond of being injected. Often, as he was about to insert the needle, a rat would squirm, causing Selye to miss the injection site. Squeezing an uncooperative rat more tightly sometimes caused it to nip at the young experimenter, who then would drop the animal on the floor and be forced to chase it around the laboratory before eventually completing the injection*.

*After several months of these daily sessions, Selye made an extraordinary discovery: Most of the rats had developed bleeding ulcers, shrunken thymus glands (which produce disease-fighting lymphocytes), and enlarged adrenal glands. His immediate response was elation, for he believed he had discovered the physiological effects of the asyet-unknown ovarian extract. Being a careful scientist, however, Selye realized that without a control group, this conclusion was premature. So other groups of laboratory rats were given daily injections of extracts of kidneys, spleen, or a saline solution instead of the ovarian extract. Otherwise, these control animals were treated the same: They were often squeezed, dropped, and chased around the lab before receiving their injections! Much to Selye’s surprise, at the end of the experiment these control rats had the same enlarged adrenal glands, shrunken thymus glands, and bleeding ulcers. Because the same changes occurred in both groups of rats, they could not have been caused by the ovarian extract. What, then, could have caused the changes? What else did the two groups have in common? In a moment of insight (and humility), Selye correctly reasoned that his hapless handling of the animals had triggered some sort of nonspecific response. The rats were stressed out!*

We now know that Selye had discovered the *stress response*—a breakthrough that helped to forge an entirely new medical field—*stress physiology*. Although not the first to use the term *stress*, Selye is credited with two important new ideas:

* The body has a remarkably similar response to many different stressors.
* Stressors sometimes can make you sick.

That second idea is especially important—that persistent, or chronic, stress influences a person’s vulnerability to disorders—and it has become a major theme in health psychology. No single topic has generated more research. As we will see in this and later chapters, researchers have established links between stress and many physical and psychological disorders, including cancer, heart disease, diabetes, arthritis, headaches, asthma, digestive disorders, depression, and anxiety. At the same time, stressful experiences that are weathered successfully can ultimately be positive experiences in our lives and leave us with enhanced resources for coping in the future.

## Stress: Some Basic Concepts

So, just what is stress? Stress is a part of life. In fact, without some stress, our lives would be dull. But when stress overtaxes our coping resources, it can damage our health. Each of us experiences stress in our everyday lives. Stress can come from many directions, including school, family and friends, interactions with strangers, and work. Stress usually happens in real time, as when you are forced to juggle the everchanging demands of school, work, family, and friends. Sometimes stress persists for a long time, as when a person loses a loved one or is forced to retire.

## Significant Stress

**Catastrophic events, such as the 8.8-magnitude earthquake that struck central Chile in 2010, provide tragic, real-world examples of stress as both a stimulus and a response. The event that triggers coping behavior is the stressor (the stimulus), and the person attempting to flee the event or trying to compensate for the destruction that it causes illustrates the response.**

AP Photo/Roberto Candia

Despite the pervasiveness of stress, psychologists have not had an easy time coming up with an acceptable definition of the word. *Stress* is sometimes used to describe a threatening situation or *stimulus*, and at other times to describe a *response* to a situation. Health psychologists have determined that [**stressors**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term323) are demanding events or situations that trigger coping adjustments in a person, and [**stress**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term319) is the *process* by which a person both appraises and responds to events that are judged to be challenging or threatening. It’s important to recognize that we must judge a challenging event or situation to be threatening or even beyond our ability to cope before we will be stressed by it. Stress arises less from events themselves than from how we appraise them. A significant stressor for one person may be no big deal for another. In addition, when a stressor is short-lived or perceived as a challenge, it can have positive effects such as mobilizing the immune system to fend off infection and promote healing (Dhabhar and others, 2010; Segerstrom, 2007). Champion athletes, musicians, actresses, and successful leaders all learn that their best efforts often come when they have been aroused by a challenge. You will hear much more about this very individual appraisal process later in this chapter. In [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05), we will consider effective ways to cope with stress. In this chapter, we will take a *biopsychosocial* approach to understanding stress and its impact on the body, as follows:

* *Biological* processes that occur when we experience stress can differ somewhat according to each individual’s unique physiology and levels of physiological reactivity, but the same basic processes affect us all.
* *Psychological* influences affect how we *appraise* challenging situations—either as manageable (not stressful) or unmanageable (stressful)—based on our personalities and individual life experiences. Gender, as we will see, also plays a role in whether we fight or flee, or tend-and-befriend (see the section “[**Tend-and-Befriend Theory**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-37),” later in this chapter).
* Our own unique *sociocultural* influences affect how we appraise stress from many different sources, including major life events, catastrophes, daily hassles, environmental stress, work, and family.

## stressor

Any event or situation that triggers coping adjustments.

## stress

The process by which we perceive and respond to events, called *stressors*, that we appraise as threatening or challenging.

Let’s turn first to the types of stressors people experience.

## Stressors

Everyone experiences stress. How and why we experience stress may change as we journey through life, but none of us escape. Each of us experiences the events of life in a unique way. What you find stressful, your roommate may not. Similarly, some of the leisure activities that you find relaxing may be too stressful for others. Research has focused on several types of stressors: significant life events, daily hassles, environmental factors, catastrophes, work, and sociocultural factors.

## Significant Life Events

What impact do major life events, such as leaving home, changing jobs, having a child, or losing a loved one, have on the quality of our health? In the late 1950s, psychiatrists Thomas Holmes and Richard Rahe of the University of Washington substantially advanced our understanding of how the events of our lives affect our health. They interviewed more than 5000 people to identify which events forced people to make the most changes in their lives. Then they assigned each event a value in *life change units* (*LCUs*) to reflect the amount of change that was necessary. For example, a divorce disrupts many more aspects of one’s life than does taking a vacation, and thus it would be assigned a larger number of LCUs. The events that Holmes and Rahe investigated covered a wide range of events, even including occasions that called for celebration, such as marriage or a promotion. They then ranked these events and devised the *Social Readjustment Rating Scale* (*SRRS*), which was the first systematic attempt to quantify the impact of life changes on health. [**Table 4.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T4-1)shows the College Undergraduate Stress Scale, which is a variation of the original SRRS directed specifically at college students.

## Table 4.1: The College Undergraduate Stress Scale

Copy the “stress” rating number into the last column for any item that has happened to you in the last year, then add the numbers.

| **Event** | **Stress Ratings** | **Your Items** |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Being raped | 100 |  |
| Finding out that you are HIV-positive | 100 |  |
| Being accused of rape | 98 |  |
| Death of a close friend | 97 |  |
| Death of a close family member | 96 |  |
| Contracting a sexually transmitted disease (other than AIDS) | 94 |  |
| Concerns about being pregnant | 91 |  |
| Finals week | 90 |  |
| Concerns about your partner being pregnant | 90 |  |
| Oversleeping for an exam | 89 |  |
| Flunking a class | 89 |  |
| Having a boyfriend or girlfriend cheat on you | 85 |  |
| Ending a steady dating relationship | 85 |  |
| Serious illness in a close friend or family member | 85 |  |
| Financial difficulties | 84 |  |
| Writing a major term paper | 83 |  |
| Being caught cheating on a test | 83 |  |
| Drunk driving | 82 |  |
| Sense of overload in school or work | 85 |  |
| Two exams in one day | 80 |  |
| Cheating on your boyfriend or girlfriend | 77 |  |
| Getting married | 76 |  |
| Negative consequences of drinking or drug use | 75 |  |
| Depression or crisis in your best friend | 73 |  |
| Difficulties with parents | 73 |  |
| Talking in front of a class | 72 |  |
| Lack of sleep | 69 |  |
| Change in housing situation (hassles, moves) | 69 |  |
| Competing or performing in public | 69 |  |
| Getting in a physical fight | 66 |  |
| Difficulties with a roommate | 66 |  |
| Job changes (applying, new job, work hassles) | 69 |  |
| Declaring a major or concerns about future plans | 65 |  |
| A class you hate | 62 |  |
| Drinking or use of drugs | 61 |  |
| Confrontations with professors | 60 |  |
| Starting a new semester | 58 |  |
| Going on a first date | 57 |  |
| Registration | 55 |  |
| Maintaining a steady dating relationship | 55 |  |
| Commuting to campus or work, or both | 54 |  |
| Peer pressures | 53 |  |
| Being away from home for the first time | 53 |  |
| Getting sick | 52 |  |
| Concerns about your appearance | 52 |  |
| Getting straight A’s | 51 |  |
| A difficult class that you love | 48 |  |
| Making new friends; getting along with friends | 47 |  |
| Fraternity or sorority rush | 47 |  |
| Falling asleep in class | 40 |  |
| Attending an athletic event (e.g., football game) | 20 |  |
| Total |  |  |
| Note: Of 12,000 U.S. college students who completed this scale, scores ranged from 182 to 2571, with a mean score of 1247. Women reported significantly higher scores than men, perhaps because most of the students used in pretesting items were women. This being the case, items that are stressful for women may be overrepresented in the scale. | | |
| **Sources:** Renner, M.J., & Mackin, R.S. (1998). A life stress instrument for classroom use. *Teaching of Psychology, 25*, 47. | | |

Holmes and Rahe theorized that the total number of LCUs that a person had accumulated during the previous year could predict the likelihood that he or she would become sick over the next several months. In one study (Rahe, Mahan, & Arthur, 1970), researchers obtained SRRS scores on naval crewmen who were about to depart on a six-month mission. Over the course of the voyage, the researchers found a positive correlation between LCUs and illness rates. Those sailors who reported the highest LCUs were more likely to fall ill than those who reported the lowest LCUs. The message: When life brings many changes at once, the stress that results may make us more vulnerable to health problems.

Many other life events and stress inventories have been developed, including the Undergraduate Stress Questionnaire (USQ; Crandall, Preisler, & Aussprung, 1992), the Perceived Stress Scale (PSS; Cohen, Kamarck, & Mermelstein, 1983), the Weekly Stress Inventory (Brantley and others, 2007), the Life Events Inventory (Sharpley and others, 2004), and the Stress Symptom Checklist (Schlebusch, 2004). Some of these are checklists and some are self-report inventories.

**Stress may also take a toll on the unborn. Women who reported high levels of stress on a life event scale were more likely to experience a spontaneous abortion (miscarriage) at 11 weeks or later (Boyles and others, 2000)**.

Although the research of Holmes and Rahe was groundbreaking and influential (Scully, Tosi, & Banning, 2000), the value of the SRRS and other scales for predicting stress and illness has been criticized for several reasons:

* Many of the items are vague and open to subjective interpretation. “Change in living conditions” or “revision of personal habits,” for example, can mean almost anything.
* Assigning specific point values to events fails to take into consideration individual differences in the way events are appraised (and therefore experienced). A divorce, for example, may mean welcome freedom for one person but a crushing loss to another.
* The SRRS and other scales lump all events together—whether positive or negative, by chance or willfully chosen. Many studies have found that unexpected or uncontrollable negative events, such as the premature death of a family member, are much more stressful than are events that are positive, expected, or under one’s control, such as getting married, changing jobs or taking a vacation (Bandura and others, 1988).
* Many inventories do not differentiate between resolved and unresolved stressful events. There is evidence that stressors that have been resolved successfully have substantially weaker adverse effects on the person’s health than events that linger unresolved (Turner & Avison, 1992).
* Self-report inventories may not represent experiences accurately. Some people may omit or underreport certain life events, while others—especially some sick people—may overreport life events as a way of “justifying” their illness (Turner & Wheaton, 1995).
* Life event scales tend to underestimate the stress that African-Americans and other minorities experience (Turner & Avison, 2003).

One measure of a good theory, however, is that it generates research that leads to new understanding, even if it also leads to its own demise. If nothing else, the tremendous number of studies conducted using the SRRS have revealed that there is no simple, direct connection between life stress and illness: Subjected to the same stressors, one person will get sick, while another will not. The health consequences of stress depend upon our appraisal of the stressors.

Some health psychologists have approached this issue in a different way, by comparing the life changes recalled by people who have or have not suffered a specific disease or condition, such as a heart attack. In such studies, people who report having recently lost their jobs, becoming divorced, or having a loved one die were more vulnerable to a health problem (Strully, 2009).

**Research has found that college students who were perfectionists were more likely than other students to react to stressful life events with symptoms of depression (Flett and others, 1995)**.

## Catastrophes

On March 28, 1979, the worst commercial nuclear accident in the history of the United States happened at Three Mile Island, a nuclear power plant in Middletown, Pennsylvania. A pump in the reactor cooling system failed, causing an increase in pressure and temperature. For two hours, a stuck valve allowed contaminated radioactive water that had cooled the reactor’s core to evaporate into the atmosphere. Shortly after the incident, Andrew Baum began one of the first systematic health psychology studies of toxic pollution. For more than a year after the accident, residents faced a chronically high level of stress, fearing that they had been exposed to radiation (Baum & Fleming, 1993). This fear manifested itself in excessively high blood pressure, as well as elevated levels of cortisol, epinephrine, and norepinephrine. The hormone cortisol is an important biomarker of hypothalamus-pituitary-adrenal axis activation that plays an important role in mediating the effects of life stressors on health. Responses to the Three Mile Island incident were not unique. Researchers have uncovered a number of similar responses in situations involving both human error and natural phenomena. For example:

* The results of a mental health survey conducted after the September 11 terrorist attacks reported that 40 percent of 4739 Pentagon staff were at high risk for post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), panic attacks, depression, generalized anxiety, or alcohol abuse (Jordan and others, 2004). A study reported that asthma prevalence after September 11 among children younger than 5 years of age was significantly higher than national estimates (Thomas, Brackbill, & Thalji, 2008). Another study reported statistically significant increases in blood pressure among four large samples of patients hospitalized in Chicago, Washington, DC, Mississippi, and New York at the time of the September 11 attacks (Chaplin and others, 2003). Elevated blood pressure persisted for two months following September 11. There were no differences in blood pressure in the months preceding and following September 11, 2000—the same period of time, one year earlier.
* There was a significant increase in symptoms of PTSD among survivors of the cataclysmic tsunami that struck Sri Lanka in December 2004 (Dewaraja & Kawamura, 2006), as well as among those who survived Hurricane Katrina, which destroyed New Orleans in August 2005 (Weems and others, 2007).
* During the 2000 al-Aqsa Intifada (uprising) by Palestinians on the Gaza Strip, psychologists observed sharp increases in anxiety, acute stress disorder, PTSD, depression, and panic attacks among the population (Elbedour and others, 2007). Among children living on the Gaza Strip, there was a dramatic surge in bedwetting, nightmares, and behavioral disorders (Crawford, 2002).
* Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scans of Japanese university students taken before the 2011 earthquake and tsunami that caused massive flooding up to 6 miles inland, and again three months later, showed that those who experienced the most intrusive memories, heightened startle responses, and other symptoms of PTSD, had decreased brain volume in the region of the anterior cingulate cortex (Norton, 2012)

Health psychologists continue to learn by monitoring the physiological and psychological effects of such disasters. After the explosion of two bombs that killed three people and injured more than 170 near the finish line of the 2013 Boston marathon, health psychologists and mental health experts expect that some witnesses may experience a general sense of fear, nightmares, and mental replays of the event for some time to come, with a few developing longer-lasting PTSD and related symptoms.

## Daily Hassles

Significant life changes and catastrophes occur infrequently; everyday hassles happen all the time and thus are the most significant sources of stress. These minor annoyances range from missing a commuter train to work, to not having the required answer booklet for an exam, to losing a wallet, to arguing with a professor, or to living with an aggravating roommate (Repetti and others, 2009).

The impact on health of such hassles depends on their frequency, duration, and intensity. In addition, our reactions to minor hassles are influenced by our personality, our individual style of coping, and how the rest of our day has gone.

The counterpart to daily hassles is daily *uplifts*: mood-lifting experiences such as receiving an approving nod from the boss, hearing your favorite song at just the right moment, or even getting a good night’s sleep. Just as hassles may cause physical and emotional stress that may result in illness, uplifts may serve as buffers against the effects of stress.

Richard Lazarus (whose transactional model of stress will be discussed later in the chapter) and his colleagues devised a scale to measure people’s experiences with day-to-day annoyances and uplifts (Kanner and others, 1981). The Hassles and Uplifts Scale consists of 117 events that range from small pleasures to major problems. A revised scale, published a few years later, asks respondents to focus on how much of an impact each experienced hassle or uplift had on their well-being (DeLongis, Folkman, & Lazarus, 1988). [**Table 4.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T4-2) shows the 10 most frequent hassles and uplifts as reported by this sample of adults, together with the percentage of time each event was checked.

## Table 4.2: Common Hassles and Uplifts

| **Hassles** | **Percentage of Times Checked over Nine Months** | **Uplifts** | **Percentage of Times Checked over Nine Months** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1. Concern about weight | 52.4 | 1. Relating well with your spouse or lover | 76.3 |
| 2. Health of family member | 48.1 | 2. Relating well with friends | 74.4 |
| 3. Rising prices of common goods | 43.7 | 3. Completing a task | 73.3 |
| 4. Home maintenance | 42.8 | 4. Feeling healthy | 72.7 |
| 5. Too many things to do | 38.6 | 5. Getting enough sleep | 69.7 |
| 6. Misplacing or losing things | 38.1 | 6. Eating out | 68.4 |
| 7. Yardwork or outside home maintenance | 38.1 | 7. Meeting responsibilities | 68.8 |
| 8. Property, investment, or taxes | 37.6 | 8. Visiting, phoning, or writing someone | 67.7 |
| 9. Crime | 37.1 | 9. Spending time with family | 66.7 |
| 10. Physical appearance | 35.9 | 10. Home pleasing to you | 65.5 |
| **Source:** Adapted from “Comparison of Two Modes of Stress Management: Daily Hassles and Uplifts versus Major Life Events,” by A.D. Kanner, C. Coyne, C. Schaefer, and R.S. Lazarus, 1981, *Journal of Behavioral Medicine, 4*, p. 14. | | | |

How well do our hassles and uplifts predict our overall psychological well-being? Hassles seem to be a better predictor of health problems than either major life events or the frequency of daily uplifts. This finding has been confirmed many times. Everyday hassles or mundane irritants and stressors negatively affect physical and mental health to a degree that exceeds the adverse consequences of major life events. Studies have found, for instance, that the revised scale does a better job than the Social Readjustment Rating Scale in predicting headaches, inflammatory bowel disease episodes, and other disorders (Searle & Bennet, 2001). Other studies have shown that daily hassles are associated with a worsening of symptoms in people who are already suffering from illnesses such as lupus (Peralta-Ramirez and others, 2004).

Critics have argued, however, that some of the items listed as hassles may actually be *symptoms of*stress rather than stressors. Items relating to appearance, for example, may tap into lowered feelings of self-esteem that *result from* rather than contribute to stress. In addition, some items refer to alcohol and drug use, sexual difficulties, physical illness, and personal fears—all possible consequences of stress.

In addition, other researchers have suggested that individuals who are high in anxiety to begin with (Kohn, Lafreniere, & Gurevich, 1990), those who have trouble “letting go” of unattainable goals (Miller & Wrosch, 2007), along with people who perceive low levels of social support (Fiksenbaum, Greenglass, & Eaton, 2006), will find daily hassles more stressful. Lisa Fiksenbaum and her colleagues found that, among the elderly, lacking social support triggered stress as often as did daily hassles. This suggests that an overly anxious or socially isolated person may overreact to daily hassles in a way that magnifies their impact. Consistent with the diathesis–stress model, (see [**p. 146**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L4-2-35)) those who are predisposed not to overreact may be less vulnerable to the physical and psychological impact of daily hassles.

Daily hassles also have been demonstrated to interact with *background stressors*, such as job dissatisfaction (Wang and others, 2008), having a long commute to work or school (Gottholmseder and others, 2009), and crowded living conditions (Regoeczi, 2003). In impoverished areas—where many people routinely live with inadequate income, unemployment, and the demands of single parenting—such stressors are part of daily life. During the economic recession of 2008–2009, Americans most often cited stressors related to money (76 percent), work (70 percent), and the nation’s economy (65 percent) (APA, 2010).

For minority populations, daily hassles are compounded by perceived discrimination (Pascoe and Richman, 2009) and racism, which has been linked to hypertension in African-Americans (Mays, Cochran, & Barnes, 2007). Discrimination is also experienced regularly by other ethnic groups (Edwards & Romero, 2008) and by lesbian, gay, bisexual, and transgender men and women (Rostosky and others, 2010; Huebner & Davis, 2007). A dramatic illustration of the interaction of daily hassles with chronic stress is the skyrocketing rates of divorce, murder, suicide, and stress-related diseases that occurred in Russia during the four years that immediately followed the breakup of the former Soviet Union (Holden, 1996). It is suspected that persistent social and economic background stress during this difficult period caused many people to overreact to everyday stressors that they would normally have shrugged off. Remarkably, during this same period of time, life expectancy for Russian men fell from about 64 years to 59 years.

## Environmental Stressors

Crowded subways, noisy street corners, and pollution are daily facts of life for many of us. Unless we are able to escape by moving to a remote part of the world, these largely uncontrollable potential stressors are likely to affect us for many years. Over time, do these environmental stressors take a toll on our health and well-being? Let’s see.

## Noise

As a student in New York City, I lived with no air conditioning for two years in a fifth-floor apartment with an elevated subway train track less than 100 feet from my window. With the window open in the summer, a train rumbling by literally shook the building, and I had to shout to be heard by a friend sitting in the same room. Still, the rent-controlled apartment was all I could afford, and I inadvertently became a case study of the physical and psychological impact of chronic noise.

Using both field studies and laboratory studies, health psychologists have uncovered a number of negative health consequences of long-term living in noisy environments. In one study, children around airports in Munich, Germany, were found to have higher systolic and diastolic blood pressure levels and elevated levels of cortisol and other stress hormones compared to members of a control group (Evans and others, 1995).

Researchers have also focused on the impact of noise on academic performance. In the Evans study cited earlier, the motivation, long-term memory, and reading and word skills of the children living near noisy airports were impaired. Similarly, researchers Sheldon Cohen, David Glass, and Jerome Singer (1973) found that children who lived in noisy apartments had greater difficulty detecting subtle differences in sounds and had more reading problems than did children who lived in quieter apartments. The longer the children had lived in their present apartment, the greater the discrepancy. Another groundbreaking study found that children attending school in classrooms facing noisy railroad tracks had lower reading scores than did children attending classes in rooms on the quieter side of the building (Bronzaft & McCarthy, 1975).

Just as I did in my noisy apartment, most people attempt to cope with chronic noise by tuning out extraneous sounds and focusing their attention only on relevant cues (such as the voice of the person to whom they are talking). Because they are young, however, children are less able than adults to differentiate appropriate and inappropriate cues. This may explain why chronic noise is more disruptive to children. Children may have more difficulty with verbal skills because they are more likely to “tune out” verbal elements (along with other noise) in their environment. To test this idea, health psychologists also have investigated the impact of noise on health in the more controlled setting of the laboratory. In such studies, researchers have demonstrated that fairly high levels of noise (80 to 90 decibels in random bursts) disrupt our short-term memory and our ability to attend to even simple cognitive tasks (Ljungberg & Neely, 2007).

Noise alone doesn’t necessarily cause stress. The individual’s cognitive appraisal plays an important role, as demonstrated by a study of people living on a busy street who were asked about their overall health, sleep, anxiety level, and attitude toward their noisy environment (Nivision & Endresen, 1993). Although noise levels were not significantly correlated with poor health, loss of sleep, or increased anxiety, the residents’ subjective attitudes toward noise were strongly linked to the number of their health complaints. In another study, workers who were more sensitive to noise had higher cortisol levels than workers who found the same noise level less annoying (Waye and others, 2002).

A key factor in how a person appraises noise is the potential he or she has for controlling the noise level. In a classic study, researchers David Glass and Jerome Singer (1972) demonstrated that college students who were given the possibility of controlling a loud, distracting noise reported less stress than students who had no opportunity to control the noise. This may explain why “self-administered” noise—such as that experienced at rock concerts—is generally appraised as benign, even enjoyable.

## Crowding

In a classic study of the effects of crowding on the behavior of animals, researcher John Calhoun (1970) provided ideal living conditions to a group of rats, allowing them to eat, drink, and reproduce freely. When living space was plentiful, the rats behaved normally, forming stable social groups, mating successfully, and rearing their offspring to healthy maturity.

As the population increased, however, the former “good citizenship” of rats began to deteriorate. Frequent fights broke out as male rats began to stake out and attempt to defend a more crowded territory. In addition, infant mortality increased sharply, the sexual receptivity of females declined, and some rats became cannibalistic.

## Crowding

**Japan is notorious for its long work hours and lack of vacation time. Workers begin their stress-filled days with stress-filled subway rides. The number of people crowding into the subway has become so dangerous that the system had to hire people to manage the overloads.**

Horizons WWP/Alamy

What about crowding among humans? In yet another example of the importance of cognitive appraisal in the process of stress, some researchers say that we need to make a distinction between crowding and [**population density**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term262), which refers to the number of people living in a given area. [**Crowding**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term107) is a *psychological* state in which people *believe* they do not have enough space to function as they wish.

## population density

A measure of crowding based on the total number of people living in an area of limited size.

## crowding

A psychological state in which people *believe* that they do not have enough space to function as they wish.

Density is necessary to produce crowding, but crowding is not an inevitable consequence of density. Being in a crush of people during a New Year’s Eve celebration, for example, may not be perceived as crowding, despite the extreme population density. Conversely, the presence of one other family of campers in a wilderness campground may represent an intolerable crowd to a vacationer seeking solitude.

Other studies have demonstrated that the design of residential space can have far-ranging effects on physical health and subjective well-being. Studies of student housing, for example, reveal that suite-type clusters of dormitory rooms are preferred over the more traditional arrangement of rooms branching off of long corridors. Residents of corridor rooms feel more crowded, report lower feelings of control, are more competitive, and react more negatively to minor annoyances.

Crowding, noise, pollution, discrimination, unemployment, crime, the threat of violence, and other stressors often occur together in what has been called the *environment of poverty* (Ulrich, 2002). Several studies suggest that community stress of this type—especially when it involves violence—takes its greatest toll on the psychological and physical well-being of children and adolescents (Ozer, 2005; Rosario and others, 2008). Other research reveals that socioeconomic status *is* linked with everyday stress: Wealthier people report fewer daily hassles than those who are not affluent (Grzywacz and others, 2004).

Environmental stress is a fact of life. Noise and crowding may cause us to feel anxious and irritable and leave us more vulnerable to physical disorders. For some of us, these reactions, and the stressors that trigger them, come to a point of sharp focus in the workplace.

## Work

While it is true that busy people are happier (Hsee, Yang, & Wang, 2010), and that satisfaction with work feeds satisfaction with life (Bowling, Eschleman & Wang, 2010), an extensive amount of research has been devoted to examining the causes and consequences of job-related stress. These studies are important for two reasons. First, almost all people at some time experience stress related to their work. Second, work-related stress may be one of the most preventable health hazards and thereby provides a number of possibilities for intervention

For most of us, job stress is brief in duration and does not pose a serious threat to our health. For some people, however, job stress may be chronic, continuing for years. Data from the massive 2010 Canadian Community Health Survey found that respondents with the highest level of perceived work stress had higher odds of being treated for an emotional or mental-health problem at any point, and for being treated in the past 12 months. These high-stress respondents also had higher odds of being diagnosed for mood and anxiety disorders than their less stressed counterparts (Szeto & Dobson, 2013). Let’s take a look at some of the factors that can make certain jobs more stressful than others.

## The Changing Nature of Work

Establishing a *vocational identity* is a key part of biopsychosocial health for most people. Emerging adulthood is a critical time for acquiring the education, skills, and experience needed for career success (Tanner, Arnett, & Leis, 2009). When college students were asked recently to identify their life goals, four of the top six “very important objectives in my life” related directly to work (see [**Table 4.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T4-3)).

## Table 4.3: Top Six “Very Important Objectives in My Life”

Each of the following numbers is the percentage of students who listed an item as a “very important objective” in their lives.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Being well off financially | 78% |
| Raising a family | 75% |
| Making more money | 71% |
| Helping others | 69% |
| Becoming an authority in my field | 59% |
| Obtaining recognition in my field | 56% |
| **Source:** *Chronicle of Higher Education*, 2010. | |

**Work has become such a deeply entrenched ethic in Japanese culture that they have created a term, *karoshi*, to describe death that results from work overload. Under Japanese law, bereaved family members may be entitled to special financial compensation if they are able to prove that the cause of their family member’s death was *karoshi*.**

In many parts of the world, the nature of work has been changing, from farming to manufacturing to *knowledge work*. In addition, more work today is being outsourced to temporary employees or being done via *telecommuting* by people connecting electronically from home and other remote workplaces.

People are changing jobs more often today than in the past, between 10 and 15 times during a typical career. Between ages 18 and 27, the average worker in the United States holds eight jobs, with those who are college educated changing jobs more often than those with less education (U.S. Bureau of Labor Statistics, 2012). Changing jobs can be stressful. One study found that people who frequently changed jobs before age 36 were more likely to have a variety of health problems by age 42 (Kinnunen and others, 2005).

For several reasons, the older a worker is, the more stressful a job change becomes (Rix, 2011):

* A loss of job seniority often means a lower salary, a loss of respect, and other disadvantages.
* Older workers may be lacking in newer job skills that didn’t even exist when they started working many years earlier. Consequently, many employers are reluctant to hire older workers, so these workers may have trouble even finding a new job in the first place, let alone adjusting to the new situation.
* Although age discrimination is illegal, many older workers believe it is common.
* Having to relocate for a new job is often disruptive to a worker’s social network.

This and other factors cause some experts to wonder whether achieving a single vocational identity is still possible, or even desirable. Career flexibility seems especially important for young workers. Young people entering today’s workplace sometimes feel that success and failure, hiring and firing,are unrelated to their education, skills, and motivation. In this type of environment, commitment to a specific career may limit rather than increase job success.

Another important factor is the quality of fit between workers and their work environment. Income and benefits are not the only, or even the most important factors, in how satisfied workers are with their jobs. John Holland (1997) identified six personality and work environment types, arguing that people who work in environments similar to their personalities are more likely to be satisfied and successful. According to the *theory of person–environment congruence*, most people fit into one of six types: *realistic* (doers), *investigative* (thinkers), *artistic* (creators), *social* (helpers), *enterprising* (persuaders), and *conventional* (organizers).

A considerable amount of research has tested, and provides moderate support for, the central idea of Holland’s theory—that the interaction between personality and the work environment is crucial to worker well-being (*American Psychologist*, 2008). However, the theory does have its critics, including those who point to the results of several large meta-analytic studies showing a much weaker association between the personality types and expected outcomes (Arnold, 2004; Spokane, Meir, & Catalano, 2000). Nevertheless, Holland’s model is widely used in career counseling by the U.S. Department of Labor and many other organizations.

Work environments that satisfy one’s need to belong by offering positive relationships with colleagues energize employees and contribute to *employee engagement*—the extent to which workers feel involved and enthusiastic and identify with their jobs (Carmeli and others, 2009). Workers who say they have a “best friend at work” are seven times more likely to feel a healthy sense of engagement in their jobs (Rath and Harter, 2010). Positive, engaged employees are more creative, persistent, helpful, and possibly productive (Ng and others, 2009; Kaplan and others, 2009). An analysis of data from over 198,000 U.S. workers in 36 large companies found that engaged workers (compared with those who were disengaged and just putting in time) felt fulfilled by their work, had opportunities to develop new skills, knew what was expected of them, and had the resources necessary to do what was expected of them (see [**Your Health Assets: The Gallup Workplace Audit**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B4-10)).

## Social-Evaluative Threat

Even a job environment to which a person is well matched can present momentary stressors. One is the threat of negative evaluations from others. While [**social-evaluative threat**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term312) is not limited to the workplace, and is a central stressor in many models of the stress and health (Dickerson, Gruenwald, & Kemeny, 2004), evaluations are a frequent, and explicit, experience in many jobs. Feeling accepted, liked, and included by others is a basic social motive, as are the prospects of achievement, protection of status, and gaining respect (Kenrick, Griskevicius, Neuberg, & Shaller, 2010). Social evaluation poses a threat to these positive health resources and, not surprisingly, has been associated with increased physiological arousal in the workplace, classroom, and other environments (Taylor and others, 2010; Smith, Birmingham, & Uchino, 2012).

## social-evaluative threat

A stressor in which people fear negative evaluation by others of their appearance or ability.

## *Your Health Assets*: The Gallup Workplace Audit

On a scale of 1 to 5, where 1 is “strongly disagree” and 5 is “strongly agree,” indicate your agreement with the following statements.

* 1. I know what is expected from me at work.
* 2. I have the materials and equipment I need to do my work right.
* 3. At work, I have the opportunity to do what I do best every day.
* 4. In the last seven days, I have received recognition or praise for doing good work.
* 5. My supervisor, or someone at work, seems to care about me as a person.
* 6. There is someone at work who encourages my development.
* 7. At work, my opinions seem to count.
* 8. The mission/purpose of my company makes me feel my job is important.
* 9. My associates (fellow employees) are committed to doing quality work.
* 10. I have a best friend at work.
* 11. In the last six months, someone at work has talked to me about my progress.
* 12. This last year, I have had opportunities at work to learn and grow.

A notable example of this fear of negative evaluation is [**stereotype threat**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term317), first described by an African-American researcher who called it a “threat in the air.” Stereotype threat begins with the thought that other people hold prejudices against one’s social group, and then that thought becomes a stressor. In reality, those other people may not hold those stereotypes, but the possibility that they do may be stressful (Inzlicht & Schmader, 2012).

## stereotype threat

The experience of stress in a situation where a person’s ability, appearance, or other characteristic has the potential to confirm a negative viewpoint about his or her social group.

## Overload

Even a job environment to which a person is well matched can become a stressor if there is *work overload*. People who feel they have to work too long and too hard at too many tasks feel more stressed (Caplan & Jones, 1975). They also have poorer health habits (Sorensen, 1985), experience more accidents (Quick & Quick, 1984), and suffer more health problems than do other workers (Repetti, 1993). As one example, chronic activation of the part of the neuroendocrine system that controls reactions to stress, which has been linked to overcommitment, increases the risk of cardiovascular disease (Steptoe, Siegrist, Kirschbaum, & Marmot, 2004), as does incomplete rest during weekends and vacations (Kivimaki and others, 2006). Concern about the adverse health consequences of work overload in Japan—where *karoshi* (working to death) has been linked to excessively long workdays and weeks, fragmented sleep schedules, and infrequent time off—has been followed by a reduction in work hours in the country over the past decade (Kanai, 2009).

A key factor in the relationship between the number of work hours and worker satisfaction is whether employees can choose their own schedules. Workers who volunteer for paid overtime, for example, are usually more satisfied than workers who are required to work overtime (Klaus and others 2012).

## Combining Work and Family

A related form of stress occurs when people attempt to balance several different jobs at the same time and experience *role overload*. A large study of adult Canadians found that about half of the variation in their self-reported stress was related to employment (working conditions, support at work, occupation, job security), but at least as much was related to family (having children younger than 5 or inadequate amount of support at home) and feeling personally competent (Marchand and others, 2012).

The problems associated with juggling multiple roles simultaneously have been particularly great for women. Today, most mothers, even those with the youngest children, participate in the labor force (DPE, 2009). Studies have supported two competing hypotheses. One, the *scarcity hypothesis*, maintains that because they have only so much time and energy, women with competing demands suffer from role overload and conflict. The other, the *enhancement hypothesis*, argues that the benefits of meaningful work in enhancing a worker’s self-esteem outweigh the costs.

To study this issue further, Ulf Lundberg of the University of Stockholm and colleagues developed a “total workload scale” to quantify the number of competing demands in women’s lives (Lundberg, Mardberg, & Frankenhaeuser, 1994). Using this scale, Lundberg found that age and occupational level don’t make much difference in women’s total workload. The presence of children, however, makes a huge difference. In families without children, men and women each average 60 hours of work a week. In a family with three or more children, women average 90 hours a week in paid and unpaid work, while men still average only 60. “Women’s stress is determined by the interaction of conditions at home and work,” noted Lundberg, “whereas men’s stress is determined more by situations at work.”

## Role Overload

**The task of managing multiple roles affects both men and women, but the increase in employment of women has triggered more research on role overload and job-related stress in women. Some research findings regarding the stress of role overload have been contradictory; however, the overall conclusion seems to be that what matters most is the quality of a working mother’s experiences in her various roles.**

AnthonyRosenberg/[**iStockphoto.com**](http://istockphoto.com/)

In another classic study of psychological and physiological responses related to work and family, Lundberg and Marianne Frankenhaeuser (1999) investigated female and male managers in high-ranking positions. While both women and men experienced their jobs as challenging and stimulating, women were more stressed by their greater unpaid workload and by a greater responsibility for duties related to home and family. Physiologically, women had higher norepinephrine levels than men did, both during and after work, which reflected their greater workload. Women with children at home had significantly higher norepinephrine and cortisol levels after work than did the other participants.

Although findings along with Lundberg’s seem to support the scarcity hypothesis, other researchers have found that, overall, the multiple roles of employee, wife, and mother offer health benefits for women (LaCroix & Haynes, 1987; Schnittker, 2007). Moreover, for many working mothers, employment is an important source of self-esteem and life satisfaction. Whether multiple roles are associated with adverse or beneficial health effects depends heavily on the resources people have available to them. Women who are raising children without a partner are especially likely to feel stressed (Livermore & Powers, 2006); they also may be at risk for health problems (Hughes & Waite, 2002). Indeed, researchers have found that those adults—both men and women—who perceive support and are able to balance vocational, marital, and parental roles generally are healthier and happier than adults who function successfully in only one or two of these roles (Hochschild, 1997; Milkie & Peltola, 1999).

From studies such as these, researchers have concluded that what matters most is not the number of roles that a person occupies, but the quality of the experience in those roles. Having control over one’s work, a good income, adequate child care, and a supportive family combine to help reduce the likelihood that multiple role demands will be stressful. Similarly, although people often complain that working long hours creates stress, researchers consistently find that stress symptoms, sick days, and overall life satisfaction are more likely to be influenced by other workplace characteristics, such as job autonomy, learning opportunities, supportive supervisors, and scheduling flexibility (Schwartz, 2003). These findings are similar to those related to the potential stress associated with caregiving. The roles may be burdensome, but work and caregiving can also provide satisfaction and a feeling of empowerment (Mitchell, 2011).

Fortunately, partners often adjust to each other’s work, which helps them function well as a unit (Abele & Volmer, 2011). For instance, many husbands spend more hours working after marriage, while their wives spend more hours maintaining the home (Kuperberg, 2012).

If there are children, partners adjust their work and child-care hours, usually with the mother cutting back on employment, but not always—sometimes the father has fewer outside-the-home work hours and the mother has more. When mothers work full time, fathers often spend far more time with their children, and mothers do less housework (Abele & Volmer, 2011).

## Burnout

[**Burnout**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term63) has been defined as a job-related state of physical and psychological exhaustion that can occur among individuals who work with other, often needy people in some capacity (Maslach, 2003). Jobs that involve responsibility for other people, rather than responsibility for products, appear to cause high levels of burnout (Sears, Urizar, & Evans, 2000). Health care workers, dentists, paramedics, air traffic controllers, and firefighters are especially susceptible to this type of job stress. A number of studies have demonstrated that as many as one-third of nurses report stress-related symptoms that are severe enough to be considered a warning sign of psychiatric problems (Fasoli, 2010; Tyler & Cushway, 1992). And one study of 185 physicians and 119 nurses found that emotional stress scores among physicians were nearly 50 percent higher than among nurses (Rutledge & Linden, 2009). Although burnout customarily develops over a period of years, its warning signs and symptoms may appear early on. These include feelings of mental and physical exhaustion; absenteeism; high job turnover (Schernhammer, 20005); abnormal stress hormone levels (Mommersteeg and others, 2006); changes in immune and sympathetic nervous system functioning; an increase in stress-related ailments, such as headaches, backaches, and depression; and shortness of temper (Zanstra and others, 2006).

## Burnout

**Jobs that involve responsibility for other people, rather than responsibility for products, appear to cause high levels of burnout. First responders, such as this young police officer, are especially susceptible to this type of job stress. Physicians also have stressful jobs, partly because of their responsibility for others’ lives, which makes them highly susceptible to burnout.**

Digital Vision/[**Thinkstock.com**](http://thinkstock.com/)

## burnout

A job-related state of physical and psychological exhaustion.

Burnout is not, however, an inevitable consequence of employment in certain professions. As the biopsychosocial model reminds us, susceptibility to most health conditions is the product of overlapping factors in every domain of health. For instance, nurses who have high self-esteem, a strong sense of personal control, and who maintain a hopeful, optimistic view of life are much less likely to experience burnout than their more pessimistic counterparts on chronic care wards, thereby highlighting the protective function of certain personality styles (Browning and others, 2006; Sherwin and others, 1992).

iStockphoto/[**Thinkstock.com**](http://thinkstock.com/)

## Lack of Control

Workers feel more stress when they have little or no control over the procedures, pace, and other aspects of their jobs (Steptoe, Fieldman, & Evans, 1993). The relationship between lack of control and illness was clearly revealed in Marianne Frankenhaeuser’s (1975) classic study of Scandinavian sawmill workers. Compared with workers who had more say over aspects of their jobs, those working at dull, repetitive, low-control jobs had significantly higher levels of stress hormones, higher blood pressure, more headaches, and more gastrointestinal disorders, including ulcers. Even a little bit of control goes a long way to produce beneficial health effects (Montpetit & Bergeman, 2007).

Other studies have confirmed the relationship between perceived control and work-related stress, especially in Western cultures that emphasize individual autonomy and responsibility. One study of British civil servants, for example, found that workers in lowergrade, low-control occupations had poorer health, even after adjustments were made for smoking, diet, and exercise (Hewison & Dowswell, 1994). However, a more recent cross-cultural comparison of British and Japanese populations found that a lower sense of control was associated with stress in British participants, but *not* Japanese participants (O’Connor & Shimizu, 2002).

Lack of control has also been linked to anger and the development of coronary artery disease (Bosma and others, 1997; Fitzgerald and others, 2003), as well as an increased overall risk of death (Amick and others, 2002).

Secretaries, waitresses, factory workers, and middle managers are among those with the most stressful occupations, marked by repetitive tasks and little control over events. Common to these jobs are complaints of too many demands with too little authority to influence work practices. The sense of powerlessness that results often creates crushing stress (Daniels, 2006). Control issues contribute to the experience of stress among others in our society who have felt powerless, including the impoverished, immigrants, and women. (See [**Diversity and Healthy Living: Sociocultural Factors in Stress**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B4-13).)

## Other Sources of Job-Related Stress

Several other aspects of jobs increase stress among workers, including these:

* *Role ambiguity or conflict*. Role ambiguity occurs when workers are unsure of their jobs or the standards used to evaluate their performance. Role conflict occurs when a worker receives mixed messages about these issues from different supervisors or coworkers.
* *Shiftwork*. Shiftwork involves continuous staffing of a workplace by groups of employees who work at different times. Shiftworkers face disruption to their family and domestic lives, as well as to their *biological rhythms*. Most human functions have a rhythm with peaks and valleys that occur over a regular 24- to 25-hour cycle. Shiftwork desynchronizes these rhythms and may lead to a number of health complaints, including headaches, loss of appetite, fatigue, sleep disturbances, gastrointestinal problems, and heart disease (Taylor, 1997; Waterhouse, 1993).
* *Job loss*. Downsizing, layoffs, mergers, and bankruptcies cost thousands of workers their jobs each year. The loss of a job can have a serious impact on a worker’s well-being, putting unemployed workers at risk for physical illness, anxiety, depression, and even suicide (Vinokur and others, 2000). Job insecurity and the threat of unemployment have been linked to lowered immunity (Cohen and others, 2007) and higher levels of several health-compromising risk factors. One study reported higher blood pressure and serum cholesterol levels among Michigan autoworkers who faced the closing of their factory (Kasl, 1997). Other studies have reported increased smoking, alcohol consumption, use of prescription drugs, body weight, and hospital admissions among laid-off workers (Hammarstrom, 1994; Wanberg, 2012). Adults who can’t find employment are 60 percent more likely to die than other people their age, especially if they are younger than 40 (Roelfs, Davidson, & Schwartz, 2011). On the other hand, having job security appears to protect health, and reemployment can reverse the effects of job loss (Cohen and others, 2007).
* *Lack of fairness and inadequate career advancement*. People who feel that they have been promoted too slowly or that they are not getting the recognition they deserve on the job experience more stress and have higher rates of illness (Catalano, Rook, & Dooley, 1986). The sense of fairness is universal, and even encoded in the brain (Hsu and others, 2008). This may explain why even though average household income has doubled in the United States over the past half-century, happiness has not increased. While extreme poverty *is* correlated with unhappiness, most people report being mildly happy, and there are people at every income level who suffer from depression (Diener & Biswas-Diener, 2008). This may explain why absolute income matters less to many people than how their income compares with others in the same job or neighborhood, or to their own salary a year or two ago. Workers are more likely to quit if they believe their salary ranking is unfair (Brown and others, 2008). Workers who have a direct role in setting fair salary levels report higher levels of satisfaction (Choshen-Hillel & Yaniv, 2011). Perceiving fairness in health insurance coverage and other benefits is also very important (Bianchi & Milkie, 2010).

Although job-related stress is difficult to avoid, there are ways to buffer its negative impact. Better ways of responding include knowing what to expect from certain aspects of work (and coworkers), expressing your feelings to increase your perception of control, keeping things in perspective, and avoiding self-defeating thoughts and overreactions. We’ll take up the topic of coping with stress much more fully in [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05).

## Social Support

**Social relationships are an important factor in how we deal with stress, often serving as a buffer against low control and other work stress.**

Asia Images Group/age fotostock

## Social Interactions

The health benefits of social support apply throughout the life span, including during the college years (Hale, Hannum, & Espelage, 2005). At work and elsewhere, social relationships are an important factor in how we deal with stress, often serving as a buffer against low control and other work stress (Fitzgerald and others, 2003). The mechanisms for this effect include enhanced immune functioning (Cohen & Herbert, 1996). Loneliness, for example, appears to affect immune functioning adversely, as does relationship stress (Glaser and others, 1992). Immunosuppression has been linked to interpersonal conflict among married couples (Kiecolt-Glaser and others, 1997; Kiecolt-Glaser & Newton, 2001), women recently separated from their husbands (Kiecolt-Glaser and others, 1987), and men whose wives have recently died (Schleifer and others, 1983). More recent studies have demonstrated that impaired immunity associated with the loss of a loved one occurs primarily among those people who become depressed in response to their bereavement (Zisook and others, 1994).

## Diversity and Healthy Living: Sociocultural Factors in Stress

Many researchers have argued that sociocultural factors may have a greater impact on health than discrete events of everyday life. Several studies have shown that being African-American, poor, an immigrant, or female can be a source of chronic life stress.

African-Americans, Native Americans, and Hispanic-Americans, for example, report significantly more stresses in their everyday lives than do nonminority individuals. This may stem from the racism and subtle oppression that marginalized people feel because their needs often seem peripheral to the concerns of most Americans.

## Poverty

People with the lowest *socioeconomic status* (*SES*) are more likely to suffer ill effects from stress for at least two reasons. First, they invariably experience a greater number of sources of stress, such as overcrowded housing, neighborhood crime, and single parenthood. Second, they are least likely to have the financial resources to help themselves cope with stress (Adler & Matthews, 1994).

Homelessness is one problem faced by many poor people. At least 2.3 million adults and children in the United States are homeless each night (Gladwell, 2006). Homeless children have more fears, more fights, fewer friends, more chronic illnesses, and more changes of school than their peers and are about 14 months behind them academically. Homeless families as a unit also lack a supportive social network to assist them in coping with life. Finally, many homeless families are headed by single mothers striving to cope with the aftereffects of an abusive relationship.

## Immigrant Stress

Immigrants are pressured to become [**acculturated**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term3)—that is, to adopt the cultural values and behaviors of the dominant group in a country. In a diverse, multicultural country such as the United States, acculturation is an issue of increasing concern to health psychologists. In 2000, 28.4 million foreign-born people lived in the United States, representing 10.4 percent of the total population. Among these, 51.0 percent were born in Latin America, 25.5 percent in Asia, 15.3 percent in Europe, and the remaining 8.2 percent in other regions of the world (U.S. Census Bureau, 2000). How do the stresses of acculturation affect health?

## acculturation

The process by which a member of one ethnic or racial group adopts the values, customs, and behaviors of another.

There are two major views of acculturation stress (Griffith, 1983). The *melting pot model* maintains that immigrants who quickly strive to become more like the people who make up the dominant culture experience less acculturation stress. According to this theory, immigrants would minimize their adjustment stress by learning and speaking English and by taking up the customs of mainstream American society.

According to the *bicultural theory*, immigrants experience less stress when they maintain their traditional values and customs while also adapting to the mainstream culture. According to this perspective, a flexible combination of ethnic identity and efforts to adapt to the mainstream culture promote well-being.

Although some health problems have been linked with a failure to become acculturated, the opposite is more often true. Adapting to a new culture is nearly always stressful, especially when one is a member of a marginalized minority group. Consider:

* Highly acculturated Mexican-Americans who were born in the United States have higher rates of depression and substance abuse than those born in Mexico (Hartung, 1987).
* Highly acculturated Hispanic-American women are more likely to be heavy drinkers than are low-acculturated Hispanic-American women (Caetano, 1987). Less rigid American gender roles and a loosening of traditional Latin American constraints on drinking among women may explain this finding.
* Highly acculturated Hispanic-American high school girls are more susceptible than less acculturated girls to eating disorders such as anorexia. Acculturation may make Hispanic-American girls more vulnerable to stereotypes of female attractiveness in mainstream U.S. culture (Pumariega, 1986).

Stress for acculturating persons is usually lower when migration is voluntary rather than forced (that is, for immigrants versus refugees); when there is a functioning social support group (an ethnic community willing to assist during the settlement process); when there is tolerance for diversity within the mainstream culture; and when income, education level, and other background factors help ease the transition from one country to another (Berry, 1997). On this final point, the data are not very encouraging. Consider:

* In 1999, 16.8 percent of foreign-born U.S. residents were living below the poverty level, compared to 11.2 percent of U.S.-born residents (U.S. Census Bureau, 2000).
* Immigrants are less likely to have graduated from high school than native-born residents (67.0 percent and 86.6 percent, respectively). In 1999, more than one-fifth of the foreign-born had less than a ninth-grade education (22.2 percent) compared to about one-twentieth of native-born residents (4.7 percent). Interestingly, the proportions with a bachelor’s degree (or higher) were not significantly different for foreign-born and native-born residents (25.8 and 25.6 percent, respectively).

## Gender

There also seem to be differences in the stress experienced by men and women. In one large-scale study of 1566 women and 1250 men (Matud, 2004), women scored significantly higher in chronic stress and minor daily stressors. Women also rated their daily experiences as more negative and less controllable than did men. Although there was no difference in the number of life events reported in the previous two years, women listed family and health-related events more frequently than the men, who more often cited finance, work-related, and relationship events.

Many women today face a particularly heavy daily workload because they have to handle not only an outside job but also most of the chores at home. As people grow older, this gender discrepancy increases even more. Women age 65 and older are twice as likely as men to report a lot of stress in their lives. Furthermore, significantly more women (49 percent) than men (38 percent) believe that stress has had “a lot” or “some” effect on their health.

All of these sociocultural factors cause stress themselves, but they also may increase an individual’s vulnerability to the ill effects of discrete stressors. It is important to recognize, however, that the extent to which situations are stressful is largely determined by how the individual understands, interprets, and feels about a situation. The impact of a given stressor also depends on the total number of stressors an individual is experiencing and on the degree to which these affect the overall patterns of everyday life. One classic study reported that children coping with only one major stressor such as poverty were no more likely to develop serious psychological problems than children living without this particular stressor. As the number of serious stressors that children had to cope with increased, however, the percentage of children diagnosed with serious psychological health problems also increased (Rutter, 1979).

The caregiving role, in which one person provides the bulk of care for a loved one with a chronic illness, also can be stressful and adversely affect physical health (Vitaliano, Zhang, & Scanlan, 2003). One recent study of parents who were full-time caregivers of adult children with a serious mental illness found higher self-reported stress levels and abnormalities in the daily production of the hormone cortisol (Barker and others, 2012). Caregiving stress has also been linked to poor immune functioning. In a series of studies, Janice Kiecolt-Glaser and colleagues demonstrated that family members who provide care for a relative with Alzheimer’s disease report more depression and lower life satisfaction than those in the control group (matched family members with no caregiving responsibilities). Caregivers also have lower percentages of T cells and other measures of immunosuppression, as well as concurrent *overproduction* of proinflammatory cytokines (Kiecolt-Glaser and others, 1996, 2003). Overproduction of cytokines has been associated with a broad array of adverse health conditions, including cardiovascular disease, arthritis, Type 2 diabetes, and certain cancers. Ethnic minorities, immigrants, those who are poor, and women often experience the most intense social stress (see the [**Diversity and Healthy Living**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B5-10) box).

## The Physiology of Stress

A decade before Hans Selye’s discovery, physiologist Walter Cannon introduced the term *stress* to medicine (Cannon, 1932). Cannon observed that extremes of temperature, lack of oxygen, and emotion-arousing incidents all had a similar arousing effect on the body. He was the first to call this effect *stress*, and he believed that it was a common cause of medical problems.

In one of Cannon’s studies, cats were frightened by the sound of a barking dog. Cannon discovered that large amounts of the hormone epinephrine could later be detected in the cats’ blood. Cannon called this response to stressful events the body’s *fight-or-flight reaction*. An outpouring of epinephrine, along with cortisol and other hormones, helps prepare an organism to defend itself against a threat, either by attacking or by running away.

Working from an evolutionary perspective, this emergency response system seems highly functional and adaptive. It undoubtedly was essential to our ancestors’ survival in a time when human beings faced numerous physical threats and had to either fight or run away. Today, in our modern, highly developed societies, our stressors are apt to be psychological as well as physical, but we still react as though we are facing a standoff with a wild animal. According to neuroscientist Robert Sapolsky, this explains why humans and their primate cousins get more stress-related diseases than any other member of the animal kingdom. All vertebrate animals respond to stressful situations by releasing hormones such as adrenalin and cortisol. Fish, birds, and even reptiles secrete the same hormones as humans, but they do not appear to suffer the same health consequences as humans and other primates. In Sapolsky’s words, primates, like humans, “are super smart and organized just enough to devote their free time to being miserable to each other and stressing each other out. We’ve evolved to be smart enough to make ourselves sick.” The result is that even non-life-threatening stressors, such as worrying about money or pleasing the boss, trigger the same hormonal response (Sapolsky, 2004b, 2010).

Many of Sapolsky’s insights come from his 30-year field study of wild African baboons, highly social and intelligent primates that, like unhealthy people, often have elevated resting levels of stress hormones despite facing a relatively low level of threat from predators, lack of food, or other life-threatening problems. Baboons who have the lowest rank in the troop and those that are socially isolated are most likely to show stress-induced changes in their physiology. In addition to having elevated resting levels of epinephrine and cortisol, their reproductive systems function less well, their blood pressure is elevated, and their wounds heal more slowly. High-status baboons that frequently have to defend their dominant position physically are also likely to show these adverse physiological changes (Sapolsky, 2005). What that means, says Sapolsky, is that if you are a baboon living in a troop in the Serengeti, you “only have to work three hours a day for your calories, predators don’t mess with you much … and you’ve got nine hours of free time every day to devote to generating psychological stress toward other animals in your troop” (Shwartz, 2007).

**Research conducted in the mid-1990s demonstrated that the bacterium *Helicobacter pylori*—not stress—is the major cause of most ulcers. Nevertheless, many people continue to believe that stress causes ulcers. Even some physicians continue to recommend that their patients with ulcers take antacids rather than the recommended antibiotics. Stress impairs the immune system, which makes people more susceptible to bacterial infection**.

It is important to note, however, that when stressors are short-lived, and when they are perceived as challenges rather than threats, they can have positive effects. Momentary stressors mobilize the immune system for fighting off infections and healing wounds (Segerstrom, 2007). In addition, many experts—from champion athletes to professional entertainers—thrive on challenges, and find that their performances improve (Blascovich and others, 2004). Selye himself recognized this in his concept of *eustress* (from the Greek prefix *eu-*, meaning “good” or “well”), by which he meant that challenging events can lead to growth if they enhance our functioning, just as working the body by lifting weights ultimately improves a person’s muscular strength.

## The Role of the Brain and Nervous System

The body’s overall reaction to stress is regulated by the central nervous system. Recall from [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03) that the nervous system consists of two parts, the *central nervous system* (the brain and the spinal cord) and the *peripheral nervous system*. The peripheral nervous system is divided into two major branches: the *autonomic nervous system* (*ANS*) and the *somatic nervous system*. Finally, the ANS is further divided into two branches: the *sympathetic nervous system* (*SNS*) and the *parasympathetic nervous system* (*PNS*).

When an external event is first perceived by your sense organs, sensory neurons in the somatic nervous system transmit nerve impulses to lower-level brain regions announcing the impending threat. The *reticular formation*, which runs like a rope through the middle of the brainstem, plays a central role in alerting the brain to an impending threat or challenge.

The reticular formation coordinates two neural pathways of brain–body communication. Through the first, it routes information about the existence of a potential stressor to the *thalamus*, which sorts this sensory information and relays it to the *hypothalamus*, the *limbic system*, and higher brain regions in the cerebral cortex that interpret the meaning of the potential stressor. Through the second pathway, the reticular formation carries neural instructions back from the higher brain regions to the various target organs, muscles, and glands controlled by the SNS; as a result of these instructions, the body is mobilized for defensive action.

Under instructions from the SNS, the adrenal glands release hormones that cause the fight-or-flight response, in which heart rate increases, the pupils dilate, stress hormones are secreted, and digestion slows. In addition, SNS activation increases blood flow to the muscles and causes stored energy to be converted to a form that is directly usable by the muscles. The region of the brain that most directly controls the stress response is the hypothalamus. Nearly every region of the brain interacts in some way with the hypothalamus. For this reason, the hypothalamus reacts to a variety of stimuli, from actual threats to memories of stressful moments to imagined stressors. The hypothalamus coordinates the activity of the endocrine system, and, as we will see, the endocrine system’s hormones play a key role in how we respond to stress.

## The Role of the Endocrine System: The SAM and HPA Systems

As we saw in [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03), the endocrine system is the body’s relatively slow-acting communication system consisting of a network of glands that secrete hormones directly into the bloodstream. This communication system is involved in our stress responses in two key ways. First, under stress, the hypothalamus orders the pituitary gland to secrete *adrenocorticotropic hormone* (*ACTH*), which is taken up by receptors in the *adrenal glands*, a pair of small endocrine glands lying just above the kidneys. Each of these remarkable structures consists of two nearly independent glands: a central region called the *adrenal medulla* and an outer covering called the *adrenal cortex*. Like soldiers following orders from a general to launch a defensive counterattack, when so ordered by the hypothalamus via the pituitary gland, the adrenal medulla secretes *epinephrine* (also called *adrenaline*) and *norepinephrine* (also called *noradrenaline*) into the blood. These endocrine reactions, which help trigger the fight-or-flight response, last much longer than those generated directly by the SNS. Taken together, the interaction of the SNS and adrenal medulla is called the [**sympatho-adreno-medullary (SAM) system**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term330) ([**Figure 4.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F4-1)), also called the *adrenomedullary system*(Kemeny, 2003).

## Figure 4.1: The Body’s Response to Stress

**During a moment of stress, the hypothalamus secretes releasing factors that coordinate the endocrine responses of the pituitary and adrenal glands. As part of the sympatho-adreno-medullary system (SAM), the adrenal medulla releases the stress hormones epinephrine and norepinephrine as the body’s initial, rapid-acting response to stress. Epinephrine and norepinephrine increase heart rate, breathing, and blood pressure; slow digestion; and dilate the pupils. A second, delayed response involves the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenocortical (HPA) system, which triggers secretion of corticosteroids from the adrenal cortex. These steroid hormones fight inflammation, promote healing, and trigger the release of stored reserves of energy.**

## sympatho-adreno-medullary (SAM) system

The body’s initial, rapid-acting response to stress, involving the release of epinephrine and norepinephrine from the adrenal medulla under the direction of the sympathetic nervous system.

The endocrine system is involved in stress in a second, equally important way. This second way involves the hypothalamus, the pituitary gland, and the adrenal cortex, or what has been called the [**hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenocortical (HPA) system**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term179). While the SAM system is the body’s initial, rapid-acting response to stress, the HPA system is a delayed response that functions to restore the body to its baseline state, a process known as [**homeostasis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term172). The HPA system is activated by messages relayed from the central nervous system to the hypothalamus, which in turn secretes *corticotropin-releasing hormone* (*CRH*). CRH stimulates the production of ACTH by the pituitary gland, which then activates the adrenal cortex to secrete [**corticosteroids**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term104), steroid hormones that reduce inflammation, promote healing, and help mobilize the body’s energy resources.

## hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenocortical (HPA) system

The body’s delayed response to stress, involving the secretion of corticosteroid hormones from the adrenal cortex.

## homeostasis

The tendency to maintain a balanced or constant internal state; the regulation of any aspect of body chemistry, such as the level of glucose in the blood, around a particular set point.

## corticosteroids

Hormones produced by the adrenal cortex that fight inflammation, promote healing, and trigger the release of stored energy.

Stressors are normally short-lasting events. Just as the hypothalamus initiates the stress response, it also shuts it down—normally before the body is damaged. The mechanism involves cortisol, a corticosteroid hormone that has a potent effect on all the body’s tissues, including raising glucose levels in the blood, stimulating the breakdown of proteins into amino acids, and inhibiting the uptake of glucose by the body tissues but not by the brain (Kemeny, 2003). In a finely tuned *feedback* mechanism, cortisol acts on the hippocampus, which has a high density of cortisol receptors and neurons that project to the hypothalamus, signaling the pituitary to suppress the further release of CRH and ACTH. As the amount of ACTH in the blood decreases, the adrenal cortex shuts down its production of cortisol.

The rate of cortisol secretion, which is remarkably sensitive to psychological factors and peaks about 30 minutes after a stressor occurs, is so closely linked to stress that the level of this hormone circulating in the blood or saliva is frequently used by health psychologists as a physiological index of stress. For some people, even a seemingly ordinary event such as boarding an airplane can trigger a large increase in cortisol, which means, of course, that CRH has already been released from the hypothalamus and ACTH from the pituitary (Thompson, 2000).

All of these endocrine system actions help the organism deal with stress. Faced with a threat, the brain needs energy in the form of glucose, which cortisol helps provide. But too much cortisol can have negative consequences, leading to hypertension, a decrease in the body’s ability to fight infection, and perhaps psychological problems as well. When Robert Sapolsky studied wild-born vervet monkeys that farmers had trapped and caged in groups to protect their crops, he found that a number of the monkeys became sick and died, especially those that were caged with other monkeys that were especially aggressive. Autopsies of the monkeys showed high rates of bleeding ulcers, enlarged adrenal glands, and something else: pronounced damage to the hippocampal regions of their brains, perhaps as the result of prolonged high cortisol levels triggered by the prolonged stress (Sapolsky, 2004a). Normally regulated by the hippocampus, cortisol levels can spiral upward when, in response to unrelenting stress, more and more cortisol is secreted and the hippocampus is damaged, leaving it unable to signal the hypothalamus to shut off the stress response (Morgan and others, 2001). This condition of *hypercortisolism*, as well as a more prolonged activation of the HPA system, has been linked to the rate of cognitive decline in individuals with Alzheimer’s disease (Suhr, Demireva, & Heffner, 2008). It’s associated with a disruption in the brain’s production of new neurons (Mirescu & Gould, 2006), observed in patients suffering from anorexia nervosa (Haas and others, 2009), and described as evidence of premature aging (Sapolsky, 1990). High salivary levels of cortisol are also associated with shyness at age 10 (Schmidt and others, 2007). In a less well understood phenomenon, the HPA axis may become underactive in some individuals in the face of chronic stress, creating a state of adrenal exhaustion and chronically low levels of cortisol (*hypocortisolism*) (Heim, Ehlert, & Hellhammer, 2000). Immune diseases such as fibromyalgia, rheumatoid arthritis, and asthma have all been associated with this state of blunted cortisol production.

## Measuring Stress

Health psychologists have used a variety of approaches to measure stress, most of which fall into two categories: self-report inventories and physiological measures. Self-reports such as life events inventories and daily hassle scales are the most common, but as we have seen, they have many limitations in their reliability and validity.

A major disadvantage of self-reports is that information that is recalled long after significant events have occurred is often inaccurate. To overcome this limitation, health psychologists increasingly rely on self-reports made closer in time to the events they are investigating. This new approach, called [**ecological momentary assessment (EMA)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term123), involves repeated sampling of people’s behaviors and experiences in real time, and in their natural environment (Shiffman, Stone, and Hufford, 2008). EMA can take several forms (Wenze and Miller, 2010). One is the collection of information at specified time intervals, such as via entries in once-a-day diaries. This approach asks research participants to look back, at the end of the day, and report about mood, stressors, social interactions, and other variables. To reduce the reliance on memory even further, EMA may require the reporting of information several times a day. One example of this type of measurement is *signal-contingent recording* (also called an ambulatory diary record), in which reports are requested in response to a signal from a personal digital assistant (PDA), smart phone, or other reminder device that occurs a fixed number of times per day on a random schedule (Smith, Birmingham, & Uchino, 2012).

## ecological momentary assessment (EMA)

A method of measuring stress that involves repeated sampling of people’s behaviors and experiences in real time, and in their natural environment.

## Physiological Measures

Given the limitations of self-report measures, many researchers have relied on physiological and biochemical measures of stress instead. Physiological measures include changes in heart rate, blood pressure, respiration rate, and the electrical conductance of the skin (a measure of sweating). Changes in these measures occur in response to stress- or emotion-induced activation of the sympathetic division of the autonomic nervous system. With advances in technology, many of these measures can be made outside the laboratory with ambulatory monitoring equipment that allows research participants to go about their daily activities. For example, *ambulatory blood pressure*(*ABP*) is recorded via a cuff worn under the participants’ clothing and a small control box (approximately 5.0 × 3.5 × 1.5 inches) attached to their belt (Smith, Birmingham, & Uchino, 2012).

More commonly, health psychologists measure stress via its association with hormones such as cortisol, epinephrine, and norepinephrine (Eller, Netterstrom, & Hansen, 2006). Epinephrine and norepinephrine levels are typically measured in either blood or urine samples, and cortisol is measured via a sample of saliva. These measures have several advantages, including being highly reliable and easily quantified. They are not, however, problem-free. Blood levels of hormones decrease quickly (within minutes) after a stressful experience, so researchers must be very quick to obtain accurate measurement. Hormone levels generally persist longer in urine but also are influenced by factors unrelated to stress.

## How Does Stress Make You Sick?

Biomedical researchers who study mind–body connections in disease were once ostracized from the scientific community. Harvard University’s Herbert Benson notes that when he began doing his research 30 years ago, he was told he was jeopardizing his medical career (Sternberg, 2000). Things began to change when two remarkable discoveries were made that would forever change the face of medicine. The first was an accident. Working in a laboratory at the University of Rochester, psychologist Robert Ader had been conducting a classic Pavlovian learning experiment, attempting to condition laboratory rats to avoid saccharin-flavored drinking water. The design of the study was simple. After the rats were given a drink of the artificially sweetened water (a neutral stimulus), they received an injection of a drug (unconditioned stimulus), which made them nauseous (unconditioned response)—sick enough so that a single pairing of the two stimuli should have been sufficient to establish a *conditioned aversion* to the water.

But Ader discovered a problem. Over the course of several weeks of training and testing, a number of the rats became very sick and died. Puzzled by this development, Ader found that the number of virus- and infection-fighting T lymphocytes was reduced significantly in the bodies of the experimental animals. The nausea-inducing drug apparently had a more serious impact on the rats—it suppressed their immune responses ([**Figure 4.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F4-2)).

## Figure 4.2: Conditioning the Immune Response

**After Robert Ader and Nicholas Cohen paired saccharin-flavored water with an immune-suppressing drug, the taste of the sweetened water alone elicited a conditioned response (immune suppression) in laboratory rats.**

What was most remarkable in Ader’s experiment was that when these same rats were given saccharin-flavored water alone, without the drug, their immune systems responded as if the drug were actually circulating in their bloodstream. Classical conditioning had created a learned association between the taste of the water as a conditioned stimulus and the suppression of T cells as a conditioned response. Over time, conditioned responding made the animals increasingly susceptible to disease as their immune reserves were weakened with each drink of sweetened water.

Before Ader’s study, most biomedical researchers believed that the mind and body were, for the most part, independent systems that had no influence on one another. So entrenched was this belief that Ader himself had difficulty accepting the results of his own research. Good science demands replication of findings, so Ader teamed up with immunologist Nicholas Cohen to see if his initial findings were a fluke. They were not. In a subsequent series of experiments, Ader and Cohen (1985) demonstrated that the immune system could be conditioned, just as Ivan Pavlov had demonstrated that the salivary response could be conditioned in hungry dogs.

The second key discovery that changed medicine was neuroscientist Candace Pert’s demonstration that the brain has receptors for immune molecules that enable the brain to monitor, and therefore influence, the activity of the immune system (Pert, 2003). As an example of this communication network (illustrated in [**Figure 3.13**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F3-13) in [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03)), consider that when antigens induce an immune response, cells in the hypothalamus become more active. This may occur when T cells that have been activated by antigens release proinflammatory cytokines. Recall from [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03) that cytokines are protein molecules produced by immune cells that have a multitude of biological effects, including serving as a means of intercellular communication. These chemicals, which attract macrophages and stimulate phagocytosis at wound and infection sites, are similar in structure to neurotransmitters (the chemical messengers in the process of neural communication). Cytokines look enough like neurotransmitters to bind to receptor sites on brain cells and trigger nerve impulses. The apparent interchangeability between neurotransmitters and cytokines suggests that the immune system’s lymphocytes may, in effect, act as circulating “language translators,” converting information from their direct contact with pathogens into the language of the central nervous system so that the brain can monitor and regulate the immune response.

The work of Ader, Cohen, and Pert gave credibility to George Solomon’s landmark article, published a decade earlier, in which he coined the term [**psychoneuroimmunology (PNI)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term279), referring to a “speculative theoretical integration” of the links among emotions, immunity, and disease (Solomon & Moos, 1964). This word describes a great deal about its focus: *psycho* for psychological processes, *neuro* for the neuroendocrine system (the nervous and hormonal systems), and *immunology* for the immune system. Focusing on three areas of functioning that at one time were believed to be relatively independent, PNI researchers investigate interactions between the nervous and immune systems, and the relationship between behavior and health ([**Figure 4.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F4-3)). An important goal of PNI is to conduct basic research that can be applied to health care (PNIRS, 2010).

## Figure 4.3: Research Themes in Psychoneuroimmunology

**The goal of psychoneuroimmunology research is to reveal the many ways that behaviors and health are interrelated, with a focus on the immunological mechanisms that underlie these interactions.**

**Source:** Irwin, M.R. (2008). Human psychoneuroimmunology: 20 years of discovery. *Brain, Behavior, and Immunity, 22*, 129–139.

## psychoneuroimmunology (PNl)

The field of research that emphasizes the interaction of psychological, neural, and immunological processes in stress and illness.

Since these watershed studies, the evidence for coordinated interactions among the brain, the neuroendocrine system, and the immune system has mounted quickly. There are hundreds of published studies examining the relationship between stress and immune functioning in humans (Segerstrom & Miller, 2004). Taken together, these studies demonstrate that short-term stressors, such as loud noises and electric shocks in the laboratory (or, in the real world, being called on by a professor in class), can have a positive effect by triggering an increase, or *up-regulation*, of natural immunity. Longer-lasting, chronic stressors, however, can have damaging effects by suppressing immunity.

Reduced immune functioning (*immunosuppression*) has been demonstrated following a divorce, bereavement, unemployment, and stressful bouts of exercise or military training; during exam periods; and when one is experiencing occupational stress. Among the changes observed are reduced numbers of natural killer cells, T cells, and total lymphocytes. And there seems to be a “dose–response” relationship between stress and immunosuppression. College students with the highest levels of overall life stress or the tendency to overreact to stressful events, for instance, show the greatest deficit in their immune response during exam weeks (Kiecolt-Glaser and others, 1984; Workman & La Via, 1987).

Stress is also linked to lowered immune resistance to viral infections. In one study, 47 percent of participants living stress-filled lives developed colds after being inoculated with a rhinovirus, compared to only 27 percent of those inoculated who reported relatively stress-free lives (Cohen and others, 2006). Other studies demonstrate that both children and adults, when subjected to chronic stress, suffer more bouts of flu, herpes virus infections (cold sores and genital lesions), chickenpox, mononucleosis, and Epstein-Barr virus (Cohen & Herbert, 1996; Cohen and others, 2003). Psychological stress has been linked with autoimmune disorders such as rheumatoid arthritis (Rabin, 1999; Straub & Kalden, 2009), as well as coronary artery disease with accelerated progress. This connection occurs as the immune system reacts to stressful events by releasing cytokines that promote inflammation (Rozanski, Blumenthal, & Kaplan, 1999; Steptoe, Hamer, & Chida, 2007).

In addition, stress delays the healing of wounds (Walburn and others, 2009). In one study, married couples who received standardized punch biopsy wounds just prior to a 30-minute argument took a day or two longer to heal than did unstressed couples (Kiecolt-Glaser and others, 2005). In another study, 47 adults were given a standard questionnaire assessing psychological stress before undergoing hernia surgery. Patients who reported higher levels of preoperative stress had significantly slower rates of healing and reported a slower, more painful recovery (Broadbent and others, 2003).

Similar wounds in mice subjected to the stress of being held in a restraining harness healed more slowly than wounds placed in unstressed mice (Kiecolt-Glaser and others, 1998). In this study, the researchers also tested the hypothesis that the slower rate of wound healing reflected activation of the HPA system. This was done in two ways: by assessing serum corticosteroid levels and by blocking the activity of naturally circulating stress hormones in restraintstressed animals with a chemical that binds to corticosteroid receptor sites. In both cases, the results supported the hypothesis: Corticosteroid levels in the stressed mice were six times higher than in the unstressed mice. When their corticosteroid receptors were blocked, the stressed mice healed as well as control animals.

## Pathways from Stress to Disease

How stress influences the immune system is the subject of a great deal of ongoing research. Two hypotheses have been suggested. According to the *direct effect hypothesis*, stress directly influences the nervous, endocrine, and immune systems, each of which can lead to disease. Alternatively, the *indirect effect hypothesis* suggests that immunosuppression is an aftereffect of the stress response (Segerstrom & Miller, 2004).

## The Direct Effect Hypothesis

Stress may directly affect immune efficiency through the activation of the HPA and SAM systems. T cells and B cells have receptors for corticosteroid “stress” hormones (which produce immunosuppression), and lymphocytes have catecholamine (epinephrine and norepinephrine) receptors. Stress activates these systems; the hormones released attach to the receptors of T cells, B cells, and lymphocytes, suppressing the immune response.

A growing body of research supports the direct effect hypothesis. In a recent study, Timothy Smith and his colleagues at the University of Utah (Smith, Birmingham, & Uchino, 2012) explored the direct cardiovascular effects of social stress in daily experience in 94 married, working couples (mean age 29.2 years). The participants completed a daily protocol from 8 a.m. to 10 p.m. that included the working hours and an evening at home with their spouse on the same day. During the 14-hour period of the protocol, each participant wore an ambulatory blood pressure (ABP) monitor that took a reading at random, averaging once every 30 minutes. After each ABP assessment, participants completed an *ambulatory diary record* (ADR) on a smart phone consisting of a battery of questions. The ADR questions were divided into two sections. The first assessed the participants’ posture (sitting, standing, lying down), recent consumption of nicotine, caffeine, alcohol, or a meal (no, yes), temperature (too cold, comfortable, too hot) and other factors that might influence their ABP. The second section included items related to negative affect (“sad,” “frustrated,” “upset”); social-evaluative threat (“Worried about what others think about me” and “Concerned about the impression I am making”); appearance concerns (“Pleased about my appearance right now,” “Feel satisfied with the way my body looks right now”), and ability perceptions (“Confident about my abilities” and “Feel as smart as others”).

In both women and men, momentary reports of social-evaluative threat were associated with higher systolic blood pressure (SBP). This effect was mediated by negative affect. In other words, SBP increased when participants were worried about how their appearance or abilities were being perceived, but only if they also were frustrated or upset. Social-evaluative threat was also associated with higher diastolic blood pressure, but only in women, suggesting that gender may play a role in the extent to which evaluative threat has specific physiological effects that might have an adverse effect on health. Other studies have shown that ABP is linked to the development of future cardiovascular problems (Chida & Steptoe, 2010).

As another example of the direct effects of stress, consider the mounting evidence that family conflict early in life is associated with a variety of later health problems (Miller, Chen, & Parker, 2011). In a recent study, Richard Slatcher and Theodore Robles (2012) investigated the associations between conflict in family environments and daily cortisol levels in preschool children. Each child participant wore an ambulatory assessment device called the Child EAR for one full weekend day. The EAR records ambient sounds while participants go about their daily lives, allowing the researchers to note examples of interpersonal conflict (e.g., Child: “No! I don’t want to!” Parent: “You are going to shut your mouth and be quiet!”). Parents also collected saliva samples from their children at six specified times each day.

The results showed that greater conflict at home was associated with children having a lower *cortisol awakening response* and flatter cortisol responses throughout the day, both of which have been linked to negative health consequences in adulthood, including earlier mortality (Kumari and others, 2011). Flatter cortisol levels are also a marker of the cumulative long-term effects of the body’s physiological response to stress (McEwen, 2007).

## The Indirect Effect Hypothesis

According to the indirect effect hypothesis, stress-induced delays in healing and other adverse health outcomes may occur because stress alters immune processes *indirectly* by encouraging maladaptive behaviors. Among the behavioral risk factors that could delay wound healing through their effects on the immune system are smoking, alcohol and drug abuse, fragmented sleep, not enough exercise, and poor nutrition, each of which has been associated with increased stress (Krueger & Chang, 2008; Steptoe and others, 1996). Smoking, for instance, slows healing by weakening the normal proliferation of macrophages at wound sites and by reducing the flow of blood through vasoconstriction (McMaster and others, 2008; Silverstein, 1992). In addition to healing more slowly, smokers are more likely to develop infections following surgical procedures, perhaps because nicotine and other toxins in cigarette smoke suppress both primary and secondary immune responses by reducing the activities of white blood cells.

As another example of how stress indirectly alters immune processes, consider that deep sleep is associated with the secretion of growth hormone (GH), which facilitates wound healing by activating macrophages to kill bacteria at the wound site (see [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03)). Loss of sleep, or fragmented sleep, results in reduced GH secretion and delayed healing (Leproult and others, 1997; Sander, 2009).

## Duration of Stress

Acute stressors that last half an hour or less (for example, in laboratory studies of stress) produce transient immune changes, with most immune cell parameters returning to prestress levels within an hour or so. Longer-lasting but nevertheless acute stressors, such as stress associated with upcoming exams, also produce temporary changes in cellular immune response. For example, a 10-year series of studies of medical students’ responses to examinations demonstrated that stressed students’ bodies mounted weaker antibody responses to hepatitis B vaccinations than during vacation periods (Glaser and others, 1992). Other studies have confirmed this effect of academic stress; even 5-year-old kindergarteners show elevated cortisol levels on the first day of school (Boyce and others, 1995; Cohen and others, 2000). The fact that a stressor as predictable, benign, and transient as an upcoming exam reliably produces immunosuppression suggests that other, everyday stressors probably do so as well.

The ability to recover after a stressful experience strongly influences the total burden that the experience has on an individual. The neuroendocrine system plays an important role in the concept of [**allostatic load**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term17) (or [**allostasis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term17)), which refers to the cumulative long-term effects of the body’s physiological response to stress (McEwen, 1998, 2011). Stressors that are unpredictable, uncontrollable, of longer duration, and difficult to cope with cause a buildup of allostatic load, which manifests in many ways, including decreased immunity, elevated epinephrine levels, increased abdominal fat, decreased hippocampal size and functioning (leading to problems with thinking and memory), and the overproduction of interleukin-6 and other proinflammatory cytokines. Interestingly, many of these changes also occur with aging, leading some researchers to characterize a high allostatic load as a form of accelerated aging in response to stress. Unchecked, allostatic overload is associated with increased risk of illness and even death (Karlamangla, Singer, & Seeman, 2006). These adverse responses have been observed, for example, among those with lower socioeconomic status (Dowd, Simanek, & Aiello, 2009), prisoners of war (Dekaris and others, 1993), immigrant workers (Kaestner, Pearson, Keene, & Geronimus, 2009), unemployed adults (Arnetz and others, 1991), and earthquake and hurricane survivors (Solomon and others, 1997). We will examine these and other sources of stress later in the chapter.

## allostatic load (allostasis)

The cumulative long-term effects of the body’s physiological response to stress.

## Stress, Inflammation, and Disease

Investigations of the direct and indirect effect hypotheses have given rise to an immunosuppression model of the relationships among stress, immunity, and disease, which nicely summarizes what we’ve discussed thus far. According to this model, stress suppresses the immune system, which leaves the individual vulnerable to opportunistic infection and disease (Miller, Cohen, & Ritchey, 2002) ([**Figure 4.4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F4-4)).

## Figure 4.4: Summary of the Physiology of Stress: Immunosuppression Model

**These conditions compromise the immune system’s capacity to mount an effective response to infection or injury.**

The immunosuppression model offers a plausible explanation for how stress influences wound healing, infectious diseases, and some forms of cancer (see [**Chapter 11**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch11)). But it does not explain how stress might influence diseases whose central feature is excessive inflammation. These include many allergic, autoimmune, rheumatologic, neurologic, and cardiovascular diseases—all of which are exacerbated by stress (Rozanski, Blumenthal, & Kaplan, 1999). Parkinson’s disease, for instance—a neurodegenerative disease that affects more than 1 million Americans—involves a loss of brain neurons that produce dopamine and serotonin (Parkinson’s Disease Foundation, 2010). Victims of Parkinson’s suffer muscular tremors, rigidity of movement, and a slow, 10- to 20-year deterioration in overall health. Inflammation accelerates the development of Parkinson’s, which is why ibuprofen and other nonprescription anti-inflammatory drugs may lower the risk of developing the disease.

Following the immunosuppression model, it might be expected that stress would actually *improve*the course of such diseases by suppressing inflammation! This is unfortunately not the case, however, and emotional stress has been implicated as a major risk factor for Parkinson’s (Agid and others, 2003; Smith and others, 2008). Robert Iacono, a pioneering Parkinson’s researcher and neurologist, notes that most of his patients whose bodies become rigid—the worst form of the disease—suffered three or more major emotional crises a few years before the onset of their symptoms (Schwartz, 2004).

To account for the impact of stress on inflammatory diseases, researchers have proposed a [**glucocorticoid receptor (GCR) resistance model**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term157), the basic premise of which is that chronic stress interferes with the body’s ability to regulate the inflammatory response. Runaway inflammation, in turn, can promote the development and progression of many diseases (Cohen and others, 2012). Specifically, chronic stress disrupts the sensitivity of immune system receptors to glucocorticoid hormones such as cortisol, which normally terminate the inflammatory response. In a test of the model, Gregory Miller and his colleagues measured the perceived stress and immune responsiveness of 25 healthy parents of children undergoing active treatment for cancer, in comparison to 25 healthy parents of medically healthy children. Parents of cancer patients reported higher levels of psychological stress than parents of healthy children *and* were found to have diminished sensitivity to a synthetic glucocorticoid hormone, as revealed by higher levels of cytokine production. Remember that glucocorticoid hormones function as *anti-inflammatory*signals by suppressing the production of *proinflammatory cytokines* by immune cells. Parents of cancer patients showed significantly *less suppression* of cytokine production in response to an administered glucocorticoid compared with parents of healthy children (Miller, Cohen, & Ritchey, 2002). These findings are significant because overproduction of cytokines has been linked with a spectrum of chronic inflammatory diseases and adverse conditions, including cardiovascular disease (discussed in [**Chapter 10**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch10)), osteoporosis, arthritis, Type 2 diabetes, Alzheimer’s disease, periodontal disease, and age-related frailty (Kiecolt-Glaser and others, 2003).

## glucocorticoid receptor (GCR) resistance model

The idea that chronic stress promotes the development and progression of disease by reducing the sensitivity of immune system receptors to glucocorticoid hormones such as cortisol, thereby interfering with the body’s ability to regulate the inflammatory response.

More recently, Sheldon Cohen and his colleagues administered a comprehensive stress interview to 276 health adults who were then exposed to the rhinovirus that causes the common cold. The participants were held in quarantine for five days and monitored for signs of infection and illness. The results demonstrated that those who had recently experienced a prolonged stressful event were more likely to have immune cells that were unable to respond to hormonal signals that normally regulate inflammation. They were also more likely to develop colds when exposed to the virus. “When under stress, cells of the immune system are unable to respond to hormonal control, and consequently, produce levels of inflammation that promote disease,” Cohen said. “Because inflammation plays a role in many diseases such as cardiovascular, asthma and autoimmune disorders, this model suggests why stress impacts them as well” (Cohen and others, 2012).

To sum up, a growing body of psychoneuroimmunological research evidence demonstrates that the immune system does not work in isolation. Rather, it functions as part of a coordinated system involving the brain and the hormone-secreting endocrine system. The brain regulates the production of stress hormones, which in turn influence the body’s immune defenses both directly and indirectly.

## Other Major Models of Stress and Illness

The immune suppression and glucocorticoid resistance models of stress and illness developed from many years of research and from other important models, including Selye’s general adaptation syndrome, the transactional model, the diathesis–stress model, and Taylor’s tend-and-befriend theory. We will consider Selye’s work first.

## Selye’s General Adapation Syndrome

Surely the most significant contribution to our understanding of stress and illness came from the research of Hans Selye, whom you met in the chapter opening story. Selye devised the concept of stress as a “nonspecific response of the body to any demand” (1974, p. 27). The body’s reaction to stress was so predictable that Selye called it the [**general adaptation syndrome (GAS)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term151).

## general adaptation syndrome (GAS)

Selye’s term for the body’s reaction to stress, which consists of three stages: alarm, resistance, and exhaustion.

As [**Figure 4.5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F4-5) shows, GAS consists of three stages. Stage 1, the *alarm reaction*, is essentially the same as Cannon’s *fight-or-flight* response, which we considered earlier. The strength of the alarm reaction depends on the degree to which the event is perceived as a threat.

## Figure 4.5: The General Adaptation Syndrome

**Under stress, the body enters an alarm phase during which resistance to stress is suppressed temporarily. From this, it rebounds to a phase of increased resistance to stress. The body’s resistance can last only so long. In the face of prolonged stress, the stage of exhaustion may be reached. During this final stage, people become more vulnerable to a variety of health problems.**

When a stressful situation persists, the body’s reaction progresses to Stage 2, the *resistance stage*. In this stage, physiological arousal remains high (but not as high as during the alarm reaction) as the body tries to adapt to the emergency by replenishing adrenal hormones. At this time, there is a decrease in the individual’s ability to cope with everyday events and hassles. At this stage, people often become irritable, impatient, and increasingly vulnerable to health problems.

If the stressful situation persists, and resistance is no longer possible, the body enters the final stage of the GAS—the *stage of exhaustion*. At this point, the body’s energy reserves are depleted. Hypocortisolism (depletion of cortisol), for instance, is consistent with this final stage of the syndrome. If stress persists, disease and physical deterioration or even death may occur. For example, one result of exhaustion is increased susceptibility to what Selye referred to as *diseases of adaptation*. Among these are allergic reactions, hypertension, and common colds, as well as more serious illnesses caused by immune deficiencies.

Numerous studies have reinforced Selye’s basic point: Prolonged stress exacts a toll on the body. People who have endured the prolonged stress of combat, child abuse, or a chronic disease may suffer enlarged adrenal glands, bleeding ulcers, damage to the brain’s hippocampus, and abnormalities in several other cerebral areas. More generally, stress disrupts *neurogenesis*, the brain’s production of new neurons (Mirescu & Gould, 2006) and the process by which cells divide. In one study, women who reported high levels of stress as caregivers for children with serious chronic illnesses also displayed a remarkable symptom of premature aging—shorter DNA segments, called *telomeres*, at the ends of chromosomes. Caregivers who reported the highest levels of stress had cells that appeared 10 years older than their true age (Epel and others, 2004). In another study, participants who reported a higher number of ambivalent relationships in their social networks also had shorter telomeres, even after control variables such as age, medication use, and health behaviors were ruled out (Uchino and others, 2012). Telomere shortening, which causes cells to die because they can no longer reproduce, is associated with a wide range of age-related diseases (Starr and others, 2008).

Selye’s belief that all stressors produce the same physiological reactions has been revised in the face of more recent evidence (McEwen, 2005). Newer research demonstrates that stress responses are more specific; that is, they are patterned according to the situations encountered and individual coping behaviors. In one of the earliest demonstrations of physiological specificity, John Mason (1975) found different patterns of epinephrine, norepinephrine, and corticosteroid secretion when stressors differed in their predictability. Some stressors led to increases in epinephrine, norepinephrine, and cortisol, whereas others increased only one or two of these stress hormones. Other studies have confirmed that not all stressors produce the same endocrine responses (Kemeny, 2003).

Selye’s model has also been criticized for largely ignoring how situational and psychological factors contribute to stress. There now is clear evidence that *how* potential stressors are appraised, or perceived, strongly influences their impact on the individual. In one classic study of the role of appraisal, Mason (1975) compared the adrenal responses of two groups of dying patients to a mild physical stressor (heat application). One group consisted of patients who remained in a coma until the moment of death; the other was made up of patients who remained conscious until the moment of death. Postmortem examination revealed that the conscious groups showed symptoms of stress in response to the heat applications, such as enlarged adrenal glands, whereas the coma patients displayed no such symptoms. Results such as these have demonstrated that stress requires the conscious appraisal of potential harm.

## Cognitive Appraisal and Stress

The most influential model describing the importance of conscious appraisal in stress is the [**transactional model**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term345), proposed by Richard Lazarus and Susan Folkman (1984). The fundamental idea behind this model is that we cannot fully understand stress by examining environmental events (stimuli) and people’s behaviors (responses) as separate entities; rather, we need to consider them together as a transaction, in which each person must continually adjust to daily challenges.

## transactional model

Lazarus’s theory that the experience of stress depends as much on the individual’s cognitive appraisal of a potential stressor’s impact as it does on the event or situation itself.

According to the transactional model, the *process* of stress is triggered whenever stressors exceed the personal and social resources that a person is able to mobilize in order to cope. If a person’s coping resources are strong enough, there may be no stress, even when—to another person—the situation seems unbearable. On the other hand, if a person’s coping resources are weak or ineffective, stress occurs, even when—to another person—the demands of a situation can easily be met.

As shown in [**Figure 4.6**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F4-6), appraising an event as stressful means seeing it as a potential challenge, a source of harm, or a threat to one’s future well-being. A *challenge* is perceived when a situation is demanding but ultimately can be overcome, and the person can profit from the situation. Appraisals of harm–loss or threat refer to less positive outcomes. *Harm–loss* is the assessment that some form of damage has occurred already as a result of a situation. An event may be appraised as a *threat* when the person anticipates that a situation may bring about loss or harm at some point *in the future*.

## Figure 4.6: The Transactional Model of Stress

**The impact of a potential stressor, such as the startling sound of a honking horn, depends on a three-step process of cognitive appraisal. During primary appraisal, events perceived as neutral or benign pose no threat as a source of stress. Events perceived as challenging, harmful, or threatening are subjected to a secondary appraisal, during which the individual determines whether his or her coping resources are sufficient to meet the challenge posed by the stressor. Finally, in the reappraisal process, feedback from new information or ongoing coping efforts is used to check on the accuracy of both primary and secondary appraisals.**

When the demands of an event or situation do create stress, our response is not static but instead involves continuous interactions and adjustments—called *transactions*—between the environment and our attempts to cope. Each of us is an active agent who can dramatically alter the impact of a potential stressor through our own personal resources.

Lazarus believes that the transactions between people and their environments are driven by our *cognitive appraisal* of potential stressors. Cognitive appraisal involves assessing (1) whether a situation or event threatens our well-being, (2) whether there are sufficient personal resources available for coping with the demand, and (3) whether our strategy for dealing with the situation or event is working.

When we confront a potentially stressful event, such as an unexpected pop quiz, we engage in a[**primary appraisal**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term270) to determine the event’s meaning. In effect, we ask, “Is this situation going to mean trouble for me?” In the primary appraisal, we interpret an event in one of three ways: *irrelevant; benign-positive;* or challenging or harmful, which is the third possibility considered to be *threatening* ([**Figure 4.6**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F4-6)). If the event is appraised as irrelevant or benign-positive, no physiological arousal—and no stress—occurs.

## primary appraisal

A person’s initial determination of an event’s meaning, whether irrelevant, benign-positive, or threatening.

Once an event has been appraised as a challenge or threat, [**secondary appraisal**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term303) addresses the question, “What can I do to cope with this situation?” At this point, we assess our coping abilities to determine whether they will be adequate to meet the challenge or avoid the potential harm, loss, or threat. If these resources are deemed adequate, little or no stress occurs. When a threat or challenge is high and coping resources are low, stress is likely to occur.

## secondary appraisal

A person’s determination of whether his or her own resources and abilities are sufficient to meet the demands of an event that is appraised as potentially threatening or challenging.

Finally, the transactional model emphasizes the ongoing nature of the appraisal process as new information becomes available. Through [**cognitive reappraisal**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term87), we constantly update our perception of success or failure in meeting a challenge or threat. New information may allow us to turn a previously stressful appraisal into a benign-positive one, as when we gain confidence in our ability to do well on an unexpected pop quiz after successfully answering the first few questions.

## cognitive reappraisal

The process by which potentially stressful events are constantly reevaluated.

Cognitive reappraisal does not always result in less stress, however; sometimes it increases stress. An event originally appraised as benign or irrelevant can take on a threatening character quickly if a coping response fails or if we begin to see the event differently. For example, a job interview that seems to be going very well may become very stressful when the interviewer casually mentions the large number of well-qualified individuals who have applied for the position.

Lazarus’s transactional model has three important implications. First, situations or events are not inherently stressful or unstressful; any given situation or event may be appraised (and experienced) as stressful by one person but not by another. Second, cognitive appraisals are extremely susceptible to changes in mood, health, and motivational state. You may interpret the same event or situation in very different ways on separate occasions. Being forced to wait in traffic may be a minor annoyance on most days; on the day when you are late for an exam, it may seem an insurmountable obstacle. Third, some evidence suggests that the body’s stress response is nearly the same whether a situation is actually experienced or merely imagined. This means that even recalled or imagined appraisals of a situation may elicit a stress response.

How might this work? Recall that the HPA axis and homeostasis are central players in the stress response. When the hypothalamus receives signals from its various inputs (including the cerebral cortex) about conditions that deviate from an ideal homeostatic state (such as reliving an emotionally charged event), corticotrophin-releasing hormone is secreted, which in turn causes the pituitary gland to release ACTH. Then ACTH can stimulate the adrenal cortex to release cortisol, and in this way, the stress-response cascade is triggered by an alarming event, whether real or imagined.

## The Diathesis–Stress Model

Knowing that the stress response varies with how a particular stressor is perceived has led researchers to propose several other models that highlight the interaction of biological and psychosocial factors in health and illness. The [**diathesis–stress model**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term114) proposes that two continuously interacting factors jointly determine an individual’s susceptibility to stress and illness: *predisposing factors* that establish a person’s vulnerability and *precipitating factors* from the environment (Steptoe & Ayers, 2004). The predisposition can result from genetic factors or from prior environmental factors, such as chronic exposure to secondhand tobacco smoke. In most cases, the precipitating environmental factors (stress) are not believed to be specific for a given health condition, whereas predisposing genetic factors (diathesis) are.

## diathesis–stress model

The model that proposes that two interacting factors determine an individual’s susceptibility to stress and illness: predisposing factors in the person (such as genetic vulnerability) and precipitating factors from the environment (such as traumatic experiences).

For instance, some individuals are more vulnerable to illness because their biological systems show greater [**reactivity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term285)—they react more strongly to specific environmental triggers. As one example, Jennifer McGrath (2003) found stable individual differences (diathesis) in children’s blood pressure and heart rate during a stressful mirror-image tracing test. Interestingly, children who displayed the strongest cardiovascular reactivity were more likely to have a family history of hypertension and cardiovascular disease than less reactive children. Another example involves adolescent girls who inherit a specific variation of a gene related to depression called the 5-HTTLPR serotonin transporter gene (diathesis). Findings indicate that these girls are more vulnerable to depression when they experience bullying (stress) (Benet, Thompson, & Gotlib, 2010). Other studies have shown that cardiac reactivity to stress is linked to the risk of heart attack and stroke. For example, researchers studied the responses of 901 Finnish men on a simple test of memory that was designed to elicit a mild state of mental stress. The men under age 55 who displayed the strongest blood pressure reaction during the test also had the most severe blockages in their carotid arteries. The researchers speculate that, like cholesterol, over time blood pressure reactions to stress may injure coronary vessels and promote coronary disease (Kamarck & Lichtenstein, 1998).

## reactivity

Our physiological reaction to stress, which varies by individual and affects our vulnerability to illness.

## Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD)

The diathesis–stress model highlights the fact that different people have different vulnerabilities, resulting in many possible health consequences due to stress combined with diathesis. An extreme case in point is [**post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term266), which historically was diagnosed when a person experienced an overwhelming event so fearful as to be considered *outside the range of normal human experience*. More recently, PTSD has been expanded to include “exposure to an extreme traumatic stressor involving direct personal experience of an event that involves actual or threatened death or serious injury” (APA, 2000).

## post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD)

A psychological disorder triggered by exposure to an extreme traumatic stressor, such as combat or a natural disaster. Symptoms of PTSD include haunting memories and nightmares of the traumatic event, extreme mental distress, and unwanted flashbacks.

Although the traumatic event most often studied is military combat, researchers now also focus on physical attack; diagnosis of a life-threatening illness; or a catastrophic environmental event such as an earthquake, flood, or act of terrorism (Klein & Alexander, 2007). Having a child or adolescent diagnosed with a serious disease like cancer may put parents at increased risk for PTSD (Dunn and others, 2012). Car accidents are the most frequent cause of trauma in men, and sexual assault is the most frequent source of trauma among women. Children who live in violent neighborhoods or in one of the world’s war zones may also show symptoms of PTSD (Garbarino, 1991). In the month following the September 11 terrorist attacks, an estimated 8.5 percent of Manhattan residents experienced symptoms of PTSD (Galea, Nandi, & Vlahov, 2005).

PTSD symptoms include haunting memories and nightmares of the traumatic event, sleep disturbances, excessive guilt, impaired memory, and extreme mental and physical distress. Victims may also suffer flashbacks in which feelings and memories associated with the original event are reexperienced. Other complaints include muscle pains, sensitivity to chemicals and sunlight, and gastrointestinal problems. Those suffering from PTSD also show an increase in inflammatory processes that could promote illness (Shirom and others, 2008). Their bodies produce increased epinephrine, norepinephrine, testosterone, and thyroxin activity that lasts over an extended period of time, and they respond to audiovisual reminders of their trauma with elevated heart rate, blood pressure, and muscle tension. In terms of glucocorticoid secretions, however, PTSD is often associated with hypocortisolism (unnaturally low levels of cortisol) (Yehuda, 2000).

PTSD has also been associated with poor health behaviors that may play a role in the relationship between PTSD and chronic illnesses such as cardiovascular disease (CVD). Data from the prospective Heart and Soul Study of 1024 adults with CVD found that those with PTSD (9 percent) were more likely to be physically inactive, fail to take medications properly, and to use tobacco (Zen and others, 2012).

The concept of vulnerability, or diathesis, is important to keep in mind with PTSD. Several major studies show that, on average, the prevalence of PTSD varies from about 10 percent among soldiers who served in the military but did not see combat in Vietnam, Iraq, or Afghanistan to over 30 percent among those who experienced heavy combat (Dohrenwend and others, 2006; Hoge and others, 2007). Similar prevalence rates have been found among victims of natural disasters, torture, and sexual assault (Stone, 2005).

Biological and familial risk factors have also been implicated in the disorder. For instance, PTSD has been linked to an overly sensitive limbic system, which causes disruptions in the HPA axis, leading to dysregulation of cortisol levels and atrophy of the hippocampus as the traumatic event is “relived” time and time again (Gill and others, 2009). In addition, there is a higher prevalence of PTSD among adult children of family members who themselves have PTSD than among children in families without a history of the disorder, even though these adult children, as a group, do not report a greater exposure to traumatic events (Yehuda, 1999). It is difficult to know, of course, to what extent this is due to biological, genetic, or experiential phenomena because of the large degree of shared environment in families.

## Tend-and-Befriend Theory

Although *fight-or-flight* characterizes the primary physiological response to stress in both females and males, Shelley Taylor and her colleagues have used the evolutionary perspective to propose that females are more likely than males to respond to the same stressors with [**tend-and-befriend**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term334)behaviors that (1) quiet, nurture, and care for offspring in order to protect them from harm (tending) and (2) establish and maintain social networks that facilitate this process (befriending). As is true with other stress behaviors, tend-and-befriend theory “makes sense” from an evolutionary perspective. During the time that stress responses evolved, women and men presumably were selected for different behaviors—men for hunting food and defending against danger, women for foraging food and caring for children.

## tend-and-befriend

A behavioral response to stress that is focused on protecting offspring (tending) and seeking others for mutual defense (befriending).

Like the fight-or-flight response, tend-and-befriend depends on underlying physiological mechanisms, in particular the hormone *oxytocin*, which releases rapidly in response to stressful events, with a strong influence of the hormone estrogen (Taylor and others, 2006). The tend-and-befriend pattern appears to involve the blunting of SNS responses geared toward aggressing or fleeing. Humans and other animals with high levels of oxytocin exhibit calmer, more social, and more maternal behaviors. Taylor’s research suggests that this oxytocin response is more adaptive for females in promoting their own survival, along with that of their offspring (Taylor and others, 2000). Research studies involving both human and nonhuman primates provide support for this hypothesis. In stressful situations, females, compared to males, demonstrated a stronger preference to affiliate and mobilize social support, especially from other females (Bell, 1987; Tamres, Janicki, & Helgeson, 2002). Facing stress, men more often tend to withdraw socially, become aggressive, or turn to alcohol (Campbell, 2010). Sometimes called the “love hormone,” oxytocin administered in the form of a nasal spray has been demonstrated to amplify prosocial behaviors such as trust and within-group cooperation (Mikolajczak and others, 2010). Genetic research also indicates a possible role of the oxytocin receptor gene in the development and expression of aggressive antisocial behavior (Malik and others, 2012).

In summary, the six major models of stress and illness that we’ve discussed have helped us understand several key points:

* Prolonged stress has harmful effects in the body (general adaptation syndrome).
* Stress suppresses the immune system, leaving the individual vulnerable to opportunistic infection and disease (*immunosuppression model*).
* Stress interferes with the immune system’s sensitivity to the glucocorticoid hormones that normally help control inflammation, which helps explain the role of stress in disorders such as asthma and arthritis (*glucocorticoid resistance model*).
* Women and men respond somewhat differently to stressors, with women displaying more behaviors associated with caring for others and relationshipbuilding (*tend-and-befriend theory*), and men displaying more behaviors associated with *fight-or-flight*.
* Our cognitive appraisal of challenges determines whether we experience stress. We constantly interact with and adapt to our environment (*transactional model*).
* Both genetic and environmental factors affect our susceptibility to stress and illness (*diathesis–stress model*).

As this chapter concludes, it is worth remembering that although stress is inescapable, it does offer mixed blessings. Some stress arouses and motivates us and, in the process, often brings out our best qualities and stimulates personal growth. A life with no stress whatsoever would be boring and leave us unfulfilled. The price we pay, though, is the toll that stress may take on our physical and psychological health. Too much stress can overtax our coping abilities and leave us vulnerable to stress-related health problems. Fortunately, there are many things we can do to keep stress at a manageable level. It is to this topic that we turn our attention in the next chapter.

## Weigh In on Health

Respond to each question below based on what you learned in the chapter. **(Tip:** Use the items in “Summing Up” to take into account related biological, psychological, and social concerns.)

* **1.** Describe a situation or event on your campus that can cause students stress. What are the biological, psychological, and sociocultural influences in that situation that help to create the stress?
* **2.** Provide a hypothetical situation to explain each of the models of stress and illness: GAS, the transactional model of stress, the diathesis–stress model, and the tend-and-befriend theory. In each situation, what are some biological, psychological, and social or cultural influences?
* **3.** Reconsider the situation or event that you identified in response to the first question. What have you learned in your reading about the psychosocial sources of stress that might help you better understand this situation and advise those who experience stress from it?

## Summing Up

## Stress: Some Basic Concepts

* **1.** Stress has been defined as both a stimulus and a response. Researchers distinguish among stimulus events that are stressful (stressors), the physical and emotional responses of a person to a stressor, and the overall process by which a person perceives and responds to threatening or challenging events (stress). Stress arises less from events themselves than from how we appraise them.

## Stressors

* **2.** Among the sources of stress that have been investigated are significant life events, catastrophes, daily hassles, environmental stress, and job-related stress. Significant life events and daily hassles have been studied in relation to the prevalence of illness. Daily hassles may interact with anxiety and background stressors to influence a person’s vulnerability to illness. Research exploring environmental stress has focused on the influence of noise, crowding, and pollution on health.
* **3.** Work is a potential source of stress for many people. In many parts of the world, the nature of work has been changing, from farming to manufacturing to knowledge work. In addition, people change jobs more often today and more work is being outsourced to temporary employees or being done via telecommuting. Older workers often face age discrimination. Among the factors that make work stressful are work overload, burnout, role conflict or ambiguity, perceived unfairness, inadequate career advancement, lack of control over work, and the challenge of juggling work and family.
* **4.** The threat of negative evaluations from other people is a potential stressor. Social-evaluative threat is not limited to the workplace and is a central stressor in many models of stress and health.
* **5.** The caregiving role, in which one person provides the bulk of care for a loved one with a chronic illness, also can be stressful and adversely affect physical health.

## The Physiology of Stress

* **6.** Modern research on stress began with Walter Cannon’s description of the fight-or-flight reaction. The body’s response to stress involves the brain and nervous system, the endocrine glands and hormones, and the immune system. During a moment of stress, the hypothalamus secretes releasing factors that coordinate the endocrine response of the pituitary and adrenal glands. The sympatho-adreno-medullary (SAM) system is the primary or first response to stress. Activation of the SAM system leads to increased blood flow to the muscles, increased energy, and higher mental alertness.
* **7.** Humans are not the only species in the animal kingdom who suffer stress-related health problems. Baboons, for instance, are highly social and intelligent animals who, like humans, sometimes display elevated resting levels of stress hormones despite the absence of life-threatening stressors.
* **8.** The hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenocortical (HPA) system is a slower-reacting response to stress that is activated by messages from the central nervous system. HPA activation functions to restore homeostasis to the body. Excessive cortisol production (hypercorticolism) from the adrenal glands, however, may impair immune efficiency.
* **9.** Health psychologists have used a variety of approaches to measure stress, most of which fall into two categories: self-report inventories and physiological measures. A new approach, called *ecological momentary assessment* (*EMA*), involves repeated sampling of people’s behaviors and experiences in real time and in their natural environment.
* **10.** Ader and Cohen’s discovery that the immune system can be conditioned, coupled with Candace Pert’s demonstration that the brain has receptors for immune molecules, gave rise to the subfield known as psychoneuroimmunology (PNI), which is a biopsychosocial model. PNI focuses on the interactions among behavior, the nervous system, the endocrine system, and the immune system.
* **11.** According to the direct effect hypothesis, immunosuppression is part of the body’s natural response to stress. The indirect effect hypothesis maintains that immunosuppression is an aftereffect of the stress response. Animal and human research studies demonstrate that the brain regulates the production of stress hormones, which in turn influence the body’s immune defenses.
* **12.** Stress exacerbates many diseases whose central feature is excessive inflammation, including allergic, autoimmune, rheumatologic, neurologic, and cardiovascular diseases. The glucocorticoid resistance model suggests that this is due to chronic stress interfering with the immune system’s sensitivity to glucocorticoid hormones, such as cortisol, which normally terminate the inflammatory response.

## Other Major Models of Stress and Illness

* **13.** Hans Selye outlined the concept of general adaptation syndrome (GAS) to describe the effects of chronic stress. This syndrome consists of an alarm reaction, a stage of resistance, and a stage of exhaustion. Persistent stress may increase a person’s susceptibility to a disease of adaptation.
* **14.** According to the transactional model, a key factor in stress is cognitive appraisal. In primary appraisal, we assess whether an event is benign-positive, irrelevant, or a potential threat or challenge. In secondary appraisal, we assess the coping resources available for meeting the challenge. Through reappraisal, we constantly update perceptions of success or failure in meeting a challenge or threat.
* **15.** The diathesis–stress model suggests that some people are more vulnerable to stress-related illnesses because of predisposing factors such as genetic weakness. A good example of how this works is seen in post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD).
* **16.** According to the tend-and-befriend theory, women may be more likely than men to display a social response pattern during stressful situations.

## *Chapter 5*: Coping with Stress

[**Responding to Stress**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-1-1)

* [**Approach Coping and Avoidant Coping**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-2-2) [**Problem-Focused and Emotion-Focused Coping**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-2-3)[**Coping, Gender, Genes, and Socioeconomic Status**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-2-4) [**Diversity and Healthy Living:Understanding Gender**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B5-10) [**Coping and Ethnicity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-2-5)

[**Factors Affecting the Ability to Cope**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-1-6)

* [**Hardiness**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-2-7) [**Explanatory Style**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-2-10) [**Your Health Assets:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B5-18) [**Measuring Optimism**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B5-18) [**Personal Control and Choice**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-2-13) [**Social Support**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-2-19) [**Other Factors**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-2-23)

[**Coping Interventions**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-1-28)

* [**Relaxation Therapies**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-2-29) [**Mindfulness-Based Stress Reduction**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-2-31) [**Cognitive Behavioral Therapy**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-2-32)[**Your Health Assets:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B5-34) [**Try Mindfulness-Based Stress Reduction for Yourself**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B5-34) [**Expressive Writing**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L5-2-34)

*As soon as he graduated from high school, Kris Goldsmith fulfilled his childhood dream of serving his country by enlisting in the Army. After completing basic training in 2005, he and the rest of his division deployed to Iraq. Trained as a forward observer in charge of detecting artillery, Private Goldsmith was reassigned to document Iraqi-on-Iraqi violence during the army’s occupation of Sadr City. “I was a 19-year-old kid taking pictures of mutilated men, women, and boys and little girls,” he recalled. “Those are the type of images that never really go away” (Gajilan, 2008*).

*Returning from Iraq when his tour of duty was finished, Goldsmith found himself a changed man. He began drinking heavily every day, sleeping too little or too much, and displaying an uncontrollable and violent temper with family and friends. Despite a promotion to sergeant and receiving the Army Commendation Medal for his service, Kris looked forward to finishing his Army contract and getting his life back to normal. “I just wanted to get out of the Army,” Kris said, “and I figured all my problems would go away once I got out of the service.”*

*His breaking point came the very week he was supposed to get out of the Army. He and his unit received “stop-loss” orders that automatically extended their service past their commitments as volunteers. The orders scheduled an immediate redeployment to Iraq. Before this could take place, however, Kris Goldsmith began experiencing symptoms of what he believed to be a heart attack*.

*After extensive testing, the doctors at the Army Hospital at Fort Stewart said Kris most likely had suffered a panic attack, and they ordered him to report to the behavioral health clinic on the base, where he was told he had an “adjustment disorder with disturbance of emotions and conduct.” He began seeing a psychiatrist, who further diagnosed chronic severe depression, prescribed group therapy and an antidepressant, and then cleared Kris for duty*.

*Feeling helpless and out of options, Kris Goldsmith tried to kill himself the night before he was supposed to return to Iraq. “… So I took a black Sharpie magic marker and I wrote across my arms ‘Stop-loss killed me. End stop-loss now.’ I took my half-bottle of Percocet and… a liter and a half bottle of vodka and downed the Percocet and I chased it with the vodka and drank until I couldn’t drink anymore.”*

*Remarkably, Goldsmith survived his attempted suicide and was discharged from the Army. At 23, he moved in with his parents in Long Island, New York, and began to receive $700 in disability each month after his diagnosis was changed to post-traumatic stress disorder* (*PTSD*).

Why was Kris Goldsmith’s response to military service so lifedisrupting, and nearly fatal? As you saw in [**Chapter 4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch04), appraising a situation or event as stressful does not lead automatically to an adverse physiological and psychological response. In fact, how people deal with stressful events is at least as important as the stressors themselves in determining health or illness.

In this chapter, we will take a biopsychosocial approach in considering the factors that affect how people deal with stress. Those factors include biological influences, such as inherited personality traits and our physiological reactivity level, as well as psychological and social influences, such as coping strategies, outlook on life, perception of control, and amount of social support. Through our journey into the biology and psychology of responding to stress, we will see ample evidence supporting the connection between mind and body. At every turn, biological, psychological, and social forces interact in determining our response to stress. We will conclude with a discussion of coping interventions that can help minimize the ill effects of stress: relaxation and mindfulness training, cognitive behavioral therapy, and emotional disclosure.

## Responding to Stress

When we talk about how people respond to stress, we generally use the word *cope*. [**Coping**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term98) refers to the cognitive, behavioral, and emotional ways that people deal with stressful situations and includes any attempt to preserve mental and physical health—even if it has limited value (Moss-Morris & Petrie, 1997; Taylor & Stanton, 2007).

## coping

The cognitive, behavioral, and emotional ways in which we manage stressful situations.

Coping is a dynamic process, not a one-time reaction—it is a series of responses involving our interactions with the environment (Folkman & Moskovitz, 2004). For example, when you break up with a romantic partner, you may experience physical and emotional reactions, such as overall sadness, inability to sleep or eat, and even nausea. It is not just the initial incident, but alsocontinuing interactions with the environment, that affect your responses. For example, friends’ sympathetic comments and revisiting special places may trigger a greater response. Together, these responses form our style of coping with stress.

## Approach Coping and Avoidant Coping

The two most basic styles of coping are [**approach (vigilant) coping**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term28) and [**avoidant (minimizing) coping**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term39). People who use approach-related methods confront a stressor head-on by gathering information, taking direct action, or in other ways making an active effort to resolve the problem. People who use a minimizing approach try to avoid the problem in whatever way they can, through *passive behaviors*, such as avoiding people and not thinking about their problems; *antisocial behaviors*, such as escapist drug use, risky sexual behaviors, and taking their problems out on others; or *fantasizing*, such as wishing their problems would go away or hoping for a miraculous intervention (Kashdan & Kane, 2011). Of the two styles, vigilance is more effective and is linked to better health outcomes, including less psychological distress and a weaker physiological response to a stressor (Wolf & Mori, 2009; Taylor & Stanton, 2007).

## approach (vigilant) coping

A coping strategy that directly confronts a stressor and attempts to develop a solution.

## avoidant (minimizing) coping

A strategy for coping with stressors by withdrawing, minimizing or avoiding them.

## Problem-Focused and Emotion-Focused Coping

Coping strategies—the ways we deal with stressful situations—are intended to moderate, or buffer, the effects of stressors on our physical and emotional well-being. Not all coping strategies are equally effective, however. Some strategies provide temporary relief but tend to be maladaptive in the long run. For example, although psychological defenses (such as Kris’s belief that his problems would go away when he left military service) may allow us to distance ourselves from a stressful situation temporarily by denying its existence, they do not eliminate the source of stress. Similarly, alcohol or other drugs push the stress into the background but do nothing to get rid of it. These behaviors are maladaptive because they do not confront the stressor directly and are likely to make the situation worse.

Several researchers have attempted to classify coping strategies. In this chapter, we will consider several, beginning with Richard Lazarus’s (1984) approach, which categorizes coping strategies as either problem-focused or emotion-focused.

We use [**problem-focused coping**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term273) to deal directly with the stressful situation either by reducing its demands or by increasing our capacity to deal with the stressor. For instance, a student who tackles a seemingly overwhelming course load by breaking her assignments into a series of smaller, manageable tasks is using one of these strategies, as is someone recovering from an alcohol problem who joins a support group to share experiences. We use problem-focused coping when we believe our resources and situations are changeable, as Kris Goldsmith did in working through his grief.

## problem-focused coping

A coping strategy for dealing directly with a stressor, in which we either reduce the stressor’s demands or increase our resources for meeting its demands.

When we employ [**emotion-focused coping**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term129) techniques, we attempt to regulate our emotional reaction to a stressful event. We tend to rely on emotion-focused coping when we believe that little or nothing can be done to alter a stressful situation or when we believe that our coping resources or skills are insufficient to meet the demands of the stressful situation. Interestingly, problem-focused coping skills appear to emerge during childhood, while emotion-focused skills develop later, in early adolescence (Compas and others, 1991).

## emotion-focused coping

A coping strategy in which we try to control our emotional response to a stressor.

Which is healthier, problem-focused coping or emotion-focused coping? Two meta-analyses of research studies found that different people respond more to one type than the other. Problem-focused strategies more often are linked with better health outcomes than are emotion-focused strategies (Connor-Smith & Flachsbart, 2007; Penley, Tomaka, & Wiebe, 2002). However, in these studies, the relationships varied with the *duration* of the stressor, with problem-focused coping proving more effective with chronic stressors than with acute stressors.

Which coping strategy is likely to work best also depends on whether the stressor is controllable. For example, those caring for terminally ill loved ones may rely on problem-focused strategies during the period prior to the loved one’s death. After the person’s death, however, they are likely to see the situation as beyond their control and so lean toward emotion-focused coping. With school- or work-related stressors, we are more likely to apply problem-focused coping, while for some health-related problems, distancing oneself through emotional coping may be the better option. Of course, many health-related problems *also* benefit from the direct action of problem-focused coping, as when, for example, a dietary change or regular exercise regimen improves a person’s ability to manage her diabetes. For these reasons, we often use problem-focused and emotion-focused coping together.

One type of emotion-focused coping has been linked to emotional distress and a variety of health problems (Thomsen and others, 2004). [**Rumination**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term299) refers to thinking repetitively about an upsetting situation and how it relates to past and future problems associated with a stressor (Nolen-Hoeksema, 1991). This type of coping may spiral out of control into an [**emotional cascade**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term128), a vicious cycle in which intense rumination makes the person more upset, which in turn causes more rumination (Moberly & Watkins, 2008). The end result is a self-amplifying feedback loop of rumination and negative emotion that ultimately may lead to self-destructive behaviors such as binging and purging, self-injury, “self-medicating” with alcohol or drugs, or impulsive shopping (Selby and others, 2013). According to the *Emotional Cascade Model*, these self-damaging behaviors, which to the outside observer would only seem to make a bad situation worse, are used to distract from rumination through intense physical sensations (Selby and others, 2009).

## rumination

Repetitive focusing on the causes, meanings, and consequences of stressful experiences.

## emotional cascade

Becoming so focused on an upsetting event that one gets worked into an intense, painful state of negative emotion.

Focusing on our emotional reaction to a stressor is not always maladaptive. [**Emotional-approach coping (EAC)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term127) is comprised of two emotion-regulating processes: emotional processing and emotional expression. EAC, which involves working through our emotional reactions to a stressful event, is adaptive and healthy (Stanton, 2010). We may use behavioral strategies, seeking out others who offer encouragement, or keeping ourselves busy to distract attention from the problem. Alternatively, we may try cognitive strategies, such as changing the way that we appraise a stressor or denying unpleasant information.

## emotional-approach coping (EAC)

The process of working through, clarifying, and understanding the emotions triggered by a stressor.

## Coping, Gender, Genes, and Socioeconomic Status

Our coping strategies vary according to the situation, but also, researchers have found, to individual differences in gender, genetics, and socioeconomic status (SES).

Men and women exhibit a number of different physiological reactions to stress depending, in part, on the nature of the stressor (Bloor and others, 2004). For example, when experiencing acute laboratory stressors, women exhibit lower blood pressure reactivity than men (Arthur and others, 2004). In addition, although men display greater stress-induced secretions of *catecholamines* (the autonomic nervous system–activating neurotransmitters epinephrine and norepinephrine), women exhibit a stronger *glucocorticoid* response (terminating immune system response) (Gallucci, Baum, & Laue, 1993). In terms of work-related stress, some research has reported no differences between men and women in levels of cortisol, catecholamines, heart rate activation, pain, or perceived stress (Persson and others, 2009).

Several researchers have found that emotional-approach coping is not unequivocally effective for men, particularly for those who display higher levels of masculinity and experience *gender role conflict* (Hoyt, 2009). For example, many men curb their emotions as a result of being socialized into a restrictive norm of masculinity. This behavior has the disadvantage of making it harder to connect emotionally with others. The loneliness and detachment that may result fosters a gender role conflict. As another example, a diagnosis of a chronic disease such as cancer is inconsistent with the dominant form of socially constructed masculinity (van den Hoonaard, 2009). Common symptoms associated with being treated for prostate cancer, such as erectile dysfunction, as well as feelings of vulnerability and fear, may threaten a man’s masculine self-image (Arrington, 2008). One recent study found that men who felt the greatest threat to their masculinity were less likely to process their cancer-related emotions. This decreased emotional processing also predicted greater deterioration in urinary functioning, suggesting that emotion-regulating coping processes is one pathway through which gender roles affect recovery from chronic illness (Hoyt and others, 2013).

Some research studies have suggested that men are more likely to use problem-focused coping strategies in dealing with stress, and women are more likely to rely on emotion-focused strategies (Marco, 2004). However, gender differences in coping styles may have less to do with being female or male than with the scope of resources available (see the [**Diversity and Healthy Living**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B5-10) box). When researchers compare women and men of similar occupation, education, and income, gender differences in physiological responses to stress and coping strategies often disappear (Greenglass & Noguchi, 1996; Persson and others, 2009).

Some recent research suggests that individual genetic makeup can moderate how people respond to catastrophic events and other stressors. Researchers at Trinity College recently examined the responses of 755 older adults aged 54 to 74 whose homes were damaged during the Chi-Chi earthquake that struck Taiwan in 1999 (Daly & MacLachlan, 2011). They found that many whose homes were damaged felt less in control of their lives one year later, and rated their health as poorer than those who were less affected by the earthquake. However, these adverse outcomes occurred only among people who were carriers of a particular allele of the apolipoprotein E gene (APOE), suggesting that when people experience traumatizing events, those who carry risk mutations in their genotype may be more susceptible to unfavorable health outcomes, perhaps because of how they psychologically appraise and cope with stressors.

How people cope with a stressor also is influenced by a number of external factors, including family, friends, education, employment, time, and money. People who have more resources available typically cope with stressful events more successfully. One of the most influential factors with respect to health is socioeconomic status (SES). People who are low in SES have increased risk for chronic disease, disability, and premature mortality (Stowe and others, 2010). It is important to note, though, that access to health care does not completely explain the relationship between SES and health. The association between lower SES and poor health remains even in countries that have universal health care (Cohen, Doyle, & Baum, 2006).

Health disparities increase with each step down the SES ladder (Adler & Rehkopf, 2008). A recent study found that children with highly reactive emotional styles who grow up in low-SES environments had higher levels of chronic inflammation as adults than did similar children raised in higher-SES environments (Appleton and others, 2012). Chronic inflammation is associated with the risk of a number of age-related diseases, including hypertension, heart disease, and diabetes (Singh & Newman, 2011). Another study found that SES also predicts whether supportive personal relationships confer health benefits. Among women who either were awaiting further evaluation from an abnormal mammogram or newly diagnosed with breast cancer, those with higher SES had a stronger cellular immune response than women with lower SES (Fagundes and others, 2012).

Stressful experiences are especially common among many ethnic minority families, who tend to be overrepresented in groups of low SES. In 2008, for example, 34.7 percent of African-American children were living below the poverty line (Acs, 2009). Poverty rates for Hispanic children were nearly as high (30.6 percent), with poverty rates for both groups about three times higher than the rate for white children (10.6 percent). As we saw in [**Chapter 4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch04), impoverished families experience more pollution, substandard and overcrowded housing, crime, and dangerous traffic than do more affluent families. They also suffer poor nutrition, limited education, low-paying work, and a lack of health insurance and access to health care (Johnson and others, 1995). Moreover, children from low-SES homes are more likely to experience divorce, frequent school transfers, and harsh and punitive parenting—events that have been linked with a variety of behavioral and emotional difficulties (Taylor, Roberts, & Jacobson, 1997).

## Diversity and Healthy Living: Understanding Gender Differences in Coping Styles

Think back to a moment of significant stress in your family when you were growing up—perhaps a life-threatening illness or job loss, an encounter with a tornado or hurricane, a serious car accident, or some other crisis. Were there differences in how the men and women around you coped with the stressful situation?

Two competing hypotheses have been offered to explain differences in how women and men cope with stress: socialization and role constraint. The *socialization hypothesis* suggests that, because of traditional stereotypes, women and men are brought up to cope with stress in very different ways. Traditionally, men are encouraged to take action and remain stoically independent, whereas women are socialized to seek social support from others and to express their emotions freely. As a result, men tend to cope with stress in a *problem-focused* mode, while most women cope in an *emotion-focused* mode.

Although many research studies have reported evidence consistent with the socialization hypothesis, others have failed to find gender differences in emotion- or problem-focused coping. In some studies, the predicted results have actually been reversed, with men reporting greater use of certain emotion-focused strategies (such as denial), and women greater use of problem-focused strategies.

Mixed results such as these were the impetus for the *role-constraint hypothesis*, which contends that when stressors are the same for men and women, gender is irrelevant in predicting coping reactions (Ptacek, Smith, & Zanas, 1992). According to this view, women and men have different social roles, which in turn make them more likely to experience different types of stressors. Any differences in coping, therefore, are due to differences in the types of stressors encountered.

In a fascinating test of the two hypotheses, Hasida Ben-Zur and Moshe Zeidner of the University of Haifa, Israel (1996), compared the coping reactions of Israeli women and men during a stressful national crisis with their reactions during a period of more typical daily stress. During the 10-day Gulf War in 1991, 39 Iraqi missiles were launched at the cities of Haifa and Tel Aviv, causing one death, 290 injuries, and untold damage to homes, buildings, and shops. For Israelis, the Gulf War was a grave national event, which exposed all citizens to a similar environmental stressor.

The researchers surveyed men and women regarding their coping behavior during the Gulf War and again three months after the crisis had ended. The participants in both surveys completed the *COPE Inventory*—a personality test consisting of 15 separate subscales that measure various aspects of problem-focused and emotion-focused coping, including denial, disengagement, humor, religion, venting of emotions, and seeking social support. The participants indicated the extent to which they relied on each of the coping strategies, using a scale that ranged from 0 (not at all) to 3 (a great extent).

When the study was concluded, several of the subscales showed an interaction between gender and type of stress (see [**Figure 5.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F5-1)). During the war, for example, women scored higher than men on the active and planning subscales (problem-focused coping), whereas during the postwar period, they scored lower than men on these subscales. Men scored lower than women on seeking emotional social support during the stress of the war than during the postwar period, but reported more acceptance and types of avoidance behavior, including denial, behavioral disengagement, alcohol/drug use, and humor, during the war than they did under everyday stress.

## Figure 5.1: Gender Differences in Coping Strategies

**(a) During a national crisis, women were more likely than men to report problem-focused coping, while men were more likely to report emotion-focused coping. (b) The differences between women and men were smaller after the war, with women reporting slightly more emotion-focused coping strategies in dealing with everyday stressors.**

**Source:** Adapted from Ben-Zur, H., & Zeidner, M. (1996). Gender differences in coping reactions under community crisis and daily routine conditions. *Journal of Personality and Individual Differences*, 20(3), 331–340.

Women also reported using a wider range of coping strategies, scoring higher on 12 out of the 15 subscales during the war period and on 10 out of the 15 subscales during the postwar period. Differences between men and women were small after the war, both in total reported coping and in type of coping strategy, with men reporting slightly more emotion-focused strategies in daily life.

Thus, the data are not entirely consistent with either hypothesis. According to the socialization hypothesis, women should have exhibited more emotion-focused coping and men more problem-focused coping in dealing with everyday events, but especially during periods of war stress. According to the role-constraint hypothesis, men and women should have exhibited similar reactions during the war because it constituted a similar stressor for both sexes, but not necessarily after the war, when men and women presumably encountered different stressors.

Researchers have suggested possible reasons for the inconsistency between the data and both hypotheses. The socialization hypothesis is not entirely correct because it was based on traditional gender stereotypes that are disappearing in many modern cultures. Women today are expected to have a career of their own and thus are more likely to be socialized toward greater assertiveness, independence, and active coping.

The role-constraint hypothesis also missed the mark, possibly because although the threat was the same for everyone, men and women may have perceived it differently. For example, many of the coping options that could help protect individuals were related to creating a safe home environment. Under threat of being bombed by missile warheads with poisonous chemical compounds, families had to stay indoors in a sealed environment, stock up on food, and so forth. Although traditional gender roles are undoubtedly merging, the specific demands of the war situation may have encouraged women to take charge. In contrast, Israeli men, whose defense response more often involves active military service, may have perceived fewer tasks to accomplish. This may explain their relatively higher level of emotion-focused coping.

Think back again to your family crisis. Is either hypothesis consistent with the men and women that you saw coping? What about you? Is your coping style more the product of socialization or role constraint? Do these hypotheses make sense for young women and young men today?

Regardless of ethnicity, people of low SES tend to rely less on problem-focused coping than do people with more education and higher incomes (Billings & Moos, 1981). Their demeaning social experiences may cause them to develop a feeling of hopelessness and to believe that they have little or no [**psychological control**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term278) over events in their lives. So, with repeated exposure to stress and no way to break the cycle, their only recourse is to try to control their emotional responses to stress—because they’ve learned that they can’t control the situation itself. This is important because people who believe that they can determine their own behavior and influence the environment to bring about desired outcomes cope more effectively with stressful events (Wrosch and others, 2007). A strong perception of control has also been associated with a healthier lifestyle, a stronger immune response to allergens (Chen and others, 2003), and a lower overall risk of death (Surtees and others, 2006). No wonder, then, that psychological control may be especially important for people who are vulnerable to health problems, including children, the elderly, and those who are already being treated for medical conditions (Wrosch and others, 2007).

## psychological control

The perception that one can determine one’s own behavior and influence the environment to bring about desired outcomes.

Judith Stein and Adeline Nyamathi (1999) demonstrated not only that impoverished people have more difficulty coping with stress, but also that women in this situation have more problems than men do. The researchers examined a sample of 486 impoverished men and women of African-American, Latino, and European descent who were recruited to participate in a community-based acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) prevention program. Compared with their male counterparts, the impoverished women reported greater stress and were more likely to resort to *avoidant coping* strategies. The subordinate positions of impoverished women may make them even more vulnerable than men to feelings of hopelessness in the face of chronic stress. This finding points to the need for gender-specific interventions in helping people cope with chronic stress.

Socioeconomic status is also a powerful predictor of both health and health behaviors. The Pitt County, North Carolina, study reported that SES was inversely related, among both African-American women and men, to alcohol consumption, cigarette smoking, and risk of hypertension (James, Van Hoewyk, & Belli, 2006). The same study found that low-SES African-Americans perceived weaker levels of emotional support when under stress than did their higher-SES counterparts (Keenan and others, 1992; Strogatz and others, 1997). Compared with those of high SES in both childhood and adulthood, low-SES men were also seven times more likely to suffer from hypertension as adults.

Interestingly, socioeconomic indicators at the level of individual neighborhoods predict the health of residents in relationship to smoking and other harmful health behaviors, even after individual differences in SES, lifestyle behaviors, and other risk factors are taken into consideration (Diez Roux, 2001; Kendzor and others, 2009; Paul and others, 2008). Pamela Feldman and Andrew Steptoe (2004) believe that neighborhood SES is linked to health because it strongly influences the social and psychological experiences of residents living in a particular neighborhood. The researchers compared 19 low-SES neighborhoods and 18 high-SES neighborhoods in London on four measures: *social cohesion* (trust and solidarity with neighbors); *social control* (confidence that neighbors would take action to maintain the well-being of the neighborhood); *neighborhood problems*(community-wide stressors such as litter and traffic noise); and *neighborhood vigilance* (a measure of feelings of threat and vulnerability in the neighborhood). Londoners living in lower-SES neighborhoods perceived greater *neighborhood strain* (weaker social cohesion, more neighborhood problems, and greater vigilance) than people living in more affluent neighborhoods, which in turn was associated with poorer individual health, poorer social relationships, and lower levels of perceived control among residents. In other studies, community violence has been linked to increased stress symptoms, depression, and anxiety among inner-city African-American adolescents *and* to the use of negative coping strategies, such as avoidance and aggression (Dempsey, 2002).

## Coping and Ethnicity

Although socioeconomic status is a powerful predictor of stress, coping, and health behaviors among women and men in virtually every group that has been studied, the relationship varies with ethnicity. For instance, while SES is inversely related to self-reported stress levels among most groups, including African-American women, the Pitt County study found SES to be positively related to stress in African-American men. Another study of a culturally diverse group of adolescents reported that Hispanic-, Asian-, and African-Americans reported higher levels of social stress than European Americans (Choi, Meininger, & Roberts, 2006).

David Williams (2000) has identified three factors that help explain the interactions among socioeconomic status, gender, and ethnicity among African-Americans. First, middle-class African-American men report higher levels of racial discrimination than African-American women (Forman, 2002). Racial discrimination and perceived discrimination are significant stressors that can adversely affect physical and mental health (Luo and others, 2012; Ong, Fuller-Rowell, & Burrow, 2009). Significantly, the more years of education that an African-American male has completed, the stronger his perception of racial discrimination. A particularly insidious type of discrimination that people of color experience daily are [**microaggressions**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term218), which are insults, indignities, and marginalizing messages sent by well-intentioned people who seem unaware of the hidden messages they are sending (Sue, 2011). *Microaggression fatigue* has been noted among African-American men who live or work in environments that are predominantly white (Smith, Hung, & Franklin, 2011).

## microaggressions

Insults, indignities, and marginalizing messages sent by well-intentioned people who seem unaware of the hidden messages that they are sending.

Second, the attainment of middle-class status may be tenuous and marginal for some African-Americans. For instance, college-educated African-Americans are more likely than European-Americans to experience unemployment and job insecurity, both of which are associated with higher levels of stress, illness, disability, and mortality (U.S. Census Bureau, 2004). African-Americans are also less likely to convert their socioeconomic achievements into more desirable housing and community living conditions (Alba, Logan, & Stults, 2000). And even when they do, the outcome is not necessarily rosy. One study even found that while living in the suburbs predicted lower mortality risk for European-American men, it predicted *higher* mortality risk for African-American men (House and others, 2000).

Third, African-American males may experience a unique source of stress because the educational attainment associated with their higher SES has not been rewarded with equitable increases in income. At every level of education, African-American men have lower incomes than European-American men. Moreover, the pay gap between African-Americans and European-Americans is larger for men than for women (Yang, 2010).

The elevated level of stress among middle-class African-American men may contribute to their increased risk for a variety of chronic diseases, including hypertension. Two decades ago, Sherman James suggested that unrelieved psychosocial stress, generated by the environments in which many African-Americans live and work, triggers [**John Henryism (JH)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term197), named after the legend of John Henry, an African-American steeldriver in American folklore. African-Americans who score high on the JH Scale for Active Coping engage in high-effort coping with psychosocial demands and stressors, including career issues, health problems, barriers to upward social mobility, and racism. Most commonly, people with JH are extremely goal oriented but often lack the resources they need for success, such as financial or emotional support (*Duke Medicine News*, 2006). The JH pattern of coping behaviors among African-Americans may help explain why they develop high blood pressure more often, and at an earlier age than European-Americans and Hispanic-Americans. (CDC, 2012). The folklore figure of John Henry, as James wrote, “is a metaphor of the African-American experience. It tells of the struggle of black Americans to be a part of mainstream America. It is a struggle that has played out against great odds and against very powerful forces of marginalization that continue to create wear and tear on the bodies and minds of African Americans” (*Washington University Magazine*, 2003, p. 4).

## John Henryism (JH)

A pattern of prolonged, high-effort coping with psychosocial demands and stressors, including barriers to upward social mobility.

Although John Henryism has generally been viewed as a hazardous coping style, newer evidence indicates that this hypothesis does not apply to all African-American subgroups, particularly those whose financial and educational attainments provide them with the greatest range of economic and social resources for coping with stress. One study demonstrated that the combination of high JH and low SES was associated with increased blood pressure reactivity to, and slower recovery from, a variety of social stressors (Merritt and others, 2004). Conversely, another cross-sectional study of African-American men reported a *positive* association between the predisposition to confront barriers to upward social mobility and better overall physical health directly (Bonham, Sellers, & Neighbors, 2004).

Interestingly, John Henryism appears to have a substantial genetic component (Whitfield and others, 2006). Evidence comes from the Carolina African-American Twins Study of Aging (CAATSA), which estimated the heritability of JH in 180 pairs of same-sex twins. The study, which compared similarity in JH scores in 85 monozygotic and 95 dizyogotic twins, found that environmental factors such as learning and socialization accounted for nearly two-thirds of the variance (65%) in coping scores among twins, with the remaining variance attributable to genes (35%). This study suggests that, as is true with many behaviors, genes and environment interact dynamically in determining the JH coping style.

Royalty-Free/Corbis

## Factors Affecting the Ability to Cope

We all know that certain life stresses (such as final exams) tend to give us headaches, queasy stomachs, and other ailments, whereas exhilarating or uplifting experiences (such as a ski weekend or a new intimate relationship) make us feel on top of the world. In this section, we explore several biopsychosocial factors that affect how well we cope with potential stressors and, by extension, how this affects our health. Keep in mind that no one factor, by itself, determines your well-being. Health is always a result of biopsychosocial factors interacting in various ways.

## Hardiness

Do you know people who approach life with enthusiasm, who always seem to be taking on more challenges, who remain healthy in the face of adversity? Salvatore Maddi and Suzanne Kobasa (1991) identified three stress-buffering traits—*commitment, challenges*, and *control*—that appear to influence how people react to potential stressors. Together, these traits form a personality style called [**hardiness**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term159).

## hardiness

A cluster of stress-buffering traits consisting of commitment, challenges, and control.

Hardy people view the everyday demands of life as challenges rather than as threats. They are also committed to their families, jobs, communities, or other groups or activities that give their lives a sense of meaning. And, most important, they have a sense of control over their lives, of having access to needed information, and of being capable of making good decisions regarding the demands of life.

Hardy people may be healthier because they are less likely to become aroused by stressful situations. As a result, they avoid stress-related physical and psychological reactions that lead to illness. One study related personality data from 670 middle- and upper-level managers to self-reported stress and illness experienced during a two-year period (Kobasa, Maddi, & Kahn, 1982). As [**Figure 5.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F5-2) shows, managers who experienced high levels of stress also reported more illness; however, those in this group who were high in hardiness experienced significantly lower levels of illness than did those low in hardiness.

## Figure 5.2: Stress, Hardiness, and Illness

**High levels of stress are clearly more likely to cause illness than low levels. However, hardiness can buffer the effects of stress. Hardy managers who reported high levels of stress experienced significantly lower levels of illness than did those low in hardiness. The measure of stress was an adaptation of the familiar Social Readjustment Rating Scale (SRRS), which subjectively quantifies the stressfulness of numerous events (see**[**Chapter 4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch04)**). The illness index is a composite measure of the frequency and severity of 126 commonly recognized physical and mental symptoms and diseases.**

**Source:** Based on data from Kobasa, S.C., and others. (1982). Hardiness and health: A prospective study. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 42(1), 168–177. Copyright 1982 by the American Psychological Association. Adapted with permission.

Researchers have found personal hardiness to be an effective indicator of successful adjustment to numerous health problems, including cancer, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, cardiovascular disease, diabetes, epilepsy, HIV infection, hypertension, kidney transplant, and stroke (Pollock, 1986). Hardiness also has been linked to lower levels of anxiety, active coping styles, decreased caregiver burden, reduced vulnerability to depression in older people living in a long-term care facility, better adaptation of professional women to the stress of multiple roles, greater spiritual well-being in elderly people, and fewer negative health outcomes during periods of extended stress (Drory and others, 1991; Florian, Mikulincer, & Taubman, 1995).

## Evaluating the Hardiness Hypothesis

Despite the large number of studies in support of the idea that psychologically healthy people are buffered against stress, the concept of hardiness has received its share of criticism. Some researchers have found that the hardiness–health relationship is more applicable to men than to women (Klag & Bradley, 2004). Others have questioned whether hardiness consists of certain specific core constructs. On this latter point, Lois Benishek (1996) used *factor analysis*—a statistical procedure that identifies clusters of items on self-report tests that measure a common trait—to show that hardiness actually comprises up to four factors, rather than the three proposed by Kobasa and Maddi. The number of factors seems to depend on the measures used and the population studied.

Skeptics also have suggested that hardy people are healthier because they have greater personal resources, such as income, education, social support, and coping skills, and tend to be younger than the less hardy. To determine whether this is true, Kobasa interviewed executives who remained in good health or became sick during periods of high self-reported stress. Those who remained healthy were not younger, wealthier, or better educated than their sicker counterparts. However, they experienced more commitment in their lives, felt more in control, and had a greater appetite for challenge (Kobasa, Maddi, & Kahn, 1982). In another study, hardiness was shown to have a stronger protective effect against illness than exercise or social support (Kobasa and others, 1985). These and other studies in which hardiness and health-enhancing behaviors were measured separately indicate that hardiness is an independent trait not caused by other variables.

On balance, research studies do seem to demonstrate that some people handle stress more effectively because they view themselves as choosing to live challenging lives. These individuals also appraise potentially stressful events more favorably, seeing them as enriching their lives rather than as intensifying pressure. When confronted with stressful situations, they are more likely than less hardy people to reappraise negative conditions as positive ones (Maddi, 2005; Williams and others, 1992). This reappraisal allows them to feel in control of, rather than controlled by, stressors they encounter. Equally important, hardy people strive to solve their problems with active coping strategies—such as problem-focused coping and seeking social support—rather than trying to avoid them (Lundman and others, 2010).

## Resilience

Hardiness has been called a pathway to [**resilience**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term295), a term that originally applied to children who show a remarkable ability to develop into competent, well-adjusted people despite having been raised in extremely disadvantaged environments (Garmezy, 1993; Maddi, 2005). More generally, resilience is the ability to bounce back from stressful experiences and to adapt flexibly to changing environmental demands. In the aftermath of the September 11 terrorist attacks on the United States, for example, Barbara Fredrickson and her colleagues (2003) identified resilient individuals as those who were able to experience positive emotions, such as gratitude, and in doing so actually demonstrated *post-traumatic growth* as time passed.

## resilience

The quality of some children to bounce back from environmental stressors that might otherwise disrupt their development.

Psychiatrist Steven Wolin (1993) describes the case of Jacqueline, who at 2 years of age was placed by her birth parents in a foster home. Jacqueline’s foster father murdered his wife 18 months later, and Jacqueline was moved to another foster family. After two relatively stable years, Jacqueline’s birth mother appeared without explanation, taking her daughter to live with her for the next four years. During those years, Jacqueline’s mother had a string of dysfunctional relationships with men who moved in and out of the house; some of these men physically abused Jacqueline. At age 10, Jacqueline was once again displaced, this time to an orphanage, where she stayed until she was 17. Although many theories of psychosocial development would predict that Jacqueline would develop into an antisocial, problem-ridden woman, this did not happen. Throughout her childhood, she excelled in school, was a leader among her peers, and remained optimistic about her future. Jacqueline is now an adult with a stable marriage and family. She finds great joy in being “the parent to my children that I never had.”

Where does such resilience come from? Research points to two groups of factors. One group relates to individual traits, the other to positive life experiences and social support. Resilient children have well-developed social, academic, or creative skills; easy temperaments; high self-esteem; self-discipline; and strong feelings of personal control (Werner, 1997). These elements of *social cognition* foster healthy relationships with others who help such children adjust to adverse conditions. The healthy relationships seem to help these children deflect many of the problems that they face at home (Ackerman and others, 1999).

Studies of resilient children point to the importance of at least one consistently supportive person in the life of a child at risk. This person can be an aunt or uncle, older sister or brother, grandparent, family friend, or teacher. This supportive person, often a caring parent, is a model of resilience who plays a significant role in convincing at-risk children that they can and will beat the odds.

Although early studies of resilience implied that there was something remarkable about these children, recent research suggests that resilience is a more common phenomenon that arises from the ordinary resources of children, their relationships, and positive community experiences (Masten, 2001; Ong and others, 2006). Echoing the theme of the positive psychology movement (see [**Chapter 1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch01)), resilience research now focuses on understanding how these adaptive processes develop, how they operate under adverse conditions, and how they can be protected (or restored).

Until recently, research studies of resilience focused mostly on children (Wagnild, 2013). Today, however, researchers increasingly focus on resilience in their investigations of the well-being of adults. In medicine, for instance, *biological resilience* refers to various protective factors (genetic, demographic, social-cultural, psychological, gender-linked, and environmental) that contribute to positive outcomes in the elderly (Alfieri, Costanzo, & Borgogni, 2011). Resilience is associated with many specific characteristics among adults, including forgiveness (Broyles, 2005), sense of coherence and purpose in life (Nygren and others, 2005), self-efficacy (Caltabiano & Caltabiano, 2006), as well as lower incidence of depression, anxiety, and perceived stress (Wagnild, 2008). As more studies reveal the positive relationships between resilience and aging well, health psychologists are increasingly interested in recognizing and strengthening the ability to bounce back following challenge and adversity among the growing elderly segment of the population (Prince-Embury & Saklofske, 2013).

## Explanatory Style

Your [**explanatory style**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term138)—whether you tend to attribute outcomes to positive or negative causes—also affects your ability to cope with stress. People who look on the bright side of life—who see a light at the end of the tunnel—have a positive explanatory style and tend to cope well with stress (Peterson & Steen, 2002). Those with a negative explanatory style do not cope as well with stress. They expect failure because they believe that the conditions that lead to failure are all around them, or even within them.

## explanatory style

Our general propensity to attribute outcomes always to positive causes or always to negative causes, such as personality, luck, or another person’s actions.

Why are some people more prone to one style or the other? Individual attribution styles—whom or what we blame for our failures—are part of the answer. Martin Seligman and his colleagues (1995) believe that negativity and “epidemic hopelessness” are largely responsible for the prevalence of depression among Western people. When failure and rejection are encountered in life (as inevitably happens), maintains Seligman, the self-focused Westerner is more likely to assume personal responsibility. In non-Western cultures, where individualism is subordinate to cooperation and a sense of community, depression is less common, perhaps because it is less likely to be linked with self-blame for failure.

**“A recipe for severe depression is preexisting pessimism encountering failure.”**

**—Martin Seligman (1995)**

## Pessimism

Those with a negative explanatory style tend to explain failures in terms that are global (“Everything is awful”), stable (“It’s always going to be this way”), and internal (“It’s my fault, as usual”). Anger, hostility, suppressed emotions, anxiety, depression, and pessimism are all associated with a negative explanatory style and are believed to lead to harmful health-related behaviors(smoking and alcohol and drug abuse, for example) and disease (Scheier & Bridges, 1995).

Pessimism is also linked with earlier mortality. In a study of personality data obtained from general medical patients at the Mayo Clinic between 1962 and 1965, Toshihiko Maruta and his colleagues (2000) found that patients who were more pessimistic had significantly higher (19 percent) mortality than more optimistic patients. There are at least four mechanisms by which pessimism might shorten life:

* **1.** Pessimists experience more unpleasant events, which have been linked to shorter lives.
* **2.** Pessimists believe that “nothing I do matters,” so they are less likely than optimists to comply with medical regimens or take preventive actions (such as exercising).
* **3.** Pessimists are more likely to be diagnosed with major depressive disorder, which is associated with mortality.
* **4.** Pessimists have weaker immune systems than optimists.

## Optimism

People with an upbeat, optimistic explanatory style, on the other hand, tend to lead healthier, longer lives than their gloom-and-doom counterparts (Segerstrom, 2006). They also have shorter hospital stays, faster recovery from coronary artery bypass surgery, and greater longevity when battling AIDS. Optimists have lower levels of inflammation, respond to stress with smaller increases in blood pressure, and are much less likely to die from heart attacks (Roy and others, 2010; Everson and others, 1996). Among college students, optimists—those who agree with statements such as “In uncertain times, I usually expect the best” and “I always look on the bright side of things”—report less fatigue and fewer aches, pains, and minor illnesses (Carver & Scheier, 2002). See Your [**Health Assets: Measuring Optimism**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B5-18) for a quick survey to help you determine *your*level of optimism.

Why is optimism beneficial to health? According to the *broaden-and-build theory*, positive emotions increase our physical, cognitive, and social resources, which in turn help us cope more effectively with stressful experiences and live healthier lives (Frederickson, 2001). For example, by shortening the duration of negative emotional arousal, positive emotions may stave off stress-related elevations in blood pressure, inflammation, immunosuppression, and other disease-promoting processes. Among children, positive emotions experienced during play help build social skills, which in turn may foster lasting social bonds and attachments (Aron and others, 2000). In support of this theory, a recent study found that people who consistently experienced positive emotions with their families as children, and again as adults with their own families, were half as likely to display high levels of cumulative wear and tear on their bodies (Ryff and others, 2001). Another study of older Hispanic-Americans reported that those who generally reported positive emotions were half as likely as those who were more pessimistic and cynical to become disabled or to have died during the two-year duration of the study (Ostir and others, 2000).

## *Your Health Assets*: Measuring Optimism

How optimistic are you? Researchers have developed a scale of dispositional optimism to measure this trait. For each item listed below, answer “True” or “False” as it pertains to your typical style.

* 1. In uncertain times, I usually expect the best.
* 2. It’s easy for me to relax.
* 3. If something can go wrong for me, it will.
* 4. I’m always optimistic about my future.
* 5. I enjoy my friends a lot.
* 6. It’s important for me to keep busy.
* 7. I hardly ever expect things to go my way.
* 8. I don’t get upset too easily.
* 9. I rarely count on good things happening to me.
* 10. Overall, I expect more good things to happen to me than bad.

To score, add together the number of “Trues” that you indicated for items 1, 4, and 10 and the number of “Falses” that you indicated for items 3, 7, and 9. Higher scores indicate a greater tendency toward optimism.

Source: Scheier, M.P., Carver, C.S., & Bridges, M.W. (1994). Distinguishing optimism from neuroticism (and trait anxiety, mastery, and self-esteem): A reevaluation of the Life Orientation Test. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 67*, 1063–1078.

Optimists generally have a more positive mood, which has been shown to improve immunity (Segerstrom & Sephton, 2010) and sustain immune functioning under stress. One study demonstrated that the pressure of firstsemester law school took a less negative toll on immune activity in students who were optimistic about their academic success, compared with students who were pessimistic (Segerstrom and others, 1998). As [**Figure 5.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F5-3) shows, the number of CD4 cells in the bloodstream of optimists rose by 13 percent, compared with a 3 percent drop in the number of cells in the bloodstream of pessimists. Similarly, NK cell activity rose by 42 percent in the high-scoring optimists but only by 9 percent in pessimists. (As we saw in [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03), CD4 cells and NK cell activity are immune system factors that help fight infection.) Positive affective states in general are associated with reduced levels of stress hormones such as cortisol and—especially in women—reduced levels of biological markers of inflammation such as *C-reactive protein* (*CRP*) (Steptoe, O’Donnell, & Badrick, 2008).

## Figure 5.3: Optimism and Immune Function

**Two months after beginning law school, optimistic law students showed a 13 percent increase in the blood level (estimated total number) of CD4 cells in the bloodstream, compared with a 3 percent drop in the number of cells in the bloodstream of pessimists. Similarly, natural killer (NK) cell cytotoxicity, a measure of cell activity level, rose by 42 percent in the optimists, but only by 9 percent in pessimists.**

**Source:** Based on data from Segerstrom, S.C., and others. (1998). Optimism is associated with mood, coping, and immune change in response to stress. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 74(6), 1646–1655. Copyright 1998 by the American Psychological Association. Adapted with permission.

Back to our law students: Why did optimism enhance their immune function under stress? Segerstrom and her colleagues believe that optimists have healthier attitudes and better health habits than pessimists. The optimistic law students may have been more likely to appraise their course work as a challenge (and therefore perceive less stress); to exercise more; and to avoid smoking, alcohol abuse, and other health-compromising behaviors. These health-enhancing behaviors would contribute to stronger immune systems and better functioning under stress.

Optimists and pessimists have different physical reactions to stress but also differ in how they cope with stress. Whereas optimists are more likely to try to alter stressful situations or to *actively engage* in direct problem-focused action against a stressor, pessimists are more likely to *passively disengage* and to ruminate—to obsess and be overwhelmed by persistent thoughts about stressors (Carver & Connor-Smith, 2010; Nolen-Hoeksema, Parker, & Larson, 1994). This tendency has been linked to self-criticism, a history of past depression, and excessive dependency on others (Spasojevic & Alloy, 2001). Optimists also perceive more control over stressors, which in turn leads to more effective coping responses, including seeking treatment when illness strikes (Segerstrom, 2006; Tromp and others, 2005). In contrast, pessimists are more likely to perceive the world—and their health—as being uncontrollable (Keltner, Ellsworth, & Edwards, 1993).

Fortunately, pessimism is identifiable early in life and can be changed into *learned optimism*(Seligman & Csikszentmihalyi, 2000). Seligman recommends learning the “ABC’s” of optimism. Let’s consider how this might work to help Kris Goldsmith, whom we met in our opening vignette, develop a more positive explanatory style.

* Adversity: Kris should learn to interpret difficulties in terms that are *external* (“It was the military’s policies, not me, that caused my troubles”), *temporary* (“This will be a difficult year, but I will get through this”), and *specific* (“My career and family plans are still on hold, but I know other parts of my life have been positive and will continue to go well”).
* Beliefs: Practicing such optimistic explanations mindfully will lead Kris to healthier, more upbeat beliefs.
* Consequences: Healthier, more optimistic beliefs will prompt more positive health consequences for Kris.

Martin Bolt (2004, p. 176) explains, “Learning to counterargue, to offer alternative causes for the disappointment, to recognize that you are overreacting, and even to show that the belief is factually incorrect undermine the pessimistic explanation and enable you to cope with setbacks more effectively.”

## Personal Control and Choice

[**Personal control**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term254) is the belief that we make our own decisions and determine what we do or what others do to us (Rodin, 1986). Healthy children gradually develop a sense of control over their surroundings. Albert Bandura and other researchers have called this *self-efficacy*, which is a belief in our ability to deal with potentially stressful situations (Bandura, 1997). Personal control and self-efficacy both help people cope more effectively with stressful events (Wrosch and others, 2007).

## personal control

The belief that we make our own decisions and determine what we do and what others do to us.

When faced with repeated, uncontrollable stress, people sometimes learn that they cannot affect what happens to them. In extreme situations, they may even develop the resigned passive behaviors of *learned helplessness* (Seligman & Maier, 1967). In concentration camps and prisons, and even in factories and nursing homes, people who repeatedly fail at a goal often stop trying. Even more important, they may become unresponsive in other environments where success is more likely. Elderly people living in long-term care or nursing home facilities, as well as those suffering from chronic illnesses, are particularly vulnerable to learned helplessness. Unwittingly, the well-intentioned staff of many nursing homes (as well as those who provide care in a home setting) encourage passive, helpless behavior in the elderly and chronically ill by denying them the responsibility for even the most fundamental aspects of their care.

Seligman (1975) demonstrated that when people experience outcomes over which they have no control, they lose motivation for responding, display impaired learning, and experience stress, anxiety, and depression. People who feel helpless either do not engage in health-enhancing behaviors or they abandon those behaviors before they have time to exert a positive effect on health. Because of the link between helplessness and depression, and the link between depression and health-compromising behaviors such as substance abuse, there is even reason to believe that feelings of helplessness can be life threatening (Wallston and others, 1997).

Low perceived control may be one reason racial and ethnic minorities are high-risk groups when it comes to health. Among minority men, for instance, the word *crisis* has been used to describe the elevated prevalence of disease, disability, and premature death (Williams, 2003). Particularly in Western cultures, where men are socialized under norms emphasizing achievement and competence, an absence of employment opportunities, discrimination, and economic marginalization can have a devastating impact on self-efficacy and on the way that men appraise and respond to potentially stressful situations.

Racism, for instance, can affect the cognitive appraisals of African-Americans dramatically. When it does, the stress response can escalate. When African-American college students in one study overheard European-American classmates negatively evaluating their performance on a task, those who attributed their poor evaluation to racism and discrimination displayed the strongest stress reactions (King, 2005).

## Personal Control and Coping Strategies

In contrast to those with learned helplessness, people with a strong sense of personal control tend to engage in adaptive, problem-focused coping. In one study, health care workers facing layoffs completed questionnaires assessing their levels of stress, personal resources, coping styles, and illness at the beginning of the study and again one year later (Ingledew, Hardy, & Cooper, 1997). The results revealed that increases in perceived level of stress were generally accompanied by increases in emotion-focused coping, but to a lesser degree in those who perceived strong personal control over their lives. Similarly, African-American adolescents who perceive little or no personal control over racism-related stress have been shown to rely more on avoidance and emotion-focused coping than on problem-focused coping. Conversely, minority teens who perceive high levels of personal control over racial stressors are more likely to use problem-focused strategies (Scott, 2001).

Those who feel a strong sense of psychological control are more likely to exercise direct control over health-related behaviors. Niall Pender and colleagues (1990) studied 589 employees enrolled in six employer-sponsored health-promotion programs. Employees who believed that they exerted greater control over their health were far more likely to stick with wellness programs than were employees who felt less responsible for their well-being. Results such as these indicate that feeling in control of aversive events plays a crucial role in determining our response to stressful situations. Small wonder, then, that a sense of control has been linked to a lower risk of mortality, primarily due to lower levels of risk factors for cardiovascular disease (Paquet and others, 2010).

Think back to our opening story: What happened to Kris Goldsmith’s feelings of personal control when his service contract was extended? What impact did this have on his ability to cope with the stress of his service in Iraq?

## Regulatory Control

Have you ever been so angry with a rude driver that you felt like exploding, yet you didn’t? Or perhaps you’ve been at a religious service when you found something hysterically funny, but you needed to stifle your laughter? In such situations, we strive to control which emotions are merely experienced and which are actually expressed. [**Regulatory control**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term288), which refers to our capacity to modulate thoughts, emotions, and behaviors, is a part of everyday life. In fact, 9 out of 10 college students report making an effort to control their emotions at least once a day (Gross, 1998).

## regulatory control

The various ways in which we modulate our thinking, emotions, and behavior over time and across changing circumstances.

Controlling your responses and emotions has broad implications for your health (de Ridder, Bertha, & de Wit, 2006). Self-regulation is associated with success in dieting, quitting smoking, and maintaining good interpersonal relationships. In addition, children who have good self-control are calmer, more resistant to frustration, better able to delay gratification (an important factor later in resisting substance abuse), and less aggressive (Muraven, Tice, & Baumeister, 1998). Conversely, undercontrolled people are more likely to become aggressive (Brookings, DeRoo, & Grimone, 2008) and experience depression as they dwell obsessively on self-defeating thoughts (Verstraeten and others, 2009).

Individual differences in regulatory control are related to how people cope with stressful events and experiences. People with good self-control are less likely to resort to maladaptive coping responses such as angry venting of emotions or avoidant coping (Aronoff, Stollak, & Woike, 1994). Similarly, children and adults with good self-control are likely to use constructive, problem-focused coping responses and unlikely to use avoidant or aggressive coping responses in stressful situations (Fabes and others, 1994; Mann & Ward, 2007). Interestingly, some data suggest men expend less effort than women when attempting to control negative emotions. This gender difference is reflected in different patterns of neural activity in the brain’s amygdala and prefrontal cortex (McRae and others, 2008).

## Cardiovascular Reactivity

Because of the relationship between self-control and physical arousal, researchers are exploring the use of heart rate and other physiological markers to identify individual differences in how people cope with stress (Quigley, Barrett, & Weinstein, 2002; Schneiderman and others, 2000). Physiologically, our reactivity to psychological stress seems to be quite stable. In one study, researchers measured participants’ blood pressure while they completed stressful tasks. Years later, follow-up studies demonstrated that those whose blood pressure had increased most during the initial phase of the study were most likely to have chronic hypertension (Matthews and others, 2004).

Several studies have reported that situations that are appraised as threatening are associated with a different pattern of [**cardiovascular reactivity (CVR)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term70) than situations that are appraised as challenging. Threat appraisals have been linked with enhanced *vascular* responses, as reflected by increases in diastolic blood pressure and *total peripheral resistance* (the cumulative resistance of all the body’s blood vessels), whereas challenge appraisals have been linked with increased *myocardial* reactivity, as reflected by increases in heart rate and cardiac output (Maier, Waldstein, & Synowski, 2003; Tomaka and others, 1993).

## cardiovascular reactivity (CVR)

Changes in cardiovascular activity that are related to psychological stress.

Most changes in heart rate, such as those that occur in response to challenging physical and emotional demands, are controlled by the tenth cranial nerve, which is the longest in the body, extending into each limb all the way from the brain. This is the vagus nerve (*vagus* means “wandering” in Latin). The vagus plays an important role in the parasympathetic nervous system’s calming response; its main function is to lower blood pressure and heart rate. When a healthy person inhales, for instance, the vagus becomes less active, increasing heart rate; when he or she exhales, vagal activity increases, and heart rate decreases. In response to stress, the autonomic nervous system speeds heart rate (to meet the metabolic demands of the body’s emergency response system) by decreasing vagal action on the heart.

Vagal tone (heart rate variability) is thus a measure of the relationship between the rhythmic increases and decreases in heart rate associated with breathing in and breathing out. High vagal tone, measured as greater variability in heart rate as a person breathes in and out, reflects greater regulatory control by the vagus nerve. In contrast, low vagal tone (measured as a more stable heart rate pattern) reflects weaker regulatory control.

Richard Fabes and Nancy Eisenberg (1997) investigated the relationship among heart rate variability, daily stress, and coping responses in college students ([**Figure 5.4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F5-4)). Students with a high vagal tone were less likely than students with a lower vagal tone to experience high levels of negative emotional arousal in response to everyday hassles and stress. They also were more likely to rely on constructive coping measures (active coping, seeking social support, positive reinterpretation, emotion-focused coping) rather than maladaptive strategies (psychological and physical distancing, venting of emotion, alcohol/drug use).

## Figure 5.4: Vagal Tone and Coping with Stress

**(a) Students with a high vagal tone were less likely than students with a lower vagal tone to experience high levels of negative emotional arousal in response to everyday hassles and stress. (b) They were also more likely to rely on constructive coping measures.**

**Source:** Fabes, R.A., & Eisenberg, N. (1997). Regulatory control and adults’ stress-related responses to daily life events. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 73(5), 1107–1117. Copyright 1997 by the American Psychological Association. Adapted with permission.

Cardiovascular reactivity and regulatory control also may partly explain individual and group differences in coronary disease morbidity and mortality rates. Individuals who face repeated threats and challenges in their daily lives and have weaker cardiac autonomic control may be at a substantially greater risk for coronary artery disease than those who have greater regulatory control (Sloan, Bagiella, & Powell, 1999). Researchers at Harvard University’s School of Public Health recently reported that Caribbean-Americans and African-Americans, two of the largest black ethnic groups in the United States, display different patterns of cardiovascular reactivity to laboratory stressors than European-Americans do (Arthur and others, 2004). In response to a mental arithmetic task, for instance, African-Americans displayed larger decreases in *heart period variability* (lower vagal tone) than European-Americans, but smaller decreases than their Caribbean-American counterparts. Other researchers have also suggested that increased CVR and slow recovery from life events associated with perceived racism is the biological mechanism tying John Henryism to increased risk of hypertension (Merritt and others, 2006).

## Choice, Culture, and Control

Psychologists have long argued that choice enhances feelings of personal control (Rotter, 1966). The results of many studies suggest that the positive consequences of choice are apparent even when choice is trivial or illusory. Simply being able to choose the order in which a task is performed appears to reduce anxiety (Glass & Singer, 1972). And in one well-known study, Ellen Langer and Judy Rodin (1976) found that the health of elderly patients in a nursing home improved significantly when they were permitted to choose their own recreational activities and the placement of the furniture in their rooms.

Conversely, situations in which there is no choice or in which choice has been removed have been linked to detrimental effects on motivation, performance, and health. Interestingly, however, several recent studies have demonstrated that too much choice, in the workplace and elsewhere, may be detrimental to motivation and well-being (Iyengar & Lepper, 2000; Schwartz, 2004) and pointed to cultural differences in the extent to which the perception of choice is associated with well-being. In individualistic cultures, it has been assumed that perceiving oneself as having less choice—as seems to be the case for Asians and Latin Americans—will have negative effects on well-being (Langer & Rodin, 1976). But Sastry and Ross (1998), who examined the impact of people’s perceptions of choice and control on psychological distress among participants in 33 different countries, found a much more variable relationship. Among European-Americans, those with a strong sense of freedom of choice and control had lower levels of depression and anxiety than those who perceived less choice and control in their lives. However, this relationship was not observed for Asian-Americans and Asians. Like Asian-Americans, Hispanic-Americans perceived less freedom and control in their lives; however, like European-Americans, Hispanic-Americans also demonstrated the negative association between these perceptions and distress, even after such variables as socioeconomic status were taken into account.

## Repression and Negative Affectivity

Sometimes we are not aware that we are controlling our emotions. In laboratory studies of stress, some individuals will report feeling relaxed while performing challenging tasks, but physiologically and behaviorally, they show signs of significant stress, such as slower reaction times, increased muscle tension, and rapid heart rate. This extreme form of regulatory control—in which there is a discrepancy between verbal and physiological measures of stress—is called [**repressive coping**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term293)(Weinberger, Schwartz, & Davidson, 1979; Myers, 2010). Using this emotion-focused coping style, *repressors* attempt to inhibit or avoid information and their emotional responses so they can view themselves as emotionally imperturbable. Newton and Contrada (1992) found that repressors displayed the greatest discrepancy between self-reporting and physiological measures of anxiety when their behavior was being observed. This suggests that repression is most likely to occur in a social context.

## repressive coping

An emotion-focused coping style in which we attempt to inhibit our emotional responses, especially in social situations, so we can view ourselves as imperturbable.

Is repression healthy? Accumulating evidence suggests not. Emotional suppression activates the sympathetic division of the autonomic nervous system, functioning much like a stressor in elevating blood pressure and triggering the fight-or-flight response (Butler and others, 2003; Myers, 2010). Inhibited emotional expression also has been shown to contribute to greater cortisol reactivity in people with cardiovascular disease, increasing the incidence of adverse cardiac events and cardiac-related death (Whitehead and others, 2007). It has also been shown that the *heart rate variability* of repressors, which is the time between two subsequent heartbeats and depends on sympathetic and parasympathetic activity, differs from that of non-repressors in a way that is associated with cardiac problems (see [**Chapter 10**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch10)).

Repressive coping has been associated with the development of cancer, asthma, and diabetes (Myers and others, 2008). Although the empirical evidence for a “cancer personality” is mixed, differences in immunological markers do seem to suggest that repressors are more cancer-prone than non-repressors.

The same is true for asthma and diabetes, which are both linked to several immune markers. Repressors have a higher number of white blood cells called *eosinophiles*, which become active in allergic diseases and infections. Research on diabetes shows that repressors have an increased level of both insulin and glucose—biomarkers that can signal an emerging resistance to insulin and the development of Type 2 diabetes (Mund and Mitte, 2012).

There is a strong relationship among repression, avoidance coping, and various types of negative affect, including pessimism, depression, and generalized anxiety (Hildebrandt & Hayes, 2012). Like explanatory style, [**negative affectivity (NA)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term229), or *neuroticism*, is considered one of the Big Five global personality traits that reflect an individual’s general approach to life. People who score high on measures of NA are extremely tense, anxious, insecure, jealous, hostile, and emotionally unstable.

## negative affectivity (NA)

A coping style or personality dimension consisting of chronic negative emotions and distress; also known as *neuroticism*.

## Social Support

So far, we have focused on a person’s *internal* resources for dealing with stress. These resources—hardiness, optimism, personal control, and disclosure—certainly play important roles in our response to stress. Yet external factors are also important, especially the degree of social support that we receive. Social ties and relationships with other people powerfully influence us, in both positive and negative ways.

[**Social support**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term313) is companionship from others that conveys emotional concern, material assistance, or honest feedback about a situation. In stressful situations, people who perceive a high level of social support may experience less stress and may cope more effectively. Consider the evidence:

## social support

Companionship from others that conveys emotional concern, material assistance, or honest feedback about a situation.

* *Faster recovery and fewer medical complications:* Social support has been associated with better adjustment to and/or faster recovery from coronary artery surgery, rheumatoid arthritis, childhood leukemia, and stroke (Magni and others, 1988; Martin & Brantley, 2004). In addition, women with strong social ties have fewer complications during childbirth (Collins and others, 1993), and both women and men with high levels of social support are less likely to suffer heart attacks (Holahan and others, 1997).
* *Lower mortality rates:* Having a number of close social relationships is associated with a lower risk of dying at any age. The classic example of this association comes from a survey of 7000 adults in Alameda County, California (Berkman & Syme, 1994). The researchers found that having a large number of social contacts enabled women to live an average of 2.8 years longer and men an average of 2.3 years longer ([**Figure 5.5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F5-5)). These benefits to longevity remained even when health habits such as smoking, alcohol use, physical activity, obesity, and differences in SES and health status at the beginning of the study were taken into account. Similarly, a 15-year prospective study of mortality rates among Swedish men who were 50 years old at the start of the study revealed that social support was inversely related to mortality. Men with a large circle of friends whom they saw regularly were half as likely to develop heart disease or die compared with men who had little social contact or support. The impact of low levels of social support on mortality was comparable in magnitude to that of cigarette smoking (Rosengren, Wilhelmsen, & Orth-Gomer, 2004). Another study showed that cancer patients with the fewest contacts each day were 2.2 times more likely to die of cancer over a 17-year period than were those with greater social support (Spiegel, 1996).

## Figure 5.5: Social Isolation and Mortality

**The Alameda County Study was the first to establish a strong connection between social support and long life. Over a nine-year period, women and men with the fewest social ties were two to four times more likely to die than those who were not socially isolated.**

**Source:** Berkman, L.F., & Syme, S.L. (1979). Social networks, host resistance, and mortality: A nine-year follow-up of Alameda County residents. *American Journal of Epidemiology, 109*, [**p. 190**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/P5-262).

iStockphoto

* *Less distress in the face of terminal illness:* Patients who perceive a strong network of social support experience less depression and hopelessness when undergoing treatment for AIDS, diabetes, and a variety of other chronic illnesses than do patients lacking social support (Kiviruusu, Huurre, & Aro, 2007; Varni and others, 1992).

## How Social Support Makes a Difference

Clearly, the support of others can benefit our health, but how? According to the [**buffering hypothesis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term61), social support mitigates stress indirectly by helping us cope more effectively (Cohen & McKay, 1984; Cohen & Wills, 1985). For instance, people who perceive strong social support are less likely to ruminate. Rumination tends to lead to more negative interpretations of events, triggering recall of unpleasant memories, interfering with problem solving, and reducing the ruminator’s interest in participating in enjoyable activities (Lyubomirsky, Caldwell, & Nolen-Hoeksema, 1998; Spasojevic & Alloy, 2001). As another example, happily married people live longer, healthier lives than those who are unmarried (Kaplan & Kronick, 2006).

## buffering hypothesis

A theory that social support produces its stress-busting effects indirectly by helping the individual cope more effectively.

According to the [**direct effect hypothesis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term115), social support enhances the body’s physical responses to challenging situations (Pilisuk, Boylan, & Acredolo, 1987). Support for the direct effect hypothesis comes from an investigation of the relationships among self-reported stress levels, the availability of social support, and circulating levels of prostate-specific antigen (PSA) in men being screened for prostate cancer (Stone and others, 1999). Men with the highest levels of self-reported stress also had significantly higher levels of PSA—a biological marker of prostate malignancy—than their less stressed counterparts. Although stress was positively associated with PSA levels, there was an *inverse* correlation between PSA levels and the participants’ perceived level of social support, as demonstrated by their scores on the six-item *Satisfaction with Social Contacts* (*SSC*) scale (see [**Figure 5.6**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F5-6)). The SSC includes items such as “How has the number of people that you feel close to changed in the past six months?” and “How satisfied are you with the amount of social contact you have?” Those low in social support had significantly higher PSA levels than their more socially connected counterparts.

## Figure 5.6: Stress, Social Support, and Prostate-Specific Antigen (PSA)

**Level of PSA was positively associated with stress and inversely related to satisfaction with social contacts. Participants who perceived low levels of stress and high satisfaction with social contacts had significantly lower levels of PSA, a biological marker of prostate malignancy.**

**Source:** Stone, A.A., and others. (1999). Psychosocial stress and social support are associated with prostate-specific antigen levels in men: Results from a community screening program. *Health Psychology, 18(5*) 485.

## direct effect hypothesis

A theory that social support produces its beneficial effects during both stressful and non-stressful times by enhancing the body’s physical responses to challenging situations.

## Friends Can Prevent or Eliminate Stress

**Throughout our lives, friends can be an important stress-busting resource. If we perceive a high level of social support from our friends, we are better able to cope with stress. Social support is also associated with faster recovery and fewer medical complications after surgery, lower mortality rates, and less distress in the face of a terminal illness.**

Christopher Robbins/[**Thinkstock.com**](http://thinkstock.com/)

Other research studies have shown that the provision of social support, and especially the *perception* of supportive personal relationships, can blunt cardiovascular responses to stressful tasks and have other beneficial health outcomes (Uchino, 2009). A recent meta-analysis of 148 studies including over 308,000 participants found that support was even related to an approximately 50 percent lower risk of future mortality (Holt-Lunstad and others, 2010). Another study found that the quality of one’s personal relationships may affect cellular aging. Participants who felt greater ambivalence toward those in their social networks had shorter telomeres (repetitive structures at the end of chromosomes that help promote stability) than those whose relationships were less ambivalent (Uchino and others, 2012). This link was particularly strong among women and remained even after considering control variables such as age, health behaviors, and medication use. Shorter telomeres are strong predictors of mortality from a number of diseases, including cardiovascular disease, cancer, and various infectious illnesses (Willeit and others, 2010).

Remarkably, even the subliminal priming of *thoughts* about social relationships can have an effect. A study conducted by McKenzie Carlisle and her colleagues (2012) found that activating negative relationships in participants’ memories was associated with greater feelings of threat, lower feelings of control, and higher diastolic blood pressure reactivity while they were coping with an acute psychological stressor.

The issue of how social support benefits health continues to be hotly debated. It may be that social support makes potentially stressful events more benign by diffusing or minimizing their initial impact. For example, having a supportive friend may make it less likely that you will interpret a low exam grade as evidence of low intelligence. Or perhaps the belief that other people care about you increases your self-esteem and gives you a more positive outlook on life. The result? Greater resistance to disease and a greater chance of adopting health-enhancing habits.

## Who Receives Social Support?

Why are some people more likely than others to receive social support? The answer is predictable: People with better social skills—who relate well to others and who are caring and giving—create stronger social networks and thus receive more social support. Some evidence comes from a study of college freshmen (Cohen, Sherrod, & Clark, 1986). Researchers categorized incoming students according to their social competence, social anxiety, and self-disclosure skills. Over the course of the study, they discovered that students with greater social skills were the most likely to form strong social networks.

Other researchers have found that angry or hostile people receive less social support than agreeable people do. They also report more negative life events and make people around them feel more stress (Hardy & Smith, 1988; Wager, Fieldman, & Hussey, 2003). One study found that college hostility predicted low social support, risk for depression, achieving less than expected in career and in relationships, being a current smoker, and excessive alcohol consumption at midlife (Siegler and others, 2003). Results such as these suggest an obvious intervention: to help people increase their social support, help them learn to be friendlier and less hostile.

It would seem, then, that the secret to a long, healthy life is to construct a large social network. But can a person be *too* socially connected? Can some social connections adversely affect our health?

## When Social Support Is Not Helpful

Sometimes social support does not reduce stress and benefit health. In fact, it may produce the opposite results. There are several reasons for this surprising fact. First, although support may be offered, a person may not *perceive* it as beneficial (Wilcox, Kasl, & Berkman, 1994). This may occur because the person does not want the assistance, thinks the assistance offered is inadequate, or is too distracted to notice that help has been offered. For example, in the first hours of coping with the loss of a loved one, a person may want only to be alone with his or her grief.

Second, the type of support offered may not be what is needed at the moment. For example, a single mother who is struggling to complete her college degree may feel stress during exam weeks. Although what she may need most is *instrumental social support*, such as assistance with child care, all that may be offered is *emotional support*, such as encouragement to study hard. Instrumental social support is especially valuable for controllable stressors, whereas emotional support is more helpful for uncontrollable stressors, such as a cataclysmic event or the loss of a loved one. In one study of young widows, for example, the stress of losing a spouse was best buffered by emotional support (particularly from their parents). Conversely, among working women with young infants, the only effective buffer for that stress was instrumental support from their spouse (Lieberman, 1982). The role of social support in promoting health, then, is quite specific. It is also subject to social and cultural norms concerning the types of support that are helpful (Abraido-Lanza, 2004).

Third, too much social support may actually *increase* a person’s stress. Perhaps you know someone who is a member of too many organizations or is overwhelmed by intrusive social and family relationships. During periods of stress, this person may feel under siege in the face of all the advice and “support” that is offered (Shumaker & Hill, 1991). The critical factor appears to be having at least one close friend to confide in and share problems with. Having five, six, or even a dozen more may convey no more—and perhaps may give even less—benefit than having one or two (Langner & Michael, 1960).

## Other Factors

Other factors that affect our ability to cope include practicing gratitude, maintaining a good sense of humor, interacting with pets, and living spiritually.

## Gratitude

People who maintain a grateful outlook on life also cope better with stress, and therefore experience improved psychological and physical well-being. In one recent study, healthy young adults and persons with neuromuscular disease were asked to keep weekly records of their moods, coping behaviors, health behaviors, physical symptoms, and overall life appraisals. Participants were assigned randomly to groups focused on daily hassles, things to be grateful for, or neutral life events. Those who kept gratitude journals exercised more regularly, reported fewer physical symptoms, and felt better about their lives as a whole, compared with those who recorded hassles or neutral life events (Emmons & McCullough, 2003).

## Humor

Laughter and a sense of humor help many people cope with stress (Wanzer, Sparks, & Frymier, 2009). In one of the best-known personal accounts of coping with chronic disease, Norman Cousins (1979) described how a daily dose of viewing comedy films helped relieve his pain. He credited laughter with helping him to regain his health and referred to the healing processes of laughter as “internal jogging.”

Although personal accounts such as Cousins’s are captivating, they provide only anecdotal evidence of the health-enhancing effects of humor. To date, only a few studies have systematically investigated humor and stress. Nevertheless, evidence is mounting that in addition to boosting mood, laughter bolsters the immune system, as measured by increased natural killer cell activity and reduced secretion of epinephrine and cortisol (Bennett and others, 2003); reduces the risk of coronary disease (Clark, Seidler, & Miller, 2001); lowers blood pressure (Hassed, 2001) and generally promotes vascular health (Miller & Fry, 2009); and provides a general sense of well-being. By reducing epinephrine and cortisol secretion, laughing may also allow us to cope more effectively with everyday tension (Lefcourt, 2002; Martin, 1988). Hearty laughter is even aerobic, providing a workout for the heart, diaphragm, and lungs, as well as the muscles in the abdomen, shoulders, face, and occasionally the arms, legs, and back.

## Pets

For three decades, Edward Creagan, an oncologist at the Mayo Clinic, has written prescriptions instructing cancer patients to keep pets. Pet ownership can help lower blood pressure responses to stress, decrease physician visits, and increase heart attack survival. “If pet ownership was a medication,” Creagan says, “it would be patented tomorrow” (Pets and Aging 2001, p. 5). In a recent study, hypertensive stockbrokers received the antihypertensive drug lisinopril; half also were given a pet. Those with a pet experienced half the increase in blood pressure to a laboratory stressor as those without a pet (Allen, Shykoff, & Izzo, 2001). In other studies, when researchers examined neuroendocrine responses in people before and after 30-minute quiet interaction periods with their pets, they found decreased secretion of cortisol and increased secretion of dopamine, oxytocin, and serotonin—three hormones associated with feelings of well-being (Johnson & Meadows, 2002; Odendaal, 2000). Recognizing that pets can be an important source of social support to the elderly, some assisted living facilities are even beginning to allow residents to keep pets. Even once-a-week exposure to a pet can produce a significant reduction in an elderly person’s loneliness (Banks & Banks, 2002).

## Spirituality

As noted in [**Chapter 1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch01), throughout history, religion and medicine have been closely connected as healing traditions. Indeed, spiritual and physical healing were frequently conducted by the same person. As Western biomedicine matured, however, the two traditions diverged. Rather than consulting a spiritual healer to cure infection and prevent disease, people began turning to the growing number of wondrous weapons in modern medicine’s arsenal.

There are signs, however, that the wall between medicine and spiritual healing—which for many countries was never as high as in the United States—is beginning to topple. Centers for research on spirituality and healing are cropping up at top universities, and 90 percent of U.S. medical schools include content on spirituality and health, up from only three schools just 15 years earlier (Koenig and others, 2010). Moreover, one survey reported that 99 percent of family physicians agreed that “personal prayer, meditation, or other spiritual and religious practices” could increase the effectiveness of medical treatment (Yankelovich Partners, 1998).

The increasing popularity of fundamentalist Christianity, New Age beliefs, and complementary and alternative medicine (CAM; see [**Chapter 15**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch15)) has led to a renewed interest in possible links between spirituality and healing. Prayer is being used with increasing frequency in the treatment of many chronic diseases, including cancer (Primack & Spencer, 1996). And many are convinced of the efficacy of spiritual interventions. Anecdotal cases of tumor regression in response to prayer have been reported, as has the effect of prayer to reduce anxiety (Dossey, 1993).

## Pet Therapy

**“Therapy pets” and “animal-assisted therapy” are some of the names that describe programs in which animals help people just by visiting with them. Pets can help lower blood pressure responses to stress, decrease physician visits, and increase heart attack survival.**

Ron Chapple/Shutterstock

But is there scientific evidence to support this growing movement? Does spirituality promote health, as four of every five Americans believe (Dembner, 2005)? A wealth of research has explored the relationship between spirituality, health, and healing (Koenig, King, & Carson, 2011). As is often the case with nontraditional interventions, the findings are mixed, though there is evidence that faith and spirituality correlate with health. One curious finding has been called the *faith factor*—people who are religiously active tend to live longer than those who are less religious. A number of studies have reported that devotees of various religions—Catholic priests and nuns, Trappist monks, and Mormon priests—have lower illness and mortality rates than the general population. One study of mortality rates among nearly 4000 Israelis reported that those living in orthodox religious communities were about half as likely as those living in nonreligious kibbutz settlements to have died over the 16-year course of the study (Kark and others, 1996).

**Centers for research on spirituality and healing are cropping up at top universities, and 90 percent of U.S. medical schools include content on spirituality and health.**

Stockphoto/[**Thinkstock.com**](http://thinkstock.com/)

A review of 27 studies found that, in 22 of them, frequency of attendance at religious services was associated with better health (Levin & Vanderpool, 1987). However, most of those studies were uncontrolled, making them vulnerable to mistaken interpretation and unable to pinpoint causation. For example, ill health may prevent many individuals from attending services in the first place. Additionally, if religious people shared other health-promoting traits—say, they exercised as much as they worshipped or avoided smoking or excessive alcohol use—religion might have nothing to do with their improved health. Finally, it has been argued that women, who tend to be more religiously active than men, may in large measure account for the spirituality–longevity effect because women tend to outlive the less religious members of the other gender as well (Schnall and others, 2010). But gender is a partial explanation at best, for religiously active men tend to outlive men who are not (Benjamins, Ellison, & Rogers, 2010).

Several recent studies have attempted to rule out gender and other uncontrolled variables in the faith-health connection. One study of Californians reported that even after ruling out differences of gender, ethnicity, age, and education, those who were religiously active were 36 percent less likely to die in any given year than their less religious counterparts (McCullough and others, 2000). In another, which controlled for the age, race, and gender of the participants, researchers reported that those who rarely attended religious services were 1.87 times more likely to die during the eight-year study than were those who attended frequently (Hummer and others, 1999) ([**Figure 5.7**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F5-7)).

## Figure 5.7: Religious Attendance and Life Expectancy

**The results of this large national health survey conducted by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) showed that religiously active people had longer life expectancies, even when the respondents’ ages, races, and genders were controlled for.**

**Source:** Hummer, R.A., Rogers, R.G., Nam, C.B., & Ellison, C.G. (1999). Religious involvement and U.S. adult mortality. *Demography, 36*, 273–285.

Moreover, one massive, 28-year study that followed over 5000 Californians found that people who attended religious services weekly were 36 percent less likely to die in any year (Oman and others, 2002). This was true even after the researchers controlled for age, gender, ethnicity, and education among the participants. Another study of more than 20,000 people reported that, at age 20, the faith factor translated into a life expectancy of 83 years for the religiously active and 75 years for those who are not religious (Hummer and others, 1999).

While it is important to remember that correlation does not prove causation, findings such as these demonstrate that religious activity *predicts* life expectancy, just as exercise, smoking, and other health behaviors do. This is good news, since 69 percent of adults in the United States say they are very or moderately religious (Gallup Poll, 2012). What accounts for the correlation between strong religious practices and longevity? At least three intervening factors remain strong candidates: *lifestyle, social support*, and *positive emotions*. First, compared with those in the general population, those who are religiously active tend to eat healthier, exercise more, smoke and consume alcohol less frequently, and are less likely to engage in high-risk sexual behaviors (Koenig & Vaillant, 2009; Park and others, 2009). Religious attendance also appears to protect against high blood pressure (Gillum & Ingram, 2006), migraines (Wachholtz & Pargament, 2008), and other disorders (Berntsen and others, 2008). But a healthier lifestyle seems to account for only about 25 percent of the longevity difference between people who are religiously active and those who are not.

Second, because religion tends to be communal, those who are religiously active may benefit from more social ties than those in the general population. Throughout this book, we will explore the beneficial effects of social support on each domain of health. Belonging to a spiritual community gives a person a sense of group identity and access to a network of people who may provide several types of support. This includes *tangible assistance*, such as gifts of food and other means of material support during stressful times. Faith communities can also provide *informational support* for coping with stressful events such as divorce, death, and illness. Perhaps most significant of all is the [**invisible support**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term196) that comes from the *perception* that people in the community care and are standing by to provide assistance if needed.

## invisible support

The *perception* that people in the community care and are standing by to provide assistance, if needed.

Third, spiritual activity may promote health by fostering more positive emotions, including an optimistic and hopeful worldview, feelings of acceptance and personal control, and a sense that life is meaningful (Koenig & Larson, 1998). This belief system often lessens the stress-induced toll on their health and even enables people to find meaning in the stressors they encounter. Having a stable, coherent view of the world and life, along with active participation in a church, helps many individuals cope with catastrophic events such as the loss of a child (McIntosh, Silver, & Wortman, 1993).

Not all spiritual beliefs, however, are beneficial. For instance, if people see an illness or other adverse health outcome as a form of punishment from God, they may experience even more physical and psychological distress (Sherman and others, 2009), and prayer by itself has not been shown to have reliable health benefits (Nicholson, Rose, & Bobak, 2010). A meta-analysis of 23 clinical trials of distant healing that included random assignment of participants and placebo-based control groups reported that 13 of the studies (57 percent) yielded statistically significant effects, 9 showed no effect over control interventions, and 1 showed a negative effect. However, the methodological limitations of many of the studies made it impossible to draw definitive conclusions about the efficacy of distant healing (Astin, Harkness, & Ernst, 2000).

So what is the role of faith in health and healing? Although faith does seem to help many people cope with stressful events, Richard Sloan and his Columbia University colleagues believe that doctors should remain cautious in “prescribing” faith. “Linking religious activities and better health can be harmful to patients who already must confront age-old folk wisdom that illness is due to their own moral failure” (Sloan, Bagiella, & Powell, p. 665). However, they acknowledge that faith can help patients cope with illness. Although the scientific jury is still out on the connection between faith and healing, they conclude that “respectful attention must be paid to the impact of religion on the patient’s decisions about health care” (p. 665).

## Coping Interventions

Each of us has coping skills that we have acquired over the years. These include strategies that have worked in the past, techniques that we have read about, and behaviors that we have observed in other people. In most situations, these skills are probably adequate to keep us from experiencing undue stress. Sometimes, however, the demands of a situation may exceed our coping resources. Health psychologists have played a prominent role in developing interventions that help people cope with stress. Some of these techniques, such as biofeedback and meditation, are considered forms of complementary and alternative medicine (Barnes, Bloom, & Nahin, 2008), which is explored in [**Chapter 15**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch15). However, the growing evidence base for the effectiveness of relaxation training, cognitive-behavioral therapy, and emotional disclosure has led to the incorporation of a number of stress management techniques into conventional medicine.

**According to researchers Gump and Matthews, people who take regular vacations are less likely to die prematurely, especially from heart disease. Bring along your pager or cell phone, however, and you won’t reap the full stress-busting effects of time off—you’ll be on guard for potential stress.**

[**Stress management**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term322) describes a variety of psychological methods designed to reduce the impact of potentially stressful experiences. These techniques were originally introduced in clinical settings to help patients adapt to chronic illnesses and stressful medical procedures, but now they are used widely. For example, occupational groups (especially health care providers, emergency services personnel, students, and teachers) and people in disadvantaged personal circumstances (such as family caregivers, single parents, the unemployed, and victims of assault or abuse) all benefit from stress-management techniques.

## stress management

The various psychological methods designed to reduce the impact of potentially stressful experiences.

So do students making the transition from high school to college. Consider how stressful the college experience can be. You might be living away from home for the first time, perhaps crammed into a crowded dorm room with people who have very different backgrounds, personalities, and habits. Your professors may seem gruff, and the coursework may be more challenging and accelerated than you expected. You’re forced to study more than ever, often under noisy circumstances and with inadequate sleep and campus food that doesn’t sit well in your stomach.

To help new students cope with these challenges, many colleges make stress-management programs available. A typical program involves three phases: *education, acquiring skills*, and *practicing skills*. In the first phase, participants learn what stress is, how it takes a toll on health, and that stress is more a process of their own cognitive appraisal than a characteristic of situations themselves. Next, they are trained to monitor stress in their everyday lives using some of the techniques of *ecological momentary assessment*. For instance, they learn to observe their own behavior closely and to record when, and under what circumstances, they feel stress. Participants are also encouraged to keep track of their emotional, physical, and behavioral reactions to the stressors they’ve identified. By charting this information, students can learn to recognize, and then focus on, events and people who are *stress carriers* that seem to be regular “triggers” of their stress. They also may begin to see an unhealthy pattern in their own behavioral responses to these circumstances, such as emotional eating, oversleeping, or using alcohol and other drugs.

The next phase of stress management involves learning new skills to either eliminate potential stressors or to reduce the experience of stress in healthy ways. There are many techniques available to help people manage stress more effectively. We will consider relaxation training first.

## Relaxation Therapies

Although relaxation techniques have been used since antiquity, modern use is usually traced to Edmond Jacobson (1938), whose [**progressive muscle relaxation**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term274) technique forms the cornerstone for many modern relaxation procedures. In progressive relaxation, you first tense a particular muscle (such as the forehead) and hold that tension for about 10 seconds. Then you slowly release the tension, focusing on the soothing feeling as the tension drains away. Then you tense, then relax other major muscle groups, including the mouth, eyes, neck, arms, shoulders, thighs, stomach, calves, feet, and toes. After practicing the relaxation technique for several weeks, you will identify the particular spots in your body that tense up during moments of stress, such as the jaw or fists. As you become more aware of these reactions, you can learn to relax these muscles at will.

## progressive muscle relaxation

A form of relaxation training that reduces muscle tension through a series of tensing and relaxing exercises involving the body’s major muscle groups.

In another training technique, the [**relaxation response**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term291), participants assume the meditative state described below, in which metabolism slows and blood pressure lowers. Cardiologist Herbert Benson became intrigued with the possibility that relaxation might be an antidote to stress when he found that experienced meditators could lower their heart rate, blood lactate level (a by-product of physical exercise that creates the “burn” of muscular exertion), blood pressure, and oxygen consumption (Benson, 1996). Benson identified four requirements for achieving the relaxation response:

## relaxation response

A meditative state of relaxation in which metabolism slows and blood pressure lowers.

* A quiet place in which distractions and external stimulation are minimized
* A comfortable position, such as sitting in an easy chair
* A mental device, such as focusing your attention on a single thought or word and repeating it over and over
* A passive, nonjudgmental attitude

There is considerable evidence that relaxation training can help patients cope with a variety of stress-related problems, including hypertension, tension headaches, depression, lower back pain, adjustment to chemotherapy, and anxiety (Smith, 2005). Underlying the effectiveness of these techniques is their ability to reduce heart rate, muscle tension, and blood pressure, as well as self-reported tension and anxiety. Moreover, these techniques generally have been found to be more effective than placebos in reducing pain and alleviating stress.

## Deep Breathing and Visualization

When we’re stressed, our breathing is often short and hurried. Simply slowing it down by taking long, deep breaths can help induce relaxation. You can try this yourself. Inhale slowly, and then exhale slowly. Count slowly to five as you inhale, and then count slowly to five as you exhale. As you exhale, note how your body relaxes. The keys to *deep breathing* are to breathe with your diaphragm, or abdomen, rather than your chest, and to take at least as long to exhale each breath as you did to inhale. Imagine a spot just below your navel. Breathe into that spot, expanding your abdomen as it fills with air. Let the air fill you from the abdomen up, then let it out, like deflating a balloon. Each long, slow exhalation should make you feel more relaxed.

Breathing techniques are often combined with matching *visualization* (guided mental imagery)—a form of focused relaxation used to create peaceful images in your mind—a “mental escape.” In *guided imagery*, the participant is directed to recall or create a pleasant, relaxing image, focusing attention on sensory details such as sensations of color, sound, and touch. Visualization is powerful enough to reduce, or even to trigger, stress reactions in the laboratory. In one study, participants spent five minutes imagining scenes typical of their relationship with a romantic partner. Those who had earlier reported being in an unhappy relationship had significantly greater increases in salivary cortisol following the imagery (indicating higher stress) than those in happier relationships (Berry & Worthington, 2001).

To try it for yourself, find a comfortable place where you can close your eyes and begin breathing rhythmically. Breathe deeply, but make sure you do so in a natural rhythm. Now visualize relaxation entering your body as you inhale, and tension leaving your body as you exhale. As you breathe, visualize your breath coming into your nostrils, going into your lungs, and expanding your chest and abdomen. Then visualize your breath going out the same way. Continue breathing, but each time you inhale, imagine that you are breathing in more relaxation. Each time you exhale, imagine that you are getting rid of a little more tension.

Finally, breathing techniques and visualization can be combined with positive *self-affirmations*, or self-talk, as you relax. The goal is to identify negative self-talk and convert it into healthier, positive self-talk. Here are a few positive statements you can practice:

* I am healthy and strong.
* There is nothing that I cannot handle.
* I am safe.

## Mindfulness-Based Stress Reduction

Is there a link between effective coping and being more consciously present? [**Mindfulness-based stress reduction (MBSR)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term220) was developed at the Stress Reduction Clinic at the University of Massachusetts as an adjunct to medical treatment for people with a variety of chronic health problems. Jon Kabat-Zinn, who developed MBSR, has described mindfulness as “falling awake,” “coming to our senses,” and “knowing what you are doing as you are actually doing it” (Kabat-Zinn, 2005). A basic premise of mindfulness training is that in most aspects of life, people function on “automatic pilot”—a mode of behavior characterized by habit. Proponents of mindfulness training believe that stress can be reduced, and quality of life improved, by overriding “autopilot” mode and instead focusing on the present moment.

## mindfulness-based stress reduction (MBSR)

A form of therapy that focuses on using structured meditation to promote mindfulness, a moment-to-moment, nonjudgmental awareness.

More generally, *mindfulness-based cognitive therapy* (*MBCT*) has been used to improve people’s ability to self-regulate negative reactions to stress (Brown & Ryan, 2003). Neuroimaging studies have begun to explore the neural mechanisms underlying MBCT with techniques such as functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI). Mindfulness training seems to increase activity in the prefrontal cortex of the brain, an area important in regulating activity in the amygdala and other parts of the limbic system related to anxiety and other negative emotions (Creswell and others, 2007). One study found that college students who scored high in measures of *dispositional mindfulness* had lower resting neural activity in the amygdala (Way and others, 2010).

Using fMRI, another study found increased tissue density in the brain’s hippocampus among participants who completed an eight-week MBSR course compared with a control group (Holzel and others, 2011). The hippocampus is believed to play a central role in mediating some of the benefits of mindfulness training due to its involvement in regulating cortical arousal and emotion (Milad and others, 2007). Structural changes in the hippocampus therefore may reflect improved function in regulating emotional responses to potential stressors. In contrast to these increases in tissue density, *decreased* density of the hippocampus has been associated with several pathological conditions, including major depression (Sheline, 2000) and post-traumatic stress disorder (Kasai and others, 2008).

## Mindfulness

**Many people find meditation to be an effective technique for managing stress. According to research by Herbert Benson, experienced meditators can lower their heart rate, blood lactate level, blood pressure, and oxygen consumption, and so reduce or even eliminate the effects of stress. However, other studies have shown that meditation does not achieve these results more reliably than other forms of relaxation.**

Markus Boesch/Getty Images

Mindfulness training may also improve immune functioning and reduce the risk of a number of chronic medical conditions (Hofmann and others, 2010). One prospective study found that hypertension patients who received MBCT had a 30 percent lower cardiovascular death rate over the next two decades compared to members of other treatment groups (Schneider and others, 2005). Other studies have established the efficacy of mindfulness-based interventions in reducing symptoms of generalized anxiety disorder (Roemer, Orsillo, & Salters-Pedneault, 2008), depression (Teasdale and others, 2000), substance abuse (Bowen and others, 2006), eating disorders (Tapper and others, 2009), and chronic pain (Grossman and others, 2004). For an easy primer on how MBSR works, see Your [**Health Assets: Try Mindfulness-Based Stress Reduction on Your Own**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B5-34).

## Cognitive Behavioral Therapy

[**Cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term84) is based on the view that our way of thinking about the environment, rather than the environment itself, determines our stress level. If thinking can be changed, and skills acquired to make positive changes in behavior, stress can be reduced. There are a variety of clinical interventions that use cognitive strategies, including distraction, calming self-statements, and cognitive restructuring. In distraction procedures, people learn to direct their attention away from unpleasant or stressful events. Use of pleasant imagery (also called *visualization*), counting aloud, and focusing attention on relaxing stimuli (such as a favorite drawing, photograph, or song) are examples of distraction.

## cognitive behavior therapy (CBT)

The use of principles from learning theory to change unhealthy patterns of thinking and behavior.

Individuals can also be taught to silently or softly make calming, relaxing, and reassuring self-talk statements that emphasize the temporary nature of a stressor (“Let it go, that rude driver won’t get to me”), are aimed at reducing autonomic arousal (“Stay calm now, breathe deeply, and count to 10”), or are directed at preserving a sense of personal control (“I can handle this”). In our opening story, Kris Goldsmith’s therapist might have helped him to learn self-calming techniques and to maintain a sense of self-control.

## *Your Health Assets*: Try Mindfulness-Based Stress Reduction for Yourself

Mindfulness-based stress reduction (MBSR) has been shown to have many benefits, including increased attention, an improved immune response to disease, reduced stress hormones, and perhaps even a higher quality of life. Following are a few suggestions for how to try MBSR:

* Next time you are outside, take several deep breaths. What is the air like? Is it warm or cold? How does the air feel on your body? Try to accept that feeling and not resist it.
* Eat your next meal in silence. Don’t do anything but focus on your food. Eat slowly, and savor each bite.
* One morning when you can, take time at the beginning of the day to sit alone and think. Focus on your breathing. Gaze out the window and listen to the sounds outdoors.
* At work or school, try to stop for a few moments each hour. Note how your body feels. Let yourself regroup, and allow your mind to settle before you return to what you were doing.

*Cognitive restructuring* is a generic term that describes a variety of psychological interventions directed at replacing maladaptive, self-defeating thoughts with healthier adaptive thinking. These interventions aim to break the vicious cycle of negative thinking, which pessimistically distorts perceptions of everyday events and prevents adaptive coping behaviors (Belar & Deardorff, 1996) ([**Figure 5.8**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F5-8)). Therapists teach clients to reinterpret their thoughts in a less negative way and to raise awareness of distorted and maladaptive thinking.

## Figure 5.8: The Negative Stress Cycle

**Stressful events interpreted through a pessimistic, self-defeating style create a negative mood that leads to stress-related physical symptoms and fuels additional stress. Fortunately, this vicious cycle can be interrupted at any point.**

This reciprocal relationship between maladaptive thinking and unhealthy behaviors is well documented. For example, focusing on a negative experience at work can affect your mood and lead to a tension headache. Having a tension headache can sour your mood, which in turn can make your thoughts more pessimistic.

## Cognitive Behavioral Stress Management

*Cognitive behavioral stress management* (*CBSM*) combines relaxation training, visualization, cognitive restructuring, reinforcement, and other techniques into a multimodal intervention that has helped people cope with a range of stressors. CBSM often begins by teaching people to confront stressful events with a variety of coping strategies that can be used before the events become overwhelming. In this way, individuals are able to “inoculate” themselves against the potentially harmful effects of stress (Antoni, Ironson, & Scheiderman, 2007). Many stress inoculation programs offer an array of techniques so that a client can choose the strategies that work best for him or her.

[**Stress inoculation training**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term321) is a three-stage process, with the therapist using a weakened dose of a stressor in an attempt to build immunity against the full-blown stressor (Meichenbaum, 2007). The stages are as follows:

## stress inoculation training

A cognitive behavioral treatment in which people identify stressors in their lives and learn skills for coping with them so that when those stressors occur, they are able to put those skills into effect.

* Stage 1: *Reconceptualization*. Patients reconceptualize the source of their stress. Imagine that you are agonizing over an upcoming dental procedure, such as a root canal. During the first stage of stress inoculation training, you would learn that your discomfort is at least partially the result of psychological factors, such as dwelling on how much the procedure is going to hurt. Once you are convinced that some of your pain is psychological in nature, you will be more likely to accept that cognitive behavior therapy can offer some relief.
* Stage 2: *Skills acquisition*. Next, you will be taught relaxation and controlled breathing skills. The logic is inescapable: Being relaxed is incompatible with being tense and physically aroused. Therefore, learning to relax at will is a valuable tool in managing pain. Other techniques that you might learn include the use of pleasant mental imagery, dissociation, or humor.
* Stage 3: *Follow-through*. Now you will learn to use these coping skills in everyday life. You will be encouraged to increase your physical activity and to take pain medication on a timed daily schedule, rather than whenever you feel pain. Your family members may be taught ways of reinforcing your new healthier behaviors.

CBSM has proved to be effective in helping people cope with a variety of stress-related problems, including job stress (Kawaharada and others, 2009), hypertension (Amigo and others, 1991), post-traumatic stress disorder (Ponniah & Hollon, 2009), depression associated with breast cancer (Antoni and others, 2001), prostate cancer (Penedo and others, 2004), and AIDS (Antoni and others, 2001). CBSM also has been shown to reduce HPA axis hormones (see [**Chapter 4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch04)) among symptomatic human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)–infected men (Antoni and others, 2001) and reduce postsurgical pain, rehabilitation, and the number of health service visits among competitive athletes (Perna and others, 2003).

## Expressive Writing

In the 1980s, psychologist James Pennebaker began a fascinating series of studies with college students, most of whom followed this simple protocol: The students were asked to write about an assigned topic for 15 minutes a day for four days. Half of the participants wrote about everyday, ordinary experiences—describing their dorm room, for instance. The other students were told to write about their deepest thoughts and feelings regarding a stressful or traumatic experience. Students in the emotional disclosure group took immediately to the task and wrote intimate, gripping stories, sometimes crying and displaying other strong emotional reactions. At the end of the study, most reported that the experience had helped them find new meaning in the traumatic experience. The most striking result, however, came six months later, at the end of the school year, when Pennebaker discovered that those who had written about stressful experiences had visited the university health center far less often than did the students who had written about everyday things (Pennebaker & Susman, 1988).

Over the past 25 years, Pennebaker’s finding has been repeated in dozens of settings with scores of people from different walks of life, ethnicities, and cultural backgrounds. The people writing or, alternatively, confiding verbally to a confidante have been prison inmates, crime victims, chronic pain sufferers, Holocaust survivors, college students, bereaved widows and widowers, business executives, and laid-off workers, among others. In almost every instance, emotional disclosure is related to some sort of positive health benefit.

When people write or talk about traumatic events, for instance, skin conductivity, heart rate, and systolic and diastolic blood pressure all decrease (Pennebaker, Hughes, & O’Heeron, 1997). Over time, keeping a daily journal of thoughts and feelings has been associated with decreased absenteeism, fewer medical visits, and even improved immune functioning (Pennebaker & Francis, 1996; Petrie, Booth, & Davison, 1995). In one study, medical students were randomly assigned to write about traumatic events or control topics for four daily sessions. On the fifth day, each received a vaccination for hepatitis B, with boosters administered one and four months later. Before each vaccination, and again six months later, blood samples revealed that participants in the disclosure group had significantly higher antibody levels against the virus.

There are many reasons that emotional disclosure may help us cope with stress. Interestingly, people who have been diagnosed with *alexithymia*, or difficulty in identifying and expressing their own emotions, have been linked to increased cardiovascular mortality (Tolmunen and others, 2010). Writing or talking about stressful experiences may help lower this risk. Confiding in others may allow us to gain helpful advice. It also may provide a source of reinforcement and social support, as well as eliminate the need to ruminate about and inhibit a stressful event, which may reduce the physiological activity linked to the event (Stanton, 2010). Finally, writing or talking about a stressful experience may encourage cognitive reappraisal as we gain a new perspective on the event or develop a plan to deal with a stressful situation (Lestideau & Lavallee, 2007). In support of this latter idea, Pennebaker has found that people who write the most coherent, persuasive, and wellorganized stories tend to experience the greatest health benefits (Niederhoffer & Pennebaker, 2002). Similarly, women who had recently lost a close relative to breast cancer, and who were asked to write daily about the death, were most likely to demonstrate a bolstered immune response (increased natural killer cell cytotoxicity) when daily written disclosure enabled them to find positive meaning from the loss (Bower and others, 2003). A meta-analysis of studies indicates that emotional disclosure may be more effective in helping people cope with physical than psychological challenges (Frisina, Borod, & Lepore, 2004).

We all experience stress, but we don’t all cope with it effectively. Our coping resources can best be understood from a biopsychosocial perspective. We cannot control all of the factors. For example, we are affected by our genetic makeup, our personality type and reactivity, with the hardiest personalities, the most mindful, and the least reactive among us coping best. However, the many psychological and social factors affecting our ability to cope with and then manage our stress are well within our control, as shown in [**Figure 5.9**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F5-9). Pursue these techniques actively, and watch your health improve.

## Figure 5.9: A Biopsychosocial View of Coping with and Managing Stress

## Weigh In on Health

Respond to each question below based on what you learned in the chapter. **(Tip:** Use the items in “Summing Up” to take into account related biological, psychological, and social concerns.)

* **1.** Imagine that your roommate—a male from a middle-class family and a minority background—learns that he has failed courses in his major, which will put him on academic probation. If he asks your advice about how to cope with the stress he is facing, what strategies would you suggest and why? Would you have any cautionary data to share with him based on what you’ve read about stress in relationship to gender, socioeconomic status, or ethnicity?
* **2.** How would you describe yourself in terms of hardiness, explanatory style, personal control and choice, social support, and any other factors discussed in this chapter? From what you have read, can you list a few ways in which you might improve your stress responses and possibly improve the way in which you cope with stressful situations?
* **3.** Why don’t health psychologists consider anecdotal accounts such as Norman Cousins’s as valid evidence for testing research hypotheses? What would constitute valid evidence? Suppose that a health psychologist wished to test her hunch that humor relieves stress. How would she set about doing this? What factors should she consider in designing her study?

## Summing Up

## Responding to Stress

* **1.** Coping refers to the various ways—sometimes healthy, sometimes unhealthy—in which people attempt to prevent, eliminate, weaken, or simply tolerate stress. Approach coping confronts a stressor head-on by gathering information, taking direct action, or in other ways making an active effort to resolve the problem. Avoidance coping withdraws, minimizes, or stays away from stressful events.
* **2.** Problem-focused coping refers to efforts to deal directly with a stressor by applying problem-solving skills to anticipate and prevent potential stressors or by directly confronting the source of stress. Emotion-focused coping refers to efforts to control your emotional response to a stressor, either by distancing yourself from it or by changing how you appraise it.
* **3.** Rumination refers to thinking repetitively about an upsetting situation and how it relates to past and future problems associated with a stressor. This type of coping may spiral out of control into an emotional cascade, a vicious cycle in which intense rumination makes the person more upset, which in turn causes more rumination.
* **4.** Emotional-approach coping (EAC) is comprised of two emotion-regulating processes: emotional processing and emotional expression. EAC, which involves working through our emotional reactions to a stressful event, is adaptive and healthy.
* **5.** EAC is not unequivocally effective for men, particularly for those who display higher levels of masculinity and those who experience gender role conflict.
* **6.** When people experience potentially traumatizing events, those who carry risk mutations in their genotype such as the APOE allele may be more susceptible to unfavorable health outcomes, perhaps because of how they psychologically appraise and cope with stressors.
* **7.** How people cope with a stressor is influenced by a number of external resources, including family, friends, education, employment, time, money, and the presence of other stressors. People who have more resources available typically cope with stressful events more successfully because they have more options available to them.
* **8.** One of the most influential resources with respect to health is socioeconomic status (SES). People who are low in SES have increased risk for chronic disease, disability, and premature mortality. A growing body of evidence suggests that health disparities patterned by SES that are observable in adulthood may have their roots much earlier in life, perhaps in maladaptive alterations in immune function.
* **9.** Compared to women, men react to stress with larger increases in blood pressure, low-density lipoprotein cholesterol, and certain stress hormones. In general, women report more symptoms of stress and are more emotionally responsive to stressful situations. When women and men of similar SES are compared, gender differences in coping styles disappear. People of higher SES are more likely than those of lower SES to use problem-focused coping strategies in dealing with stress. Low SES is often accompanied by a stressful lifestyle that limits a person’s options in coping with stress.
* **10.** Hispanic-, Asian-, and African-Americans often report higher levels of social stress than European Americans, including discrimination. A particularly insidious type of discrimination that people of color experience daily are microaggressions from well-intentioned people who seem unaware of the hidden messages that they are sending.

## Factors Affecting the Ability to Cope

* **11.** Hardy people may be healthier because they are less likely to become overwhelmed by stressful situations. Along with hardiness, resilience in children is positively correlated with physical and mental health.
* **12.** People whose explanatory style is negative tend to explain failures in terms that are global, stable, and internal. This, in turn, may increase their sensitivity to challenging events and promote self-blame, pessimism, and depression. In contrast, optimists may be healthier and more resistant to stress. Optimism is also related to greater perceived control and self-efficacy, which in turn are related to more effective coping responses.
* **13.** The opportunity to control aversive events plays a crucial role in determining a person’s response to a stressful situation. Biologically, exposure to stressors without the perception of control activates the autonomic nervous system. The perception of control buffers stress-related arousal and enhances immune activity.
* **14.** Repeated exposure to uncontrollable stressors may lead to the resigned, passive behavior of learned helplessness. Studies of elderly persons and nursing home residents show that helplessness can lead to depression, a shortened life span, and a variety of health-compromising behaviors. Low perceived control may be one reason that racial and ethnic minorities are high-risk groups when it comes to health. Racism can affect cognitive appraisals dramatically, causing an escalation of the stress response.
* **15.** Cardiovascular reactivity is a biological marker of individual differences in regulatory control during moments of stress. People with high vagal tone experience less negative emotional arousal in response to stress. They are also more likely to rely on constructive coping measures than are people who exercise less regulatory control. Repressive coping is an emotion-focused coping style in which the person attempts to inhibit his or her emotional responses. Repressive coping has been associated with the development of cancer, asthma, and diabetes.
* **16.** There is a strong relationship among repression, avoidance coping, and various types of negative affect, including pessimism, depression, and generalized anxiety. People who score high on measures of negativity are extremely tense, anxious, insecure, jealous, hostile, and emotionally unstable.
* **17.** People who perceive a high level of social support may cope with stress more effectively than people who feel alienated. Along with companionship, social ties can provide emotional support, instrumental support, and informational support. Social support produces its beneficial effects indirectly, by helping people cope more effectively (buffering hypothesis), or directly, by enhancing the body’s responses to challenging events (direct effect hypothesis).
* **18.** People with better social skills—who relate well to others and who are caring and giving—create stronger social networks and thus receive more social support. Social support does not always reduce stress and benefit health, however. Sometimes, support is perceived as intrusive; other times, the type of support offered is not what is needed.
* **19.** Other factors that positively affect our ability to cope include maintaining a grateful outlook on life, enjoying a good sense of humor and frequent laughter, interacting with pets, and living spiritually. Several studies have found that people who are religiously active are healthier and live longer than their less-religious counterparts, perhaps due to differences in lifestyle, social support, and positive emotions.

## Coping Interventions

* **20.** Relaxation techniques such as progressive muscle relaxation and the relaxation response (meditation) can help people cope with a variety of stress-related problems, including hypertension, headaches, chronic pain, and anxiety. Mindfulness-based stress reduction (MBSR) focuses on using structured meditation to promote mindfulness, a moment-to-moment, nonjudgmental awareness.
* **21.** Cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) is based on the view that our way of thinking about the environment, rather than the environment itself, determines our stress level. If thinking can be changed, and skills acquired to make positive changes in behavior, stress can be reduced.
* **22.** Cognitive behavioral stress management is a multimodal form of therapy that helps people to confront stressful events with coping strategies that can be put in place before stressors become overwhelming.
* **23.** Expressive writing and other techniques that promote emotional disclosure have a variety of health benefits.

***Chapter 6*: Staying Healthy: Primary Prevention and Positive Psychology**

[**Health and Behavior**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-1-1)

* [**Theories of Health Behavior**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-2-2)

[**Prevention**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-1-7)

* [**Compressing Morbidity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-2-8) [**Promoting Healthy Families and Communities**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-2-9) [**Interpreting Data:Who Are the Uninsured and Underinsured?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B6-12) [**Community Health Education**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-2-13) [**Message Framing**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-2-14) [**Cognitive-Behavioral Interventions**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-2-17) [**Promoting Healthy Workplaces**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-2-18)

[**Positive Psychology and Thriving**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-1-20)

* [**Allostasis and Neuroendocrine Health**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-2-21) [**Neurobiology of Resilience**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-2-22) [**Psychosocial Factors and Physiological Thriving**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-2-23) [**Features of Psychological Thriving**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-2-27) [**Beyond Positive Psychology**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L6-2-30)

*When Sara Snodgrass found a lump in her breast, her first thoughts were of her aunt and mother, both of whom died after battling breast cancer. After her aunt was diagnosed with cancer, she “went home, pulled all the curtains closed, refused to leave the house except for chemotherapy treatments, and allowed very few visitors. She waited for death” (Snodgrass, 1998, p. 3). Sara’s biopsy was followed by a lumpectomy (removal of the malignant tumor) and two months of radiation treatments. Although she and her doctor were hopeful that she was through with cancer, less than one year later, metastasized cancer was found in her abdomen. In her words, she has been “submerged in cancer” ever since, having undergone three surgeries, five different courses of chemotherapy, two types of hormone therapy, three months of radiation, a bone marrow transplant, and a stem cell transplant. Throughout her treatment, she also has battled unpredictable, debilitating pain 10–14 days per month*.

*Unlike her aunt, however, Sara continued her work as a university professor throughout her surgery, radiation, and chemotherapy. Determined that cancer would not interfere with her life, she also continued scuba diving, skiing, and other activities that flowed from her natural optimism, sense of self-mastery, and confidence. And she took charge of her health care, learning everything she could about her treatments, making her own decisions, and refusing to work with doctors who did not treat her with respect and honor her desire to maintain a sense of control over her life*.

*Perhaps most remarkable of all is Sara’s conviction that her cancer has led to a reorganization of her self-perception, relationships, and philosophy of life. It has taught her to live more in the present rather than being concerned about the future. She stopped worrying about whether she would find the right man, whether her students would give her good* *evaluations, and whether she would have enough money to live comfortably in retirement. She also has learned that relationships with friends and family are the most important part of her life. When thinking about dying, she asserts, “I will not say I wish I had written more articles. However, I might say I wish I had seen or talked to more friends or acquaintances with whom I had lost contact.” So that is what she is doing—corresponding, telephoning, and traveling to renew old relationships, and reveling in new ones that have extended her network of social support throughout the country*.

Sometimes illness cannot be prevented, as in Sara’s case. Yet even in such extreme cases, building our human strengths may allow us the capacity to thrive. In this chapter, we will consider the connection between behavior and health, and then explore how health psychology’s biopsychosocial approach to prevention, first, and positive psychology, second, can help build healthy individuals, families, and communities.

**Health and Behavior**

It is difficult to imagine an activity or behavior that does not influence health in some way. [**Health behaviors**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term161) are actions that people take to improve or maintain their health. Exercising regularly, using sunscreen, eating a healthy diet, sleeping well, practicing safe sex, and wearing seatbelts are all behaviors that help “immunize” you against disease and injury, while activities such as meditation and laughter help many people manage stress and remain upbeat.

**health behavior**

A health-enhancing behavior or habit; also called a *behavioral immunogen*.

Because they occur on a continuum, some health behaviors can have both a positive and a negative impact on health (Schoenborn and others, 2004). For example, exercise and dieting are often beneficial, but if carried to the extreme, they can actually be hazardous to health. The same can be said of alcohol consumption. Excessive use of alcohol has a direct negative impact on physical health. Other behaviors influence health indirectly through their association with behaviors that have a direct impact on health. Many people who drink coffee excessively, for example, also smoke and engage in other risky behaviors that increase the risk of heart disease (Cornelis and others, 2006).

As part of its *Youth Risk Behavior Surveillance* project, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention identified six health-risk behaviors—often begun while young—that put people at risk for premature death, disability, and chronic illness (YRBSS, 2013):

* **1.** Smoking and other forms of tobacco use
* **2.** Eating high-fat and low-fiber foods
* **3.** Not engaging in enough physical activity
* **4.** Abusing alcohol or other drugs (including prescription drugs)
* **5.** Not using proven medical methods for preventing or diagnosing disease early (e.g., flu shots, practicing healthy sexual behaviors, Pap smears, colonoscopies, mammograms)
* **6.** Engaging in violent behavior or behavior that may cause unintentional injuries (e.g., driving while intoxicated)

Some behaviors (not wearing a seatbelt) affect health immediately, while others (eating a healthy diet) have a long-term effect. Still others (exercising or smoking) have both immediate *and* long-term effects on health. Health behaviors also interact and are often interrelated. The combined effect of smoking, drinking alcohol, and consuming too much coffee, for example, is stronger than that of only one such behavior. Similarly, exercising, eating healthy foods, and drinking a lot of water also tend to come together, but in a positive way. When a person engages in both healthy and unhealthy behaviors at the same time, one behavior may offset the effects of the other, either for better or worse. Finally, a healthy behavior may replace an unhealthy one, as when ex-smokers substitute aerobic exercise for nicotine.

What is the potential impact of adopting a healthier lifestyle? In one classic epidemiological study begun in 1965, Lester Breslow and Norman Breslow began to track the health and lifestyle habits of male residents of Alameda County, California. Over the many years of this landmark study (Breslow & Breslow, 1993), the salutary effects of seven healthy habits—sleeping seven to eight hours daily, never smoking, being at or near a healthy body weight, moderate use of alcohol, regular physical exercise, eating breakfast, and avoiding between-meal snacking—have proved striking ([**Figure 6.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F6-1)).

**Figure 6.1: Health Behaviors and Death Rate**

**Nine and a half years into the famous Alameda Health Study, the mortality of men who regularly practiced all seven health habits (sleeping seven to eight hours daily, never smoking, being at or near a healthy body weight, moderate use of alcohol, regular physical exercise, eating breakfast, and avoiding between-meal snacking) was 28 percent of the mortality of those who had practiced three or fewer healthy behaviors**.

**Source:** Breslow, L., & Breslow, N. (1993). Health practices and disability: Some evidence from Alameda County. *Preventive Medicine, 22*, 86–95.

**Theories of Health Behavior**

Health psychologists have developed a number of theories to explain why people engage (or do not engage) in healthful or unhealthful behaviors. In this section, we discuss several of the most influential theories.

**The Health Belief Model (HBM)**

According to the [**health belief model (HBM)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term162), decisions about health behavior are based on four interacting factors that influence our perceptions about health threats (see [**Figure 6.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F6-2)) (Strecher & Rosenstock, 1997):

* *Perceived susceptibility*. Some people worry constantly about health threats such as HIV; others believe that they are not in danger. The greater the perceived susceptibility, the stronger the motivation to engage in health-promoting behaviors. Adolescents especially seem to live their lives following an *invincibility fable*, which gives them little motivation to change risky behaviors.
* *Perceived severity of the health threat*. Among the factors considered are whether pain, disability, or death may result, as well as whether the condition will have an impact on family, friends, and coworkers.
* *Perceived benefits of and barriers to treatment*. In evaluating the pros and cons of a particular health behavior, a person decides whether its perceived benefits exceed its barriers. For example, someone may overlook the huge advantages of quitting smoking due to concerns about becoming obese and unattractive.
* *Cues to action*. Advice from friends, media health campaigns, and factors such as age, socioeconomic status, and gender also will influence the likelihood that the person will act.

**health belief model (HBM)**

A non-stage theory that identifies three beliefs that influence decision making regarding health behavior: perceived susceptibility to a health threat, perceived severity of the disease or condition, and perceived benefits of and barriers to the behavior.

**Figure 6.2: The Health Belief Model**

**This non-stage theory emphasizes the interacting factors that influence our decision making about health behaviors. If we believe that an available course of action will reduce our susceptibility to or the severity of the condition, then we will engage in that health behavior**.

**Source:** Strecher, V.J., & Rosenstock, I.W. (1997). The health belief model. In A. Baum, S. Newman, J. Weinman, R. West, & C. McManus (Eds.), *Cambridge handbook of psychology, health, and medicine* (p. 115). Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.

In summary, the HBM is a commonsense theory proposing that people will take action to ward off or control illness-inducing conditions if (1) they regard themselves as susceptible, (2) they believe the condition has serious personal consequences, (3) they believe a course of action will reduce either their susceptibility or the severity of the condition, (4) they believe that the benefits of the action outweigh the costs, and (5) environmental influences are encouraging change (Strecher & Rosenstock, 1997).

The HBM has been subjected to extensive research. We have learned that people are more likely to have regular dental checkups, practice safe sex, eat in a healthy way, obtain health screenings for colorectal and other forms of cancer, and engage in other health-protective behaviors if they feel susceptible to the various health problems that might stem from failure to do so (Deshpande, Basil, & Basil, 2009). Studies also show that educational interventions aimed at changing health beliefs increase health-protective behaviors.

Despite these successes, some studies have found that health beliefs only modestly predict health behaviors and that other factors, such as perceived barriers to practicing a health behavior, are more important determinants (Chen and others, 2007). In a major prospective study, Ruth Hyman and her colleagues (1994) found that perceived susceptibility to breast cancer did *not* predict their participants’ use of mammography services, while both perceived benefits and barriers did. The same study also found that a woman’s ethnicity was the best predictor of all, with African-American women being significantly more likely to obtain regular mammograms than European-Americans.

Other critics have argued that the HBM focuses too heavily on attitudes about perceived risk, rather than emotional responses, which may more accurately predict behavior (Lawton, Conner, & Parker, 2007). The HBM represents an important perspective, but it is incomplete. Let’s look at another theory now that focuses on the role that intentions and self-efficacy play in the practice of health behaviors.

**The Theory of Planned Behavior (TPB)**

Like the health belief model, the [**theory of planned behavior (TPB)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term339) specifies relationships among attitudes and behavior (see [**Figure 6.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F6-3)). The theory maintains that the best way to predict whether a health behavior will occur is to measure [**behavioral intention**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term45)—the decision to either engage in or refrain from a health-related behavior. Behavioral intentions are shaped by three factors: 1) *attitude toward the behavior*, which is determined by the belief that engaging in the behavior will lead to certain outcomes; 2) the [**subjective norm**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term325), which reflects our motivation to comply with the views of other people regarding the behavior in question; and 3) *perceived behavioral control*, which refers to our expectation of success in performing the health behavior. So, for instance, we may decide that reducing the amount of sugar in our diet is a good thing to do because 1) we believe that doing so will lead to weight loss; 2) our relatives and friends are following similar diets; and 3) we are confident that we will be able to shop for healthy ingredients, make the time to prepare meals, and still enjoy the flavor of food even though our diet is more restricted.

**theory of planned behavior (TPB)**

A theory that predicts health behavior on the basis of three factors: personal attitude toward the behavior, the subjective norm regarding the behavior, and perceived degree of control over the behavior.

**Figure 6.3: Theory of Planned Behavior**

**This theory predicts that a person’s decision to engage in a particular health behavior is based on three factors: personal attitude toward the behavior, the subjective norm regarding the behavior, and perceived degree of control over the behavior**.

**Source:** Sutton, S. (1997). The theory of planned behavior. In A. Baum, S. Newman, J. Weinman, R. West, & C. McManus (Eds.), *Cambridge handbook of psychology, health, and medicine* (p. 178). Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.

**behavioral intention**

In theories of health behavior, the rational decision to engage in a health-related behavior or to refrain from engaging in the behavior.

**subjective norm**

An individual’s interpretation of the views of other people regarding a particular health-related behavior.

The specific intention to adopt or change a health behavior (what, when, where) can, indeed, help to bring it about (Armitage, 2009; Martin and others, 2009). People’s self-reported attitudes and intentions predict a variety of health-promoting actions, including genetic testing for diseases, taking medication (Goldring and others, 2002), consumption of soft drinks among teens (Kassem & Lee, 2004), healthy eating (Conner, Norman, & Bell, 2002), condom use (Bogart & Delahanty, 2004), and smoking (Van de Ven and others, 2007), among others.

Given its emphasis on planning, it is not surprising that the TPB is most accurate in predicting intentional behaviors that are goal-oriented and fit within a rational framework (Gibbons and others, 1998). In some cases, such as substance abuse (Morojele & Stephenson, 1994), premarital sexual behavior (Cha and others, 2007), and drunk driving (Stacy, Bentler, & Flay, 1994), the model has been less successful, perhaps because these behaviors are often reactions to social situations. For example, young people may attend a party where others are smoking marijuana or drinking excessively, or agree to the demands of an overzealous girlfriend or boyfriend who wants to have sex.

**The Transtheoretical Model (TTM)**

The theories of health behavior that we have considered thus far attempt to identify variables that influence health-related attitudes and behaviors and combine them into a formula that predicts the probability that a particular individual will act in a certain way in a given situation. The [**transtheoretical model (TTM)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term347) (also called the *stages of change model*), on the other hand, maintains that behavior often changes systematically through distinct stages (Rothman, 2000).

**transtheoretical model (TTM)**

A widely used stage theory that contends that people pass through five stages in altering health-related behavior: precontemplation, contemplation, preparation, action, and maintenance.

The TTM contends that people progress through five stages in altering health-related behaviors. The stages are defined in terms of past behavior and intentions for future action:

* *Stage 1: Precontemplation*. During this stage, people are not seriously thinking about changing their behavior. They may even refuse to acknowledge that their behavior needs changing. *Stage 2: Contemplation*. During this stage, people acknowledge the existence of a problem (such as smoking) and are seriously considering changing their behavior (quitting smoking) in the near future (typically within six months). *Stage 3: Preparation*. This stage includes both thoughts and actions. In preparing to quit smoking, for example, a person obtains a prescription for a nicotine patch, joins a support group, enlists family support, and makes other specific plans. *Stage 4: Action*. During this stage, people have actually changed their behavior and are trying to sustain their efforts. *Stage 5: Maintenance*. People in this stage continue to be successful in their efforts to reach their final goal. Although this stage can last indefinitely, its length is often set arbitrarily at six months.

The stages of change model recognizes that people move back and forth through the stages in a nonlinear, spiral fashion (Velicer & Prochska, 2008). [**Figure 6.4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F6-4) illustrates a smoker’s progression through the five stages of change in quitting smoking. Many recently reformed ex-smokers relapse from *maintenance* to *preparation*, cycling through stages 2 to 5 one or more times until they have completed their behavioral change.

**Figure 6.4: The Transtheoretical Model**

**The transtheoretical, or stages of change model, assesses a person’s readiness to act on a new, healthier behavior. The model also identifies strategies and processes to guide the individual through the stages of change to successful action and maintenance. Critics point out that the stages are not mutually exclusive, and people do not always move sequentially through discrete stages as they strive to change health behaviors.**

Although the TTM is more successful in predicting some behaviors than others (Bogart & Delahanty, 2004; Rosen, 2000), research has generally confirmed that people at higher stages are more successful at improving health-related behaviors, such as adopting a healthier diet (Armitage and others, 2004), exercising regularly (Hellsten and others, 2011), using suncreen (Adams and others, 2009), and testing for colorectal and breast cancer (Champion and others, 2007; Lauver and others, 2003; Manne and others, 2002).

Other research has shown that stage theories like the TTM promote the development of more effective health interventions by providing a “recipe” for ideal behavior change (Sutton, 1996). This enables clinical health psychologists and other practitioners to match an intervention to the specific needs of a person who is “stuck” at a particular stage (Perz, DiClemente, & Carbonari, 1996). The model also acknowledges that different behavioral, cognitive, and social processes may come to the forefront as we struggle to reach our ultimate health goals. These include consciousness raising (for example, seeking more information about a health-compromising behavior), counterconditioning (substituting alternative behaviors for the target behavior), and reinforcement management (rewarding oneself or being rewarded by others for success).

**Addressing the Perceived Benefits of High-Risk Behaviors**

Although the health belief model, theory of planned behavior, and transtheoretical model include both perceived benefits and risks, the intention of these models was primarily to explain preventive behaviors motivated by the desire to avoid disease or injury. Consequently, these models tend to focus on the risks of unhealthy behaviors rather than any perceived *benefits* of high-risk behaviors to the individual. Researchers have found, however, that perceived benefits are important predictors of certain behaviors, such as adolescent drinking (Katz, Fromme, & D’Amico, 2000), tobacco use (Pollay, 2000), and unprotected sex (Parsons and others, 2000).

In a survey of fifth, seventh, and ninth graders, Julie Goldberg and her colleagues (2002) gave the participants the following scenario:

* Now imagine that you are at a party. During the party, you have a couple of drinks of alcohol (like two glasses of wine, beer, or hard liquor). Even if this is something you’d never do, please try to imagine it.

The students were then asked several open-ended questions about the good and bad things that can happen if they drink at a party. They were also asked about their actual experience with and the consequences of drinking. Six months later, the students were asked once again about their drinking behavior.

**The Power of the Social Situation**

**For many teenagers (as well as young adults), health behaviors are often reactions to social situations rather than rationally planned situations. They drink because their friends drink, not because they have made a conscious decision that they enjoy alcohol. Social situations can trigger healthier behaviors, too, such as dancing, exercise, or enjoying another form of recreation.**

[**track5/iStockphoto.com**](http://track5/iStockphoto.com)

The researchers learned a great deal by asking about the perceived benefits of drinking. More so than the fifth and seventh graders, the ninth graders perceived the physical and social benefits of alcohol (e.g., “I’ll like the buzz I get from drinking”; “I’ll have a better time at the party”) to be more likely, and the physical and social risks (e.g., “I’ll get sick”; “I’ll do something that I’ll later regret”) to be less likely. These results have a profound implication for health education campaigns targeted at teenagers. Although researchers often have concluded that adolescents are irrational in their decision making, these results suggest that teens are in fact weighing the pros and cons of their behaviors. More effective health messages might focus on how adolescents can obtain the perceived benefits of risky health behaviors in safer ways. For example, messages might identify other ways to feel more mature and be more social at parties than by drinking.

**Prevention**

We usually think of prevention solely in terms of efforts to modify one’s risk *before* disease strikes. In fact, researchers have differentiated three types of prevention that are undertaken before, during, and after a disease strikes.

[**Primary prevention**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term271) refers to health-promoting actions that are taken to prevent a disease or injury from occurring. Examples of primary prevention include wearing seatbelts, practicing good nutrition, exercising, avoiding smoking, maintaining healthy sleep patterns, and going regularly for health screening tests.

**primary prevention**

Health-enhancing efforts to prevent disease or injury from occurring.

[**Secondary prevention**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term304) involves actions taken to identify and treat an illness early in its course. In the case of a person who has high blood pressure, for example, secondary prevention would include regular examinations to monitor symptoms, the use of blood pressure medication, and dietary changes.

**secondary prevention**

Actions taken to identify and treat an illness or disability early in its course.

[**Tertiary prevention**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term337) involves actions taken to contain or retard damage once a disease has progressed beyond its early stages. An example of tertiary prevention is the use of radiation therapy or chemotherapy to destroy a cancerous tumor. Tertiary prevention also strives to rehabilitate people to the fullest extent possible.

**tertiary prevention**

Actions taken to contain damage once a disease or disability has progressed beyond its early stages.

In this chapter, we will focus on health psychologists’ primary prevention efforts. Health psychologists encourage doctors and other health care professionals to take the time to give advice to their patients. As effective as this personalized attention would seem to be, many doctors find it hard to follow through with preventive measures. One reason for their difficulty is that medical schools have traditionally placed little emphasis on preventive measures. Another is a lack of time, given the number of people that doctors have to see each day. Health psychologists also promote health by encouraging legislative action and conducting educational campaigns in the media. [**Table 6.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T6-1) illustrates a comprehensive program of primary, secondary, and tertiary disease prevention for AIDS based on the national health goals established by the U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare as part of its *Healthy People Campaign*. As discussed in [**Chapter 1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch01), these goals are to increase the span of healthy life, to decrease the disparities in health between different segments of the population, and to provide universal access to preventive services.

**Table 6.1: Levels and Timing of Prevention for HIV/AIDS**

| **Level** | **Primary** | **Secondary** | **Tertiary** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Individual | Self-instruction guide on HIV prevention for HIV people Designing an immune-healthy diet | Screening and early intervention for an uninfected, lower-risk, HIV-positive person |  |
| Group | Parents gather to gain skills to communicate better with teens about risky behaviors | Needle exchange program for low-SES, high-risk, IV drug users | Rehabilitation programs for groups of AIDS patients |
| Work site | Work-site educational campaign focusing on how HIV is transmitted | Work-site safer-sex incentive program (e.g., free condoms, confidential screening) | Extending leave benefits so employees can care for HIV-positive relatives |
| Community | Focused media campaign to promote safe-sex behaviors | Establishing support network for HIV-positive people | Providing better access to recreational facilities for those with AIDS |
| Society | Enforcing felony laws for knowingly infecting another person with HIV | Enacting antidiscrimination policies for HIV-positive people | Mandating the availability of HIV medications for uninsured AIDS patients |
| Adapted from Winett, R.A. (1995). A framework for health promotion and disease prevention programs. *American Psychologist*, 50(5), 341–350. | | | |

**Research clearly shows that prevention is by far the best buy in health. For instance, in the United States alone (National Prevention Strategy, 2011):**

* **For every HIV infection prevented, an estimated $335,000 is saved in the cost of providing lifetime HIV treatment.**
* **A 5 percent reduction in the prevalence of hypertension would save $25 billion in five years.**
* **A 1 percent reduction in weight, blood pressure, glucose, and cholesterol risk factors would save $83 to $103 annually in medical costs *per person*.**
* **Programs that prevent diabetes quickly pay for themselves—$1 of every $5 spent on health care goes to caring for people with diabetes.**
* **Tobacco screening results in an estimated lifetime saving of $9800 per person.**

We are sometimes our own worst enemies in the battle for health. In our teens and twenties, when we are developing health-related habits, we are usually quite healthy. Smoking cigarettes, eating junk food, and avoiding exercise seem often to have no effect on health at this time, so young people have little immediate incentive for practicing good health behaviors and correcting poor health habits. Many health-enhancing behaviors are either less pleasurable or require more effort than their less healthy alternatives. If engaging in a behavior (such as eating when you are depressed) causes immediate relief or gratification, or if failing to engage in this behavior provides immediate discomfort, the behavior is difficult to eliminate.

High-risk sexual behaviors that may result in HIV infection and AIDS are a tragic example of this principle. The far-removed *potential* negative consequences of risky behavior too often are overshadowed by the immediate pleasures of the moment.

**Compressing Morbidity**

The “fountain of youth” myth is present in the histories of nearly every culture and finds its current expression in the allegedly rejuvenating elixirs, creams, and gadgets that are hawked in infomercials, on alternative medicine Web sites, and in drugstore displays. Claims that people will soon live to be 200 years old because of megadoses of antioxidants, vitamins, herbs, or some other “magic bullet” have resulted in confusion about *longevity*. For decades, scientists have investigated systematically people’s claims of having vastly exceeded the normal life span, and in every instance, these claims could not be verified. Even without a magic bullet, people today can expect to live much longer than previous cohorts. The major diseases of our ancestors, such as polio, smallpox, tetanus, diphtheria, and rheumatic fever, have been eradicated almost completely.

In focusing on healthy life expectancy, health psychologists aim to shorten the amount of time older people spend in *morbidity* (disabled, ill, or in pain). To illustrate, consider twin brothers who, although genetically identical and exposed to the same health hazards while growing up, have had very different health experiences since adolescence. The first brother smokes two packs of cigarettes a day, is obese, never exercises, has an angry and pessimistic outlook on life, and eats foods containing excessive amounts of animal fat and sugar. The second brother pursues a much healthier lifestyle, avoiding tobacco and excessive stress, exercising regularly, watching his diet, and enjoying the social support of a close-knit circle of family and friends. As [**Figure 6.5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F6-5) shows, although the two brothers have the same genetic vulnerabilities to lung, circulatory, and cardiovascular disease, the unhealthy lifestyle of the first brother dooms him to an extended period of adulthood morbidity beginning at about age 45. In contrast, the healthier brother’s lifestyle postpones disease until much later in life. If he does contract any of the illnesses, they are likely to be less severe, and recovery will be quicker. In some cases, the illness, such as lung cancer, may be “postponed” right out of his life.

**Figure 6.5: Compression of Morbidity**

**In focusing on the individual’s quality-adjusted life years, health psychologists seek to limit the time that a person spends ill or infirm, as illustrated in this diagram of the illnesses and eventual deaths of identical twin brothers. Although the brothers carry the same disease vulnerabilities and life-span-limiting genetic clocks, the healthy lifestyle of one (b) keeps disease and disability at bay until primary aging is well advanced. In contrast, the unhealthy lifestyle of his brother (a) takes its toll at a much younger age**.

**Source:** Fries, J.F. (2001). *Living well: Taking care of your health in the middle and later years*. New York: Perseus Publishing.

**Promoting Healthy Families and Communities**

The biopsychosocial model of health is not limited to individuals. Preventive health psychology research is increasingly focused on the various external systems that influence an individual’s health. Chief among these systems is the family. In a survey of over 100,000 adolescents from grades 7 through 12, Resnick and his colleagues (1997) found that the family social context strongly influenced health-risk behaviors, predicting the level of emotional distress of teens in the family, their likelihood of using drugs and alcohol, and, to some extent, how violent they became. Whether parents were present during key periods of the day and whether they had high or low expectations of their teen’s academic performance were also factors.

Rena Repetti and her colleagues (2002) have argued that certain family characteristics create a “cascade of risk” that begins early in life by “creating vulnerabilities (and exacerbating preexisting biological vulnerabilities) that lay the groundwork for long-term physical and mental health problems” (p. 336). These risky family characteristics fall into two categories: *overt family conflict*, manifested in frequent episodes of anger and aggression, and *deficient nurturing*, including relationships that are unsupportive, cold, and even neglectful.

In true systems theory fashion, *community health psychology* focuses on the community as the unit of intervention, recognizing that individuals are part of families, as well as cultural, economic, and community contexts. Community health psychologists routinely advocate for public policies that promote social justice, human rights, and equity in access to quality health care and other human services (de La Cancela and others, 2004).

**Family Barriers**

Health habits are typically acquired from parents and others who model health behaviors. Parents who smoke, for example, are significantly more likely to have children who smoke (Schulenberg and others, 1994). Similarly, obese parents are more likely to have obese children, and the children of problem drinkers are themselves at increased risk of abusing alcohol (Schuckit & Smith, 1996).

Although there may be a genetic basis to these behaviors, children also may acquire expectancies about risky behaviors by observing family members. Older siblings often have an impact on the behavior and attitudes of their younger adolescent siblings. Vicarious learning from an older sibling is one mechanism through which adolescents may form expectancies about risky health-related behaviors. Other family variables linked with risky health-related behaviors among adolescents include parental conflict, inconsistencies and rejection, absence of parental supervision, absence of the father, homelessness, diffuse family relationships, coercive parent–child relationships, and parental drug and alcohol use (Bracizewski, 2010).

**Health System Barriers**

Because medicine tends to focus on treating conditions that have already developed (secondary and tertiary care), early warning signs of disease and contributing risk factors often go undetected. People who are not experiencing symptoms of illness see little reason to seek advice regarding potential risk factors, and doctors are oriented toward correcting conditions rather than preventing future problems.

**Health System Barriers**

**Not having insurance can have a devastating impact on a person’s health and financial security. The uninsured are less likely to have a regular doctor, more likely to rely on emergency room care, and more likely to have chronic health problems.**

J.f.moreno European Press Agency/Newscom

Although health care has begun to change—physicians today are receiving much more training in health promotion—economic forces often undermine the efforts of health care workers to promote preventive measures. Some health insurance plans, for example, still do not cover preventive services such as cholesterol screening. Without successful implementation of changed federal policies such as those approved as part of the Affordable Care Act (ACA), the number of Americans without health insurance was expected to increase from about 49 million in 2012 to about 54 million in 2019 (CBO, 2010). Even if the ACA is fully implemented, however, as many as 27 million Americans may remain uninsured (Kliff, 2013). The uninsured receive about half of the medicalcare of people with insurance, which leaves them sicker and likely to die at a younger age. By forgoing regular doctor visits and screening that could catch serious illnesses early, such as cancer and heart disease, many uninsured patients are diagnosed too late to affect the outcome. As the ACA rolls out, there are early signs that its aim of stabilizing the insurance market and making health care more accessible and affordable for individuals is on target (Custer, 2013).

It is estimated that the United States loses $65 billion to $130 billion per year because of the poor health and premature deaths of uninsured Americans. More than 8 out of every 10 uninsured people are in working families, and only 38 percent come from families with income below the federal poverty level (about $22,050 for a family of four in 2010). Although some ethnic groups are at much higher risk of being uninsured, the uninsured don’t fit any stereotype. They come from every race and ethnic group, every community, and every walk of life (see [**Interpreting Data: Who Are the Uninsured and Underinsured?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B6-12)).

**INTERPRETING DATA: Who Are the Uninsured and Underinsured?**

More than 40 percent of people living in the United States went without health insurance or had coverage that did not protect them against high medical costs in 2012. Who were they? Would you guess that most of them belonged to certain groups? Perhaps those who were unemployed, the very young or old, or those living below the poverty level? What does the simple statistic, *40 percent*, tell you? As with many statistics, it is easy to misinterpret this information unless you dig deeper. Interpreting data requires thinking critically about it, especially if the information seems incomplete. If you don’t, it’s too easy to leap to conclusions based on ignorance, political bias, or attitudes about people who are different than you that seem to be confirmed by the statistic.

Here is a more detailed profile of the uninsured, and underinsured, people in the United States.

* Young adults (ages 19–34) are the group most likely to be uninsured. The uninsured rate among young adults has improved slightly due to a new provision in the Affordable Care Act (ACA) that allows them to remain covered under a parent’s insurance plan until age 26. Medicare covers most elderly, and children have the lowest uninsured rate of all age groups.
* The majority of the uninsured come from working families. About 60 percent of the uninsured have at least one full-time worker in their family, and another 16 percent have only part-time workers. Uninsured workers are more likely to have low-wage or blue-collar jobs and to work for small firms or in service industries.
* 30.1 percent of individuals of Hispanic origin, 19.5 percent of African-Americans, 16.1 percent of Asians, and 11.1 percent of non-Hispanic whites were uninsured.
* The likelihood of being uninsured traditionally has varied from state to state, ranging from 5 percent in Massachusetts to 27 percent in Texas, with states in the south and west generally having the highest rates. This variation is due to differences in type of employment, income, and public insurance program’s eligibility requirements.

**Figure 6.6**

**As with many statistics, there are many misconceptions about the uninsured. As one example, the majority of the uninsured come from working families.**

**Sources:** Kaiser Foundation (2012). The uninsured and the difference health insurance makes. [**http://kaiserfamilyfoundation.files.wordpress.com/2013/01/1420-14.pdf**](http://kaiserfamilyfoundation.files.wordpress.com/2013/01/1420-14.pdf).

Todd, S.R., & Sommers, B.D. (2012). Overview of the uninsured in the United States: A summary of the 2012 Current Population Survey report. *ASPE Issue Brief*. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. [**http://aspe.hhs.gov/health/reports/2012/uninsuredintheus/ib.shtml#who**](http://aspe.hhs.gov/health/reports/2012/uninsuredintheus/ib.shtml#who).

Young, J. (2013). Uninsured Americans 2012: More than 45 million lacked health insurance last year, CDC reports. [**http://www.huffingtonpost.com/2013/03/21/uninsured-americans-2012\_n\_2918705.html**](http://www.huffingtonpost.com/2013/03/21/uninsured-americans-2012_n_2918705.html).

As for why people lack health coverage (without legal impediment), about 10 percent say they are not covered because they don’t believe that they need health insurance. More than two-thirds of the uninsured, including many single adults with low incomes, historically have cited the high cost of insurance as the main reason. For instance, the costs of health insurance skyrocketed between 1990 and 2010, causing employers to pass a greater share of the costs on to their employees. Since being signed into law in 2010, the ACA has expanded access to affordable, high-quality health coverage for millions of young adults who now can stay on their parents’ health insurance plans. Beginning in 2014, even more individuals will gain health care coverage through the ACA’s health insurance exchanges—private marketplaces where people can shop for health insurance—and the expansion of Medicaid (Calsyn & Rosenthal, 2013).

Not having insurance can have a devastating impact on a person’s health and financial security. The uninsured are less likely to have a regular doctor and more likely to have chronic health problems (Pauly & Pagan, 2007). Medical bills can wipe out a family’s savings quickly, and fear of high bills is a barrier that prevents many of the uninsured from seeking health care. Uninsured adults are four times as likely as those who are insured to report delaying or forgoing needed health services. For example, only 16 percent of uninsured women have recommended mammograms each year, compared with 42 percent of insured women (MMWR, 2012a; Kaiser Foundation, 2000). Is it any wonder that uninsured women are 40 percent more likely to be diagnosed with late-stage breast cancer, and 40 to 50 percent more likely to die from breast cancer, than insured women?

To make matters worse, health insurance companies have historically used managed care to reduce behavioral health care benefits substantially more than other benefits. Overall, behavioral health care as a percentage of total health care benefits—with its emphasis on primary prevention—has fallen steadily since 1990 (Kaiser Foundation, 2000). Interestingly, a study sponsored by the Kaiser Foundation (2004) estimated that the United States could provide medical care to every uninsured American for about $48 billion in 2005—an increase of only 3 percent in national health outlays. The very cornerstone of the ACA, “strengthening health care,” is built around the objective of emphasizing primary and preventive care linked with community prevention services (Calsyn & Rosenthal, 2013).

**Community Barriers**

The community can be a powerful force for promoting or discouraging healthy living. People are more likely to adopt health-enhancing behaviors when these behaviors are promoted by community organizations, such as schools, governmental agencies, and the health care system. As one example, several schools in Minnesota shifted to later start times in 1997, citing evidence that teen sleep deprivation is associated with poorer cognitive processing, increased anxiety, depression, and driving accidents. Three years of data showed that the later start times resulted in increased likelihood of students eating breakfast, improved attendance, less tardiness, greater alertness in class, a calmer school atmosphere, fewer disciplinary referrals to the principal, and fewer student trips to counselors and the school nurse for stress-related and other health problems (National Sleep Foundation, 2013). In recent years, we also have made significant progress in changing attitudes toward exercise and proper nutrition and are much better informed about risk factors for cancer, cardiovascular disease, and other serious chronic conditions.

Social pressures, however, can be powerful, as evidenced by alcohol use among college students, which is more prevalent than among their peers who do not attend college (Adelson, 2006). Surveys reveal that binge drinking among college students also is associated with other social risk factors. For some students, the excitement of being together in a largely unsupervised environment can trigger such risky behaviors (Dreer and others, 2004).

Fortunately, most peer-inspired risk taking is a short-lived experiment that is outgrown before irreversible, long-term consequences are felt. Although drinking rates increase significantly in the transition from high school to the college freshman year, heavy drinking declines as students grow older, assume increased responsibilities, and display a pattern called *maturing out* (Bartholow, Sher, & Krull, 2003).

**Community Health Education**

There is probably a greater emphasis on health promotion today than at any other time in history. New federal laws regarding health care were passed in March 2010, and substantial effort is devoted to shaping the public’s views on health issues through educational campaigns in advertisements, on public transportation, in magazines and newspapers, and on television, radio, and Web sites. The importance of these campaigns is revealed in research controversies over how information should be presented. (For example, should HIV-prevention campaigns concentrate on both safer sex and abstinence?)

[**Health education**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term164) refers to any planned intervention involving communication that promotes the learning of healthier behavior. The most widely used model in health education is the *precede/proceed model* (Yeo, Berzins, & Addington, 2007). According to the model, planning for health education begins by identifying specific health problems in a targeted group. Next, lifestyle and environment elements that contribute to the targeted health problem (as well as those that protect against it) are identified. Then, background factors that predispose, enable, and reinforce these lifestyle and environmental factors are analyzed to determine the possible usefulness of health education and other interventions. During the final implementation phase, health education programs are designed, initiated, and evaluated.

**health education**

Any planned intervention involving communication that promotes the learning of healthier behavior.

Let’s examine how the precede/proceed model would apply to a health education campaign for lung cancer. First, health psychologists would identify the target group for the intervention. Next, they would investigate environmental factors that might affect the target group because the disease might result from unhealthy working or living conditions in which people are exposed to hazardous pollutants. In addition, health psychologists would consider psychological and social factors. They would begin by determining who smokes. When did they start smoking? Why? Researchers have found that smoking typically begins during adolescence, largely in response to social pressures (Rodriguez, Romer, & Audrain-McGovern, 2007). These pressures include the imitation of family members, peers, and such role models as well-known actors and athletes. Many adolescents find it very difficult to resist social pressure. Being accepted by one’s peers is an extremely important source of reinforcement. There are also strong enabling factors: Cigarettes are generally very easy to obtain, and sanctions against smoking are minimal.

Having determined which factors contributed to the health problem, health psychologists would design a health education program to counteract those factors. For example, if social pressure was found to be a major factor, they might design a health education program that focuses on improving the ability of teens to resist social pressure. Such programs might involve role models urging teens not to smoke, adopting antismoking policies in public buildings, imposing stricter sanctions against the sale of cigarettes, levying higher taxes on cigarettes, or all of the above.

**Antismoking Campaign in China**

**Although the number of smokers in the United States has decreased recently, the reverse seems to be occurring in other countries, such as China. Everyone, no matter what their native language, can understand billboards such as this one.**

MICHAEL REYNOLDS/EPA/Newscom

How effective are health education campaigns? Researchers have found that education campaigns that merely inform people of the hazards of health-compromising behaviors are typically ineffective in motivating people to change longheld health habits (Kaiser Foundation, 2010). For example, antismoking messages and other drug education programs by themselves often have little effect—or a negative effect. Simply finding out that one’s lifestyle is not as healthy as it could be often is insufficient to provoke change because many people believe they are exempt or invulnerable to the negative consequences of their risky behavior.

Generally speaking, multifaceted community campaigns that present information on several fronts work better than “single-shot” campaigns. For example, two decades of antismoking campaigns combining school intervention programs with communitywide mass media messages resulted in a significant decrease in experimental and regular smoking, and a shift in viewing smoking as more addictive and as having more negative social consequences among seventh through eleventh graders in a Midwestern county school system between 1980 and 2001 (Chassin and others, 2003). As another example, a recent skin cancer prevention program focused on the use of sunscreen, wearing hats and sunglasses, and other sun-protection habits by children who were taking swimming lessons at 15 swimming pools in Hawaii and Massachusetts. In addition to targeting the children, the Pool Cool program, which combined education, interactive activities, and environmental changes (providing free sunscreen, portable shade structures, and sun safety posters), was a randomized, controlled trial intervention targeting parents, lifeguards, and swim instructors. Compared to children in a control group at 13 other pools who received a bicycle and inline skating safety intervention, children in the intervention group showed significant positive changes in use of sunscreen and shade, overall sun-protection habits, and the number of sunburns (Glanz and others, 2002). Similarly, other researchers have found that multicomponent sun-protection behavior interventions are particularly effective with adult beachgoers (Pagoto, McChargue, & Fuqua, 2003).

Community programs are on the rise and have several advantages. First, they can promote changes that are difficult for individuals to accomplish, such as creating bike paths and other public exercise facilities or banning smoking in public offices. Second, unlike interventions that concentrate on high-risk individuals, community programs reach out to a broader cross section of the public, potentially reaching those in the lower- to moderate-risk categories earlier in the process of disease. Third, community programs combine information with the social support of friends, neighbors, and family members.

One of the earliest community campaigns was initiated for residents of a rural county in Finland with a very high incidence of coronary heart disease (Puska, 1999). Launched in 1972 by the Finnish government and the World Health Organization, the goal of the North Karelia Project was to reduce smoking, cholesterol, and blood pressure levels through informational campaigns. When the program began, the Finns had the highest coronary mortality rates in the world. The initial five-year follow-up study demonstrated a 17.4 percent reduction in these coronary risk factors among men and an 11.5 percent reduction among women. In addition, coronary disability payments had declined by approximately 10 percent, much more than enough to pay for the entire community program. Most significant of all, over the past three decades, deaths among the working-age population from heart disease have dropped by 82 percent (Templeton, 2004).

**Message Framing**

An important factor in the effectiveness of health education is how information is worded, or *framed*. Health messages generally are framed in terms of the benefits associated with a particular preventive action or the costs of failing to take preventive action (Salovey, 2011).

**Message Wording Makes a Difference**

**Educational campaigns may use gain-framed or loss-framed messages. A loss-framed message is shown here, while a gain-framed message regarding healthy sexual behavior might say, “Safe Is Sexy!”**

Bill Freeman/PhotoEdit

[**Gain-framed messages**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term146) focus on the positive outcome from adopting a health-promoting behavior (“If you exercise regularly, you are likely to look and feel better”) or on avoiding an undesirable outcome (“If you exercise regularly, you decrease your risk of obesity and a number of chronic diseases”). [**Loss-framed messages**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term207) emphasize the negative outcome from failing to take preventive action (“If you don’t exercise, you increase the risk of an undetected, potentially life-threatening disease”). Loss-framed messages also may emphasize missing a desirable outcome (“If you don’t exercise, you will miss out on the extra energy that physical fitness brings”).

**gain-framed message**

A health message that focuses on attaining positive outcomes, or avoiding undesirable ones, by adopting a health-promoting behavior.

**loss-framed message**

A health message that focuses on a negative outcome from failing to perform a health-promoting behavior.

**Tailored Messaging**

A growing body of literature attests to the importance of tailoring health messages and interventions to individual characteristics of participants instead of giving everyone identically framed information. For instance, the effectiveness of gain- or loss-framed messages appears to vary with whether a person tends to be *avoidance oriented* or *approach oriented*. Approach-oriented individuals are highly responsive to rewards and incentives, while avoidance-oriented individuals are highly responsive to punishments or threats. In a recent study, Traci Mann and her UCLA colleagues (2004) found that when college students received loss-framed messages promoting dental flossing, avoidance-oriented students reported taking better care of their teeth, and when given a gain-framed message, approach-oriented students reported flossing more than avoidance-oriented students. These results suggest that tailoring health messages to individuals based on their dispositional motivations is an effective strategy for promoting behavior change.

**Loss-Framed Fear Appeals**

Are fear-arousing messages effective in promoting attitude and behavior change? To find out, Irving Janis and Seymour Feshbach (1953) compared the effectiveness of messages that aroused various levels of fear in promoting changes in dental hygiene. Messages that aroused moderate levels of fear were more effective than more extreme messages in getting junior high school students to change their dental hygiene habits. In accounting for their results, the researchers suggested that individuals and circumstances differ in the optimal level of fear for triggering a change in attitude or behavior. When this level is exceeded, people may resort to denial or avoidance coping measures.

A key factor in determining the effectiveness of threatening health messages is the recipient’s perceived behavioral control. Before they can be persuaded, people must believe that they have the ability to follow through on recommendations. In one study, Carol Self and Ronald Rogers (1990) presented highly threatening messages regarding the dangers of sedentary living with or without information indicating that the subjects could perform the health-enhancing behavior (such as exercise) and succeed in enhancing their health. What did they find? Threat appeals worked only if participants were convinced that they could cope with the health threat; attempts to frighten participants without reassuring them were ineffective.

Heike Mahler and her colleagues (2003) found college-age beachgoers were particularly responsive to an educational campaign promoting sunscreen use and other sun-protection behaviors when it focused on the dangers of sun exposure to each participant’s appearance. The intervention began with a 12-minute slide presentation that included graphic photos of extreme cases of wrinkles and age spots. Afterward, each participant’s face was photographed with an ultraviolet (UV) ray–filtered camera that accentuated brown spots, freckling, and other existing skin damage from UV exposure. A one-month follow-up indicated that the intervention resulted in a significant increase in sun-protective behaviors and substantially lower reported sunbathing.

However, scare tactics that arouse tremendous fear, such as photographs of grossly decayed or diseased gums, tend to upset people. As a result, such messages may backfire and actually *decrease*a person’s likelihood of changing his or her beliefs and hence his or her behavior (Beck & Frankel, 1981). Such messages increase the person’s anxiety to such a level that the only coping avenue that he or she perceives as available is a refusal to face the danger.

In conclusion, research on the framing of health messages reveals a basic pattern: Gain-framed messages are effective in promoting prevention behaviors, while loss-framed ones are effective in promoting illness-detection (screening) behaviors (Salovey, 2011).

**These young protesters recognize the power of tailored messaging—in this instance, tobacco advertising that targets their demographic group.**

RICHARD B. LEVINE/Newscom

**Cognitive-Behavioral Interventions**

Cognitive-behavioral interventions focus on the conditions that elicit health behaviors and the factors that help to maintain and reinforce them (Dobson, 2010). In a typical intervention, the health psychologist identifies a target behavior to be modified (for example, consumption of soft drinks), measuring the current status of the behavior (including the context in which it occurs and its antecedent cues) and examining its consequences. Many programs use [**self-monitoring**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term305) as the initial step in promoting behavior change. In our example, doing so might include keeping track of the number of soft drinks consumed each day, the situation and time of day, and any cravings or other feelings that occurred before, and after, each beverage was consumed. In this way, the individual can get a clearer sense of the target behavior, including its initial *baseline* rate of occurrence. This allows the establishment of specific goals for the intervention—goals that are both objective and realistic. Interestingly, many people find that self-monitoring itself may produce a change in the target behavior (Quinn and others, 2010).

**self-monitoring**

People keeping track of their own target behavior that is to be modified, including the stimuli associated with it and the consequences that follow it.

The next step is to manipulate the antecedents and consequences in an effort to modify the target behavior’s rate of occurrence. The key to this process is removing reinforcement for unhealthy behaviors and providing reinforcement for healthy ones.

**In Pavlov’s research, dogs salivated in response to meat powder and, later, to tones that had been paired with the meat powder. In both cases, salivation was a respondent behavior that the dogs could not control. However, dogs that learned that retrieving a ball will be rewarded with a treat made a controllable, operant response.**

Traditional behavior-modification programs derive from two forms of learning: *classical conditioning* (also called *Pavlovian conditioning* or *respondent conditioning*) and *operant conditioning*. In classical conditioning, learning takes place when we learn to associate two environmental stimuli that occur together in time. In operant conditioning, behavior is strengthened if followed by a desired consequence (reinforcement) or weakened if followed by an undesirable consequence (punishment).

A number of methods used for modifying health behaviors derive from classical conditioning. One, called [**aversion therapy**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term38), associates an unpleasant outcome with a stimulus that currently is triggering an unwanted behavior. For example, aversion therapy has been used to treat unhealthy patterns of alcohol consumption. In a typical intervention, the nauseating drug Antabuse (disulfiram) is paired with alcohol. Antabuse interferes with the metabolism of alcohol, causing an accumulation of acetaldehyde. Although the drug does not reduce cravings for alcohol, if the patient takes a drink within several days of ingesting Antabuse, a variety of unpleasant effects occur, including nausea, sweating, racing heart rate, severe headaches, and dizziness. Drugs like this, which produce sickness when a person takes a drink, are designed to produce a *conditioned aversion* to alcohol. When taken daily, Antabuse can result in total abstinence (Julien, Advokat, & Comaty, 2011). Aversion therapy has also been used in the treatment of cigarette smoking (see [**Figure 6.7**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F6-7)). Cigarettes are laced with a nausea-trigger chemical (the unconditioned stimulus) so that, over time, the taste of a cigarette (the conditioned stimulus) will become associated with the nausea and come to trigger stomach distress, as well as an aversion to smoking (the conditioned response). The effectiveness (as well as the ethics) of aversive conditioning has been the subject of heated debate. Participant adherence is also a problem. Many people simply stop taking Antabuse on a regular basis or ditch their tainted cigarettes.

**aversion therapy**

A behavioral intervention based on classical conditioning, in which stimuli that elicit an unwanted target behavior become associated with unpleasant outcomes.

**Figure 6.7: Aversion Therapy for Cigarette Smoking**

**If smoking persists because it is pleasurable, aversion therapy can be an effective quitting approach. There are three distinct phases employed in aversion therapy. In Phase 1, cigarettes are laced with a nausea-triggering chemical (the unconditioned stimulus). In Phase 2, the taste of a cigarette (the conditioned stimulus) becomes associated with the nausea over time. In Phase 3, the taste of a cigarette comes to trigger stomach distress and an aversion to smoking (the conditioned response).**

Nausea induced by the taste of alcohol or a cigarette that has been paired with a drug like Antabuse is an involuntary, *respondent behavior*. Many health habits are voluntary [**operant behaviors**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term242) that “operate” on the environment and can be controlled by the individual. When a person performs a behavior that is followed by either *positive reinforcement* (a pleasant stimulus is presented), or *negative reinforcement* (an unpleasant stimulus is removed) the behavior is likely to occur again. For example, many experts believe that many young people begin smoking because of the positive reinforcement provided by their peers in the form of attention and social acceptance. Once a smoking habit is established, the bad habit may have its own built-in mechanism of negative reinforcement: Puffing on a cigarette may terminate the unpleasant symptoms of nicotine withdrawal such as headache and jitteriness.

**operant behavior**

Any voluntary behavior that “operates” on the environment.

Two key aspects in the use of operant conditioning to modify health behaviors are *stimulus-control*and *contingency contracting*. Habitual behaviors such as cigarette smoking and overeating are often triggered by environmental stimuli to which they have become associated. For example, the sights and smells of a holiday meal that is being prepared can serve as *discriminative stimuli* for overeating. As another example, the various sights, sounds, and smells a former smoker encounters upon entering a noisy bar can be potent discriminative stimuli that trigger the urge to light up. [**Discriminative stimuli**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term116) are environmental signals that certain behaviors will be followed by reinforcement.

**discriminative stimuli**

Environmental signals that certain behaviors will be followed by reinforcement.

One reason self-monitoring is an effective step in modifying behavior is that it points out the various discriminative stimuli that have come to control the target behavior. [**Stimulus-control interventions**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term318) aimed at modifying a health behavior involve two strategies: removing discriminative stimuli for the behavior from the environment, and establishing new discriminative stimuli signaling the availability of reinforcement for healthier response choices. For people who are trying to reduce snacking on calorie-dense, low-nutrient junk foods, a good first step is to eliminate the presence of such foods in their house and to avoid activities that trigger snacking. One such activity is watching television, particularly since exposure to food advertising is likely. In a recent study, elementary-school children watched a cartoon that contained either food advertising or advertising for other products and received a snack while watching. Children consumed 45 percent more snack foods when exposed to food advertising (Harris, Bargh, & Brownell, 2009). Turning off the television can be an effective step in gaining control over this type of automatic, mindless snacking. Another effective strategy to gain stimulus control over eating behavior is to restrict its occurrence to one location, say at the dining room table. As we’ll see in [**Chapter 8**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch08), researchers have found that many people who struggle to control unhealthy eating behaviors are especially sensitive to food-related discriminative stimuli.

**stimulus-control intervention**

A behavioral intervention aimed at modifying the environmental discriminative stimuli that control a target behavior by signaling its reinforcement.

Complete elimination of all discriminative stimuli that have become associated with a target behavior is not always possible. A former professor of mine had successfully quit a 20-year smoking habit until he took a cross-country trip as a passenger on a train. When he returned from his trip, he had resumed smoking, complaining that the urge to smoke while he was aboard the train was irresistible. “The last time I took a train ride,” he moaned, “I was still a smoker.” To forestall this type of occurrence, many [**relapse prevention**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term289) programs deliberately bring participants into contact with discriminative stimuli that are likely to evoke the target behavior. Doing so gives participants the opportunity to learn and practice coping skills that increase their feelings of self-efficacy and decrease the likelihood of engaging in old and unhealthy patterns of behavior.

**relapse prevention**

Training in coping skills and other techniques intended to help people resist falling back into old health habits following a successful behavioral intervention.

[**Contingency contracting**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term96) is a formal agreement between a person attempting to change a health behavior and another individual, such as a therapist, regarding the consequences of target behaviors. The agreement establishes the specific reinforcements or punishments that will be contingent on the participant’s behavior. For example, a person who wants to quit smoking might deposit a sum of money and arrange to receive the price of a pack of (unsmoked) cigarettes as a reward for each successful day of not smoking. A contingency contract might also specify that each occurrence of an unwanted target behavior will result in a monetary fine.

**contingency contract**

A formal agreement between a person attempting to change a health behavior and another individual, such as a therapist, regarding the consequences of target behaviors.

Two widely used types of operant conditioning for modifying health behaviors are *token economies* and *modeling*. In a [**token economy**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term343), small tokens (such as marbles) are awarded for desirable behavior (and sometimes taken away for undesirable behavior) and later can be exchanged for favored rewards such as money or special privileges. In an institutional setting, the token economy creates the orderliness of a market economy, in which certain behaviors are assigned specific values within the parameters of a monetary system.

**token economy**

A behavioral intervention based on operant conditioning, in which desirable target behaviors are reinforced with marbles or other tokens that can be exchanged for money and other rewards.

[**Modeling**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term221) involves learning a desired behavior by observing and imitating a role model. It is widely used as an efficient way to teach complex patterns of behavior. Because of the many social influences that cause teens to begin smoking or using alcohol, preventive interventions have often been based on modeling procedures. For example, a student may learn to decline a cigarette or alcoholic drink from another person because she perceives that an admired celebrity doesn’t use these drugs. Modeling is also implicit in many long-term self-help programs such as Weight Watchers and Alcoholics Anonymous. In these programs, people who have had the same problem, including those who have had some success in solving it, surround people who are newly committed to changing the same behavior.

**modeling**

Learning that occurs by observing others.

**Promoting Healthy Workplaces**

Occupational health psychologists are leading the way in designing healthy workplaces. Four dimensions of healthy work have been identified: *stress, work–family relations, violence prevention*, and *relationships at work* (Quick & Quick, 2004). Because job stress is a health epidemic in this country, psychological research and intervention are vital for the health of workers. Increasingly, insurers are recognizing that the causes of disabilities in the workplace are shifting from injuries to job stress.

The workplace has a profound psychological effect on all aspects of our lives and on the lives of our family members. For instance, job stressors may result in family social interactions that are less sensitive and supportive and more negative and conflicted, which can adversely affect children’s biological responses to stress, emotional regulation, and social competence (e.g., Perry-Jenkins, Repetti, & Crouter, 2000). Two behavioral *crossover effects* have been observed between a worker’s experiences of job stress and the well-being of other family members. *Negative emotion spillover*occurs when work-related frustrations contribute to greater irritability, impatience, or other negative behaviors at home. *Social withdrawal* occurs when one or more working adult parents or caregivers withdraw behaviorally and emotionally from family life following especially stressful days at work.

Over the past 20 years, there has been a significant shift in how we think about the relationship between work and family life. As more and more families consist of two full-time adult workers, employers and governmental agencies have begun to recognize that all employees face complex challenges in balancing work and family roles. These changing views have triggered an explosion of work–family research. Among the most consistent findings is the fact that in the United States, many employees find little support and have little say in the policies of work that affect them and their families. Consequently, they are left on their own to arrange child care, balance work schedules, stave off work stress, and so forth. The 1993 Family and Medical Leave Act (FMLA) helps some workers by protecting their jobs as they care for new babies and family members who are ill, but many workers are not covered by this legislation. In 2007, the Department of Labor estimated that of the 141.7 million workers in the United States, 94.4 million worked at FMLA-covered worksites, and that 76.1 million of these workers were eligible for FMLA leave. FMLA applies only to immediate family—parent, spouse, and children. Some states have expanded the definition of family in their own FMLA legislation to include domestic partners, children of domestic partners, grandparents, and parents-in-law.

Workplace violence and campus violence have received considerable attention in recent years. By some estimates, homicide has become the second-leading cause of occupational injury death, exceeded only by motor vehicle deaths. Most of these deaths occur during robberies, but about 10 percent can be attributed to coworkers or former employees. Another 2 million people or so are assaulted each year at work (Northwood, 2011). A number of factors increase a worker’s risk of being a victim of violence, including contact with the public; exchange of money; delivery of passengers, goods, or services; having a mobile workplace; working with unstable or volatile people; and working alone, late at night, and in high-crime areas (Quick & Quick, 2004):

In the area of work relationships, building a healthy work culture requires employees to accept responsibility for their own health and safety and that of their coworkers. More generally, as Dorothy Cantor and her colleagues (2004) have noted, building a healthy work culture requires attention to three factors: the person (individual differences, education, personality), the environment (work conditions, equipment, management systems), and behavior (risk behaviors, procedures, group performance).

In a healthy work culture, *safety triad* policies motivate employees to *behave* in ways that set a healthy example and make the work *environment* safe, while also paying attention to individual *person* factors (see [**Figure 6.8**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F6-8)).

**Figure 6.8: The Safety Triad**

**A healthy work culture requires attention to three factors: the person, the environment, and behavior**.

**Source:** Cantor, D.W., Boyce, T.E., & Repetti, R.L. (2004). Ensuring healthy working lives. In R.H. Rozensky, N.G. Johnson, C.D. Goodheart, & W.R. Hammond (Eds.), *Psychology builds a healthy world* (p. 277). Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

**Work-Site Wellness Programs**

The workplace is an ideal site for promoting health for several reasons. First, workers find such programs convenient to attend. Some employers even permit their employees to participate in prevention programs during the workday. In addition, the workplace offers the greatest opportunity for continuing contact, follow-through, and feedback. Finally, coworkers are available to provide social support and help motivate people during difficult moments. The same is true of wellness programs on university and college campuses.

Work-site programs began to emerge at a rapid pace with the advent of the wellness movement during the 1980s. In the United States today, more than 80 percent of organizations with 50 or more workers offer some sort of health-promoting program. Work-site wellness programs offer a varietyof activities, including weight management, nutrition counseling, smoking cessation, preventive health screenings, educational seminars, stress management, lower back care, fitness centers, immunization programs, and prenatal programs (see [**Figure 6.9**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F6-9)).

**Figure 6.9: Percentage of Employers Offering Various Types of Health Promotion Programs**

**Workplace wellness programs offer many advantages. They are convenient for workers to attend, follow-through is made easier, and coworkers can provide social support**.

**Source:** Linnan, L., Bowling, M., Childress, J., Lindsay, G., Blakey, C., Pronk, S., Wieker, S., & Royall, P. (2008). Results of the 2004 National Worksite Health Promotion Survey. *American Journal of Public Health, 98*, 1503–1509.

At the heart of the wellness movement was the realization that preventing disease is easier, cheaper, and far more desirable than curing disease. Case in point: the H1N1 vaccination campaign on college campuses during the 2009–2010 flu season. Worldwide, health care costs have risen from about 3 percent of world gross domestic product (GDP) in 1948 to about 8 percent today. The United States currently spends over 17 percent of its GDP on health care (Commonwealth Fund, 2010). As noted earlier, an ever-increasing proportion of these costs has been passed along to employers who pay their employees’ health insurance premiums. According to a 2006 William B. Mercer study, 97 percent of corporate health benefits costs are spent on treating preventable conditions such as cardiovascular disease, lower back problems, hypertension, stroke, bladder cancer, and alcohol abuse. Employers have realized that work-site programs that are even modestly successful in improving employees’ health can result in substantial savings.

Are such programs effective? A large number of careful studies reveal that they are. The cost of the programs is more than offset by reductions in work-related injuries, absenteeism, and worker turnover. The U.S. surgeon general’s recent *National Prevention Strategy* (Office of the Surgeon General, 2011) concluded that medical costs are significantly reduced by $3.27, and worker absenteeism costs by $2.73, for every dollar spent on work-site wellness programs. Clearly, prevention is the best buy when it comes to health.

**Positive Psychology and Thriving**

In 2001, the American Psychological Association (APA) modified its 60-year-old mission statement to include the word *health* for the first time. Over 95 percent of the organization’s membership endorsed the bylaw change, underscoring their awareness that while within each person there are physical and psychological elements that contribute to illness and disability, there are others that contribute to health, wellness, and thriving. The bylaw change was part of APA’s Healthy World Initiative, which aligned with the new [**positive psychology**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term264) movement described in [**Chapter 1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch01) to promote a *strength-based, preventive approach* to research and interventions rather than psychology’s more traditional approach of attacking problems after they have occurred (Seligman, 2002). As APA President Norine Johnson (2004) stated, “We must bring the building of strength to the forefront in the treatment and prevention of illness, for the promotion of wellness and health” (p. 317).

**positive psychology**

The study of optimal human functioning and the healthy interplay between people and their environments.

This new emphasis has generated an upswing in research on such topics as personal growth, positive affect, optimism, meaning, gratitude, and resilience, their relationship to health, and their potential for interventions that promote healing and health (Aspinwall & Tedeschi, 2010). No single term has been accepted as the best way to describe the co-occurrence of human strengths in the positive psychology literature, as is the case with *comorbity* when multiple states of disease occur simultaneously. The terms *flourishing* and *psychological capital* have been used to refer to the combined effects of hope, optimism, self-efficacy, and resilience to predict wellness and success in the workplace (Luthans and others, 2007). Other researchers have recently used the term *covitality*to describe the relations among the positive traits of well-being, self-confidence, and general health among college students (Jones, You, & Furlong, 2013).

A central theme of the positive psychology movement is that the experience of adversity, whether physical or psychological in nature, can sometimes yield benefits, as it did for Sara Snodgrass, whom we met at the beginning of the chapter. As Charles Carver (Carver and others, 2005) noted, when we experience physical or psychological adversity, there are at least four possible outcomes: 1) a continued downward slide, 2) survival with diminished capacity or impairment, 3) a gradual or rapid return to the pre-adversity level of function, and 4) the emergence of a quality that makes the person somehow better off than beforehand.

[**Thriving**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term341) refers to this paradoxical fourth outcome, in which adversity somehow leads people to greater psychological and/or physical well-being (O’Leary & Ickovics, 1995). How can this be? According to neuroscientist Bruce McEwen (2011), who introduced the concept of *allostatic load*, “Under conditions of stress, one would expect a physically weakened system, but positive physiological changes can occur—often in the context of psychological thriving. In physiological terms, this translates into greater restorative processes than destructive processes at work” (p. 195). Using the analogy of athletes strengthening their muscles by first breaking them down through exercise, allowing recovery, and then repeating this pattern over time to produce muscles that are stronger and capable of doing more work, positive psychologists point to evidence that adversity can similarly trigger “psychological bodybuilding” (Pearsall, 2004).

**thriving**

A paradoxical outcome in which adversity somehow leads people to greater psychological and/or physical well-being.

**Allostasis and Neuroendocrine Health**

As we saw in [**Chapter 4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch04), in response to a stressor, activation of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis causes a change in the body’s overall metabolic state. Most of the time, the cells of the body are occupied with activities that build the body (*anabolism*). When the brain perceives an impending threat or challenge, however, anabolic metabolism is converted into its opposite, *catabolism*, which breaks down tissues to be converted to energy. Catabolic metabolism is characterized by the release of catecholamines, cortisol, and other “fight-or-flight” hormones that help the body quickly mobilize energy. To counteract these neuroendocrine reactions, the parasympathetic nervous system triggers the release of anabolic hormones, including growth hormone, insulin-like growth factor (IGF-1), and sex steroids. Anabolic metabolism counters arousal and promotes relaxation, energy storage, and healing processes such as protein synthesis.

Recall from [**Chapter 4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch04) that allostasis refers to the body’s ability to adapt to stress and other elements of rapidly changing environments (McEwen, 2011). One measure of *physical thriving* is a fluid allostatic system that flexibly shifts from high to low levels of sympathetic nervous system arousal, depending on the demands of the environment. Catabolic hormones, for instance, are essential to health over the short term. However, when people are in a constant state of arousal, prolonged elevations of catabolic hormones can damage the body and promote chronic illness. As an example, repeated stress can strongly affect brain function, especially in the hippocampus, which has large concentrations of cortisol receptors (McEwen, 2011). The consequences of long-term elevations of catabolic hormones, when taken together, look very much like aging. Hypertension, wasted muscles, ulcers, fatigue, and increased risk of chronic disease are common signs of both aging and chronic stress. This state, which has been called [**allostatic overload**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term18), is indicated by a predominance of catabolic activity at rest. An elevated resting level of salivary or serum cortisol is one biological indicator of allostatic overload and the general functioning of the HPA system. Conversely, a predominance of anabolic hormones at rest reflects enhanced health and a low allostatic load.

**allostatic overload**

The consequences of long-term elevations of stress-related catabolic hormones, including hypertension, wasted muscles, ulcers, fatigue, and increased risk of chronic disease.

A series of classic studies by Jay Weiss and his colleagues (1975) demonstrated that the arousal of stress can lead to enhanced physical health by conditioning the body to be resistant to future stressors. You have learned that when laboratory animals experience chronic stress, they suffer from learned helplessness and catecholamine depletion. Paradoxically, Weiss found that exposing laboratory animals to *intermittent* stressors followed by recovery periods can lead to “physiological toughening,” including resistance to catecholamine depletion, suppression of cortisol, and increased resilience to subsequent stressors. Additional studies have demonstrated that exposure to early life stressors can sometimes result in the subsequent development of resilience in squirrel monkeys (Lyons & Parker, 2007).

**Neurobiology of Resilience**

Evolutionary biologists point out that the primary function of all living creatures—from single-celled organisms to humans—is to survive, reproduce, and ensure that genetic material is successfully passed to future generations. In mammals, the *need* to maintain homeostasis is essential for survival and triggers *drives* that range from regulating body temperature to getting adequate food and sleep. Threats to survival engage a host of physiological and behavioral responses meant to defend homeostasis by removing the threat if possible, and coping otherwise if not (Karatoreos & McEwen, 2013). As we saw in [**Chapter 4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch04), in some animals, and especially in humans, *internally* generated threats, such as ruminating on problems, constant thinking about disappointments, or blaming oneself for mishaps, also threaten homeostasis and health.

Considered in these terms, *resilience* can be thought of as the capacity of the brain and body to withstand challenges to homeostasis. The brain is the central organ of adaptation to a stressor since it determines which behavioral response is needed (for example, fleeing or fighting). The brain also regulates the body’s neuroendocrine, autonomic, and metabolic systems. Overuse or dysregulation of these systems can lead to allostatic overload and the development and acceleration of many chronic illnesses, from depression to cardiovascular disease.

Positive psychologists are discovering that exposure to certain events early in life may promote the development of resistance to allostatic overload. In recent years, various neural, molecular, and hormonal mechanisms related to this type of resilience have been studied extensively in humans and laboratory animals (Russo and others, 2012). These mechanisms involve the HPA axis, which regulates the stress response (see [**Chapter 4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch04)). This work has demonstrated that resilience is mediated by distinct biological adaptations that can blunt stress-induced HPA activation to promote normal functioning, even in the face of adversity.

**Hippocampal Volume on Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) in PTSD**

**There is smaller hippocampal volume in this patient with PTSD compared to a control.**

Bremner JD, Brain Imaging Handbook, Fig 6.3, p 101

Much of this research has been conducted with laboratory animals. As with humans, chronic exposure to environmental stressors such as inescapable electric shock leads to the development of depression-like responses in some, but not all, animals. These adverse responses include heightened HPA reactivity, overeating, social avoidance, and shrinkage of the hippocampus (Golden and others, 2011). In any given study, up to one-third of the animals do not display these maladaptive behaviors and metabolic symptoms and have been considered *resilient* (Russo and others, 2012).

One recent study demonstrated that mice raised in a socially enriched environment (living as members of a group in a communal nest rather than in individual cages) later were more resilient to an acute stressor than mice that had been raised in a standard, unenriched environment (Branchi and others, 2013). Research studies with monkeys have shown that early exposure to *moderate stressors* temporarily activates the HPA axis, which later in life leads to diminished stress-induced arousal, blunted HPA activation, increased curiosity, and prosocial behavior (Parker, 2012). In this way, early experiences may inoculate or immunize the brain and promote resistance to subsequent stressors.

Neuroendocrine adaptations are an important aspect of resilience. For example, the hormone *dehydroepiandrosterone* (*DHEA*), which is normally released from the adrenal cortex along with cortisol in response to stress, has antioxidant and anti-inflammatory effects. Research studies with soldiers undergoing the extreme stress of military survival training have found that individuals with a higher DHEA-to-cortisol ratio have been shown to have fewer negative symptoms during the extreme stress of military survival training (Rasmusson, Vythilingam, & Morgan, 2003). Several studies have found that higher levels of the neurotransmitter *neuropeptide Y* (*NPY*) also are associated with better coping in response to acute or chronic stress (Mickey and others, 2011).

The brain also *responds* to hormonal and neural feedback from neuroendocrine systems, as they are engaged as part of the body’s effort to maintain homeostasis. This feedback, which has been called [**biological embedding**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term52), seems to shape the structure and function of the brain throughout life (McEwen & Gianaros, 2011). For example, animal studies have shown that chronic stress leads to a dramatic shrinkage and loss of connectivity among neurons in one region of the prefrontal cortex (PFC). Often called the “CEO (chief executive officer) of the brain,” the PFC is responsible for cognitive analysis, planning, impulse control, and the modulation of intense emotions. Interestingly, neurons in a different region of the PFC often display an *increase* in complexity in response to environmental stress, thus demonstrating how early experiences seem to sculpt the brain (Liston and others, 2006). Four somewhat overlapping periods seem to be especially sensitive to the biological embedding of environmental events. These events include prenatal development, the neonatal period (the first four weeks after birth), the years of early childhood (ages 2 through 6), and adolescence (Karatoreos & McEwen, 2013).

**biological embedding**

The processes by which the structure and functioning of the brain are shaped by feedback from neuroendocrine systems as they are engaged as part of the body’s effort to maintain homeostasis.

Hormones appear to be the agents of adaptation and change in the brain’s response to environmental events. They do so by altering the complexity of dendrites and the turnover of synapses in the PFC, the amygdala, and the hippocampus. For example, research studies have found that the type of maternal care experienced by rat pups affects the expression of glucocorticoid stress hormone receptors in the brain, and ultimately, the adult response of the HPA stress axis. This occurs as a result of changes in the *methylation* (see [**Chapter 2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch02)) of promoter genes for these receptors, ultimately changing the sensitivity of the hippocampus to cortisol and other glucocorticoid hormones (Zhang and others, 2010; Bagot and others, 2012).

Thus, researchers are beginning to understand how changes in early life experiences can alter neural circuits and environmental responses through epigenetic changes (see [**Figure 6.10**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F6-10)). Multiple pathways interact to shape the brain and body’s physiological and neurobehavioral responses to early life experiences. Gradually, epigenetic research is building a picture of how the mechanisms of gene–environment interaction can alter the resilience of the brain (Russo and others, 2012).

**Figure 6.10: The Neurobiology of Resilience**

**The interaction of genes and early environmental experiences can induce physiological and neurobehavioral changes that alter the way an individual responses to stressors later in life. These changes alter the structure and function of brain areas involved in cognition and the regulation of emotion, especially the prefrontal cortex (PFC), the amygdala, and the hippocampus**.

**Source:** Karatoreos, I.N., & McEwen, B.S (2013). Annual research review: The neurobiology of resilience and adaptation across the life course. *Journal of Child Psychology and Psychiatry*, 54(4), 337–347.

**Psychosocial Factors and Physiological Thriving**

Elsewhere in this book, we have seen how psychosocial factors can modify immune functioning in ways that impair health. In this section, we focus on evidence that psychosocial factors also can have beneficial effects on immune functioning and other bodily systems.

A number of psychological variables have been linked to lowered stress hormones, enhanced immunity, lower levels of inflammation, and healthier patterns of heart rate variability in response to stress. These variables include optimism (Segerstrom & Sephton, 2010), self-esteem and perceptions of personal competence and control over outcomes (O’Donnell and others, 2008), self-efficacy (Bandura and others, 1985), and a sense of coherence in one’s life (Myrin & Lagerstrom, 2006). These variables also apply to the workplace, and many companies now offer opportunities to promote them. Google, for instance, has a playground area where their workers can play basketball, Ping-Pong, and other games when they are feeling overwhelmed.

**Self-Enhancement**

A growing body of research links positive mental states, even unrealistic ones involving positive illusions, to healthier physiological functioning (e.g., Taylor and others, 2003). This phenomenon appears to occur in people who lean toward *self-enhancement*, a tendency to recall positive over negative information, to see oneself more positively than do others, and to feel personally responsible for good outcomes. Contrary to early views in psychology, which considered this type of inflated self-perception as evidence of narcissism, self-centeredness, and poor mental health, recent studies have suggested that rather than being associated with maladjustment, self-enhancement is indicative of health, wellness, and the ability to feel good about oneself. Self-enhancement has also been linked to the ability to develop and sustain relationships, to be content, and to thrive in environments that are changing or even threatening (Taylor and others, 2003).

Erroneous, but positive, views of our medical condition and of the perception of our control over it appear to promote health and longevity. Although these correlational findings do not prove causality, researchers speculate that *self-enhancing cognitions* might blunt physiological and neuroendocrine responses to stress and thus lessen HPA responses to stress (Taylor and others, 2000).

In one study, Shelley Taylor and her colleagues (2003) asked 92 college students to complete the How I See Myself Questionnaire, a measure of self-enhancement on which participants rate themselves in comparison with their peers on academic ability, self-respect, and 19 other positive qualities, as well as on selfishness, pretentiousness, and 19 other negative characteristics. They also completed personality scales tapping psychological resources such as optimism, extraversion, and happiness. One week later, the participants reported to a UCLA laboratory, where they first provided a saliva sample for cortisol analysis and then performed several standard mental arithmetic tasks that reliably induce stress. As they did so, their heart rates and systolic and diastolic blood pressures were monitored. Following completion of the stress-challenge tasks, a second cortisol measure was taken.

The results showed that self-enhancers had lower baseline cortisol levels at the start of the study *and* lower heart rate and blood pressure responses during the stress-challenge tasks. The baseline cortisol results suggest that self-enhancement is associated with lower resting HPA axis levels, indicating a chronically healthier neuroendocrine state. The blunted heart rate and blood pressure responses suggest that positive self-perceptions help people manage acute stressors. Over time, self-enhancers may experience less stress-related wear and tear on their bodies. Equally interesting were the participants’ responses to the psychological resources questionnaire, which suggested that the relationship between self-enhancement and neuroendocrine response was mediated by higher self-esteem, optimism, extraversion, stronger social support, and greater work and community involvement than that found in participants who scored low on measures of self-enhancement.

**Social Engagement**

Sara Snodgrass (from the chapter-opening vignette) feels that a key feature of her psychological thriving is the extent to which she has reorganized her life’s priorities around her relationships with friends and family. Indeed, the importance of social engagement has been demonstrated by epidemiological studies showing that people who maintain strong social ties are more likely to retain health and live longer (Berkman and others, 2010). Social engagement also appears to be directly linked to neuroendocrine health. Studies have demonstrated, for instance, an increase in lymphocyte count in response to social support. Interventions that include some form of social support have enhancing effects on natural killer (NK) cell cytotoxicity, lymphocyte proliferation, and cell-mediated immunity (Miller & Cohen, 2001).

**Social Engagement**

**People who maintain strong social ties are more likely to retain health and live longer.**

Joshua Lutz/Redux

People often seek the support of others in order to disclose their feelings during moments of adversity. Research conducted over the last 15 years has documented that this type of *emotional disclosure* alters autonomic activity and immune function in ways that promote health. The work of James Pennebaker and his colleagues (1995, 1988) has shown that when individuals communicate events that produce negative emotional states, they exhibit elevations in natural killer cell activity and lymphocyte proliferation.

**Relaxation**

As we discussed in [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05), wakeful relaxation is also associated with decreases in negative emotions and alterations of neuroendocrine functions (Daruna, 2004). Relaxation can be achieved through methods such as meditation, listening to music, simple breathing exercises, yoga, and a variety of other simple means. For instance, research studies have shown that relaxation promotes decreased leukocyte counts, enhanced natural killer cell activity, and, in the case of students who regularly practice relaxation, improved immune functioning during stressful exam periods (Davidson and others, 2003b). The most consistent finding associated with relaxation is an increase in secretory IgA, one of the anabolic hormones discussed earlier in the chapter. Interestingly, hypnosis, which is also thought to induce relaxation, also produces reliable increases in secretory IgA (Johnson and others, 1996).

**Features of Psychological Thriving**

A growing body of research reveals that curiosity and a sense of control over one’s life contribute strongly to psychological thriving. Let’s examine each of these factors.

**Curiosity**

*Curiosity* refers to a person’s orientation or attraction to novel stimuli. Research suggests that curiosity in older people is associated with maintaining the health of the aging central nervous system. In examining the relationship between curiosity in older men and women and survival rates, researchers have found that, after five years, those with the highest levels of curiosity survived longer than those with lower levels (Swan & Carmelli, 1996). It’s important to note, however, that this correlational evidence does not indicate that curiosity automatically increases an older person’s chances of survival; it may be simply a sign that his or her central nervous system is operating properly. In some individuals, age-related declines in curiosity reflect declining mental functioning. In partial support of this hypothesis, one study reported decreased curiosity (measured as reduced exploratory eye movements to novel visual stimuli) in individuals with serious central nervous system disease, as compared with age-matched normal controls (Daffner and others, 1994). Because certain brain structures known to be involved in Alzheimer’s disease also are involved in directed attention and novelty-seeking behavior, diminished curiosity may be one of the earliest signs of abnormal aging of the central nervous system.

Assuming that the person is a normal, healthy adult, curiosity may enhance healthy aging because it enables older adults to meet daily environmental and physical challenges successfully. Thus, the curious older adult uses active coping strategies (see [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05)) to approach potential problems and impediments, and in this way, manages to reduce the strain on his or her physical and mental resources. It seems that such an individual stands a better chance of being physically and mentally healthy in later life (Ory & Cox, 1994).

**Perceived Control and Self-Efficacy**

In one major prospective study of personality traits and health, researchers interviewed 8723 late-middle-aged and older persons living independently or in adapted housing for elderly people in the Netherlands (Kempen, Jelicic, & Ormel, 1997). Three measures of personality were investigated: mastery or personal control, general self-efficacy, and neuroticism (emotional instability). *Mastery*concerns the extent to which one regards one’s own life changes as being under one’s own control, as opposed to being fatalistically ruled. *Self-efficacy* refers to the belief that one can perform specific behaviors successfully. *Neuroticism* is related to a constant preoccupation with things that might go wrong and a strong emotional reaction of anxiety to these thoughts. Research participants with lower levels of neuroticism and higher levels of mastery and self-efficacy perceived significantly higher levels of functioning and well-being.

Why should a sense of control and mastery improve health? Both behavioral and physiological explanations are viable. Those who have a greater sense of control are more likely to take action, to engage in health-promoting behaviors, and to avoid health-damaging behaviors (Rodin, 1986). Because individuals with a high sense of control believe that what they do makes a difference, they behave in healthier ways (Lachman, Ziff, & Spiro, 1994). In contrast, those who feel helpless and fail to see a relationship between actions and outcomes are more prone to illness and disease (Peterson & Stunkard, 1989), perhaps because they fail to engage in health-promoting practices or because they tend toward health-compromising behaviors (“I could get lung cancer no matter what I do, so I might as well smoke”).

Having a sense of control also seems to show positive physiological effects. For instance, research has shown that people with a high sense of control have lower cortisol levels and return more quickly to baseline levels after stress (Seeman & Lewis, 1995).

Additional evidence comes from research involving people at different socioeconomic levels. Margie Lachman and Suzanne Weaver of Brandeis University (1998) examined three large national samples of various social classes and found that for all income groups, higher perceived control was related to better health, greater life satisfaction, and fewer negative emotions. Although the results showed that, on average, those with lower incomes had lower perceived control as well as poorer health, control beliefs played a moderating role, and participants in the lowest-income group, but with a high sense of control, showed levels of health and well-being comparable to those of the higher-income groups. The results provide some evidence that psychosocial variables such as sense of control may be useful in understanding social-class differences in health.

**Beyond Positive Psychology**

During the decade or so since positive psychology was introduced, there has been a strong push to study various psychological traits, such as those considered in this chapter, that are presumed to be beneficial for well-being. Recently, some critics have suggested that positive psychologists have not paid enough attention to the interpersonal context in which individual traits are displayed (Fincham & Beach, 2010). When the social context is considered, some studies have found that psychological traits are not inherently positive or negative, but depend on the context in which they operate.

James McNulty and Frank Fincham (2012) offer the example of a person involved in a physically abusive relationship. There is a large body of research suggesting that people and relationships benefit in the following situations:

* Any negative behaviors in the relationship can be attributed to external causes rather than to dispositional traits in the offending partner.
* Partners in a relationship are optimistic about their future interactions.
* Partners forgive one another.
* Partners remember their positive experiences in the relationship and forget their more negative ones.
* Partners remain committed to one another.

Most of the research studies on which these findings are based involved people who were not involved in abusive relationships. McNulty and Fincham suggest that applying these principles to a woman living in a physically abusive relationship may be unhealthy. Such women may benefit from 1) attributing their partner’s abuse to his dispositional qualities rather than external sources, 2) expecting the abuse to continue, 3) not forgiving the abuse, 4) remembering the abuse, and 5) being less committed to the relationship. In other words, so-called positive traits and processes sometimes can be harmful, whereas traits and process often thought to be negative can be beneficial for well-being.

Other critics of positive psychology call for researchers to move beyond labeling traits as positive or negative. Doing so, they argue, imposes values on psychological science that influence what researchers choose to study, what they expect to find, and how they interpret results. Although science is never completely value-free, critics argue that positive psychology needs to be thought of as just plain psychology before we can have a fuller understanding of the human condition, and that psychological traits and processes are not inherently positive or negative.

In this chapter, we have explored the connection between behavior and health. We have seen how health psychology’s biopsychosocial focus on strength-based approaches to prevention promotes healthier individuals, families, workplaces, and communities. This focus is a departure from psychology’s more traditional approach of attacking problems after they have occurred. As this healthier, more positive model takes hold, we may reach a tipping point in which health care similarly shifts from its traditional emphasis on tertiary prevention to a more balanced delivery system favoring primary prevention.

**Weigh In on Health**

Respond to each question below based on what you learned in the chapter. **(Tip:** Use the items in “Summing Up” to take into account related biological, psychological, and social concerns.)

* **1.** When Sonia—a student in your healthx psychology course—moved into a dormitory, she discovered that many of the residents smoked cigarettes. How would she explain this behavior in terms of the HBM, TPB, and TTM theories of health behavior?
* **2.** Suppose that you were asked by your college or university to design a health campaign to reduce risky health-related behaviors among students. Based on the research discussed in the chapter, what types of interventions are likely to be effective? What types of interventions are likely to be ineffective?
* **3.** What is a health situation that you and other students at your college face that could benefit from greater awareness of positive psychology? How would positive psychology help make your student population healthier? What are some findings that support your response?

**Summing Up**

**Health and Behavior**

* **1.** Most behaviors affect health in some way: for better (healthy behaviors) or worse (health-risk behaviors), directly or indirectly, and immediately or over the long term.
* **2.** The health belief model assumes that decisions regarding health behavior are based on four interacting factors: perceived susceptibility to a health threat, perceived severity of the threat, perceived benefits of and barriers to treatment, and cues to action.
* **3.** The theory of planned behavior (TPB) maintains that the best way to predict whether a health behavior will occur is to measure a person’s decision to engage in a health-related behavior (behavioral intention). The decision to engage in a health behavior is shaped by our attitude toward the behavior, our motivation to comply with the views of others regarding the behavior (subjective norm), and our expectation of success in performing the health behavior (perceived behavioral control).
* **4.** The transtheoretical model (TTM) outlines five stages through which people progress in changing health-related behaviors: precontemplation, contemplation, preparation, action, and maintenance.

**Prevention**

* **5.** Primary prevention refers to actions to prevent a disease or injury from occurring. Secondary prevention involves actions to treat an illness early in its course. Tertiary prevention involves actions taken to contain damage once a disease has progressed beyond its early stages.
* **6.** In focusing on healthy life expectancy, health psychologists aim to shorten the amount of time that older people spend disabled, ill, or in pain (morbidity).
* **7.** Family connectedness, conflict, and nurturance are powerful influences on the individual’s health behavior, as are the health habits and attitudes of other family members. Within the health system, prevention remains a relatively minor focus in traditional medicine, and many people cannot afford health coverage. At the community level, people are more likely to adopt health-enhancing behaviors when these behaviors are promoted by community organizations, such as schools, government agencies, and the health care system.
* **8.** Carefully planned health education campaigns that present information on several fronts and are community based often can promote changes that are difficult for individuals to accomplish by themselves.
* **9.** Message framing is a critical factor in the effectiveness of health education. Messages can be framed to emphasize either the positive outcomes from adopting a health-promoting behavior (gain-framed messages) or the negative outcomes from failing to do so (loss-framed messages). Tailoring health messages to individuals is an effective strategy for promoting behavior change. Fear-arousing messages may backfire and actually decrease a person’s likelihood of adopting a certain health behavior.
* **10.** Behavioral interventions focus on the conditions that elicit health behaviors and the factors that help to maintain and reinforce them. Many programs use self-monitoring as the initial step in promoting behavior change.
* **11.** Some interventions, such as aversion therapy, are based on the classical conditioning of respondent behaviors. Other behavioral interventions, such as contingency contracting, modeling, and the use of token economies, are based on operant conditioning.
* **12.** Stimulus-control interventions aimed at modifying a health behavior involve two strategies: removing discriminative stimuli for the behavior from the environment, and establishing new discriminative stimuli signaling the availability of reinforcement for healthier response choices.
* **13.** Most organizations with 50 or more workers offer some form of work-site wellness program. The cost of such programs has proved to be more than offset by reductions in work-related injuries, absenteeism, and worker turnover.

**Positive Psychology and Thriving**

* **14.** A central theme of the new positive psychology movement—which promotes a strength-based, preventive approach to research and interventions—is that adversity sometimes actually leads people to greater psychological and/or physical well-being.
* **15.** Although catabolic hormones are essential to our short-term health, when we are in a constant state of arousal (allostatic load), prolonged elevations of catabolic hormones can weaken our immunity and promote illness.
* **16.** Resilience can be thought of as the capacity of the brain and body to withstand challenges to homeostasis. Overuse or dysregulation of the neuroendocrine systems that maintain homeostasis can lead to *allostatic overload* and the development and acceleration of many chronic illnesses, from depression to cardiovascular disease.
* **17.** Neuroendocrine adaptations are an important aspect of resilience. The brain also *responds* to hormonal and neural feedback from neuroendocrine systems, as they are engaged as part of the body’s effort to maintain homeostasis. This feedback (biological embedding) seems to shape the structure and function of the brain throughout life.
* **18.** A number of psychosocial factors have been linked to enhanced immunity in response to stress. These include self-esteem, perceptions of personal competence and control, self-efficacy, and a tendency to recall positive over negative information about ourselves (self-enhancement).
* **19.** Other key features of psychological thriving include curiosity, wakeful relaxation, social engagement, and emotional disclosure. Relaxation and sharing feelings with family and friends during moments of adversity alter autonomic activity and immune function in ways that promote health. Curiosity may enhance healthy aging because it helps older adults use active coping strategies to meet daily challenges.
* **20.** Recently, some critics have suggested that positive psychologists have not paid enough attention to the interpersonal context in which individual traits are displayed. When the social context is considered, some studies have found that psychological traits are not inherently positive or negative, but depend on the context in which they operate.

## *Chapter 7*: Exercise, Sleep, and Injury Control

[**Physical Activity, Exercise, and Fitness**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L7-1-1)

* [**Benefits from Physical Activity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L7-2-2) [**Is it Ever Too Late to Begin Exercising?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L7-2-6) [**Why Don’t More People Exercise?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L7-2-7) [**Exercise Interventions**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L7-2-8)

[**Sleep**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L7-1-9)

* [**Sleep Stages**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L7-2-10) [**Sleep Patterns**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L7-2-11) [**Your Health Assets:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B7-15) [**How Good Is Your Sleep?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B7-15)

[**Injury Control**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L7-1-12)

* [**Childhood**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L7-2-13) [**Adolescence and Emerging Adulthood**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L7-2-14) [**Adulthood**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L7-2-15) [**Injury Prevention**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L7-2-19)

*At 7:00 a.m. on the morning of October 9, 2010, I had been treading water in the Pacific Ocean for nearly 20 minutes. I was about 200 meters offshore from Dig Me Beach and the small town of Kailua-Kona, established in the 1800s by King Kamehameha as the capital of his newly unified kingdom of Hawaii. Since 1981, “Kona” has been the seat of the Ironman World Championship, a 140.6-mile triathlon consisting of a 2.4-mile swim, followed by a 112-mile bike ride, and finally a 26.2-mile marathon. I was holding my place at the watery starting line of this incredible event, along with 1500 others who had qualified to be there, amid network news helicopters hovering overhead, race officials floating on paddleboards, a full-size SUV that served as a floating advertisement for the race’s major sponsor, and a flotilla of outrigger canoes, pontoon boats, and other small watercraft*.

*As I waited for the cannon to fire, signaling the start of the race, my mind flashed on several vivid memories along my journey to earn this coveted qualifying spot—one of only 50 for men my age, worldwide. I thought of the day 27 years earlier when I took my first painful, wheezy steps, as a “jogger” and reformed smoker. I had started exercising on the advice of cardiologist and running enthusiast George Sheehan, MD, who’d written that people who want to improve their fitness through exercise should find a form of play—movement that, above all, is fun—so much so that the desire to smoke is pushed aside because it is incompatible with being the “runner” I wanted to be*.

*My memory reel fast-forwarded several years to the start of the 1987 Boston marathon, a race I’d earned the right to run by running 26.2 miles in under 3 hours at the Detroit marathon. It had taken thousands of miles run in training, dozens of pairs of running shoes, and hundreds of 5K, 10K, and half-marathon road races to earn my entry—a feat of which I was so proud that my dad made the trip with me in celebration*.

*My hard-won identity as a serious runner came with many benefits, including excellent physical fitness, increased self-esteem, and lower levels of stress. However, the smile that briefly crossed my face at this thought vanished as the next “scene” in my memory movie surfaced—the rather dark period in which my competitiveness as a serious runner took over my life, at times hurting the ones I loved, affecting my work, and ultimately leading to one injury after another as I pushed my running to an average of over 70 miles each week for several years. I remembered the day in 1999, when, 24 hours after partially tearing my right Achilles tendon in the USA Track and Field National Championship 10K, I painfully hobbled a mile in order to keep my four-year streak of daily running intact*.

*The streak soon ended, however, along with my ability to walk—much less run—without limping, and I began a new, medical journey, intent to find a “cure” for my foot pain. Medicine had three things to offer, only one of which proved the right prescription. It wasn’t the various surgical procedures or anti-inflammatory drugs recommended by health care providers who, being specialists in tertiary care, didn’t know what to make of the extremely fit, yet obviously unhealthy, guy who sought one referral after another in his quest to continue running*.

*No, these remedies didn’t work at all. What worked was rest and, eventually, resuming an exercise regimen that was a healthier balance of cross training that included swimming, cycling, and moderate amounts of running. I thought of my first days back in the pool, trying to regain the form as a swimmer I’d had as a child… well, actually, at first it just trying to make it one length of the pool without stopping! I remembered recapturing the joy and freedom I’d found as a kid riding my Schwinn Sting-Ray around the neighborhood, but this time on a sleek new carbon fiber time-trial bike that was steeply angled to keep my upper body down in an aerodynamic position*.

*As the cannon boomed, I “found the toes” of the swimmer just ahead of me and wondered if he, and the rest of the 1500 triathletes wearing the gold Ironman Championship wrist band, had been “watching” their own memory movies. One thing I was sure of was that this event would surely have a scene of its own in my own movie’s sequel*.

My journey to the starting line of the Ironman World Championship highlights a number of issues related to the potential benefits and hazards of exercise. Motivation to start exercising can promote more general lifestyle changes, as it did when it helped me quit smoking, and, later, take steps to improve my eating habits. And although exercise can enhance physical functioning and reduce anxiety, when taken too far it poses hazards to physical and psychological health. This chapter explores the role that physical activity plays in people’s health, along with two other important lifestyle issues: healthy sleep and injury prevention.

Exercise improves sleep, and sleep improves athletic performance and many other facets of our well-being. Today, however, our sleep patterns are more likely than ever to leave us feeling drained of energy. By one estimate, 65 percent of all people—especially college and university students—sleep less than they should for optimal health (Maas & Robbins, 2010). Poor sleep undermines health in many ways, including by making people more prone to unintentional injuries, which are the leading causes of death in every age group from 1 to 44, and a leading cause of disability for all ages, regardless of gender, socioeconomic status, and race/ethnicity. Despite popular belief, most injuries are not “accidents,” but instead are predictable and preventable. Promoting increased physical activity, healthier sleep habits, and reducing the prevalence and consequences of injuries are key goals of *Healthy People 2020* and the subject of this chapter.

## Physical Activity, Exercise, and Fitness

[**Physical activity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term257) is bodily movement produced by skeletal muscles that requires expenditure of energy. Physical activity includes exercise, as well as other activities that are done as part of working, transportation, household chores, and leisure. Physical activity is natural for humans. Our bodies were designed for it, and staying active is essential for good health. Physical inactivity, on the other hand, is the fourth-leading risk factor for global mortality, each year causing an estimated 3.2 million (6 percent) deaths worldwide. In addition, physical inactivity is estimated to be the main cause for approximately 21–25 percent of breast and colon cancers, 27 percent of diabetes and approximately 30 percent of ischemic heart disease (WHO, 2010b).

## physical activity

Bodily movement produced by skeletal muscles that requires energy expenditure.

[**Physical exercise**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term258) is physical activity that is planned, repetitive, and purposeful in the sense that it is intended to improve or maintain one or more aspects of physical fitness. Two broad categories of physical exercise are *aerobic* and *nonaerobic*. Often called “cardio,” [**aerobic exercise**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term10) is light- to moderate-intensity exercise performed for an extended period of time. Examples are swimming, cycling, and running. “Aerobic” means “living in air” and refers to the use of oxygen to meet energy demands adequately during this type of exercise. This type of exercise can be contrasted with [**anaerobic exercise**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term21), such as strength training and sprinting short distances. This type of exercise is generally performed at higher intensity than aerobic exercise, but for shorter periods of time. Any exercise lasting longer than about two minutes is largely aerobic.

## physical exercise

Physical activity that is planned, repetitive, and purposeful in the sense that it is intended to improve or maintain one or more aspects of physical fitness.

## aerobic exercise

Light- to moderate-intensity exercise performed for an extended period of time; examples include swimming, cycling, and running.

## anaerobic exercise

High-intensity exercise performed for short periods of time; examples include weight training and sprinting.

How physically active are you? Do you exercise regularly? How active should you be? About 50 to 70 of the total energy that your body burns involves the functioning of cells and vital organs. This is your [**basal**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term40) (resting) [**metabolic rate (BMR)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term40). Although BMR is not easily determined—because it depends on a number of variables, including your age, gender, current weight, and activity level—a rough estimate of your daily calorie needs to maintain your current weight can be calculated by multiplying your body weight (in pounds) by 13. About 7 to 10 percent of the energy that your body uses serves to break down the food you eat. The rest is the result of physical activity, including the things you have to do every day, such as showering, getting dressed, vacuuming, and leisure activities such as dancing, playing sports, or walking. The more physical activities you choose to do, the more energy that you expend.

## basal metabolic rate (BMR)

The minimum number of calories the body needs to maintain bodily functions while at rest.

Energy expenditure is typically measured in [**calories**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term64), a measure of food energy equivalent to the amount of energy needed to raise the temperature of 1 gram of water 1 degree Celsius. [**Table 7.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T7-1)lists the calories burned by doing different activities for people of three different weights (Harvard Heart Letter, 2004).

## calorie

A measure of food energy equivalent to the amount of energy needed to raise the temperature of 1 gram of water 1 degree Celsius.

## Table 7.1

This table lists the calories burned by various activities listed by category (such as gym activities, training and sports activities, home repair, etc.) for 30 minutes. In each category, activities are listed from least to most calories burned.

|  | **125-pound person** | **155-pound person** | **185-pound person** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| **Gym Activities** |  |  |  |
| Weight lifting: general | 90 | 112 | 133 |
| Stretching, hatha yoga | 120 | 149 | 178 |
| Calisthenics: moderate | 135 | 167 | 200 |
| Stair step machine: general | 180 | 223 | 266 |
| Circuit training: general | 240 | 298 | 355 |
| Rowing, stationary: vigorous | 255 | 316 | 377 |
| Elliptical trainer: general | 270 | 335 | 400 |
| Aerobics, step: high-impact | 300 | 372 | 444 |
| Bicycling, stationary: vigorous | 315 | 391 | 466 |
| **Training and Sport Activities** |  |  |  |
| Bowling | 90 | 112 | 133 |
| Dancing: slow, waltz, foxtrot | 90 | 112 | 133 |
| Frisbee | 90 | 112 | 133 |
| Volleyball: noncompetitive, general play | 90 | 112 | 133 |
| Golf: using cart | 105 | 130 | 155 |
| Gymnastics: general | 120 | 149 | 178 |
| Horseback riding: general | 120 | 149 | 178 |
| Walking: 3.5 mph (17 min/mi) | 120 | 149 | 178 |
| Badminton: general | 135 | 167 | 200 |
| Skateboarding | 150 | 186 | 222 |
| Walking: 4.5 mph (13 min/mi) | 150 | 186 | 222 |
| Dancing: disco, ballroom, square | 165 | 205 | 244 |
| Swimming: general | 180 | 223 | 266 |
| Walking/jogging: (2–3.5 mph). | 180 | 223 | 266 |
| Rollerblade skating | 210 | 260 | 311 |
| Soccer: general | 210 | 260 | 311 |
| Tennis: general | 210 | 260 | 311 |
| Basketball: playing a game | 240 | 298 | 355 |
| Bicycling: 12–13.9 mph | 240 | 298 | 355 |
| Football: touch, flag, general | 240 | 298 | 355 |
| Running: 5 mph (12 min/mile) | 240 | 298 | 355 |
| Skiing: cross-country | 240 | 298 | 355 |
| Running: 5.2 mph (11.5 min/mile) | 270 | 335 | 400 |
| Running: cross-country | 270 | 335 | 400 |
| Jumping rope | 300 | 372 | 444 |
| Running: 6 mph (10 min/mile) | 300 | 372 | 444 |
| Swimming: laps, vigorous | 300 | 372 | 444 |
| Running: 6.7 mph (9 min/mile) | 330 | 409 | 488 |
| Swimming: crawl | 330 | 409 | 488 |
| Bicycling: 16–19 mph | 360 | 446 | 533 |
| Running: 7.5 mph (8 min/mile) | 375 | 465 | 555 |
| **Outdoor Activities** |  |  |  |
| Raking lawn | 120 | 149 | 178 |
| Gardening: general | 135 | 167 | 200 |
| Mowing lawn: push, power | 135 | 167 | 200 |
| Carrying and stacking wood | 150 | 186 | 222 |
| Digging, spading dirt | 150 | 186 | 222 |
| Laying sod/crushed rock | 150 | 186 | 222 |
| Mowing lawn: push, hand | 165 | 205 | 244 |
| Chopping and splitting wood | 180 | 223 | 266 |
| Shoveling snow by hand | 180 | 223 | 266 |
| **Home and Daily Life Activities** |  |  |  |
| Sleeping | 19 | 23 | 28 |
| Watching TV | 23 | 28 | 33 |
| Reading while sitting | 34 | 42 | 50 |
| Cooking | 75 | 93 | 111 |
| Child-care: bathing, feeding, etc. | 105 | 130 | 155 |
| Food shopping with cart | 105 | 130 | 155 |
| Heavy cleaning: washing car, windows | 135 | 167 | 200 |
| Playing with kids: vigorous effort | 150 | 186 | 222 |
| Moving: household furniture | 180 | 223 | 266 |
| Moving: carrying boxes | 210 | 260 | 311 |
| **Occupational Activities** |  |  |  |
| Computer work | 41 | 51 | 61 |
| Light office work | 45 | 56 | 67 |
| Sitting in meetings | 49 | 60 | 72 |
| Desk work | 53 | 65 | 78 |
| Sitting in class | 53 | 65 | 78 |
| Truck driving | 60 | 74 | 89 |
| Bartending/server | 75 | 93 | 111 |
| Operating heavy equipment | 75 | 93 | 111 |
| Being a police officer | 75 | 93 | 111 |
| Theater work | 90 | 112 | 133 |
| Welding | 90 | 112 | 133 |
| Carpentry work | 105 | 130 | 155 |
| Coaching sports | 120 | 149 | 178 |
| Construction, general | 165 | 205 | 244 |
| Firefighting | 360 | 446 | 533 |
| **Source:** *Harvard Heart Letter* (2004). “Calories burned in 30 minutes for people of three different weights.” [**http://www.health.harvard.edu/heart**](http://www.health.harvard.edu/heart). | | | |

## Benefits from Physical Activity

Regular physical activity is the closest thing we have to a fountain of youth. It becomes even more important as people age, promoting both physical and psychological well-being and possibly even helping to slow down or even reverse many of the effects of aging. Regular exercise can reduce the risk of premature disability and many chronic illnesses, including those related to stress. Many of the benefits of physical activity are optimized when people pursue *physical fitness*.

**For children, exercise means playing and being physically active. Kids exercise when they have gym class at school, during recess, at soccer or swim practice, while playing tag, or when riding bikes.**

Thinkstock

How physically fit are you? [**Physical fitness**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term259) has been defined as a set of attributes or characteristics that people have or achieve that relates to the ability to perform physical activity. The most important attribute is [**cardiorespiratory endurance**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term68), or *aerobic fitness*, which refers to the ability of the heart, blood vessels, and lungs to supply oxygen to working muscles during physical activity for prolonged periods of time. The amount of oxygen that your body uses is referred to as *oxygen consumption* or *VO2*, which stands for “volume of oxygen.” As your intensity of exercise increases, VO2 rises and eventually reaches its peak value, known as VO2max. VO2max, also known as *aerobic capacity*, is the measure of cardiorespiratory endurance. The other components of physical fitness include:

* Muscular strength—the amount of force that a muscle or group of muscles can exert against heavy resistance
* Muscular endurance—the ability of a muscle or group of muscles to repeat a movement many times or to hold a particular position for an extended period of time
* Flexibility—the degree to which an individual muscle will lengthen
* Body composition—the amount of fat in the body compared to the amount of *lean mass* (muscle and bones)

## physical fitness

A set of attributes relating to the ability to perform physical activity that include muscular strength, endurance, flexibility, and healthy body composition.

## cardiorespiratory endurance

The ability of the heart, blood vessels, and lungs to supply oxygen to working muscles during physical activity for prolonged periods of time.

Good physical fitness in both men and women delays mortality and may extend life by two years or more. Recent research has shown that a person’s degree of physical fitness is an excellent predictor of life expectancy and quality of life. Improving physical fitness may also help prevent age-associated diseases. This is true for healthy people, for people with chronic conditions such as cardiovascular disease (Carnethon and others, 2003), and for both women (Gulati and others, 2003) and men (Kurl and others, 2003). Improving one’s physical fitness can reduce the risk of death by 44 percent (Lee and others, 2013). In addition, improving physical fitness has a favorable influence on self-image, self-esteem, and depression, as well as on anxiety and panic syndromes (Kirkcaldy, Shephard, & Siefen, 2002). It has even been reported that, while antidepressant medication may produce a more rapid initial response, exercise is just as effective at reducing depression over a period several months (Harvard Health Publications, 2013).

Appropriately undertaken, physical exercise may be the best means available for delaying and preventing the consequences of aging. Evolutionary biologists define *aging* as an age-progressive decline in intrinsic physiological function, leading to an increase in age-specific mortality rate (Fabian & Flatt, 2011). Aging can be influenced for the better (delaying it) or worse (accelerating it) by lifestyle factors such as diet and physical activity. This is true regardless of the age, gender, health, or physical condition of the person who undertakes to improve physical fitness. A sedentary lifestyle accelerates aging and its consequences, including physical appearance and risk of disability and disease (Castillo-Garzon and others, 2006).

## Weight Control

Prevention of weight gain, as well as weight loss, particularly when combined with reduced calorie intake, are notable benefits of regular physical activity. Obesity has been recognized as one of the chief threats to overall health and well-being (see [**Chapter 8**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch08)). The majority of adults in the United States and Canada are obese or overweight, and excess weight is expected to soon overtake smoking as the leading cause of death in both countries (Mokdad and others, 2004). Sedentary lifestyles are partly to blame—only one in four people in the United States get the minimum recommended amount of weekly physical activity (Mendes, 2011). Even during their leisure time, many people choose not to engage in any physical activity at all (CDC, 2005).

Recently, Broom and colleagues (2009) compared the effects of aerobic and resistance exercise on feelings of hunger and the circulating levels of appetite-regulating hormones. In the study, a group of healthy men completed three trials in a counterbalanced design: 60 minutes of treadmill running at 70 percent maximal oxygen uptake (aerobic exercise), a 90-minute free-weight-lifting session that included 10 different exercises, and a resting control trial in which no exercise was performed. Blood was sampled before, during, and after the exercise sessions to compare levels of three appetite-regulating hormones [ghrelin, peptide tyrosine-tyrosine (PYY), and insulin]. Perceived hunger was assessed using a visual scale in which participants rated their hunger from zero (not hungry) to 15 (very hungry). The results showed that ghrelin (high levels of which stimulate hunger) was lower during both aerobic and resistance exercise than for the control. In contrast, PYY (high levels of which signal satiety) was significantly elevated after aerobic exercise compared to both resistance exercise and the resting control. These hormonal changes were accompanied by reduced feelings of hunger after both aerobic and resistance exercise compared to the control condition, with the response being slightly greater with aerobic exercise.

Although exercise is helpful in maintaining a healthy body weight, a persistent myth is that fat can be targeted for reduction from a specific area of the body (spot reduction). Advertisers exploit this common, yet mistaken, belief when hawking the latest gizmo or pill on late-night infomercials. Most experts do not believe it is possible to reduce fat in one area by exercising that body part alone. Instead, fat is lost from the entire body as a result of diet and regular physical activity.

How much physical activity is needed? The most recent recommendation is that healthy adults between the ages of 18 and 65 years need, at minimum, moderate aerobic physical activity for at least 30 minutes, five days each week, or vigorous aerobic physical activity for a minimum of 20 minutes three days each week (WHO, 2010b). Most important to maintaining vitality is aerobic exercise, in which the heart speeds up in order to pump larger amounts of blood, breathing is deeper and more frequent, and the cells of the body develop the ability to extract increasing amounts of oxygen from the blood, among other benefits (see [**Table 7.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T7-2)). In addition, weight-bearing aerobic exercises such as walking, jogging, and racquetball help preserve muscular strength and flexibility, promote healthy body composition, and maintain bone density.

## Table 7.2: Health Benefits of Aerobic Exercise

|  |
| --- |
| * Promotes the growth of new neurons in the brain (*neurogenesis*) * Decreases resting heart rate and blood pressure * Improves regulation of blood sugar * Increases maximum oxygen consumption (VO2max) * Increases strength and efficiency of the heart * Increases slow-wave (deep) sleep * Increases HDL (good) cholesterol and reduces LDL (bad) cholesterol * Decreases the risk of cardiovascular disease * Decreases obesity * Promotes relaxation * Decrease menstrual cycle length * Increases longevity * Decreases risk of some cancers * Improves immune system functioning * Improves mood |
| **Source:** Mayo Clinic (2011). “Aerobic exercise: Top 10 reasons to get physical.” [**http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/aerobic-exercise/EP00002**](http://www.mayoclinic.com/health/aerobic-exercise/EP00002). |

For substantial health benefits, including weight control, adults need to do any of the following:

* At least 2 hours and 30 minutes each week of moderate-intensity aerobic activity. A person doing moderate-intensity aerobic activity can talk, but not sing, during the activity.OR
* At least 1 hour and 15 minutes each week of vigorous-intensity aerobic activity. A person doing vigorous-intensity aerobic activity cannot say more than a few words without pausing for breath. OR
* A mix of moderate- and vigorous-intensity aerobic activity. Aerobic activity should be performed for at least 10 minutes at a time, preferably, spread throughout the week.

For most people, light daily activities such as shopping, cooking, or doing the laundry do not count toward the guidelines. Examples of moderate-intensity exercise are brisk walking, water aerobics, ballroom dancing, and playing tennis. Examples of vigorous-intensity exercise are race walking, jogging, running, swimming laps, jumping rope, and bicycling 10 miles per hour or faster.

## Protection against Chronic Illness

Physical exercise has been demonstrated to protect against a number of chronic conditions, including [**osteoporosis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term245), a disorder characterized by declining bone density due to calcium loss. This is especially true for those who were active during their youth, when bone minerals were accruing (Hind & Burrows, 2007). Although osteoporosis is most common in postmenopausal women, it also occurs in men, as does the protective effect of exercise. Roughly one woman in four over age 60 has osteoporosis, with white and Asian women being at higher risk than African-American women. Osteoporosis results in more than 1 million bone fractures a year in the United States alone, the most debilitating of which are hip fractures.

## osteoporosis

A disease of the bones involving a loss of bone mineral density that leads to an increased risk of fracture.

In addition to increasing physical strength and maintaining bone density, regular exercise reduces an older person’s risk for several of the most common chronic illnesses of adulthood: cardiovascular disease, certain cancers, diabetes, and metabolic syndrome. Exercise helps fight heart disease by strengthening the heart, increasing blood flow, keeping blood vessels open, and lowering both blood pressure and the blood pressure reaction to stress (Ford, 2002). Even moderate exercise, such as gardening and walking, can result in significant increases in HDL—the so-called “good cholesterol”—and decreased total serum cholesterol. Regular exercise is linked to lower triglycerides, which have been implicated in the formation of atherosclerotic plaques, as well as lower levels of LDL, or “bad” cholesterol, and higher levels of HDL (Szapary, Bloedon, & Foster, 2003). Due to these and other benefits, people who exercise suffer half as many heart attacks as do others who are inactive (Visich & Fletcher, 2009).

Several extensive review studies have reported that physical activity also offers protection against cancers of the colon and rectum, breast, endometrium, prostate, and lung (Miles, 2008; Thune & Furberg, 2001). Regular physical activity may reduce cancer risk by influencing proinflammatory cytokines (Stewart and others, 2007), which, in turn, have beneficial effects on the development and growth of tumor cells (Rogers and others, 2008). In addition, physical activity promotes healthy immune functioning by delaying some age-related declines in white blood cells. For example, endurance-trained athletes preserve telomere length in their white blood cells—which otherwise systematically decrease in aging, sedentary adults (LaRocca, Seals, & Pierce, 2010).

Diet and exercise are especially important for people living with diabetes mellitus, as they are the best nonpharmacological means by which patients may improve and manage their blood glucose levels significantly. Sedentary behavior, measured objectively with accelerometers and heart rate monitors, or TV viewing time measured by self-report, has been associated significantly with obesity, waist circumference (Healy and others, 2008), and metabolic syndrome (Thorp and others, 2010). Exercise increases insulin sensitivity (over both the short and long term), lowers blood sugar levels, reduces body fat, and improves cardiovascular function (Zisser and others, 2012).

[**Metabolic syndrome (MetS)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term216) is a cluster of conditions—increased blood pressure, a high blood-sugar level, excess body fat around the waist (abdominal obesity), low HDL cholesterol level, high triglyceride level (a type of fat found in the blood)—that occur together, increasing your risk of heart disease, stroke, and diabetes. The risk of having metabolic syndrome is closely linked to obesity, lack of physical activity, and insulin resistance, a condition in which the body can’t use insulin properly. Insulin is a hormone that helps move blood sugar into cells where it’s used for energy. Metabolic syndrome is more common in African-American women and Mexican-American women than in men of the same racial/ethnic groups. The condition affects white women and men about equally. Adults that report engaging in regular physical exercise, especially resistance exercise such as lifting weights, push-ups, and sit-ups, have significantly lower prevalence estimates of MetS (Churilla and others, 2012). Diabetes and metabolic syndrome will be discussed more fully in [**Chapter 8**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch08).

## metabolic syndrome (MetS)

A cluster of conditions that include increased blood pressure, high blood sugar level, abdominal obesity, low HDL (“good”) cholesterol level, and high triglyceride level that occur together and increase a person’s risk of heart disease, stroke, and diabetes.

## Psychological Well-Being

The benefits from exercise extend to our psychological well-being. Regular exercise is associated with improved mood and elevated well-being just after a workout (Motl and others, 2005). Studies show that over time, exercise may serve as an effective buffer against anxiety and stress (Conn, 2010; Windle and others, 2010), boost self-esteem and self-efficacy (McAuley and others, 2003), help people feel more vigor and less fatigue (Mead and others, 2010), and offer protection against depression (Daley, 2008) and anxiety (Wipfli, Rethorst, & Landers, 2008). In a massive, 21-country survey of university students, physical exercise was a “strong” and consistent predictor of life satisfaction (Grant, Wardle, & Steptoe, 2009).

The psychological benefits of physical activity are particularly pronounced among older adults who perceive high levels of stress. The four-year Montreal Aging and Health Study of adults over age 60 found that among participants with high baseline levels of perceived stress, those who frequently engaged in physical activities experienced a reduction of perceived stress over two years and fewer increases in physical health symptoms over four years (Rueggeberg, Wrosch, & Miller, 2012).

**Neuroimaging data vividly demonstrate one benefit of aerobic exercise—increased activity in the prefrontal cortex, the part of the brain that plays a key role in planning and emotional regulation.**

Figure 2 from Davis, Catherine L.; Tomporowski, Phillip D.; McDowell, Jennifer E.; Austin, Benjamin P.; Miller, Patricia H.; Yanasak, Nathan E.; Allison, Jerry D.; Naglieri, Jack A. Health Psychology, Vol. 30(1), Jan. 2011, 91–98. doi: 10.1037/a0021766. Copyright © 2011 by the American Psychological Association. Reproduced with permission.

Regular exercise also predicts better cognitive functioning and reduced risk of dementia and Alzheimer’s disease (Kramer & Erickson, 2007). These benefits can be observed in children as young as 7 years of age. In one study, 171 overweight children between 7 and 11 years of age were randomly assigned to three months of low-dose (20 minutes/day) or high-dose (40 minutes/day) aerobic exercise, or a no-exercise control group. Each day, the participants were transported to an after-school exercise program that included running games, jumping rope, and playing modified basketball and soccer. Neuroimaging data revealed that aerobic exercise was associated with increased prefrontal cortex activity. Recall from [**Chapter 2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch02) that the prefrontal cortex plays a key role in planning, emotional regulation, and other so-called executive cognitive functions.

Animal studies show that aerobic exercise also increases growth factors in the brain that lead to increased capillary blood supply to the cortex and growth of new neurons and synapses (neurogenesis), resulting in better learning and performance (Dishman and others, 2006; Reynolds, 2009).

## Is It Ever Too Late to Begin Exercising?

The answer to the question “Is it ever too late to start exercising?” is no. In one study, frail nursing home residents aged 72 to 98 participated in a 10-week program of muscle-strengthening resistance training three times a week (Raloff, 1996). After the 10 weeks, those in the exercise group more than doubled their muscular strength and increased their stair-climbing power by 28 percent. In another study, Maria Fiatarone and her colleagues (1993) randomly assigned 100 participants, who averaged 87 years of age, to one of four groups. Participants in the first group engaged in regular resistance-training exercises. Participants in the second group took a daily multivitamin supplement. Participants in the third group took the supplement and participated in the resistance training. Participants in the fourth group were permitted to engage in three physical activities of their choice (including aerobic exercise) but could not engage in resistance training. Over the course of the study, muscle strength more than doubled in the resistance groups, with an average increase of 113 percent, compared to a minuscule 3 percent increase in subjects in the second group. Interestingly, the group that exercised and took the supplement showed no greater improvement than the groups that exercised but did not take supplements.

Further evidence that it is never too late to start exercising comes from studies demonstrating that exercise even late in life may still help prevent or reduce the rate of loss in bone density. As compared to a control group of sedentary women, 50- to 70-year-old women who had been sedentary but were assigned to an exercise group showed significantly reduced loss in bone mineral content (Nelson and others, 1994). In an added benefit, women in the exercise group increased their muscle mass and strength. Together, these benefits are associated with lower morbidity and mortality among physically active older adults (Everett, Kinser, & Ramsey, 2007).

Although it’s never too late to begin exercising, during late adulthood, the intensity of exercise must be adjusted to reflect declines in cardiovascular and respiratory functioning. For some adults, this means that walking replaces jogging; for others, such as former world-class marathoner Bill Rodgers, now in his sixties, this means training at a 6-minute per mile pace rather than a 5-minute pace.

## Why Don’t More People Exercise?

Despite the well-documented physical and psychological benefits of lifelong exercise, the percentage of people who exercise regularly declines with age and varies from one socioeconomic and ethnic group to another (Cerin and others, 2008; Phillips, Kiernan, & King, 2001). Although some children get regular exercise through school programs, the level of physical activity has declined substantially by adolescence, especially among girls (Davison, Schmalz, & Downs, 2010) and among boys not involved in sports programs (Crosnoe, 2002).

An estimated 32 percent of men and 42 percent of women in the United States describe themselves as sedentary (U.S. Census Bureau, 2009a). Few people manage to adopt and maintain an exercise habit successfully. Minority group members consistently seem to have lower physical activity levels than majority group members, with minority women being among the least active subgroups in the United States (Cassetta and others, 2007). Why would this be? People choose not to exercise for many reasons, such as lack of time, money, or energy (Ruby and others, 2011). In several large surveys, physical activity was found to be lowest among people with low incomes and lower levels of education.

Some older adults are reluctant—even fearful—of exercising too much due to myths associated with exercise. These myths include the idea that exercise can accelerate the loss of bone density, lead to arthritis, and even increase the risk of dying from a heart attack. In fact, the body is far more likely to rust out than it is to wear out. As the saying goes, “Use it or lose it!”

Exercising behavior also is related to an individual’s beliefs regarding its health benefits, confidence in his or her ability to perform certain physical skills correctly (known as *exercise self-efficacy*), and self-motivation. Believing that exercise will help one to live a longer, healthier life is a strong stimulus for initiating exercise. Believing that exercise is difficult, useless, or unsafe, or that declines in health are inevitable and irreversible with increased age, on the other hand, may well have the opposite effect.

There are several reasons that older adults might lack exercise self-efficacy. For one, they typically have less experience with exercise and have fewer exercising role models than younger people. Older people are also faced with ageist stereotypes about what constitutes appropriate behavior; vigorous exercise, especially for women, is contrary to stereotypes of old age. Finally, many older adults view old age as a time of rest and relaxation and are less likely to initiate and maintain regular exercise.

To explore further why some adults choose to exercise while others do not, Sara Wilcox and Martha Storandt of Washington University (1996) surveyed a random sample of 121 women aged 20–85, focusing on three psychological variables: exercise self-efficacy, self-motivation, and attitudes toward exercise. The sample consisted of two groups: exercisers and nonexercisers.

The findings revealed that desire and willingness to exercise had less to do with age than with attitudes about exercise; the belief that exercise would be enjoyable and beneficial decreased with age, but only among nonexercisers. Those who continued to exercise throughout adulthood were significantly more self-motivated, had greater exercise self-efficacy, and had more positive attitudes toward exercise than did nonexercisers. These results suggest that education stressing the benefits and the required frequency, duration, and intensity of exercise needed to reach these benefits must be a key component in exercise interventions with older adults. In addition, *ageist* stereotypes of later adulthood as a time of inevitable decline need to be challenged. Older adults will be less likely to begin an exercise regimen if they believe they are unable to do even basic exercises, so intervention efforts should include some basic instruction. Finally, age-appropriate programs, with exercises such as tai chi, have been shown to reduce older adults’ fears of hazards, especially of falling (Zijlstra and others, 2007).

To the list of reasons why people don’t exercise, you can add that people fail to appreciate how much they will enjoy it. I’m reminded of chatting with cardiologist George Sheehan many years ago before the start of the Boston Marathon. Sheehan, himself a dedicated runner, said “People won’t do something very long just because it’s good for them. They’ve got to find some activity that, for them, is play.” This bias sometimes stems from *forecasting myopia*, in which people contemplating an exercise routine place disproportionate emphasis on the beginning of a workout, which may be unpleasant. (Getting out the door with stiff legs on a cold, winter morning for my daily run comes to mind.)

Another reason that people don’t exercise is that environmental barriers make doing so more difficult. The neighborhood environment has emerged as an important area of focus in predicting individual activity levels. Consider, for example, *neighborhood walkability*. A walkable neighborhood allows travel from home to key destinations on foot. Adults who live in low-walkable neighborhoods are less physically active, and more likely to be overweight and obese, and to engage in more obesity-related sedentary behaviors than their peers living in more walkable communities (King and others, 2010; Kozo and others, 2012).

When people feel their neighborhood is safe, when they are not socially isolated, and when they know about exercise facilities that are available to them, they are more likely to be physically active (Hawkley, Thisted, & Cacioppo, 2009). The absence of convenient and easily accessible exercise settings leads to lower rates of participation (Humpel and others, 2004). For example, having few or distant safe playgrounds, traffic-free bike lanes, well-lit jogging paths, and other community resources makes it difficult for urban children and working adults who must fit exercise in around busy schedules. Improving these options increases rates of exercise, and when communities have facilities such as these available, the prevalence of overweight and obesity in the neighborhood is reduced (Dowda and others, 2009).

**When people feel their neighborhood affords safe opportunities to exercise, such as by having traffic-free bike lanes or well-lit jogging paths, participation levels increase.**

© ZUMA Press, Inc./Alamy

Lack of resources for exercising is a particular barrier for people low in socioeconomic (SES) status (Feldman & Steptoe, 2004). Recent studies have strongly suggested that neighborhood SES influences health, in part because of differences in physical activity (Boone-Heinonen and others, 2011). Neighborhood health disparities are associated with neighborhood SES, which determines the availability of resources for activity such as parks, walking/bike paths, and sports facilities, which in turn are linked to differences in physical activity (Schuz and others, 2012).

Another factor in sedentary lifestyles is the decline in physical education classes in schools due to mounting economic pressure. This means that, for many children, a lifelong habit of healthy physical activity and exercise is hard to establish. The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services recommends that young people between the ages of 6 and 17 participate in at least 60 minutes of physical activity daily. Yet in 2011, only 29 percent of high school students surveyed had participated in at least 60 minutes per day of physical activity on all seven days before the survey, and only 31 percent attended physical education class daily. The percentage of high school students who attended physical education classes daily decreased from 42 percent in 1991 to 25 percent in 1995 and remained stable at that level until 2011 (31 percent). In addition, 14 percent of high school students had not participated in 60 or more minutes of any kind of physical activity on *any* day during the seven days before the survey. To make matters even worse, participation in physical activity declines as young people age.

A 2011 meta-analysis of 50 studies of physical activity and academic performance among schoolchildren conducted by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) reached the following conclusions:

* Regular physical activity in childhood and adolescence improves strength and endurance, helps build healthy bones and muscles, helps control weight, reduces anxiety and stress, increases self-esteem, and may improve blood pressure and cholesterol levels.
* Physical activity can help improve academic achievement (including grades and standardized test scores).
* Physical activity can have an impact on cognitive skills, attitudes, and academic behavior, all of which are important components of improved academic performance. These include enhanced concentration and attention, as well as improved classroom behavior.
* Increasing or maintaining time dedicated to physical education may help, and does not appear to affect adversely, academic performance.

Another way to look at the issue of why more people don’t exercise is to ask who *is* most likely to exercise. Research suggests that people are most likely to stick with exercise programs if they do the following (Floyd & Moyer, 2010):

* Enjoy exercise
* Have formed already the habit of exercising regularly
* Grew up in families that exercised
* Have social support for exercising from relatives, friends, and coworkers
* Have a favorable attitude and a strong sense of self-efficacy toward exercising
* Perceive themselves as being somewhat athletic
* Believe that people should take responsibility for their health

## Exercise Interventions

Health behavior theories identify factors that predict physical activity in the individual. Among these are social cognitive factors, such as attitudes and intentions toward exercise; socioeconomic factors, such as education, which determine the ability to find and understand health-related information; and the financial resources needed to facilitate physical activity. A number of studies have shown that interventions aimed at the individual work best when they are matched to the stage of readiness of the participants (Marshall and others, 2003; Blissmer & McAuley, 2002).

In one recent study of 2790 adults participating in seven, hour-long fitness classes, researchers found that participants significantly underestimated how much they would enjoy exercising. Recall that the *theory of planned behavior* maintains that attitudes toward a given behavior, along with subjective social norms, and perceived behavioral control, shape our behavioral intentions, which in turn guide our behavior. The researchers found that a simple intervention, in which participants were prompted to consider all phases of the workout before starting, increased their expected enjoyment of the exercise routine and boosted their intention to exercise in the future (Ruby and others, 2011).

Also at the level of the individual, interventions that help people develop positive, but realistic, expectations for a new exercise program (Dunton and Vaughan, 2008) and those that focus on increasing participants’ motivation, intentions, and perceptions of behavioral control and exercise self-efficacy can be successful in changing behavior (Conroy and others, 2010). Interventions that combine this emphasis on changing social cognitions with behavioral techniques such as teaching self-monitoring skills have been particularly successful (Michie and others, 2009; van Stralen and others, 2009).

Many people find it is easier to begin an exercise program than it is to keep it going as part of a permanent lifestyle change. A number of successful interventions incorporate relapse prevention techniques to promote long-term adherence to exercise programs. These include “inoculating” participants against the temptation to skip exercise by increasing their awareness of obstacles such as work and family obligations, stress, and fatigue. For some, simple reminders sent via text messages, phone, or e-mail can help improve adherence (Scholz, Keller, & Perren, 2009; Blanchard and others, 2007).

As we have seen, facilitating and impeding factors for physical activity also can be found in the environment. Neighborhood SES can determine the availability of exercise resources, and urban planning and local policies can facilitate or impede the ability to engage in physical activity (Schuz, Keller, & Perren, 2012).

The most effective interventions designed to promote increased physical activity in a community integrate individual and environmental factors, including demographic, biological, psychological, social/cultural, and public policy (Owen and others, 2011). For instance, one recent study demonstrated that neighborhood walkability and the presence of walking facilities interacted with individual cognitions such as exercise self-efficacy and perceived social support in predicting physical activity (Carlson and others, 2012). Another study found that behavioral intentions moderated the effect of the availability of exercise facilities on activity; available exercise resources actually had a negative effect on the activity level of individuals with low intentions (Rhodes & Plotnikoff, 2006).

## Sleep

If exercise is the “fountain of youth,” healthy sleep habits may be the “elixir of health” (Grayling, 2009). Unfortunately, about one in five adults fails to get enough sleep and experience *sleep deprivation* (AASM, 2010). For some 70 million Americans, a sleep disorder such as insomnia, narcolepsy, sleepwalking, or sleep apnea is the cause. For others, stress or a demanding work or study schedule contributes to their poor sleep habits. Adolescents, who need 8.5 to 9.5 hours of sleep each night, now average less than 7 hours—a full 2 hours less than that averaged by their grandparents as teenagers. Nearly a third of high school students responding to a recent survey admitted they routinely fall asleep in class (Sleep Foundation, 2010).

**One in five adults fails to get enough sleep. Changing work schedules, the Internet, and other diversions mean that people today sleep less than their counterparts did a century ago.**

HandmadePictures/Shutterstock

Our bodies are approximately synchronized with the 24-hour cycle of night and day by an internal biological clock called the [**circadian rhythm**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term82). The rhythm is clearly linked to the light–dark cycle because animals, including humans, kept in total darkness for extended periods eventually develop a more free-running rhythm. Daylight and other environmental cues that reset our circadian rhythm when, for instance, we travel across several time zones, are called *Zeitgebers*(“timekeepers”). As morning approaches, our body temperature begins to increase, peaking during the day, and then starting to decrease in the evening.

## circadian rhythm

A biological clock that operates on a 24-hour cycle.

Our thinking and memory are sharpest when we are at our peak in the daily circadian cycle. Try working out a difficult math problem in the middle of the night, and you’ll understand this immediately. This is why many people who travel extensively have learned to arrive at their destination a day or two before important meetings or other events where their thinking needs to be sharp. Doing so gives them a chance to use local *Zeitgebers* to reset their internal biological clocks. Bright light, which activates light-sensitive proteins in the retinas of our eyes, is the most important factor in setting our 24-hour biological clock. It signals the brain’s *suprachiasmatic nucleus* to decrease its production of the sleep-inducing hormone *melatonin*.

Age often alters our circadian rhythm. During adolescence, we are likely to be “night owls,” energized during the evening, with cognitive performance improving as the day wears on. After about age 20 (slightly earlier for women), we begin to shift from being owls to being morning-loving “larks,” and feel our energy and performance declining through the day (Roenneberg and others, 2004). Women become more lark-like as they have children (Leonard & Randler, 2009). There is some evidence that people who are at their best in the morning tend to do better in school and to be less vulnerable to depression (Randler & Frech, 2009).

## Sleep Stages

Once asleep, the brain operates according to a 90-minute biological rhythm, cycling through four distinct sleep stages (see [**Figure 7.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F7-1)). There are two broad types of sleep: non–rapid eye movement (NREM) and [**rapid eye movement (REM)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term292), distinguished by different brain waves, changes in breathing and muscle tension, and a few other bodily changes.

## REM sleep

Rapid eye movement sleep; a sleep stage during which vivid dreams occur.

## Figure 7.1

**The small, fast beta waves of an alert state and the larger alpha waves of a relaxed state differ form the slower, large delta ways of NREM-3 sleep.**

**Source:** Davis, C.L., Tomporowski, P.D., McDowell, J.E., Austin, B.P., Miller, P.H., Yanasak, N.E., Allison, J.D., & Naglieri, J.A. (2011). Exercise improves executive function and achievement and alters brain activation in overweight children: A randomized, controlled trial. *Health Psychology, 30(1*), 91–98.

IStockphoto

When you are awake and alert, the brain generates fast, low-amplitude beta waves. As you begin to relax, and your eyes close, your brain begins to generate the slower *alpha waves* of the awake but relaxed state. As you fall asleep, your breathing slows, and your brain generates the irregular waves of non-REM stage 1 sleep (Silber and others, 2008). This is the briefest and lightest stage of sleep, and loud sounds and other stimuli can awaken you easily.

As you relax more deeply, about 20 minutes of NREM-2 occurs, distinguished by periodic bursts of rapid brain waves called *sleep spindles*, which alternate with large K-complex waves. During this stage, breathing and heart rate even out and body temperature drops. You still can be awakened without much difficulty but are clearly asleep. About half of each night’s sleep is spent in NREM-2.

Next, you transition to the deep, *slow-wave sleep* of NREM-3, in which your brain emits large (high-amplitude) and very slow (low-frequency) delta waves. During this stage of sleep, you will be much harder to awaken. This stage of deep sleep, marked by delta waves, is most important for restoring energy levels, strengthening the immune system, and stimulating the release of growth hormone.

About one hour after falling asleep, you shift from NREM-3 back to NREM-2, and then enter REM. For 10 minutes or so, your eyes dart back and forth, heart rate and breathing become more irregular, and vivid dreams often occur. REM is also marked by faster beta brain waves, and is believed to be important for consolidating memory and other cognitive functions. During REM, the brain’s motor cortex is also active, but the brainstem blocks its messages, leaving the muscles relaxed.

The sleep cycle repeats itself about every 90 minutes, but as the night wears on, NREM-3 sleep stages grow shorter and REM and NREM-2 get longer. By the time we awaken, we have spent about 100 minutes (25 percent of seep) in REM.

## Sleep Patterns

Newborns sleep 15 to 17 hours a day, in segments lasting one to three hours, because the brain areas that regulate sleep are immature. As their brains continue to develop, hours of sleep decrease rapidly, down to a little over 14 hours for the first two months, 13¼ hours for the next three months, and 12¾ hours for the sixth through seventeenth months. Full-term newborns sleep more than low-birth-weight babies, who are hungry every two hours. As every parent learns, the environment has a direct effect on infant sleep behaviors: If parents respond to early morning cries with food and stimulating play, babies wake up early each morning (Sadeh and others, 2009).

Over the first few months, the amount of time spent in the various stages of sleep changes. About 50 percent of the sleep of full-term newborns is REM sleep, with flickering eyes, rapid brain waves, and dreaming. REM sleep declines over the first few weeks, as does “transitional sleep,” the dozing,half-awake NREM-1 stage. At three or four months, NREM-3 (slow-wave sleep) increases, as does time spent alert and wide awake.

Not everyone needs 8 hours of sleep. Newborns and infants sleep nearly two-thirds of the day, and some adults seem to thrive on fewer than 6 hours per night while others regularly get 9 hours or more. On average, adults in North America sleep 6.8 hours a night on weekdays and 7.4 hours a night on weekends (National Sleep Foundation, 2013).

Although genes play an important role in determining our individual sleep patterns (Hor & Tafti, 2009), light-bulbs, work schedules, the Internet, and other diversions mean that people today sleep less than their counterparts did 100 years ago. This phenomenon has been called *social jet lag*, underscoring the fact that it occurs when our body’s internal biological clock is out of sync with our social clock, which is set by the demands and distractions of modern life. In one study of 65,000 European adults, 69 percent of participants reported suffering from at least one hour of social jet lag each week, and a third regularly suffered at least two hours (Roenneberg and others, 2012).

**Sleep patterns change as we grow older. Newborns and infants sleep nearly two-thirds of the day, while some adults seem to thrive on fewer than 6 hours per night.**

Fuse/Thinkstock

Sleep researchers also have found that insufficient sleep is related to socioeconomic status, race and ethnicity, workplace, neighborhood, and other social factors. A survey of 9714 adults reported a significant *sleep disparity* among participants (Patel and others, 2010). Overall, minority respondents reported poorer sleep quality than majority group respondents. However, among those with the lowest income levels, majority respondents reported the most sleep problems.

Another study of 500 healthy U.S. adults reported that African-Americans slept an average of only 6.8 hours per night, compared with 7.4 hours, on average, for European-Americans. Asian- and Hispanic-Americans slept an average of 6.9 hours per night (Carnethon and others, 2012) The differences in average sleep time persisted even after the researchers adjusted for weight, high blood pressure, diabetes, and other factors known to interfere with sleep. The authors suggest that social environmental factors such as pollution, noise levels, and crime rates may account for these group differences.

Other researchers have directly investigated the associations among sleep quality, health, and neighborhood conditions. Participants who reported living in neighborhoods with more physical and social disorder also reported having poorer sleep quality, more symptoms of depression, and poorer perceived health (Patel and others, 2010).

People who are coping with stressful events at work or in the home also report poorer sleep (Burgard & Ailshire, 2009), especially when stressors are appraised as uncontrollable (Morin, Rodrigue, & Ivers, 2003). One study of health care workers found that those who had less supportive managers got 29 minutes less sleep daily and were twice as likely as those with moresupportive bosses to have several risk factors for cardiovascular disease (Berkman and others, 2010). People who react to stressful events by focusing on them, or ruminating (see [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05)), and people who have high levels of hostility or arousal (Fernandez-Mendoza and others, 2010), are more prone to *insomnia* than are people who use strategies to blunt the impact of stressors (Zoccola & others, 2009). Interestingly, a growing body of evidence suggests that *long sleepers*, people who habitually sleep *more* than seven hours night after night, other than children and adolescents, are also at risk for health problems such as obesity, diabetes, high blood pressure, and cardiovascular disease (Buxton & Marcelli, 2010).

Pain also can disrupt sleep. Parents of children with chronic arthritis pain rate their children as having significantly more sleep anxiety, night awakenings, and other sleep disturbances (Bromberg, Gil, & Schanberg, 2012). In turn, poor sleep can increase the intensity of pain experienced the next day in adolescents and adults with chronic pain (Lewandowski and others, 2010). Other studies have shown that sleep loss leads to exaggerated pain perception, perhaps by increasing blood levels of *interleukin-6*, a signaling cytokine that contributes to inflammation and pain sensitivity (Haack & Mullington, 2007).

After a few nights of sleep loss, people have accumulated a *sleep debt* that cannot be repaid by one long sleep (Dement, 1999). College students are among those most likely to be sleep deprived—69 percent in one national survey (AP, 2009). (See [**Your Health Assets: How Good Is Your Sleep?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B7-15) to determine whether the amount and quality of the sleep that you are getting is adequate.) About one-third of adults experience sleep problems occasionally, and 1 in 10 adults (1 in 4 older adults) complain of [**insomnia**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term192)—a persistent problem in falling or staying asleep (Irwin, Cole, & Nicassio, 2006).

## insomnia

A persistent problem in falling or staying asleep.

Although insomnia can be a serious condition, many people make more of this difficulty than they should. From middle age on, waking occasionally during the night is the norm and does not necessarily signal a problem that needs to be treated with sleeping pills (Vitiello, 2009). Ironically, the use of sleeping pills, alcohol, and other “quick fixes” often makes the situation worse by suppressing REM sleep and leading to *tolerance*, in which increased doses are needed to produce any effect.

Still, poor sleep is enough of a problem that *Healthy People 2020* established the national goal of increasing the proportion of people who get sufficient sleep. Poor sleep takes a toll on both physical and psychological well-being. Although early research focused on the devastating effects of total sleep deprivation, far more common is what researchers today call *partial sleep loss, sleep restriction*, or *short sleep*. Whatever it’s called, it refers to routinely cutting one’s sleep short by just an hour or two each night (Carpenter, 2013).

Consider some of the findings from research studies on chronic sleep loss:

* Chronic sleep debt promotes increased body weight, increased body mass index (BMI), and obesity. One recent study reported that healthy men and women who were restricted to just 4 hours of sleep per night over six nights consumed more calories, particularly from fat, than their well-rested counterparts in a control group. Another study found that adults who were allowed to sleep only 5.5 hours per night for two weeks ate more snacks than control participants. Sleep complaints such as difficulty falling asleep, difficulty staying asleep, and daytime sleepiness have been linked to increased total calorie intake.

## *Your Health Assets*: How Good Is Your Sleep?

Cornell University sleep researcher James Mass has reported that 65 percent of people are sleep deprived. To find out if you are in that group, answer the following true-false questions. If you answered “true” to three or more items, you probably are not getting enough sleep.

Please indicate true or false for the following statements:

* + 1. I need an alarm clock in order to wake up at the appropriate time.
  + 2. It’s a struggle for me to get out of bed in the morning.
  + 3. Weekday mornings, I hit the snooze button several times to get more sleep.
  + 4. I feel tired, irritable, and stressed out during the week.
  + 5. I have trouble concentrating and remembering.
  + 6. I feel slow when doing critical thinking, problem solving, and being creative.
  + 7. I often fall asleep watching TV.
  + 8. I often fall asleep in boring meetings or lectures or in warm rooms.
  + 9. I often fall asleep after heavy meals or after a low dose of alcohol.
  + 10. I often fall asleep while relaxing after dinner.
  + 11. I often fall asleep within five minutes of getting into bed.
  + 12. I often feel drowsy while driving.
  + 13. I often sleep extra hours on weekend mornings.
  + 14. I often need a nap to get through the day.
  + 15. I have dark circles around my eyes.

Source: Quiz reprinted with permission from James B. Maas, “Sleep to Win!” (Bloomington, IN: AuthorHouse, 2013).

* Children and adults who sleep less have a higher percentage of body fat than those who sleep more. One study reported that as average nightly sleep duration decreased from 8 hours to 5 hours, BMI increased more than 3 percent (from 31.3 to 32.4) (Taheri and others, 2004).
* Poor sleep stimulates an increase in the hunger-triggering hormone *ghrelin* and a decrease in the appetite-suppressing hormone *leptin*. Sleep loss also elevates levels of the stress hormone cortisol, which promotes the storage of calories into body fat (Chen, Beydoun, & Wang, 2008). This effect may help explain why chronically sleep-deprived college students often gain weight.
* Sleep deprivation suppresses immune functioning. Immunological signaling molecules such as tumor necrosis factor, interleukin-1, and interleukin-6 play an important role in sleep regulation. Elevated levels of these cytokines, which can occur with poor sleep, also are associated with diabetes, cardiovascular disease, inflammation, pain sensitivity, and a number of chronic illnesses (Motivala & Irwin, 2007).
* Sleep loss also promotes insulin resistance—a key factor in the development of diabetes. Fat cells in people who experience sleep restriction have a 30 percent reduction in their ability to respond to insulin. Fortunately, this biochemical process may be reversible if sleep loss is not chronic. The same study found that when teens who normally got only six hours of sleep per night were allowed just one extra hour of sleep, insulin resistance improved by nearly 10 percent (Matthews and others, 2012).
* The most recent studies have focused on the role of sleep in promoting *cardiometabolic disease*—a complex of chronic conditions that include obesity, diabetes, and cardiovascular disease. One researcher concluded that sleep restriction leads to “substantial and clinically significant changes in appetite regulation, hunger, food intake, glucose metabolism and blood pressure control” (Carpenter, 2013).
* Sleep loss is linked to chronic inflammation (Motivala & Irwin, 2007), and adversely affects our body’s metabolic, neural, and endocrine functioning in ways that mimic accelerated aging (Pawlyck and others, 2007). Older adults who are *not* sleep deprived actually may live longer than people who have trouble falling or staying asleep (Dew and others, 2003).
* Research studies suggest that the brain uses sleep to repair damage, replenish energy stores, and promote *neurogenesis*, or the formation of new nerve cells (Winerman, 2006). Other effects of poor sleep include impaired concentration, memory, and creativity, as well as increased reaction time, errors, and accidents (Lim & Dinges, 2010; Stickgold, 2009). Driver fatigue contributes to an estimated 20 percent of traffic accidents in the United States (Brody, 2002a).

Experts offer the following tips for improving sleep:

* Avoid all forms of caffeine close to bedtime. (This includes coffee, tea, soft drinks, chocolate, and nicotine.)
* Avoid alcohol, which can lead to disrupted sleep.
* Exercise regularly, but complete your workout at least three hours before bedtime.
* Establish a consistent schedule and relaxing bedtime routine (e.g., taking a bath or relaxing with a good book).
* Create a sleep-conducive environment that is dark, quiet, and preferably cool and comfortable.
* Hide the clock face and reassure yourself that occasional, temporary sleep loss causes no great harm.

If you are having sleep problems or regular daytime sleepiness, consider keeping a sleep diary such as the one published by the National Sleep Foundation. In it, record your sleep patterns and the amount of sleep that you get. The diary will help you examine some of your health and sleep habits so that you and your doctor can pinpoint any causes of poor sleep (Sleep Foundation, 2010).

## Injury Control

One of the many potential consequences of sleep deprivation is an increased risk of human error-related accidents. Sleep deprivation has been shown to produce cognitive, perceptual, and motor impairments equivalent to those caused by alcohol consumption at or above the legal limit. Motor vehicle accidents related to fatigue, drowsy driving, and even falling asleep at the wheel are far too common, and they have a fatality rate and injury severity level similar to alcohol-related crashes (Durmer & Dinges, 2005).

One of health psychology’s most important goals is to forestall the development of problems through primary prevention—a much more effective way of improving health than treating disease and disability that has already developed. In 2010, 180,811 Americans died from injuries, most often due to motor-vehicles crashes, poisoning, firearms, and falling (CDC, 2012). Of these fatalities, 120,859 were classified as [**unintentional injuries**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term351), or accidents, because the injured person didn’t intend for it to happen. Most of the remaining deaths were [**intentional injuries**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term195), meaning that the person who caused the injury meant for it to happen. These deaths included suicides, homicides, and fatalities that occurred as part of war or another “legal intervention.” In addition to these fatalities, nearly 3 million Americans were hospitalized for nonfatal injuries, and just fewer than 30 million were treated in hospital emergency departments (CDC, 2012). One of the major goals of *Healthy People 2020* is to reduce the overall rate of unintentional injuries to the target of no more than 36 deaths per 100,000, and to reduce motor-vehicle-crash–related deaths to no more than 12.4 per 100,000 Americans.

## unintentional injury

Harm that is accidental, not meant to occur.

## intentional injury

Harm that results from behaviors designed to hurt oneself or others.

Although overall injuries are the fifth leading cause of death (after heart disease, cancer, stroke, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease), the risk of injury, as well as the likelihood of dying from an injury varies considerably across the life span (see [**Figure 7.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F7-2)). When all people between ages 1 and 44 are considered as a group, injury is the *leading* cause of death, ahead of cardiovascular disease and cancer. Not until age 40 does any specific disease overtake accidents as a cause of mortality. The leading cause of death in every age group from 1 to 44 is unintentional injury (Minino, 2013).

## Figure 7.2: Leading Causes of Death by Age Group

**The five leading causes of death for those aged 1–24 years include a number of external causes (accidents, homicide, and suicide), followed by cancer and heart disease. This pattern shifts as age increases. In older age groups, chronic conditions account for more deaths than do external causes.**

**Source:** Minino, A.M. (2013). Death in the United States, 2011. NCHS data brief, no. 115. Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics.

The five leading causes of death in young people include several *external causes* (accidents, homicide, and suicide), followed by cancer and heart disease. This pattern of external causes accounting for more deaths than *chronic conditions* changes as people get older. In older age groups, chronic conditions account for more deaths than do external causes. For example, accidents account for more than one-third of all deaths among persons aged 1–24 years. Accidental deaths are less prevalent in older age groups, and do not even rank among the five leading causes of death in people 65 years and older.

## Childhood

Compared to other stages of the life span, childhood for most children is uneventful in terms of overall health. In fact, during the school years, children in developed nations are the healthiest people of any age, being least likely to die or become seriously injured or ill (WHO, 2010a). Even so, over 5000 children between the ages of 1 and 14 die each year in the United States as the result ofunintentional injury (CDC, 2012). For children ages 1 to 4, the leading causes of injury-related death are drowning and motor-vehicle accidents. From 5 to 9 years of age, about half of all injury-related deaths occur in motor-vehicle crashes, and most of the remainder are caused by fire/burns (just over 14 percent) and drowning (12.6 percent). For children ages 10 to 14, over half of all injury-related deaths occur in motor vehicles (56.6 percent).

Although most early childhood injuries are not deliberate, public health experts increasingly choose not to call them “accidents,” which would imply that they are random and unpredictable. Instead of accident prevention, experts prefer the term [**injury control**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term191) (or harm reduction). Minor injuries are an inevitable part of any normal, active childhood, but serious injury is unlikely if efforts aimed at prevention are sound.

## injury control

Systematic efforts to prevent injuries from occurring and to limit the consequences of those that have already occurred.

**Most childhood injuries are predictable and preventable. Adult supervision and the use of safety equipment go a long way in keeping children safe.**

## Adolescence and Emerging Adulthood

Unintentional injury is the leading causes of death for adolescents and young adults, with motor-vehicle accidents far and away the most prevalent type (51.1 percent) of injury resulting in death in these age groups (Hoyert & Xu, 2012). This sobering statistic is true despite the fact that reflexes are faster and vision is better at these ages than at any other point in the life span. What accounts for this seemingly illogical fact? Many experts believe the answer is simple: Adolescents and young adults are prone to thoughtless impulses and poor decisions that lead to risky driving practices, including speeding, driving under the influence of alcohol, and driving while distracted—texting or talking on a cell phone, for instance.

Poor decision making is partly the result of the fact that different parts of the brain grow at different rates. The limbic system, including the amygdala (where fear, excitement, and other intense emotions originate) matures before the prefrontal cortex (where emotional regulation, impulse control, and thoughtful analysis occur). As a result, the emotional areas of the brain develop ahead of the executive, analytic areas. Add to this the fact that the surge of hormones that accompanies puberty strongly affects the amygdala, while the cortex “matures” more as a result of the experiences that accompany aging. For many teens and emerging adults, this is a dangerous time when emotional rushes, unchecked by caution, are common (Blakemore, 2008).

Neurological research finds that, during adolescence, brain areas that respond to excitement and pleasure are much more active than brain areas that control inhibition and urge caution (Van Leijenhorst and others, 2010). This is evident in functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) scans of the brains of people in different age groups. When compared with 18- to 23-year-olds, 14- to 15-year-olds show dramatically increased arousal in the brain’s limbic areas, making them especially susceptible to excitement and the strong sensations provided by driving fast, participating in extreme sports, and using alcohol and strong drugs (Van Leijenhorst and others, 2010). This may partly explain why younger drivers are more likely to speed than older drivers. As shown in [**Figure 7.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F7-3), the percentage of fatal motor vehicle crashes caused by speeding is highest, for both male and female drivers, between age 15 and age 20 and decreases throughout adulthood (NHTSA, 2010).

## Figure 7.3: Speeding Drivers in Fatal Crashes by Age and Sex

**For drivers involved in fatal crashes, young males are the most likely to be speeding. The relative proportion of speeding-related crashes to all crashes decreases with driver age.**

**Source:** NHTSA (2010). *Traffic safety facts: Speeding, 2007 data*. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. Washington, DC: National Center for Statistics and Analysis.

A pertinent example of the cautious part of the brain being overwhelmed by the emotions of the moment comes from studies showing how often teens send text messages while they are driving. In one survey, 64 percent of 16- to 17-year-olds said they had been in a car when the driver was texting (Madden & Lenhart, 2009). Other examples of poor impulse control and faulty reasoning while driving abound. Consider the following data from the Centers for Disease Control (2012):

* Teens are more likely than older drivers to underestimate dangerous situations or to be unable to recognize hazardous situations.
* Teens are more likely than older drivers to speed and allow shorter headways (the distance between the front of one vehicle to the front of the next). Interestingly, the presence of male passengers increases the likelihood of this risky driving behavior.
* Compared with other age groups, teens have the lowest rate of seat-belt use.
* At all levels of blood-alcohol concentration, the risk of involvement in a motor vehicle crash is greater for teens than for older drivers.

Because the immature brains of young drivers play such a large role in causing motor vehicle accidents, it is not surprising that four preventive measures have saved hundreds of lives: (1) graduated drivers licensing (GDL) that requires more time between issuing a learner’s permit and granting a full license, (2) restricted driving at night, (3) no teenage passengers, and (4) zero tolerance for driving under the influence of alcohol (Fell and others, 2011). Consider the impact of GDL, which is designed to delay full licensure while allowing a greater period of time for young drivers with a learner’s permit to practice and gain initial driving experience under supervised, low-risk conditions. Research studies demonstrate that comprehensive GDL programs are associated with reductions of 38 percent and 40 percent in fatal and nonfatal injury crashes, respectively, among 16-year-old drivers (Baker, Chen, & Li, 2007).

## Adulthood

Injuries remain the leading cause of death in adults ages 35 to 44, but then become less prevalent as chronic illnesses such as cardiovascular disease and cancer begin to cause more deaths in older adults (Hoyert & Xu, 2012). For people who have reached age 65, injuries have dropped to the ninth-leading cause of death.

The types of injuries that people suffer, and from which they sometimes die, also change as people get older. In adults age 25 to 34, car accidents are the leading cause of injury-related death, followed by poisoning and homicide. Between ages 35 and 54, poisoning causes the most injury-related fatalities, followed by motor-vehicle crashes and suicides. Car accidents, suicides, and poisoning, in that order, cause the most injury-related fatalities between ages 55 and 64. For those age 65 and older, falls are the leading cause of injury-related death, followed by car accidents and suicide.

## Poisoning

Unintentional poisoning death rates have been increasing steadily since 1992 and have become second only to motor-vehicle crashes as a cause of accidental death. Every day in the United States, 87 people die as a result of unintentional poisoning, and another 2277 are treated in emergency rooms (CDC, 2013d). Most unintentional deaths from poisoning (91 percent) are caused by drugs. Prescription painkillers, including hydrocodone, oxycodone, and methadone, are most commonly involved, followed by cocaine and heroin.

**Young adults are prone to poor decisions that lead to risky driving practices, including driving while distracted.**

iStockphoto

Among adults treated in hospital emergency departments for nonfatal poisoning involving drugs, use of pain medications and the central nervous system (CNS)–depressant benzodiazepines (such as Valium) is reported most often. Men are twice as likely as women to die from poisoning, and the prevalence of poison-related deaths varies with ethnicity. Native-Americans have the highest death rates by poisoning, followed by white people, and then African-Americans (CDC, 2013e).

## Homicide

The low rate of chronic illness between ages 18 and 25 is offset by a high rate of severe injuries and violent deaths, with males being more than twice as vulnerable as females. The high rate of violent death is evident particularly among young males. Violent deaths are more common than disease deaths during these years even in nations with rampant infection and malnutrition (Patton and others, 2012).

In 2010, there were 16,259 homicides in the United States, about 5.3 for every 100,000 people. Of these, 11,078 (68.1 percent) involved the use of a firearm (CDC, 2013f). More people are murdered during emerging adulthood than at any other period, with people aged 18–24 years consistently having the highest rate of homicide.

The epidemiology of gun violence in the United States reveals the importance of several factors, including gender, ethnicity/race, geographical region, and public policy (NPR, 2013). Briefly put, white people who die by gunfire are much more likely to be male, live in rural areas, and to commit suicide; black people who die by gunfire are more likely to be male, live in urban areas, and to be victims of homicide. Males are nearly seven times more likely to die by homicide than females, and African-Americans are twice as likely to die by homicide as whites. Homicide is one reason that African-Americans have a shorter average life expectancy than whites. Stated differently, for every white male shot in a homicide, five shoot themselves; and for every black male who kills himself with a gun, five are killed by homicide. The rates for women are much lower for both homicide and suicide.

These disparities mask underlying issues related to attitudes and access to firearms. Researchers have found that people who suffer homicide among family and friends are more likely to live in cities, have an anti-gun attitude, and favor gun-control legislation. This is true across all ethnic and racial groups. As one moves from the city, to the suburbs, and then into rural areas, where firearm fatalities shift to being predominantly suicide, there tends to be a much lower desire for gun control. Consider the differences in gun access and firearm deaths between the states of Wyoming and Massachusetts. The suicide rate in Wyoming, which has very high access to guns, is seven times higher than that in Massachusetts, where it’s more difficult to get a gun. Access to guns is especially important when it comes to suicide, which is often impulsive. Teenagers who kill themselves with firearms almost always do it with their family’s gun.

## Suicide

Homicide is most prevalent in people age 18–24 years, whereas suicide is most likely among those age 45–54 years. Nearly 1 million people worldwide commit suicide each year, with prevalence rates varying from country to country (WHO, 2011a). For instance, suicide rates in Britain, Italy, and Spain are little more than half those of the United States, Canada, and Australia. The age-adjusted suicide rate for the total population of the United States is about 11.8 per 100,000 people, with the greatest number occurring between the ages of 45 and 54. Worldwide, women are more likely than men to attempt suicide, but men are four times more likely to actually end their lives, and represent nearly 80 percent of all U.S. suicides, probably because they are more likely to use a gun or some other lethal method (WHO, 2011).

Firearms are the most commonly used method of suicide among males (55.7 percent), while poisoning is the most common method among females (40.2 percent). In the United States, whites and Native Americans commit suicide twice as often as blacks, Hispanics, and Asians (CDC, 2012). Suicide rates are higher among people who are affluent, single, widowed, divorced, depressed, or alcohol-dependent. Suicidal thoughts also arise when people feel disconnected or that they are a burden to others (Joiner, 2010), when they feel trapped by an inescapable situation (Taylor and others, 2011), and when people are driven to reach a goal they believe is unattainable (Chatard & Selimbegovic, 2011). Among gay and lesbian youth, peer rejection and an unsupportive family have been associated with attempted suicide (Haas and others, 2011).

Because suicide is so often an impulsive act, environmental barriers such as preventing access to firearms, which are involved in 57 percent of U.S. suicides, are an important deterrent (Anderson, 2008). People who live in a house where a firearm is kept are five times as likely to die by suicide as people who live in gun-free homes. One massive study examined the association between firearm ownership and suicide across all 50 states (Miller and others, 2007). After taking into account poverty, unemployment, mental illness, and drug and alcohol abuse, the researchers found that people of all ages and both sexes are more likely to die from suicide when they live in a community in which more households own firearms.

Some people, especially adolescents and young adults, stop short of suicide by inflicting *non-suicidal self-injury* (*NSSI*) behaviors such as cutting the skin, pulling out hair, inserting objects under the skin, and administering their own tattoos (Fikke and others, 2011). Although NSSI is a risk factor for future suicide attempts, those who engage in NSSI usually are *suicide gesturers*, not *suicide attempters* (Wilkinson & Goodyer, 2011). They are often extremely self-critical and have poor communication and problem-solving skills (Nock, 2010). Experts also suggest that NSSI behaviors may be an attempt to:

* Gain attention and ask others for help;
* Get others to stop bullying them;
* Use pain to distract persistent negative thoughts and rumination;
* Relieve guilt through self-punishment; or
* Fit in with a peer group.

## Falls

Falls are the second leading cause of unintentional injury deaths worldwide (WHO, 2012b). Each year, an estimated 424,000 people globally die as a result of falls, of which over 80 percent are in low- and middle-income countries. Many more suffer nonfatal fall-related injuries. In the United States, falls are the overall leading cause of injury, accounting for twice as many injuries as any other cause (see [**Figure 7.4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F7-4)).

## Figure 7.4: Falls

**Falls are the overall leading cause of injury, accounting for nearly 40 percent of all injuries in the United States each year.**

**Source:** Adams, P.F., Kirzinger, W.K., & Martinez, M.E. (2012). Summary health statistics for the U.S. population: National Health Interview Survey, 2011. National Center for Health Statistics. *Vital Health Stat* 10(255).

In 2010, 2.3 million nonfatal fall-related injuries among older adults were treated in hospital emergency departments in the United States, resulting in a direct medical cost of $30 billion (CDC, 2012). One out of every three adults age 65 and older falls each year. The global result is approximately 37.3 million falls that do not result in death but are serious enough to require medical attention. Nonfatal falls are responsible for the loss of over 17 million *disability-adjusted life years* (*DALYs*), with the highest rates of morbidity occurring in people 65 and older, followed by young adults aged 15 to 29, and children 15 years and younger.

In addition to the one in every three adults age 65 and older mentioned above, approximately 2.8 million children are treated in a hospital emergency department for a fall-related injury each year (CDC, 2012). Among older adults, 20 to 30 percent of falls result in moderate to severe injuries such as bruises, hip fractures, and traumatic brain injuries. This risk level may be in part due to physical, sensory, and cognitive changes associated with aging, in combination with environments that are not optimized for older adults. Many people who fall, even if they are not injured, develop a fear of falling that may cause them to limit their activities. This leads to loss of physical fitness, which in turn increases their future risk of falling.

For children younger than age 2, many of these injuries are the result of falls from cribs and playpens (Yeh and others, 2011). Among older children, many nonfatal fall-related injuries are the result of playground accidents that lead to fractures, concussions, and internal injuries. Childhood falls occur largely as a result of children’s evolving physical and cognitive development, especially their innate curiosity about their surroundings, and increasing levels of independence. Although inadequate adult supervision is often cited as a risk factor, the circumstances are often complex, interacting with poverty, single parenthood, and environments that are particularly hazardous. For instance, several studies have found that playgrounds in low-income areas had more maintenance-related hazards than those in more affluent neighborhoods. These hazards included rusty play equipment, trash, and damaged fall surfaces.

## Injury Prevention

Considering the tremendous cost of injuries to individuals and society, health psychologists have an important role to play in developing interventions aimed at prevention. The premise of ecological theory (discussed in [**Chapter 1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch01)) is that an individual does not act or develop in a vacuum, but rather in the presence of people, places, and situations that influence how the person thinks, behaves, and acts. From this perspective, a wide range of contextual factors influences the risk of an injury occurring. These factors vary in their influence across the life span and include societal, neighborhood and community, family, peer, and individual factors. Consistent with this perspective, *Healthy People 2020* identified the following areas as targets for interventions aimed at reducing the risk of unintentional injury and violence (CDC, 2010a):

* *Individual behaviors*. The choices people make, such as alcohol use, texting while driving, or risk-taking, can increase injuries. As another example, higher levels of activity and injury history are associated with more frequent injuries (Schwebel and others, 2011).
* *Physical environment*. Features such as lighting, smoke detectors, fences, and so forth can affect the rate of injuries related to falls, fires and burns, drowning, and violence.
* *Access to services*. Access to health care services, such as systems created for injury-related care, ranging from acute care to rehabilitation, can reduce the consequences of injuries, including death and disability.
* *Social environment*. This area includes adult supervision, peer-group associations, and family interactions, as well as aspects of the school, work, neighborhood, and community environments. During childhood and adolescence, the family environment is a particularly potent factor in the social environment. Higher levels of parental mental distress (Schwebel and others, 2011) and marital conflict (Schwebel and others, 2012) have both been found to predict higher rates of injury in preadolescent children. Conversely, *parental monitoring* can help reduce the risk of young people being injured. Consider gang violence, which accounts for as many as one in five murders in several of the largest cities in the United States. A recent survey of more than 4,000 teens between the ages of 14 and 18 living in areas where gang violence is prevalent reported that adolescents who said they were subject to at least moderate supervision from their parents were less likely to get involved in gangs (McDaniel, 2012).
* *Societal-level factors*. This area includes such factors as cultural beliefs, attitudes, incentives and disincentives, and laws and regulations.

The three levels of prevention (discussed in [**Chapter 2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch02)) apply to every health problem, including injuries. Harm reduction and injury control begin with *primary prevention*—changes in laws and other societal policies that are designed to make harm less likely for everyone. *Secondary prevention* is more specific, reducing the chance of injury in high-risk situations or for vulnerable individuals. *Tertiary prevention* begins after an injury has occurred, limiting the damage. Primary prevention is most effective because it begins long before someone does something that is careless, foolish, or neglectful (Cohen & Bloom, 2010).

Consider how the three levels of prevention might apply to childhood drowning, which is a leading cause of unintentional death among 1- to 4-year-olds. Primary prevention would include building codes and local laws requiring that all swimming pools be surrounded completely by a locked fence. Secondary prevention might be the wise parent who puts good life jackets on children before they paddle a canoe on the lake. An example of tertiary prevention is the immediate delivery of cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) to a submerged child who has been pulled from the water.

Other examples of primary prevention through societal changes include state and federal laws that restrict certain behaviors and mandate others. Many states now have laws mandating the use of age-appropriate restraints for children through 6 to 8 years of age, with some states also requiring that children sit in the back seat. As another example, a growing number of communities are banning the use of handheld cell phones and texting while driving. Still other examples of primary prevention are laws regarding alcohol use that are designed to prevent drunk driving, building codes and regulations that require smoke detectors in buildings, local ordinances requiring the wearing of bicycle helmets, and federal laws mandating air bags, the use of seat belts, and lower speed limits.

Do such regulations work? Consider speeding, one of the most prevalent factors contributing to traffic crashes. In 2007, speeding was a contributing factor in 31 percent of all fatal crashes in the United States. When the national law mandating 55 miles per hour as the maximum speed limit was repealed in 1995, many states raised their speed limits, resulting in increases in motor-vehicle fatalities of 9.1 percent on rural interstates and 4 percent on urban interstates (Friedman, Hedeker, & Richter, 2009).

Some critics of public health policy say children today are overprotected, with more laws mandating car seats, cushioned safety surfaces, fewer jungle gyms, and so forth. Consider another example of the effectiveness of primary prevention: accidental poisoning from drugs and household chemicals. In 1970, the U.S. Congress passed the Poison Prevention Packaging Act (PPPA), under which child-resistant packaging was for the first time mandated for 30 categories of medicines and hazardous household products. Since the PPPA became law, the number of childhood deaths from accidental poisoning decreased more than 80 percent, from about 500 that year to an average of about 36 in 2008 ([**Figure 7.5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F7-5)). Thanks to better awareness and prevention efforts at each of the three levels, when injuries of all types are considered, less than half as many 1- to 4-year-olds in the United States were fatally injured in 2010 as in 1980 (Hoyert, 2012).

## Figure 7.5: Childhood Poisoning Fatalities—1972 to 2008

**This figure shows the number of poisoning fatalities in the United States for children younger than age 5 from 1972 to 2008.**

**Source:** O’Brien, C. (2011). *Pediatric poisoning fatalities from 1972 through 2008*. Consumer Product Safety Commission.

Sound laws and policies work hand in hand with secondary prevention in preventing injuries. Even simple and inexpensive efforts such as keeping household chemicals, medications (in children-resistant containers), guns, and other dangerous objects in inaccessible, locked cabinets go a long way in reducing the likelihood of injuries.

Taking a prevention approach to injury control is a recent phenomenon. As recently as the 1980s, injury prevention was not even covered in most textbooks on community psychology. Community health psychologists generally focus on three accepted strategies in injury prevention programs: (1) *education and behavior change*, (2) *legislation and enforcement*, and (3) *engineering and technology*. Education and behavior-change strategies typically are aimed at reducing risk behaviors (anything that increases the likelihood that a person will be injured) and increasing protective behaviors (anything that reduces potential harm from a risk behavior).

## Weigh In on Health

* **1.** List as many benefits of physical fitness as you can. Are you getting enough physical activity? If not, what can you do to increase your level of physical fitness? What habits could you adopt to keep physically active throughout your life?
* **2.** You have been asked to deliver a speech about the detrimental effects of sleep deprivation. Using the biopsychosocial model, prepare an outline of an effective speech on this topic. Then fill in the key research findings and other subpoints that support your central ideas.
* **3.** Think about the last time that you suffered an unintentional injury. Was it truly an “accident,” or could it have been prevented? How could you have changed the situation, or your own behavior, and avoided injury? What can you do in similar situations in the future to produce a different outcome?

## Summing Up

## Physical Activity, Exercise, and Fitness

* **1.** Physical activity is bodily movement produced by skeletal muscles that requires energy expenditure. Physical exercise is physical activity that is planned, repetitive, and purposeful in the sense that it is intended to improve or maintain one or more aspects of physical fitness. Two broad categories of physical exercise are aerobic and nonaerobic.
* **2.** Regular exercise, especially aerobic exercise, increases physical strength, helps maintain bone density, helps maintain and control weight, and reduces an older person’s risk of cardiovascular disease, cancer, osteoporosis, metabolic syndrome, and other chronic illnesses.
* **3.** Physical fitness is a set of attributes that people have or achieve that relates to the ability to perform physical activity. The most important attribute is cardiorespiratory endurance, or aerobic fitness, which refers to the ability of the heart, blood vessels, and lungs to supply oxygen to working muscles during physical activity for prolonged periods of time.
* **4.** Over time, exercise may serve as an effective buffer against anxiety and stress, boost self-esteem and self-efficacy, help people feel more vigor and less fatigue, improve cognitive functioning, and offer protection against dementia, depression, and anxiety.
* **5.** Although it is never too late to start exercising, some older adults face several barriers to doing so, including ageist stereotypes, lack of confidence (exercise self-efficacy) and motivation, and myths that exercise can actually undermine their health.
* **6.** Few people manage to adopt and maintain an exercise habit successfully. Minority group members consistently seem to have lower physical activity levels than majority group members, with minority women being among the least active subgroups in the United States. In several large surveys, physical activity was found to be lowest among people with low incomes and lower levels of education.
* **7.** People are most likely to stick with exercise programs if they enjoy exercise; already have formed the habit of exercising regularly; grew up in families that exercised; have social support for exercising from relatives, friends, and coworkers; have a favorable attitude and a strong sense of self-efficacy toward exercising; perceive themselves as being somewhat athletic; and believe that individuals should take responsibility for their own health.
* **8.** Interventions to promote physical activity work best when they are matched to the stage of readiness of individual participants, and when they target neighborhood, community, and societal barriers in a comprehensive ecological approach.

## Sleep

* **9.** Our bodies are approximately synchronized with the 24-hour cycle of night and day by an internal biological clock called the *circadian rhythm*. Age often alters our circadian rhythm. People who are at their best in the morning tend to do better in school and to be less vulnerable to depression.
* **10.** Once asleep, the sleeping brain operates according to a 90-minute biological rhythm, cycling through four distinct sleep stages. There are two broad types of sleep: non–rapid eye movement (NREM) and rapid eye movement (REM), distinguished by different brain waves, changes in breathing and muscle tension, and a few other bodily changes.
* **11.** Newborns sleep 15 to 17 hours a day, in segments lasting 1 to 3 hours, because the brain areas that regulate sleep are immature. As their brains continue to develop, hours of sleep decrease rapidly. Not everyone needs eight hours of sleep. Newborns and infants sleep nearly two-thirds of the day, and some adults seem to thrive on fewer than six hours per night, while others regularly get nine hours or more.
* **12.** Sleep researchers have found that insufficient sleep is related to socioeconomic status, race and ethnicity, workplace, neighborhood, and other social factors. People who are coping with stressful events at work or in the home also report poorer sleep, especially when stressors are appraised as uncontrollable. About one-third of adults experience sleep problems occasionally, and 1 in 10 adults (1 in 4 older adults) complain of insomnia.
* **13.** Poor sleep takes a toll on both physical and psychological well-being. Chronic sleep debt promotes increased body weight, suppresses immune functioning, and adversely affects our body’s metabolic, neural, and endocrine functioning in ways that mimic accelerated aging. The brain uses sleep to repair damage, replenish energy stores, and promote neurogenesis, or the formation of new nerve cells.

## Injury Control

* **14.** Although, overall, injuries are the fifth-leading cause of death (after heart disease, cancer, stroke, and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease), the risk of injury, as well as the likelihood of dying from an injury varies considerably across the life span. Most injury-related deaths are from unintentional injuries, or accidents, because the injured person didn’t intend for it to happen. The remainder are intentional injuries, meaning that the person who caused the injury meant for it to happen.
* **15.** The five leading causes of death in young people include external causes (accidents, homicide, and suicide) followed by cancer and heart disease. This pattern of external causes accounting for more deaths than chronic conditions changes as people get older. In older age groups, chronic conditions account for more deaths than do external causes.
* **16.** Instead of accident prevention, experts prefer the term injury control (or harm reduction). Minor injuries are an inevitable part of any normal, active childhood, but serious injury is unlikely if efforts aimed at prevention are sound.
* **17.** During adolescence and emerging adulthood, thoughtless impulses and poor decisions that lead to risky driving practices, including speeding, driving under the influence of alcohol, and driving while distracted—texting or talking on a cell phone, for instance. Poor decision-making is partly the result of the fact that different parts of the brain grow at different rates. The limbic system, including the amygdala (where fear, excitement, and other intense emotions originate) matures before the prefrontal cortex (where emotional regulation, impulse control, and thoughtful analysis occur). As a result, the emotional areas of the brain develop ahead of the executive, analytic areas.
* **18.** Unintentional poisoning death rates have been increasing steadily since 1992 and have become second only to motor-vehicle crashes as a cause of accidental death. The epidemiology of gun violence in the United States reveals the importance of several factors, including gender, ethnicity/race, geographical region, and public policy.
* **19.** Homicide is most prevalent in people age 18–24 years, whereas suicide is most likely among those age 45–54 years. Because suicide is so often an impulsive act, environmental barriers such as preventing access to firearms, which are involved in 57 percent of U.S. suicides, are an important deterrent.
* **20.** Falls are the second leading cause of unintentional injury deaths worldwide.
* **21.** Injury control begin with primary prevention—changes in laws and other societal policies that are designed to make harm less likely for everyone. Secondary prevention is more specific, reducing the chance of injury in high-risk situations or for vulnerable individuals. Tertiary prevention begins after an injury has occurred, limiting the damage.

## *Chapter 8*: Nutrition, Obesity, and Eating Disorders

[**Nutrition: Eating the Right Foods**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-1-1)

* [**Healthy Eating and Adherence to a Healthy Diet**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-2) [**Diet and Disease**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-3)

[**Weight Determination: Eating the Right Amount of Food**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-1-7)

* [**Your Health Assets:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B8-6) [**Super Foods for a Super You**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B8-6) [**Basal Metabolic Rate and Caloric Intake**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-8)[**The Set-Point Hypothesis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-9) [**The Biological Basis of Weight Regulation**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-10)

[**Obesity: Some Basic Facts**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-1-13)

* [**Hazards of Obesity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-14)

[**The Biopsychosocial Model of Obesity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-1-15)

* [**Biological Factors**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-16) [**Psychosocial Factors**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-19)

[**Treatment and Prevention of Obesity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-1-21)

* [**Dieting**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-22) [**Behavioral and Cognitive Therapy**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-25) [**Your Health Assets:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B8-16) [**Lose Weight the Smart Way**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B8-16)[**Fit Families, Fit Communities**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-26)

[**Eating Disorders**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-1-27)

* [**Demographics**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-28) [**Applying the Biopsychosocial Model**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-29) [**Diversity and Healthy Living:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B8-22) [**Eating Disorders and Ethnocultural Identity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B8-22) [**Body Image and the Media**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-37) [**Treatment of Eating Disorders**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L8-2-38)

*One of my former students (let’s call her Jodi) is 26 years old and weighs 78 pounds. She was once a sleek and muscular 800-meter track champion and an academic all-American. She was hospitalized with serious coronary complications that resulted from her 12-year battle with disordered eating. Even at a mere 78 pounds, Jodi saw herself as bloated and obese*.

*Growing up in an upper-middle-class home, Jodi had a loving family, but she always felt pressure to live up to their high expectations. She found it particularly difficult to follow in the footsteps of her talented and popular sister and felt that she had to be perfect at everything*.

*Unfortunately, she felt her most significant imperfection was that she did not look like a swimsuit model. Jodi had a short, powerful build that was well suited for running fast. Even though she was the top runner on her high school and college teams, her coaches and trainers believed that she could run faster if she would only shed a few pounds*.

*Jodi tried her best to lose weight, but her body simply wouldn’t cooperate. She tried several diets, all of which made her tired, hungry, and unable to concentrate on her schoolwork, and she never stayed on them very long. Her weight bounced up and down like a yo-yo*.

*Then one day Jodi found a terrible solution for her “problem”: She would eat whatever she wanted and then either throw up or take a large dose of laxatives. She also increased her daily running mileage and added cross-training workouts to her regular routine. She still felt tired but thought it was worth it to gain some control over her weight*.

*Jodi was able to hide her bingeing and purging throughout high school and college, but once she was living on her own, she started eating less and less, and her weight loss soon became obvious. One holiday, while visiting her family, she fainted while playing basketball with her father. When he picked her up, he realized that she weighed little more than a child*.

**Not all ancient cultures valued a stout build. Obesity was stigmatized in medieval Japan because it was viewed as the karmic consequence of a moral failing in Buddhism. In some parts of Europe, obesity was frowned upon as a sign of the Christian sin of gluttony**.

*Jodi’s parents insisted that she see a doctor, who quickly placed her into a treatment program in which she was force-fed for a week. Although Jodi’s weight increased, the years of disordered eating had taken a severe toll on her body, and her prospects for regaining her health, then and now, are not promising*.

Throughout most of history and in developing countries today, a full figure has been considered a sign of prosperity and health. Now that supersized figures are so easy to achieve in our Western cultures, we admire the sleek look instead. We are bombarded with media images of thinness that shape our standards of attractiveness and strongly influence how we feel about our bodies. Several studies have shown that even children as young as 5 years of age have a negative body image and have already engaged in dieting and other weight-loss behaviors (McCabe & Ricciardelli, 2003). As Jodi’s heart-wrenching story makes clear, not everyone can have a thin figure. The goal of health psychology is to help people attain and maintain a healthy weight, not necessarily to achieve the cultural ideal. Yet the ease with which we fill out has led more of us to suffer serious health risks from being overweight and obese (see [**Figure 8.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F8-1)). This epidemic has spread worldwide, including Spain, France, Australia, Brazil, Mexico, Denmark, Italy, Russia—where more than half the populations are overweight—and Japan—which now has a national law mandating maximum waistline measurements (33.5 inches for men and 35.4 inches for women) as part of annual physical exams for all adults ages 40 to 74 (Onishi, 2008). Obesity has doubled worldwide since 1980, and for the first time in history, the global number of overweight people (1.4 billion) rivals the number of underfed and underweight people (WHO, 2013). Is it any wonder that the World Health Organization recognizes [**obesity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term240) as one of the top 10 health problems in the world and one of the top five in developed countries?

## Figure 8.1: Prevalence of Overweight and Obese Americans

**Data from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) reveal that 35 years ago, 47 percent of Americans were classified as overweight or obese (BMI > 25.0); today, 33.3 percent of U.S. adults aged 20 and over are overweight and 35.9 percent are extremely obese. Americans are fatter today than their parents and grandparents ever were, and they are getting fatter every year.**

**Source:** Fryar, C.D., Carroll, M.D., & Ogden, C.L. (2012). Prevalence of overweight, obesity, and extreme obesity among adults: United States, trends 1960–1962 through 2009–2010. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. National Center for Health Statistics.

## obesity

Excessive accumulation of body fat

More people are treated for obesity in this country than for all other health conditions combined. Those extra pounds can contribute to diabetes, stroke, hypertension, coronary disease, and other chronic diseases that cost the health care system an estimated 12 percent of the national health care budget each year. The scope of the problem is enormous, sending approximately 300,000 North American women and men to early graves each year (de Gonzales and others, 2010). Each year, the market is flooded with dozens of new weight “solutions,” most of which fail to work for any length of time.

The problem has become so acute that First Lady Michelle Obama announced a nationwide campaign (dubbed “Let’s Move”) to eliminate the problem of childhood obesity within one generation (Ferran, 2010). The four pillars of the “Let’s Move” program reflect a biopsychosocial solution and include (1) getting nutrition and exercise information to parents, (2) improving the quality of food in schools, (3) making healthy foods more affordable and accessible, and (4) focusing more on physical education. The new standards for school lunches, which were phased in starting in the 2012–2013 school year, include requirements to double the amounts of vegetables and fruits available, switch all grains to whole grains, and offer milk in only fat-free or low-fat varieties. It is too soon to determine the program’s effectiveness; however, the initiative is about generational change, with the goal that children will live in a much healthier food and physical-fitness culture 10 years from now.

At present, however, the prevalence of obesity among kids and adolescents in the United States is three times what it was 30 years. Estimates from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) show that 31.7 percent of U.S. children and teens are either overweight or obese (Ogden, Carrol, & Flegal, 2012). Overall, 68 percent of U.S. adults are overweight and 34 percent are obese (Flegal and others, 2010). As shown in [**Figure 8.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F8-1), these rates vary with gender and ethnicity. Among low-income families and certain ethnic groups such as Hispanic boys and African-American girls, the rates are even higher. By 2020, three of four Americans will be overweight or obese (OECD, 2010).

Psychologists have joined forces with molecular biologists, genetic engineers, nutritionists, and other health professionals to find answers to some puzzling questions: Why is obesity becoming more prevalent? Why is it relatively simple to lose weight but nearly impossible to keep it off? Why do some people gain weight more easily than others? Which foods are most healthful to consume, and how can we safely maintain a healthy weight? In this chapter, we will address these and other important questions in our exploration of eating behavior and weight regulation. We begin by examining the components of food and their role in maintaining health.

## Nutrition: Eating the Right Foods

In Framingham, Massachusetts, in 1948, a “healthy” breakfast consisted of a plate of fried eggs, a slab of bacon, and several pieces of white toast slathered with margarine. Residents spooned sugar and fatty cream from the top of milk bottles into their coffee. In this town, one in four men age 55 or older developed heart disease, but doctors hadn’t yet made the connection to diet and often listed “acute indigestion” as the cause of death.

Researchers descended on the town, and after 50 years and over 1000 scholarly research papers, the Framingham Heart Study has showed that poor nutrition is a leading risk factor for heart disease. We have learned that a diet focused on fruits, vegetables, and lean proteins, while limiting the consumption of saturated fat and entirely avoiding trans-fatty acids, provides the body with the nutrients it needs to protect and repair itself. We are, indeed, what we eat.

## Healthy Eating and Adherence to a Healthy Diet

In addition to daily caloric energy, our bodies require 46 *nutrients* (essential substances found in food) to remain healthy. Water is a major source of nutrition, transporting nutrients throughout the bloodstream, removing wastes, and regulating the body’s temperature. The remaining nutrients are grouped into five categories: proteins, fats, carbohydrates, minerals, and vitamins. Each of these nutrient groups offers unique contributions to bodily function and health, and in the case of proteins, fats, and carbohydrates, the caloric energy our bodies need to meet the demands of daily living.

The U.S. Department of Agriculture’s current nutrition guide, “MyPlate,” serves as a quick visual reminder to make healthy choices when choosing your next meal. It depicts a place setting divided into five food groups of approximately 30 percent vegetables, 30 percent grains, 20 percent fruits, and 20 percent protein, accompanied by a small circle representing dairy, such as a glass of skim milk ([**Figure 8.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F8-2)). The exact amount that you should eat from each food group depends on your age, gender, and level of physical activity. (For a quick estimate of your needs, see the online calculator at [**www.choosemyplate.gov**](http://www.choosemyplate.gov/).) By mid-2012, MyPlate information began to be displayed on food packaging and restaurant menus and used in nutrition education. Unfortunately, nutritional advice is frequently ignored, and adherence to healthy diets overall tends to be modest at best.

## Figure 8.2: A Balanced Diet

**MyPlate illustrates the five food groups that are the building blocks for a healthy diet. The new guidelines place less emphasis on grains and serving sizes, and do not mention fats, oils, and sugars at all.**

[**ChooseMyPlate.gov**](http://choosemyplate.gov/)/USDA

The *glycemic index* (*GI*) ranks carbohydrates based on how quickly your body converts them to the sugar glucose. The index ranges from 0 to 100, with higher values given to foods that cause the most rapid rise in blood sugar (see [**Table 8.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T8-1)). Paying attention to the GI values of foods is important because your body performs best when blood sugar is relatively constant. When it drops too low, you feel lethargic and hungry; and when it is too high, your pancreas produces more insulin, which brings your blood sugar back down by converting excess sugar to stored fat. High-GI foods tend to cause a surge of energy that is quickly followed by increased fat storage, lethargy—and more hunger! The consumption of sugars that have been added to processed and prepared foods has made matters even worse, increasing risk of cardiovascular disease. An estimated 16 percent of U.S. children and adolescents’ total caloric intakes come from added sugars, most of which come from foods, not beverages, consumed at home (Ervin and others, 2012).

## Table 8.1: The Glycemic Index (GI) of Some Common Foods

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Low-GI Foods (GI = 55 or less)** | | |
| Skim milk | Plums | Slow-cooked oatmeal |
| Soy beverages | Oranges | Lentils, kidney beans, |
| Apples | Sweet potatoes | and other legumes |
| **Moderate-GI Foods (GI = 56 − 69)** | | |
| Bananas | Brown rice | Whole wheat bread |
| Pineapple | Basmati rice | Rye bread |
| Raisins |  |  |
| **High-GI Foods (GI = 70 or more)** | | |
| Watermelon | Instant rice | French fries |
| Dried dates | Sugary breakfast cereals | Table sugar (sucrose) |
| White potatoes and bread | Bagels |  |
| Not all carbohydrates are created equal! Foods that raise your blood glucose level quickly have a higher GI than foods that raise your blood glucose level more slowly. Choosing low- and moderate-GI foods—which are usually low in calories and fat, while rich in fiber, nutrients, and antioxidants—may help you keep your energy and cholesterol levels balanced, reduce inflammation, and lower your risk of heart disease and Type 2 diabetes. | | |

A particularly controversial source of sugar in many foods today is *high-fructose corn syrup* (*HFCS*) (also called *glucose/fructose*), which was developed in the 1960s as a cheaper and sweeter alternative to table sugar (*sucrose*) and quickly became the principal sweetener used in processed foods and beverages. Between 1970 and 1990, HFCS consumption in the United States rose 1000 percent. Because obesity rates rose dramatically during those same years, some researchers suggested a potential link to HFCS (e.g., Bray, Nielsen, & Popkin, 2004). Other health concerns that have been raised about HFCS include its alleged contribution to diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and liver disease (Goran, Ulijaszek, & Ventura, 2012). However, recent research studies do not support the idea that HFCS is inherently worse than any other sugar (Klurfeld and others, 2013). Another factor that seems to reduce the likelihood that HFCS is a unique cause of the obesity epidemic is the finding that while consumption of HFCS has steadily declined over the past 10 years, obesity levels have remained constant or continued to rise (Flegal and others, 2012). However, the debate is by no means settled, and HFCS has been so vilified that the Corn Refiners Association recently petitioned the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to change its common name to “corn sugar.” Although the request was denied, the growing number of names for sugar confuses many consumers and may conceal the very real health hazard of too much sugar in one’s diet. By adding several different types of sugar to a food product, each of which has the same metabolic effects, a food producer can list each type lower on the ingredient list, making a food seem less sugary than it actually is.

As lifestyles become increasingly hectic, fast-food consumption has become a central part of the diet of many people, with an estimated 11.3 percent of total daily calories coming from fast food among U.S. adults (Fryar & Ervin, 2013). Frequent fast-food consumption has been shown to contribute to weight gain (Anderson and others, 2011). Non-Hispanic black adults consume a higher percentage of calories from fast food than non-Hispanic white and Hispanic adults. Among young adults, as income increases, the percentage of calories from fast food decreases. Among adults, the percentage of calories consumed from fast food varies with body weight. In every age group, obese adults consume the highest percentage of their calories from fast food ([**Figure 8.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F8-3)).

## Figure 8.3: Percentage of Calories from Fast Food among Adults by Age and Weight Status

**Between 2007 and 2010, adults consumed an average 11.3% of their total daily calories from fast food. The percentage of calories consumed from fast food did not differ significantly between men (11.8%) and women (10.9%).**

**Source:** Fryar, C.D., & Ervin, R.B. (2013). Caloric intake from fast food among adults: United States, 2007–2010. *NCHS Data Brief no. 114*. Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics.

Equally dangerous is “supersizing.” Since the 1970s, portion sizes—of restaurant foods, grocery products, and even the servings suggested in cookbooks—have grown dramatically (Brownell, 2003; Pomeranz & Brownell, 2008). This is significant because of *unit bias*—people eat more when given larger portions (Geier, Roin, & Doros, 2006). In one study, Brian Wansink and his colleagues (2007) found that even nutrition experts took 31 percent more ice cream when given a big rather than a small bowl, ate 15 percent more when scooping it with a big scoop rather than a small one, and poured 37 percent more liquid when using a short, wide glass compared to a tall, skinny one of the same volume. Businesses such as self-serve frozen yogurt shops, which charge by weight, take full advantage of this phenomenon by offering “small” serving cups that are absurdly large. Most customers tend to fill these cups and ultimately end up consuming far more of this supposedly “healthy” dessert alternative than they ought to.

Behavior such as this is an example of *mindless eating*, in which we allow situations to control our eating. Other examples include the tendency to eat more when eating with other people (Hetherington, 2007), to eat more when offered a variety of foods from a buffet (Remick, Polivy, & Pliner, 2009), and mistakenly believing that our stomachs will tell us when they are full and we will stop before overeating. In a remarkable study, Wansink fed participants from a “bottomless bowl” of soup that was pressure-fed under the table and slowly and subtly refilled. The results: Participants with bottomless bowls ate 73 percent more than those with normal bowls, yet when asked, didn’t realize they had eaten more. “The lesson is, don’t rely on your stomach to tell you when you’re full. It can lie,” said Wansink (2011).

## Diet and Disease

Early dietary habits may set a lifelong pattern that leads to problems in later life. In fact, the foods that we eat are implicated in 5 of the 10 leading causes of death: heart disease, cancer, stroke, diabetes, and atherosclerosis (WHO, 2013).

Excess dietary fat has been widely acknowledged as a major health hazard. Currently, an unhealthy 40 to 45 percent of the total calories in the average Western diet come from fat. This overconsumption is due in part to our biology. From an evolutionary perspective, we crave fat—a legacy from our prehistoric ancestors, who were much more active and burned far more calories than most modern humans and who lived in a time when regular meals and survival were uncertain. Unfortunately for us, excess dietary fat does not go well with our more sedentary modern lifestyles.

There are four main types of fats: trans fat (or trans-fatty acids), saturated fat, monounsaturated fat, and polyunsaturated fat. *Trans fats* are formed when hydrogen is added to the vegetable oil in a food product to give it a longer shelf life and a desired taste and texture. They have been found to be toxic. More commonly known as *hydrogenated* and *partially hydrogenated oils*, trans fats are abundant in many processed and packaged foods. *Saturated fat* is primarily found in foods derived from animal sources, including all types of meat and whole milk dairy products. *Monounsaturated fats* are found in oils, such as canola, olive, and peanut oil, and in avocadoes. There are two kinds of *polyunsaturated fats: omega-6 fatty acids*, which are found in corn, soybean, sesame, and safflower oils; and *omega-3 fatty acids*, found primarily in oily coldwater fish such as salmon, as well as in flaxseeds and a few other foods that are often difficult to obtain.

Researchers once thought that all fat was bad, but we now know that they were wrong. Fat is a major source of energy and also helps the body absorb essential vitamins. Trans fats are indeed unhealthful and in fact should be avoided altogether. Saturated fats should be consumed in moderation, but monounsaturated fats and polyunsaturated fats (especially omega-3 fatty acids) are actually healthful because they help provide satiety, prevent the overeating of other foods, reduce cholesterol levels in the blood, and have a healthy, anti-inflammatory effect on the body (Brownlee, 2006). To help consumers sort through the complexities of choosing food products on the basis of their fat content, beginning in 2006, the FDA required food companies to list a product’s total amount of trans fat, saturated fat, and cholesterol on its label. Currently, U.S. children and adolescents consume an unhealthy 11 to 12 percent of their total calories from saturated fat (Ervin & Ogden, 2013).

**If approved, a proposal unanimously endorsed by the New York City Board of Health would set a limit of one-half gram of trans fat per serving for every item on the menus of all 20,000 restaurants in the city—from fast-food joints to the fanciest bistros. Health psychologists hope that this promising move may encourage other big cities to follow suit**

## Coronary Heart Disease

Consumption of saturated fat, and especially trans fat, both of which become dietary cholesterol in the body, is a contributing factor in many adverse health conditions, including coronary heart disease. Cholesterol is a waxy substance essential for strong cell walls, myelination of nerve cells, and the production of hormones. However, the cholesterol that we take in from the fats in our foods is nonessential because the liver manufactures all the cholesterol the body needs. Dietary cholesterol—which comes from animal fats and oils, not from vegetables or plant products—circulates in the blood and therefore is called *serum cholesterol* (serum is the liquid part of the blood).

Serum cholesterol is found in several forms of proteins called *lipoproteins*. There are three types of lipoproteins, distinguished by their density. *Low-density lipoproteins (LDLs*, which carry cholesterol around the body for use by cells) and *triglycerides* (the chemical form in which most fat exists in food) have been linked to the development of heart disease, whereas *high-density lipoproteins* (*HDLs*) may offer some protection against heart disease. Cholesterol carried by LDL is therefore often called “bad cholesterol,” while HDL is referred to as “good cholesterol.” Dietary saturated fat (especially trans fat) raises LDL levels, lowers HDL levels, and promotes inflammation.

Nutritionists recommend keeping overall serum cholesterol below 200 milligrams (mg) of cholesterol per deciliter (dl) of blood, with LDL and triglyceride levels below 100 mg/dl and HDL levels above 40 mg/dl. In addition, according to a 2002 National Academy of Science panel, the only safe level of trans fat in a food is “zero.” Nutritionists also call for everyone, beginning in their twenties, to obtain a complete serum cholesterol profile (total cholesterol, LDL cholesterol, HDL cholesterol, and triglycerides) every five years (National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute NCEP, 2006), as there is clear evidence linking lipoprotein levels to risk of coronary heart disease (Leon & Bronas, 2009). Just over 13 percent of U.S. adults have high total cholesterol (Carroll, Kit, and Lacher, 2012).

The Framingham Study revealed an important point: The best predictor of heart disease is not total level of serum cholesterol; instead, the culprit is the amount of “bad cholesterol” (LDL and triglycerides) in the body. Even people with lower levels of total serum cholesterol are at increased risk of developing atherosclerosis if their HDL levels are very low. HDL levels below 35 mg/dl are considered unhealthy. Smoking, physical inactivity, and a high dietary intake of cholesterol and saturated fats are linked with increased levels of LDLs and decreased levels of HDLs. Certain types of polyunsaturated and monounsaturated fats, vitamin E, and a low-in-saturated-fat, high-fiber diet may protect against heart disease by elevating HDL levels. Approximately 12 percent of women and 31 percent of men have low HDL cholesterol (Carroll, Kit, and Lacher, 2012).

Serum cholesterol level is determined partly by heredity. For most people, however, diet and lifestyle play a major role in the amount of serum cholesterol circulating in their bodies. The good news is that this message has been getting out. Over the past five years, more than two-thirds of U.S. adults were screened for cholesterol. The percentage of adults aged 20 and over with adverse concentrations of total cholesterol (15 percent) and LDL cholesterol (25 percent) has declined steadily since 2000. However, screen rates vary from group to group, ranging from 71 percent in non-Hispanic white women to 50 percent in Hispanic men (Carroll, Kit, & Lacher, 2012).

## Cancer

As you will see in [**Chapter 11**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch11), diet is implicated in one-third of all cancer deaths in the United States (American Cancer Society, 2009). Saturated fat, especially that found in red meat and other animal products, is the major dietary culprit. Saturated fat has been linked to several cancers, including breast cancer, prostate cancer, and colorectal cancer.

Fortunately, there is also evidence that certain foods may protect us against cancer. Vegetables and fruits are rich in *beta-carotene*, which the body processes into vitamin A—a nutrient that helps ensure healthy immune system functioning. Along with beta-carotene, small amounts of selenium, found in fish, whole grains, and certain vegetables, may help prevent some forms of cancer, but only in people with a deficiency in this essential mineral. Selenium taken as a supplement may actually have a toxic effect if no deficiency is present (Rayman, 2012). A diet rich in vitamins C and E may also help prevent cancer by protecting body cells from the damaging effects of *free radicals*(metabolic waste products). Such a diet also may protect against carcinogenic *nitrosamines*, which are produced in the stomach when you eat foods laced with nitrates, nitrites, and other preservatives commonly found in prepared foods.

## Multiple Chronic Conditions

Heart disease, cancer, and other illnesses sometimes occur together. Between 2000 and 2010, the percentage of American adults aged 45 and older with [**multiple chronic conditions (MCC)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term225) increased for men and women, all racial and ethnic groups, and most income groups ([**Figure 8.4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F8-4)). The most prevalent combinations of chronic conditions are hypertension and diabetes, hypertension and heart disease, and hypertension and cancer. The prevalence of obesity—a clear risk factor for certain types of heart disease and cancer, hypertension, and diabetes—is likely a factor in this trend. The presence of MCC adds a layer of complexity to disease management, especially because during the same time period, the percentage of adults with two or more chronic conditions had increasing difficulty obtaining needed medical care and prescription drugs because of cost (Freid, Bernstein, & Bush, 2012).

## multiple chronic conditions (MCC)

Two or more chronic conditions (lasting a year or more, requiring medical attention, and/or limiting daily activities) that affect a person at the same time.

## Figure 8.4: Prevalence of the Three Most Common Combinations of Nine Selected Chronic Conditions, by Age and Type of Condition

**The percentage of adults with the three most common combinations of chronic conditions (hypertension and diabetes, hypertension and heart disease, and hypertension and cancer) increased over the 10-year period between 2000 and 2010 for both men and women, in all racial and ethnic groups, and in most income groups.**

**Source:** Freid, V.M., Bernstein, A.B., & Bush, M.A. (2012). Multiple chronic conditions among adults aged 45 and over: Trends over the past 10 years. *NCHS Data Brief no. 100*. Hyattsville, MD: National Center for Health Statistics.

## Weight Determination: Eating the Right Amount of Food

Naturally, it’s not only what you eat, but also how much you eat in relation to your body’s caloric needs, that determine your weight and your health. Before we discuss obesity—its causes and treatment—you first need to understand the basic mechanisms by which the body determines the type and amount of calories needed.

## *Your Health Assets*: Super Foods for a Super You

Given the global pandemic of overweight and obesity, it is not surprising that many people are preoccupied with calories, mistakenly thinking that so long as they aren’t gaining weight, it doesn’t really matter what they eat. For optimal well-being, however, it is important to learn to eat for health, not weight. What you eat is as important as what you do not eat. Focus on eating foods that are minimally processed and as close to their natural state as possible. Here are 10 everyday super foods that are easy to eat and packed with nutrients:

* Low-fat or fat-free plain yogurt is higher in calcium than many other dairy products and contains protein, potassium, and other important nutrients. Also, it can be enriched with heart-healthy plant stanols and probiotics to promote healthy bacteria in your gut.
* Eggs are nutritious, economical, and a great way to add quality protein to your diet. They also contain 12 vitamins and minerals, including choline, which is important for brain development and cognitive functioning.
* Nuts are a good source of protein, heart-healthy fats, fiber, and antioxidants. The key to nuts is portion control. In small doses, they can help lower cholesterol levels and promote weight loss.
* The kiwi is one of the most nutritionally dense fruits. Rich in antioxidants, one large kiwi contains a full day’s supply of vitamin C and is a good source of potassium, fiber, and vitamins A and E.
* Quinoa (pronounced *keen-wa*) is one of the healthiest grains that you can eat. One cup of cooked quinoa is high in protein (8 grams), fiber (5 grams), and a naturally good source of iron, zinc, vitamin E, and selenium, which can help control weight and lower your risk for diabetes and heart disease.
* Beans are loaded with insoluble fiber, which helps lower cholesterol, as well as soluble fiber, which fills you up and helps the body remove waste. Beans are also an excellent, low-fat source of protein, carbohydrates, magnesium, and potassium. Edamame (whole soybeans) also contain heart-healthy omega-3 fatty acids.
* Salmon is rich in omega-3 fatty acids, protein, iron, and is very low in saturated fat. Because of its protective effects on heart health, the American Heart Association recommends eating fatty fish such as salmon twice weekly.
* Broccoli and other cruciferous vegetables (such as kale) are rich sources of vitamin A, vitamin C, and bone-building vitamin K. These super foods also high in fiber, which helps fill you up and control weight.
* Sweet potatoes are part of the dark orange vegetable family, which lead all foods in their vitamin A content. They are also rich in potassium, which helps reduce bone loss, and low in sodium, which is good for blood pressure.
* Berries are low in calories and high in water and fiber content, which helps to control blood sugar and keep you feeling full longer. In addition, they are loaded with phytonutrients and are some of the best sources of antioxidants around. Especially important is the fact that berries satisfy our cravings for sweets for a fraction of the calories and fat content of baked goods.

## Basal Metabolic Rate and Caloric Intake

Body weight remains stable when the calories that your body absorbs from the food you eat equal the calories that it expends for basic metabolic functions plus physical activity. How many calories does your body need to maintain bodily functions while at rest? Recall from [**Chapter 7**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch07) that this figure, called the *basal metabolic rate* (*BMR*), is not determined easily because it depends on a number of variables, including your age, gender, current weight, and activity level.

Individual differences in BMR help explain why it is possible for two people of the same age, height, and apparent activity level to weigh the same, even though one of them has a voracious appetite, while the other merely picks at food. Several factors determine BMR, including, first, heredity. Some people have a naturally higher metabolic rate than others, even when they’re asleep. Other people need fewer calories for the same amount and level of physical activity. Second, younger people and those who are active generally have a higher BMR than do older adults and those who are sedentary. Third, fat tissue has a lower metabolic rate (burns fewer calories) than muscle does. Once you add fat to your body, you require less food to maintain your weight than you did to gain the weight in the first place. Finally, because men have proportionately more muscle, their bodies burn 10 to 20 percent more calories at rest than women’s bodies do.

## The Set-Point Hypothesis

Many people believe that their body weights fluctuate erratically, but in fact our bodies balance energy intake and expenditure quite closely. A typical adult consumes roughly 900,000 to 1 million calories a year. Subtract from this figure the energy costs of BMR, and you’ll discover that less than 1 percent of the calories that you eat are stored as fat, a remarkable degree of precision in energy balance (Gibbs, 1996). Because of this precise regulation, experts have used data from national surveys to estimate that affecting energy balance by only 100 calories per day (as little as 15 minutes of walking, or eating just a bit less each meal) could prevent weight gain in most people (Hill and others, 2003). Evidence of such precision supports the [**set-point hypothesis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term308), the idea that each of us has a body weight “thermostat” that continuously adjusts our metabolism and eating to maintain our weight within a genetically predetermined range, or set point (Keesey & Corbett, 1983).

## set-point hypothesis

The idea that each person’s body weight is genetically set within a given range, or set point, that the body works hard to maintain.

The set-point concept (today considered by many researchers to be a *settling-point* range of weight rather than a fixed number of pounds) partly explains why it is difficult to bring weight down. As a study by George Bray (1969) showed, with continued dieting, the body defends its precious fat reserves by decreasing its metabolic rate. When obese dieters reduced their daily intake from 3500 to 450 calories for 24 days, their bodies quickly started burning fewer calories until their BMRs had dropped by 15 percent. The result: Although their body weight initially dropped 6 percent, with a lower BMR, they found it difficult to lose any more weight. These findings surely will strike a chord with dieters who suffer the frustrating experience of losing a few pounds relatively quickly but then finding it harder to lose additional weight as their dieting (and reduced metabolism) continues.

If starvation has this effect on metabolism, what effect does overeating have? To find out, researchers in several studies persuaded a group of normal-weight volunteers to eat an additional 1000 calories a day for eight weeks (Levine, Eberhardt, & Jensen, 1999), or until their weights increased by 10 percent (Leibel, Rosenbaum, & Hirsch, 1995). The results mirrored those of the semi-starvation studies. After an initial period of rapid gain, further weight increases came slowly and with great difficulty, even though the participants had access to an abundance of food and kept physical activity to a minimum. The overfed volunteers came to find the experiment unpleasant. Food became repulsive, and they had to force themselves to eat. Some even failed to reach their weight-gain goal, even though they more than doubled the number of calories they consumed each day. At the end of the experiment, however, most lost the weight again quickly.

Interestingly, those who gained the least amount of weight in the overfeeding studies (less than 1 pound) tended to expend their extra caloric energy through greater incidental physical activity, such as fidgeting, sitting up straight, and flexing muscles. This phenomenon has also been found to be true in other studies: lean people seem to be naturally disposed to move about more than overweight people (Levine and others, 2005). One recent study reported that overweight children engaged in moderate-to-vigorous physical activity for only 17 minutes per day on average, spending the vast majority of their time (86.7 percent) being sedentary (Small, Bonds-McClain, & Gannon, 2013).

Why are our bodies so painfully good at maintaining weight? According to the evolutionary perspective, the capacity to store excess calories as fat was an important survival mechanism for our ancestors. Animals that hibernate and those that must endure periods of nutritional scarcity—as did the human species throughout much of our history—store internal energy reserves when food is plentiful and live off those reserves when food is in short supply. Natural selection favored those human ancestors who developed “thrifty genes,” which increased their ability to store fat from each feast to sustain them until the next meal. Although those of us who live in well-stocked, developed countries no longer need to store so much fat, many of us continue to do so. For example, obesity is characteristic of Pima Indians living a “Western” lifestyle, whereas Pima Indians living a more traditional lifestyle remain leaner and have low levels of the fat hormone [**leptin**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term202) (Friedman and others, 2003). Similarly, Hispanic-American women have higher rates of obesity than their non-Hispanic white counterparts. This is especially true for Latinas whose families are more strongly *acculturated* to Western dietary norms (Yeh and others, 2009).

## leptin

The weight-signaling hormone monitored by the hypothalamus as an index of body fat.

## The Biological Basis of Weight Regulation

Our BMR determines how many calories we need to maintain bodily functioning, but what sets off the initial hunger pangs we all feel? Exactly what triggers hunger and its opposite—*satiety?*Researchers have tackled this question by focusing on where in the brain the signals for hunger and satiety are processed. During the 1960s, researchers located appetite centers in two areas of the hypothalamus: a side region called the *lateral hypothalamus* (*LH*), which seemed to trigger hunger, and a lower area in the middle called the *ventromedial hypothalamus* (*VMH*), which seemed to trigger satiety. Animal experiments during the 1960s demonstrated that electrical stimulation of the LH causes an animal that has eaten to the point of fullness to begin eating again; when this area is lesioned, even an animal that has not eaten in days shows no signs of hunger. Conversely, when the VMH is stimulated, animals stop eating; when this area is destroyed, they overeat to the point of extreme obesity (Hoebel & Teitelbaum, 1966). We now know that the lateral hypothalamus secretes the hunger-triggering hormone *orexin* as the time since a last meal increases and blood sugar levels drop (Sakurai and others, 1998).

## Adipocytes

**Typically, we all have about 30 billion of these fat cells, or adipocytes. They are like little storage tanks. In a thin person, the fat cells are relatively empty; as the person gains weight, the cells begin to fill up. Each of the cells in this electron photomicrograph is filled by a single lipid droplet, mostly formed by triglycerides. Connective tissue fibers, shown at the upper left, provide support for the fat cells.**

Prof. P. Motta/Dept. of Anatomy/University “La Sapienza,” Rome/Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers

Increased feelings of hunger also have been linked to an increase in the number of fat cells, or [**adipocytes**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term8), in the body. When adipocytes reach their maximum storage capacity, they divide—a condition called *fat-cell hyperplasia*. Once the number of fat cells increases in a person’s body, they never decrease, even when people diet (Spalding, 2008). People who are not obese have 25 to 30 billion fat cells. Those who are severely obese may have 200 billion or more (Hirsch, 2003). Recent animal studies show that periods of inactivity can also increase fat stores and the number of fat cells (Roberts, 2007).

## adipocytes

Collapsible body cells that store fat.

Assuming that the LH and VMH integrate the various internal signals for hunger and satiety, how does the brain maintain the body’s weight near the set point? One theory proposes that the hypothalamus regulates the number of adipocytes directly. Until recently, fat cells were believed by most researchers to be a passive system of storage. Researchers now consider fat to be a type of endocrine tissue, which produces hormones such as leptin and cytokines such as TNF-alpha (Kershaw & Flier, 2004). Researchers have discovered a hormone produced by fat cells that can trigger the formation of new ones, especially in children (Saez and others, 1998). The formation of adipose tissue also is controlled genetically—partly by WDTC1, the *adipose gene (Science Daily*, 2007).

Researchers have discussed several other specific mechanisms for regulating how often and how much we eat on a given day and for regulating our body weight over months and years.

## Short-Term Appetite Regulation

The pancreas produces the hormone insulin and assists the body in converting glucose into fat. When glucose levels fall, insulin production increases, and we feel hunger. Conversely, when glucose levels rise, hunger and insulin levels decrease. As time passes since the last meal, the level of glucose in the blood drops. In addition to insulin reduction, low blood glucose triggers a release of stored fat from body cells. As fat is depleted, the hypothalamus also arouses hunger, motivating us to replenish our fat and glucose stores by eating.

Researchers have also identified *cholecystokinin* (*CCK*), a satiety hormone released into the bloodstream by the intestine that signals when we’ve had enough to eat. CCK suppresses appetite even when injected into starving animals (Thompson, 2000). Two other short-term appetite-regulating hormones that have been identified are *ghrelin*, an appetite stimulant, and *peptide YY*(*PYY*), an appetite suppressant. The stomach produces ghrelin, which causes the pituitary gland to release growth hormone and stimulates appetite. This discovery helped clear up a mystery in appetite research: why people want to eat at specific times each day. David Cummings and his colleagues (2005) discovered that ghrelin levels rise an hour or two before mealtimes and decrease afterwards, stimulating appetite by activating neurons in the *arcuate nucleus* (*ARC*) of the hypothalamus. Ghrelin also stimulates receptors on nerve cells in the hippocampus, a brain area involved in learning and memory (Diano and others, 2006). This finding makes evolutionary sense because hungry animals need to remember where they found a food source. Most obese people have lower levels of ghrelin than those who are thinner, and ghrelin production increases in people who are dieting—explaining in part why dieters may find it increasingly difficult to stick to their regimen.

## Long-Term Weight Regulation

Why do some people seem to have more potential to become fat? Molecular biologists speculate that genetic disorders may interfere with the body’s ability to regulate the number of fat cells, thereby causing people to gain weight. In 1994, researchers discovered that laboratory mice with a defective gene for regulating the hormone leptin could not control their hunger and became obese. Leptin, produced by fat cells, is found at greater levels in people with more body fat and lower levels in those with less body fat. Because they usually have higher body fat content, women generally have higher leptin levels than men do.

As body fat increases, higher levels of leptin signal the normal brain to suppress hunger. Animals with defective leptin genes produce too little leptin and overeat. They become hugely obese and diabetic, and they have a substantially lower BMR than their genetically normal counterparts (Zhang and others, 1994). When given daily injections of leptin, they eat less, become more active, and their body weights eventually return to normal (Halaas and others, 1995).

The discovery of leptin renewed support for the set-point theory. According to this line of reasoning, if the body’s set point is something like a thermostat, leptin acts as the thermometer (Gibbs, 1996). As a person gains weight, more leptin is produced. This shuts off appetite, increases energy expenditure, and triggers other mechanisms to restore body weight to the set point. Conversely, as a person loses weight (as in dieting), levels of leptin decrease, hunger increases, and metabolism falls until the person’s weight returns to its targeted level.

Leptin’s signaling ability also may explain why most dieters regain lost weight. After dieting, less leptin is available to signal the brain, possibly increasing hunger and slowing metabolism. In normal mice, leptin levels dropped 40 percent after a three-day fast and 80 percent after a six-day fast (Nakamura and others, 2000). Although the effects of leptin have made researchers enthusiastic about its possible use as a weight-loss drug, so far their efforts have not been successful (Morton and others, 2006).

Recent studies have pointed to a different function of the hormone in animals and in people. Although some rare cases of human obesity are caused by defects in leptin production, most obese humans have higher than normal blood levels of the hormone (Marx, 2003). Some believe that the leptin receptors of obese people are simply less sensitive to leptin. Following this line of reasoning, leptin’s main role may be to protect against weight loss in times of deprivation rather than against weight gain in times of plenty. Obese people simply produce the hormone at a greater rate to compensate for a faulty signaling process (Nakamura and others, 2000).

Although injections of leptin are not effective for treating most cases of obesity in humans, the discovery of the hormone helped pinpoint the neural pathways involved in weight regulation. In particular, this pathway called ARC, which we have seen to be involved in short-term appetite regulation, contains large numbers of receptors for leptin and other hormones involved in long-term weight control. The ARC also contains two major types of neurons with opposing actions. Activation of one type, which produces a neurotransmitter called *neuropeptide Y* (*NPY*), stimulates appetite and reduces metabolism. Activation of the other type causes the release of *melanocyte-stimulating hormone*, which reduces appetite. For these reasons, the ARC has been called the “master center” for both short- and long-term weight regulation (Marx, 2003).

## Obesity: Some Basic Facts

People are concerned about what and how much they eat because of the negative physiological and psychological effects of obesity. Being overweight carries a social stigma in many parts of the world today, indicating the importance that many societies place on physical appearance. In fact, obese people are one of very few disabled groups who regularly endure public criticism. Obese children are frequently teased and, as adults, are often perceived as “ugly” and “sloppy” (Hayden-Wade and others, 2005) and as lacking in willpower (Larkin, 2007).

How our weight affects our psychological well-being depends in great part on our gender. For instance, overweight women are more likely to be depressed, even suicidal, than their thinner counterparts (Carpenter and others, 2000). Interestingly, *underweight* men are more likely to be diagnosed with clinical depression than their heavier counterparts.

How do we define obesity? In recent years, the definition of obesity has been refined to mean the presence of excess body fat. A person with an acceptable weight and figure but too much body fat could be considered obese, and his or her health could be at risk. Thus, you can be healthy or not at the same weight—it all depends on your individual fat-to-muscle ratio.

The most frequently used measure of obesity today is the [**body mass index (BMI)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term58), which is strongly correlated with percentage of body fat. Here’s how to determine your BMI: Multiply your weight in pounds (without shoes or clothes) by 705. Divide this product by your height in inches. Then divide it again by your height. Alternatively, you could use the BMI calculator at the National Institutes of Health (NIH) Web site ([**www.nhlbisupport.com/bmi/**](http://www.nhlbisupport.com/bmi/)). For example, if you weigh 140 pounds and are 5 feet 6 inches tall, your BMI would be 22.66, which is within the normal range (see [**Table 8.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T8-2)). A person with a BMI of 40 or greater is considered *morbidly obese*—having reached the point where the excess body fat begins to interfere with day-to-day movement, and even breathing. Morbid obesity is equivalent to 294 pounds for a 6-foot man or 247 pounds for a woman 5 feet 6 inches tall.

## body mass index (BMI)

A measure of obesity calculated by dividing body weight by the square of a person’s height.

## Table 8.2: Body Mass Index (BMI) and Weight

|  |
| --- |
| **BMI Categories**  Underweight = <18.5  Normal Weight = 18.5–24.9  Overweight = 25–29.9  Obese = 30–39.9  Morbidly Obese = 40+ |
| **Source:** Department of Health and Human Services. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Retrieved on October 28, 2010, from [**http://www.cdc.gov/nccdphp/dnpa/bmi/index.htm**](http://www.cdc.gov/nccdphp/dnpa/bmi/index.htm). |

There is no set ideal amount of body fat for all people because the amount of body fat changes with age. In healthy adults, acceptable levels of body fat range from 25 to 30 percent in women and from 18 to 23 percent in men.

Although the BMI provides a good estimate of body fat, it is an incomplete measure of health as it relates to body fat. For one thing, muscle-bound athletes can have BMIs of 30 or more, yet have little body fat. The most significant problem with BMI is that it reflects total body fat without regard to how it is distributed. While the overall amount of body fat is important, evidence indicates that *where* body fat is distributed may be even more significant. The excess upper body and abdominal fat associated with [**abdominal obesity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term1) (also called *male-pattern obesity*) has been linked to metabolic syndrome, inflammation, atherosclerosis, hypertension, and diabetes (Despres & Lemieux, 2006), and—pound for pound—is considered a greater overall health risk than fat that is concentrated on the hips and thighs (sometimes called *female-pattern obesity*). However, the health hazards of a high waist-to-hip ratio apply to both women and men and may even be a more accurate predictor of mortality from all causes than body mass index. To measure your waist-to-hip ratio, perform the following steps:

* **1.** Measure your waist at its slimmest point.
* **2.** Measure your hips at their widest point.
* **3.** Divide your waist measurement by your hip measurement: (waist in inches) ÷ (hips in inches) =\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_

## abdominal obesity

Excess fat around the stomach and abdomen; also called *male-pattern obesity*.

## Two Weight Extremes

**This professional football player has a BMI above 30, which puts him well into the obese category. At the other end of the scale, sinewy model Esther Canadas checks in at 5’10” and 101 pounds, for an unhealthy BMI of 14.4.**

AP Photo/David Stluka

Evan Agostini/Getty Images

Thus, a woman with a waist of 29 inches and a hip measurement of 37 would have a ratio of 0.78, while a man with a 34-inch waist and a 40-inch hip measurement would have a ratio of 0.85. Both ratios fall within the healthy range. As a rule, the desirable waist-to-hip ratio is less than 0.8 for women and less than 0.95 for men. (See [**Table 8.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T8-3) for instructions on how to measure and interpret waist circumference.) The latest research shows that the chance of suffering a heart attack or stroke increases steadily as a man’s ratio rises above 0.95; for women, risk begins to rise above 0.85 (*Harvard Health Letter*, 2013).

## Table 8.3: Interpreting Your Waist Circumference

An even simpler metric for measuring abdominal fat is waist circumference. To measure your waist circumference, take your shoes off and stand with your feet together. Relax and exhale. Using a cloth measuring tape that can’t be stretched, keep the tape parallel to the ground and measure your bare waist at the navel to the nearest one-tenth of an inch

|  | **Men** | **Women** |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Low risk | 37 inches and below | 31.5 inches and below |
| Intermediate risk | 37.1–39.9 inches | 31.6–34.9 inches |
| High risk | 40 inches and above | 35 inches and above |
| **Source:***Harvard Health Letter* (2013). Abdominal obesity and your health. [**http://www.health.harvard.edu**](http://www.health.harvard.edu/) [**fhg/updates/abdominal-obesity-and-your-health.shtml**](http://fhg/updates/abdominal-obesity-and-your-health.shtml). | | |

## Hazards of Obesity

The NIH cites obesity as second only to cigarette smoking in its importance as a behavioral factor in mortality rates. Being slightly [**overweight**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term246) is a real but modest health risk. But significant obesity presents a major risk ([**Figure 8.5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F8-5); de Gonzales and others, 2010): As body fat accumulates, it crowds the space occupied by internal organs and contributes to many chronic health problems. Consider:

* The incidence of hypertension in people who are 50 percent or more overweight is three to five times that of normal-weight people.
* The prevalence of *metabolic syndrome*, or *MetS* (the set of obesity-related factors that increase the risk for coronary artery disease, stroke, inflammation, and diabetes), increases with BMI. Overweight men are 6 times as likely and obese men are 32 times as likely as normal-weight men to meet the criteria for MetS. Overweight women are 5 times as likely and obese women are 17 times as likely to meet the criteria (Ervin, 2009).
* Obese children are more likely to have high blood pressure, high cholesterol, breathing problems such as asthma and sleep apnea, fatty liver disease, and Type 2 diabetes, which historically only affected older adults.
* During adolescence, obesity and MetS are linked to impairments in brain structure, including reduced hippocampal volumes and reduced white matter (Yau and others, 2012).
* Obese children and teens are more likely to have social and psychological problems, such as depression, and are at increased risk of bullying and poor self-esteem (Lumeng and others, 2010; Weir, 2012).
* Obesity promotes *hyperinsulinemia*, an endocrine disorder in which insulin progressively loses its effectiveness in sweeping glucose from the bloodstream into the 60 trillion or so cells of our bodies. For this reason, obesity is a leading cause of Type 2 diabetes.
* The liver manufactures more triglycerides (the most common form of dietary fat in the bloodstream) and cholesterol in those with excess body weight, which increases the risk of arthritis, gout, and gallbladder disease.
* Complications following surgery, including infection, occur more often among the obese.
* There is a strong correlation between obesity and cardiovascular diseases in both men and women, even after statistical adjustments are made for blood pressure, cholesterol, smoking, age, and diabetes.
* Obesity increases the risk of certain cancers.
* Among adults, obesity is associated with lower psychological well-being, especially among women, and with a marked increase in depression (Mendes, 2010). Obese people are mistakenly stereotyped as being slow, lazy, and undisciplined (Puhl & Heuer, 2009). Compared to women of equal intelligence, obese women earn less money, are less likely to be married, and are underrepresented among corporate CEOs (Roehling and others, 2009).

## overweight

Body weight that exceeds the desirable weight for a person of a given height, age, and body shape.

## Figure 8.5: Mortality Rates as a Function of Body Mass Index (BMI)

**Generally speaking, thinner women and men live longer. At a BMI of 40, a woman’s risk of dying is approximately 50 percent higher than that of a person with a BMI of 24; for men with a BMI over 40, the risk of death is about 2.5 times higher. However, very thin people do not have the lowest mortality rates, indicating that the relationship between weight and poor health is actually U-shaped, were the graph extended to BMIs below 18.**

**Source:** Calle, E.E., Thun, M.J., Petrelli, J.M., Rodriguez, C., & Heath, C.W. (1999). Body-mass index and mortality in a prospective cohort of U.S. adults. *New England Journal of Medicine, 341*, 1097–1105.

Given the health hazards that obesity poses, it will come as no surprise that being significantly overweight can cut life short (Adams and others, 2006). A large-scale study following more than 1 million Americans over a 14-year period reported that white men and women with the highest BMI (40 or higher) had two to six times the relative risk of death of their thinner counterparts with a BMI of 24 (Calle and others, 1999). Another large prospective study reported that adults who are overweight are likely to die 3 years earlier than their thinner counterparts (Peeters and others, 2003).

However, researchers are still debating whether having a BMI between 25 and 30 is truly hazardous. Some experts suggest that people who are short, elderly, African-, Latin-, or Asian-American suffer no ill effects unless they become truly obese (Strawbridge, Wallhagen, & Shema, 2000). For instance, while the lowest mortality rates among European-American women and men occur in those with a BMI of 24 to 25, the lowest mortality rates among African-Americans occur in those with a BMI of 27 (Durazo-Arvizu and others, 1998).

Another factor that complicates the obesity–health relationship is age. Being overweight increases the risk of death from all causes among young and middle-aged adults (Adams and others, 2006). After about age 65, however, being *underweight* is actually associated with increased risk of dying from all causes (Diehr and others, 1998) because losing weight in late adulthood generally leads to less muscle, thinner bones, and greater risk of accidents and chronic disease.

While being excessively underweight or overweight is hazardous to health, [**weight cycling**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term354) (also called *yo-yo dieting*)—a pattern of repeated weight gain and loss—is also unhealthy. An ongoing study of Harvard alumni has reported that men who maintained a stable weight had significantly lower death rates from all causes (including cardiovascular disease) than did alumni who had either gained or lost a significant amount of weight over the years (Lee and others, 1993). Short-term weight gains and losses, however, are not linked to increased death rates (Maru and others, 2004).

## weight cycling

Repeated weight gains and losses through repeated dieting.

## The Biopsychosocial Model of Obesity

Although it is tempting to take the view that obesity is simply the result of overeating, research shows that this is an oversimplification. Those who are overweight often do *not* eat more than their thin friends do. Rather, obesity is a complex phenomenon involving biological, social, and psychological factors in both its causes and consequences (Pi-Sunyer, 2003).

## Biological Factors

Research on the biological factors that contribute to obesity has focused on the roles of heredity, the brain, and hormones in regulating appetite.

## Heredity

Twin studies and adoption studies confirm that genes contribute approximately 50 percent to the likelihood of obesity. This heritability is equal to that of body height and greater than the heritability of many disorders for which a genetic basis is generally accepted. (For a review, see Friedman and others, 2003.) Heredity influences different factors that contribute to obesity, such as basal metabolic rate (BMR). People with a naturally lower BMR burn fewer calories than their thinner counterparts. Given an obese parent, a boy is three times, and a girl six times, more likely to become obese than a child with normal-weight parents (Carriere, 2003).

The role of heredity in obesity is illustrated by a massive study in which researchers analyzed the weights of more than 3500 adopted Danish children and their biological and adoptive parents (Meyer & Stunkard, 1994). The study found a strong relationship between the body weights of adoptees and their biological parents, but little or no relationship between the weights of offspring and their adoptive parents. Additional evidence comes from the strong correlation (0.74) between the body weights and BMIs of identical twins, even when they are raised in separate households (Plomin and others, 1997; Schousboe and others, 2004). The much lower correlation between the body weights and BMIs of fraternal twins (0.32) suggests that genes account for approximately two-thirds of individual differences in BMI (Maes, Neale, & Eaves, 1997).

Because most studies to date have used primarily European-American samples to investigate the genetics of BMI, it is fair to ask whether these estimates of heritability apply equally to all races and ethnic groups. There are, in fact, slight ethnic differences in body composition (Wagner & Heyward, 2000). Nevertheless, one examination of BMI among African-American and white schoolchildren from Philadelphia found no significant differences in estimates of heritability between the two groups (Katzmarzyk and others, 1999).

Many different genes influence body weight, most of which, individually, seem to have small effects (Walters and others, 2010). For example, one global study of 40,000 people identified a variant of the FTO gene (see [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03)), which seems to double the risk of becoming obese (Frayling and others, 2007). How might the so-called *fat mass and obesity-associated gene* influence obesity? One possibility is that a variant of the gene might influence BMR, perhaps lowering it and thus promoting weight gain because the body does not burn as many calories. To find out, researchers measured the height, weight, and waist-to-hip ratios of 2700 elementary school kids in Scotland (Cecil and others, 2008). They also took saliva samples to check FTO genes. As expected, overweight and obese children were more likely to have the FTO gene variant. The most interesting part of the study involved a subgroup of 76 students who had their metabolism monitored for 10 days while eating special test meals at the school. The researchers weighed the available food before and after each meal to see how much the kids had eaten. The results showed that the FTO variant was not associated with reduced metabolism; rather, it was linked to eating more food, especially high-calorie food. So the FTO variant that confers a predisposition to obesity seems to be involved in food intake and food choice—especially a preference for energy-dense foods—not how the body handles those calories.

## Destiny? Genetics versus Environmental Factors

Despite the evidence for the role of biological factors in obesity, it is important to recognize that specific genetic defects are involved in only about 4 percent of cases of human obesity (Clement and others, 2002). Rates of obesity have increased dramatically in recent years, which means that genes can’t explain it all. The role of genetic factors in obesity is complex and polygenic (determined by the interaction of several genes), and each of the genes involved may have a relatively small effect. Moreover, heredity alone does not destine a person to be fat. Obesity is a product of genetic vulnerability and environmental factors or maladaptive behaviors (Morrison, 2008). What appears to be inherited is a *tendency* to be overweight; the amount overweight a person becomes is affected by diet and activity level. Regular activity and a healthy diet can limit genetic tendencies toward obesity.

## Psychosocial Factors

Hunger and eating behavior are not controlled by physiological factors alone. Psychosocial factors also come into play. One 32-year study of over 12,000 people found that a person is most likely to become obese when a friend is obese (Christakis & Fowler, 2007), and if that friend is a close one, the odds almost triple. As another example, we are conditioned to associate eating with holidays, personal achievements, and most social occasions. And the giving of food is among the first symbols of love between a parent and child. Should we be surprised that people are conditioned to turn to food when they are upset, anxious, or under stress? The idea of *stress–eating* associations is embodied in the familiar concept of *comfort food*. A recent study of college students demonstrated that being provided comfort food during childhood was an important predictor of later stress eating (Brown, Schiraldi, & Wrobleski, 2009).

Neil Grunberg and I (Grunberg & Straub, 1992) asked groups of men and women seated in a comfortable living room to watch either a stressful film about eye surgery or a pleasant travelogue. Within their reach were bowls of snack foods, including M&M candies. The bowls were weighed before and after each session to determine how much of each snack food the subjects ate. All the men and those women who reported little concern about dieting and body weight ate fewer M&Ms when watching a stressful film than did those who watched the non-stressful film. Women who reported being especially conscious of their weight and who had a history of frequent dieting, however, consumed more sweets when stressed.

A growing body of evidence indicates that both acute and chronic stresses are associated with eating in the absence of hunger (Rutters and others, 2009). One study drew on data from the Health and Behavior in Teenagers Study (HABITS) to determine whether long-term stress is associated with unhealthy eating, particularly of fatty foods and snacks (Cartwright and others, 2003). The HABITS sample is a large, socioeconomically and ethnically diverse sample of 4320 schoolchildren (mean age = 12 years) who completed questionnaire measures of stress and dietary practices. Girls and boys who reported the highest levels of stress ate more fatty food and snacks than their less stressed peers, and were less likely to consume the recommended five or more daily fruits and vegetables or to eat breakfast. These data suggest that stress may contribute to long-term disease risk by triggering unhealthy patterns of eating.

## Culture, Socioeconomic Status, and Gender

Genes cannot explain why being overweight or obese is more prevalent today than in the past. Today, the average woman in the United States is 5 feet 4 inches tall, weighs between 140 and 150 pounds, has a waist size of 34 to 35 inches, and wears a size 12 to 14 dress. Women 50 years ago averaged the same height, but weighed only about 120 pounds, had a waist of approximately 24 to 25 inches, and wore a size 8 dress (Peeke, 2010). In the late 1980s, 47 percent of Americans were classified as overweight or obese; today this figure has jumped to 65 percent (Freking, 2006). Americans are fatter today than their parents and grandparents ever were, and they are getting fatter every year.

Genes also cannot explain why the increase in weight in our population is not evenly distributed; there has been a disproportionate increase in the number of massively obese people in recent years, especially in certain ethnic groups. Within the United States, obesity is more prevalent among African-Americans, Hispanic-Americans, Native Americans, and other minority groups ([**Figure 8.6**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F8-6)). It is interesting to note that African-American adolescents are less concerned about adhering to a thin ideal for women than are European-Americans, perhaps because for many, a strong, positive racial identity promotes self-esteem and lowers the risk of body image dissatisfaction (Hesse-Biber and others, 2004). Socioeconomic factors also may be helpful in explaining this relationship. Particularly among women in developed countries, there is an inverse relationship between obesity and socioeconomic status (SES), with people of lower SES more likely to be overweight than those who are more affluent. The fact that members of minority groups are disproportionately represented among lower-SES groups helps explain why they are more likely to be overweight (Sanchez-Vaznaugh and others, 2009).

## Figure 8.6: Percentage of U.S. Women and Men Who Are Overweight and Obese

**Among adults in the United States, the prevalence of obesity (BMI ≥ 30) and of overweight and obesity combined (BMI ≥ 25) shows significant variation by racial and ethnic groups.**

**Source:** Ogden, C.L., Carroll, M.D., Kit, B.K., & Flegal, K. M. (2012). Prevalence of obesity in the United States, 2009–2010. *NCHS Data Brief, no. 82*. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services.

In 2008, almost 17 percent of U.S. children and adolescents aged 2–19 years were obese. Low-income children and adolescents are more likely to be obese than their higher-income counterparts, but the relationship is not consistent across race and ethnicity groups (Ogden and others, 2010). Public health researchers commonly use the [**poverty income ratio (PIR)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term267), defined as the ratio of household income to the poverty threshold after accounting for inflation and family size. The prevalence of obesity among boys living in households with income at or above 35 percent of the poverty level is 11.9 percent, while 21.1 percent of those who live below 13 percent of the poverty level are obese. Among girls, 12 percent of those with income at or above 35 percent of the poverty level are obese, while 19.3 percent of those with income below 13 percent of the poverty level are obese (Ogden and others, 2010).

## poverty income ratio(PIR)

The ratio of household income to the poverty threshold after accounting for inflation and family size.

However, the relationship among income, ethnicity, and weight also varies with gender. There is a clear income gradient in overweight prevalence among women: Poor women are 1.4 times as likely to be overweight as women with middle incomes and 1.6 times as likely to be overweight as women with high incomes. For men of all races, however, there is little evidence of an income-related gradient in the prevalence of overweight.

Being overweight or obese is also inversely related to education and occupation level. Among all young people between 16 and 24 years of age, those who are overweight tend not only to have lower personal incomes, but also to have completed fewer years of education and to work in lower occupational categories than their normal-weight counterparts (Martin and others, 2008). Once again, these socioeconomic variables have a greater predictive value in women than in men. Men and women of all races with a college degree are less likely to be overweight than men and women with fewer than 12 years of education. Since the mid-1970s, however, the prevalence of being overweight or obese among men and women has increased steadily at all education levels (NCHS, 2012).

Why are less educated, lower-SES people at increased risk for obesity? Their risk factors include more limited access to health care services, less knowledge about the importance of a healthy diet and the hazards of obesity, lower perceived self-efficacy in being able to increase their fruit and vegetable intake, and less exercise (Steptoe and others, 2003). Data from the massive Monitoring the Future Study also suggest that social disparities in body weight may occur because African-American women, Hispanic women, and men with lower SES are less likely to practice six important health behaviors regularly: eating breakfast, eating green vegetables, eating fruit, exercising, watching television in moderation, and sleeping seven hours each night (Clarke, O’Malley, & Johnston, 2009). It also has been suggested that the greater daily stress associated with poverty—resulting from prejudice, crowding, and crime, for example—may trigger increased eating as a defensive coping mechanism. Thus, it is not surprising that obesity is less prevalent among minority Americans who live in more affluent neighborhoods than among those living in lower-SES neighborhoods (Hazuda and others, 1991). Higher-SES adolescents also display greater awareness of the social ideals of slimness and are more likely to have family and friends who are trying to lose weight (Wardle and others, 2004).

Accessibility of healthy foods can apparently offset the dietary hazards of low income. A study compared the dietary composition and food attitudes of a large sample of culturally diverse, low- to middle-income middle school students attending two schools. Students who attended a private school where nutritious lunch and snack food choices were available had significantly lower fat in their overall diets and greater awareness of the benefits of a healthy diet than did students attending a public school where food choices were more limited and less nutritious (Frenn & Malin, 2003). This was true despite the fact that, as a group, the private school students came from families with significantly lower incomes than those of students attending the public school.

The issue of access to healthy foods and other barriers to adherence to a healthy-weight lifestyle comes into sharp focus when one considers the plight of residents of cities such as Detroit and Chicago, where a much higher-than-average percentage of citizens are obese. There are hundreds of fast-food restaurants and convenience stores that stock fatty snack foods within the Chicago city limits, but there are only eight major supermarkets that sell fruits, vegetables, and other nutritious foods. To make matters worse, in this sprawling city nearly 22 percent of the population doesn’t own a car, and the city has a very weak public transportation system (Freking, 2006). This makes it nearly impossible for many Detroiters and Chicagoans to escape the [**food deserts**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term144) of their neighborhoods in order to purchase healthy foods (Wehunt, 2009).

## food deserts

Geographical areas with little or no access to foods needed to maintain a healthy diet.

In the face of results such as these, health psychologists and legislators are calling for wide-scale public health and policy interventions. Among those being considered are bills that would extend nutrition labeling beyond packaged foods to include foods at fast-food restaurants and the banning of soft drink and snack food machines in schools. Some health psychologists and urban planners are also calling for a shift away from cities built around the automobile toward more “walkable cities” that reengineer physical activity back into daily routines. In support of this idea, researchers have found that people who live in sprawling cities such as Detroit, and who must therefore rely more on their cars to commute from distant homes to stores and places of employment, weigh more than people who live in more compact cities (Saelens and others, 2003). They also are more likely to suffer from hypertension, another risk factor for obesity.

## Treatment and Prevention of Obesity

Obesity is highly stigmatized. Beginning in nursery school, children show a dislike of fatness, rating drawings of fat children as having fewer friends, being less liked by parents, doing less well at school, and being lazier, less happy, and less attractive than thinner children (Latner & Stunkard, 2003; Teachman and others, 2003). And it continues into adulthood, with discrimination against the obese occurring in housing, college admissions, and employment (Puhl & Brownell, 2001).

Because antifat prejudice is so strong and because fat people are generally held responsible for their condition, some psychologists maintain that weight discrimination is even greater than race and gender discrimination and that it affects every aspect of employment, including hiring, promotion, and salary (Roehling & Winters, 2000). Even health professionals who specialize in obesity hold hidden biases toward their obese patients, using words such as *lazy, stupid*, and *worthless* to describe obese people that they come into contact with (Schwartz and others, 2003).

This prejudice against obesity has led to a proliferation of different weight-reduction regimens.

## Dieting

A stroll through any bookstore will give you a quick idea of the vast array of dieting strategies—everything from preplanned meals with strict calorie limits to single-food plans to hypnosis. It’s easy to be cynical about the number of choices. If any of them were truly effective, there would not be a market for such variety. The main beneficiaries of most of these books are their authors.

Successful weight loss in adults is often defined as at least a 10 percent reduction of initial weight that is maintained for one year (Rich, 2004). Weight losses of this magnitude generally produce significant improvements in health in most overweight adults. However, many people (especially women who are not overweight) are trying to shed pounds for reasons that have little or nothing to do with health. The increasing popularity of dieting has been attributed to the growing cultural pressure to be slim.

## How Effective Are Diets?

Dieting alone usually does not work to take weight off and keep it off (Mann and others, 2007). The best way to lose weight and keep it off is to develop sound eating habits *and* to engage in regular physical exercise to raise the BMR. For the overweight and obese, doing so will not only increase the chances of successful weight loss, but it will also improve the individual’s perceived quality of life, which is a major reason people seek medical attention for obesity (Kushner & Foster, 2000; Rejeski and others, 2002).

Even though most diets fail, Americans spend billions of dollars each year on them. Nearly two-thirds of adults say they are over their ideal weight; 55 percent say they would like to lose weight, yet only 27 percent say they are “seriously trying” to lose weight (Jones, 2009). The gap between the percentage of adults who would like to weigh less and who are actively making the attempt has existed for many years. Overall, 17 percent of teens aged 12 to 19 say they are actively trying to lose weight. This includes only about half of those who are actually overweight, 48 percent of whom say they are trying to lose weight (Saad, 2006).

## Why Diets Fail

One reason that diets fail is that many people are not very good at calculating the number of calories their bodies need or the size of the food portions they are eating. Underestimating calorie consumption is a common problem in many failed diets. In one study, for example, obese dieters reported eating an average of 1028 calories per day, but their actual intake was 2081 calories, more than twice as many calories as reported.

Diets also fail because many people have unrealistic expectations and find it nearly impossible to comply with dietary restrictions for very long (Wadden, Butryn, & Wilson, 2007). Inconvenience and feelings of deprivation are often cited as factors that undermine adherence (Jeffery and others, 2004). One randomized clinical trial assessed the effectiveness and adherence rates of four popular diets—Atkins, Zone, Weight Watchers, and Ornish. All four diets resulted in “modest, statistically significant weight loss,” with no differences in effectiveness among diets. However, only one in four participants were able to sustain that weight loss one year later (Dansinger and others, 2005).

The most successful diets are clinical interventions that include some form of post-treatment following weight loss, such as social support, exercise programs, or continued contact with the therapist. One study found that 18 months after finishing a diet program, those who did not participate in a post-treatment phase regained 67 percent of their weight, compared with 17 percent of dieters who participated in a post-treatment program combining exercise and social support (Perri, 1998).

For many people, group treatments produce better results than individual, self-help interventions (Perri and others, 2008). Commercial group programs like Weight Watchers typically promote social support, self-monitoring in the form of daily food diaries, and discussion about exercise and nutrition as key components. In one study, two-thirds of the participants who enrolled in a group weight-loss program with friends kept their lost weight off six months after the program ended, compared to only one-fourth of those who attended alone (Wing & Jeffery, 1999).

## *Your Health Assets*: Lose Weight the Smart Way

If you are struggling with obesity, you should seek medical guidance. For those who just want to shed a few pounds, here are a few tips:

* *Set a weight loss goal only if you are motivated and self-disciplined*. Losing weight and keeping it off requires a lifestyle change combining healthier eating habits with increased exercise.
* *Make healthy food choices*. Choose fresh fruits, vegetables, whole grains, legumes, and healthy fats.
* *Get more exercise*. Exercise burns calories, suppresses appetite, and helps lower your body’s weight set point.
* *Keep tempting foods out of sight*. Buy mostly fresh, whole foods like fruits, vegetables, fish and other lean proteins, eggs, and low-fat or nonfat dairy products. Avoid processed packaged foods with long lists of ingredients, especially those that are artificial and hard to pronounce.
* *Manage portion size*. Keep meals simple and modest in size, even when eating healthy foods.
* *Don’t starve yourself to eat one big meal*. This eating pattern slows metabolism and causes calories to be stored as fat more readily.
* *Eat slowly and beware of binge eating*. People who eat slowly tend to eat less. Conversely, eating quickly, and eating when you drink alcohol or feel anxious, can cause you to overeat.

## Behavioral and Cognitive Therapy

Behavior modification, particularly in conjunction with cognitive intervention techniques, has become a mainstay of many contemporary weight-loss programs. Behavior modification programs typically include the following components:

* *Stimulus control* procedures to identify and limit the number of cues that trigger eating (for example, confining eating to one particular place)
* *Self-control* techniques to slow the act of eating (for example, chewing each bite a set number of times or putting down silverware between bites)
* *Aerobic exercise* to boost metabolism, burn calories, and help curb appetite
* *Contingency contracts* in which therapist-delivered or self-controlled reinforcement is made dependent upon reaching weight-loss goals (for example, the client puts up a sum of money to be earned back as goals are attained)
* *Social support* of family members and friends, who are enlisted to provide additional reinforcement for success and compliance
* *Careful self-monitoring* and recordkeeping to increase awareness of what foods are eaten and the circumstances under which eating occurs
* *Relapse prevention therapy* to teach people who are trying to maintain changes in their behavior how to anticipate and cope with urges, cravings, and high-risk situations

Self-monitoring is often sufficient in and of itself to promote and maintain weight loss. In fact, several studies have shown that about 25 percent of weight-control success is due to consistent self-monitoring (Elfhag & Rossner, 2005). Raymond Baker and Daniel Kirschenbaum (1998) examined self-monitoring of eating behaviors during three holiday periods (Thanksgiving, Christmas/Hanukkah, and New Year’s Eve). Compared with the controls who gained weight, those participants who were the most thorough in recordkeeping actually lost weight during the holiday weeks. Other researchers have pointed to the effectiveness of another aspect of self-monitoring in weight loss: memory of recent eating. One study examined the effect of being reminded of a recent eating episode on subsequent food intake (Higgs, 2002). Participants ate less following exposure to a “lunch cue,” in which they were simply asked to think about what they had eaten for lunch earlier that day.

Recently, advocates of behavioral treatments have broadened their focus to include a greater concern with the types of foods consumed, the need for exercise and coping skills to aid in overcoming high-risk relapse situations, responses to violating diet and/or binge eating, and primary prevention of obesity during childhood. Consumption of unhealthy food choices can be reduced by increasing the behavioral costs associated with obtaining them—through decreased access, for instance—and by providing healthy alternative foods and enjoyable activities.

Efforts to limit access to unhealthy foods are often controversial, as seen most recently in New York City with the attempted ban on large, sugary sodas (Grynbaum, 2013). However, such efforts can have big payoffs. For example, Daniel Taber and his colleagues (2012) recently reported the results of a study that tracked more than 6000 students in 40 states. Kids in states with strict laws governing the sale of snacks and sodas in schools gained less weight from fifth grade to eighth grade than kids in states with weaker or fewer school food regulations.

**Efforts to limit access to unhealthy foods are often controversial, as seen most recently in New York City with the attempted ban on large, sugary sodas.**

Photo by Spencer Platt/Getty Images

Behavioral methods are most successful when they are combined with cognitive techniques that recognize that overweight people often start treatment with unrealistic expectations and self-defeating thoughts. *Cognitive behavior therapy* (*CBT*) focuses on the reciprocal interdependence of feelings, thoughts, behavior, consequences, social context, and physiological processes. The underlying premise of these therapies is that eating habits and attitudes must be modified on a permanent basis for weight loss and the maintenance of that loss to occur.

Rather than attempting to force quick and dramatic weight losses, CBT focuses on the gradual loss of one to two pounds per week, using a combination of conditioning, self-control, and cognitive restructuring techniques, in which the person learns to control self-defeating thoughts about body weight and dieting. When it comes to weight loss and management in children, CBT generally focuses on prevention, including establishing healthy eating behaviors in the individual and family; reducing television viewing, Internet surfing, and computer-game playing; and promoting positive attitudes toward food. Positive eating messages are critical because studies have shown that dieting during childhood actually may promote weight gain and unhealthy eating behaviors later in life.

Any therapeutic intervention for obesity will be most successful when health psychologists recognize that patients differ in which treatment will be most effective for them. Kelly Brownell and Thomas Wadden (1991) proposed the *stepped-care* process for determining which intervention is most appropriate for a given person (see [**Figure 8.7**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F8-7)). A seriously obese person may require more aggressive and intensive treatment than someone who is moderately obese. After considering relevant factors about the client, including degree of obesity, eating patterns, and medical history, a health psychologist structures the safest, least intensive intervention that will meet that person’s needs. Only if this treatment is ineffective is a more intensive intervention warranted.

## Figure 8.7: Stepped Care in the Treatment of Obesity

**In general, people at levels 1 or 2 should be able to lose weight through steps 1 and 2. At level 3, treatment should begin with step 2 and extend through 4. Those at level 4 who have medical problems may need surgery to solve their weight-loss problems. However, before a health psychologist sets up a program, he or she considers all factors related to both the client and the program (as listed on the right).**

**Source:** Brownell, K.D., & Wadden, T.A. (1991). The heterogeneity of obesity: Fitting individuals to treatments. *Behavior Therapy, 22*, 153–177.

Marlene Schwartz and Kelly Brownell (1995) asked 33 weight-loss experts from several fields (psychology, nutrition, internal medicine, surgery, and neuroendocrinology) to compare 11 popular weight-loss approaches, including self-directed dieting, Weight Watchers, behavioral programs, medication, and surgery. Among their findings:

* Self-directed dieting was recommended for those with mild to moderate obesity, except for people with a history of weight cycling.
* Commercial programs with group support were recommended for an initial weight-loss attempt or for people who had not been able to diet effectively on their own.
* Very low-calorie diets and surgery were recommended only for those with a medical problem complicated by their obesity.
* Medical supervision was considered necessary for people with diabetes and others with medical conditions that are likely to change with dieting.
* Individual counseling and behavioral weight-loss programs were considered appropriate for those with eating disorders.

Matching individuals to treatment is important because people with different personality styles, levels of obesity, medical histories, and eating practices will respond differently to various treatments (Carels and others, 2005).

## Fit Families, Fit Communities

The causes of obesity are as complex as its health hazards. Recall the ecological model that depicts a series of concentric circles, the central one of which is an individual person (see [**Figure 1.5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F1-5) in [**Chapter 1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch01)). Moving outward, the circles represent ever-broader influences on a health behavior: the family, the neighborhood, the school, the community, and society at large.

In over 30 years of research, Leonard Epstein and his colleagues (2012, 2011) have found that the most successful ways to help kids lose weight are *lifestyle interventions* that combine diet, physical activity, and behavioral control *and* that target both parents and children simultaneously. The trick is to help parents engineer healthy home environments by removing TVs from bedrooms, limiting computer time, teaching parents how to find and prepare nutritious foods on a budget, and making physical activity a routine for the entire family. Equally important is *social facilitation maintenance*, extending an intervention across the home, peer, and community environments to build social support and help kids and families keep weight off after they’ve lost it. The school environment is particularly important since kids consume 35 percent to 50 percent of their total calories at school, many from [**competitive foods**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term91) purchased from vending machines, school stores, and à la carte cafeteria offerings that typically include cookies, candy, and chips. Fortunately, modifying school environments has become easier since, in 2010, Congress passed the Healthy, Hunger-Free Kids Act, which set new school food policies that will reduce fat and sugar and increase whole grains, fresh fruits, and vegetables.

## competitive foods

Foods and beverages that are often high in calories, sugar, fat, and sodium that are sold in schools in vending machines, à la carte lines, and student stores.

Making healthy food choices, self-monitoring, and preventing obesity with other steps that people take on their own to maintain weight may be especially difficult today because too many of us live, work, and attend school in what has been described as an *obesigenic* (obesity-promoting) *environment* (Lowe, 2003). Unhealthy foods are everywhere, and our bodies are genetically programmed to eat when food is available. Consequently, experts are calling for broader community strategies and public health measures in the war on obesity (Khan and others, 2009). These community strategies fall into six categories:

* *Promote the availability of affordable healthy food and beverages*. These include increasing the availability and affordability of healthier food and beverage choices in schools, day-care centers, city and county buildings, and other public service venues; offering incentives for supermarkets to relocate in underserved areas and offer healthier food choices; and providing incentives for the production, distribution, and purchase of food directly from farms.
* *Support healthy food and beverage choices*. These include offering smaller portion-size options in public service venues, limiting advertising of less healthy foods and beverages, and discouraging the consumption of sugar-sweetened beverages.
* *Encourage breast-feeding* (which is linked to decreased pediatric overweight and obesity). These include providing educational interventions, breast-feeding support programs, and increased availability of maternal care in hospitals, workplaces, and public service venues.
* *Encourage physical activity or limit sedentary activity among children and youth*. These include requiring time for physical education in schools, increasing community opportunities for extracurricular physical recreation, and reducing television and other sources of screen time in public service areas.
* *Create safe communities that support physical activity*. These include expanding access to outdoor recreational facilities; enhancing infrastructure to support bicycling and walking by creating safe, well-lit bike lanes, sidewalks, trails, and footpaths; and improving access to public transportation.
* *Encourage communities to organize for change*. These include creating partnerships to address obesity among health care professionals, educational institutions, government, industry, and the media.

## Eating Disorders

For some dieters, especially young, overachieving women like Jodi—the young woman we met at the beginning of the chapter—obsession with weight control may turn into a serious eating disorder.

[**Anorexia nervosa**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term24) is an eating disorder characterized by failure to maintain body weight above a BMI of 18, intense fear of weight gain, and disturbance of body image for at least three months (American Psychiatric Association, 2013). Because a healthy percentage of body fat is necessary for menstruation, post-pubescent women develop amenorrhea if they lose too much weight.

## anorexia nervosa

An eating disorder characterized by self-starvation, a distorted body image, and, in females, amenorrhea.

Anorexia can lead to many serious medical complications, including:

* slowed thyroid function,
* irregular breathing and heart rhythm,
* low blood pressure,
* dry and yellowed skin,
* brittle bones,
* anemia, lightheadedness, and dehydration,
* swollen joints and reduced muscle mass,
* intolerance to cold temperatures, and
* starvation.

The second major eating disorder is [**bulimia nervosa**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term62). Bulimia involves compulsive bingeing followed by purging through self-induced vomiting or large doses of laxatives. Some sufferers purge regularly, others only after a binge. For example, they may consume as many as 5000 to 10,000 calories at one time, eating until they are exhausted, in pain, or out of food. People with bulimia also engage in compulsive exercise to try to control their weight. And, unlike those with anorexia, people with bulimia typically maintain a relatively normal weight (Wonderlich and others, 2007)—as Jodi initially did until she moved out on her own and began reducing her food intake. People who engage in recurrent binge-eating episodes, followed by feelings of distress or guilt, but without the compensatory behaviors of purging, fasting, or excessive exercise that mark bulimia nervosa, are said to have [**binge-eating disorder**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term50).

## bulimia nervosa

An eating disorder characterized by alternating cycles of binge eating and purging through such techniques as vomiting or laxative abuse.

## binge-eating disorder

An eating disorder in which a person frequently consumes unusually large amounts of food.

Although as many as half of all college women report having binged and purged at some time (Fairburn & Wilson, 1993), most would not be considered bulimic. The criteria for a clinical diagnosis include at least one bulimic episode a week for at least three months, lack of control over eating, behavior designed to avoid weight gain, and persistent, exaggerated concern about weight (APA, 2013).

Unlike anorexia, which has a mortality rate of 2 to 15 percent, bulimia is rarely fatal. But it puts sufferers at risk for many serious health problems, including the following:

* Laxative dependence.
* Hypoglycemia (low blood sugar) and lethargy from eating an unbalanced diet (often one high in sweets but lacking sufficient fatty acids).
* Damaged teeth from purging because hydrochloric acid from the stomach erodes tooth enamel. (Dentists are often the first health care professionals to suspect bulimia.)
* Bleeding and tearing of the esophagus from vomiting.
* Anemia (a condition involving a lack of hemoglobin in the blood) and electrolyte imbalance caused by loss of sodium, potassium, magnesium, and other body minerals from purging.

Bulimic episodes are reported by 40 to 50 percent of people with anorexia. It is possible for an individual to meet the criteria for both disorders at the same time.

## Demographics

Anorexia and bulimia are unique among psychological disorders in having a strong gender bias (three out of four are females) and in the substantial increase in these disorders during the past century. Before the 1970s, eating disorders generally were found only among upper-middle-class women in Western cultures. Since then, disordered eating has been increasing among other populations, so SES and ethnocultural identity are no longer reliable predictors.

It is estimated that at some point during their lifetimes, 0.6 percent of people in the United States meet the criteria for anorexia, 1 percent for bulimia, and 2.8 percent for binge-eating disorder (Hudson and others, 2007). College women are particularly at risk, as are young women between ages 15 and 19 who attend ballet, gymnastics, or modeling academies. Athletes also are at increased risk of eating disorders, even those who participate in sports that do not emphasize appearance or an overly thin body. Until recently, it was thought that only about 10 percent of the diagnosed cases of eating disorders were men. It is now estimated that about one in four of the estimated 8 million Americans with eating disorders are male (Hudson and others, 2007). Of this group, male athletes—especially swimmers, rowers, and wrestlers—are especially vulnerable (Weinberg & Gould, 2010).

## Applying the Biopsychosocial Model

## Biological Factors

A young person’s body image at the onset of puberty may foretell healthy or disordered eating behaviors. Girls who perceive the timing of their development to be early tend to feel the least positive about their bodies, whereas girls who perceive their development to be on time feel the most attractive and have the most positive body images (McLaren, Hardy, & Kuh, 2003; Striegel-Moore and others, 2001). Early-maturing girls may feel less comfortable with their bodies because at a time when peer acceptance is crucial to self-esteem, their bodies are different from those of the majority of their peers. On-time development may present the fewest psychological challenges to adolescent girls.

Biochemical abnormalities at all levels of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis are associated with both anorexia and bulimia (Gluck and others, 2004). These include abnormal levels of norepinephrine and other neurotransmitters that may promote clinical depression (Fava and others, 1989). There is also evidence that bulimia may be caused in part by disturbances in the brain’s supply of *endorphins*, the opiatelike neurotransmitters linked to pain control and pleasure. Researchers have found that *opiate antagonists*, which block the action of the endorphins, may be an effective treatment in reducing the frequency of binge-purge episodes. Researchers also have discovered that serum levels of leptin are significantly reduced in people with anorexia (Calandra, Musso, & Musso, 2003).

Might people inherit a predisposition to eating disorders? Studies of eating disorders within families and among twins reveal a possible genetic influence on anorexia and bulimia. Consider:

* Twin and adoption studies both indicate significant genetic influences on eating disorders (Klump and others, 2009). When one twin has bulimia, the chances of the other twin’s sharing the disorder are substantially greater if they are identical twins rather than fraternal twins (Root and others, 2010).
* Molecular geneticists are currently searching for specific genes that may influence susceptibility to eating disorders. To date, findings indicate some role for genes involving the serotonin, dopamine, and estrogen systems in the development of anorexia nervosa (Klump and others, 2009). These systems have been implicated in anxiety as well as in food intake, and accordingly, may be disrupted in eating disorders.

## Psychological Factors

Other theorists argue that the roots of eating disorders can be found in certain psychological situations, such as the competitive, semiclosed social environments of some families, athletic teams, and college sororities.

The families of people with anorexia tend to be high achieving, competitive, overprotective, and characterized by intense interactions and poor conflict resolution (Pate and others, 1992). The families of people with bulimia have a higher-than-average incidence of alcoholism, drug addiction, obesity, and depression (Miller, McCluskey-Fawcett, & Irving, 1993). Researchers caution, however, against assuming that all children from such homes are alike. Eating disorders are *not*, for example, a telltale sign of an alcohol abuser’s home environment (Mintz, Kashubeck, & Tracy, 1995). Young women with anorexia and bulimia rate their relationships with their parents as disengaged, unfriendly, even hostile (Wonderlich, Klein, & Council, 1996). They also feel less accepted by their parents, who are perceived as overly critical, neglectful, and poor communicators (Calam and others, 1990). Stated more broadly, eating disorders have been linked to insecure attachments in social relationships (Troisi and others, 2006).

Until recently, researchers focused almost exclusively on the role of the mother in her daughter’s disordered eating, tracing its roots to the relationship between infant and primary caregiver (Bruch, 1982). More recent research encourages a shift away from the once popular “blame mother” view of adolescent eating disorders. Apparently *both* parents play important roles in influencing the development of healthy eating behaviors in their children.

**How much blame for girls’ plump body image should be placed on the unrealistic body dimensions of Barbie and other popular dolls? By one estimate, to achieve “Barbie doll proportions,” a female of average height would have to gain 12 inches in height, lose 5 inches from her waistline, and add 4 inches to her bustline!**

Despite living in a society that stigmatizes obesity and idealizes thinness, there are many more Americans who are overweight or obese (65 percent) than suffering from eating disorders (0.5–3 percent). As a result of this disparity between the ideal and reality, body image dissatisfaction is so pervasive in the United States that it represents a “normative discontent” among women of all shapes and sizes (Striegel-Moore and others, 1993). Judy Rodin (1992) has argued that women too often are brought up to believe that their appearance is not solely their own business. How daughters look, for instance, is an open topic of conversation in many families, making them feel their bodies are fair game for public scrutiny. Sadly, given the common gap between their *actual selves* and *ideal selves*, many come away feeling exposed and shamed. The increased prevalence of eating disorders during the last half-century has coincided with this epidemic of body image dissatisfaction (Feingold & Mazzella, 1996). Those most vulnerable to eating disorders are also those who have the greatest body image dissatisfaction and who idealize thinness (Striegel-Moore & Bulik, 2007).

## Anorexia

**Young girls, as well as an increasing number of boys, who have anorexia look at themselves in the mirror and see not the superthin person that we see, but someone who is overweight and still needs to shed more pounds. If this boy and girl continue to lose weight, their physiological systems will become overburdened with the job of trying to maintain a functioning system with minimal caloric intake. At the extreme, their hearts may stop pumping.**

Richard T. Nowitz/Corbis

Begsteiger/AgeFotostock

## Sociocultural Factors

Sociocultural factors may explain why anorexia and bulimia occur more often in women than in men and more often in weight-conscious Western cultures, and why the prevalence of eating disorders has increased in recent years (see [**Diversity and Healthy Living: Eating Disorders and Ethnocultural Identity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B8-22)). According to the sociocultural view, dieting and disordered eating are understandable responses to social roles and to cultural ideals of beauty (Seid, 1994). Binge eating, self-starvation, and thin standards of female beauty have characterized female cohorts who reached adolescence in periods when educational opportunities for women increased but have not characterized cohorts who reached adolescence when educational opportunities remained stable or decreased (Perlick & Silverstein, 1994).

Interestingly, the “thin is beautiful” standard is absent in many developing countries, where a full body means prosperity and thinness can signal poverty or illness (Swami, Kannan, & Furnham, 2011). In Niger, West Africa, for instance, fat is the beauty ideal for women, who often compete to be crowned the heaviest (Onishi, 2001). Among the Calabari of southeastern Nigeria, brides are sent to “fattening farms” before their weddings, where they gorge themselves on food and take steroid drugs to gain bulk and other pills to increase their appetites. At the end of their stay, they are paraded in the village square, where their fullness can be admired.

## Diversity and Healthy Living: Eating Disorders and Ethnocultural Identity

Traditional American standards of attractiveness are oppressive for many women, but especially for those whose own body ideals do not stem from European-American culture.

Cultures differ in the flexibility of the ideal body image. Colleen Rand and John Kuldau (1990) compared body image satisfaction in African-Americans and European-Americans, finding a greater tolerance for diversity of body type and shape in the former group. Similar differences among college students have been reported. One study found that African-American college women had a less restricted definition of ideal body weight and were less likely to become depressed after binge eating (Gray, Ford, & Kelly, 1987).

Most eating disorder research has focused on white women, to the exclusion of men, as well as other racial and ethnic groups. Maria Root (1990) identified stereotypes, racism, and ethnocentrism as reasons underlying this lack of attention. She suggested that many have adopted the stereotype of the individual with an eating disorder as a white, upper-class woman, despite evidence that ethnic minority women and men also suffer from eating disorders. In one study of 884 ethnically diverse, economically disadvantaged freshmen at an urban college, 12.2 percent of women and 7.3 percent of men were diagnosed with eating disorders. Most of these students were Latin-American or “other” in their self-designation of race/ethnicity (Gentile and others, 2007).

It also has been suggested that many experts believe that certain factors within minority cultures, such as an appreciation of a healthier (larger) body size and less emphasis on physical appearance, make minority women invulnerable to eating disorders. Although research has demonstrated that African-American women generally have more positive attitudes toward their bodies, food, and weight than white women (Abood & Chandler, 1997), they certainly are *not* immune to developing hazardous patterns of eating.

Newer studies reveal that the relationships among ethnocultural identity, eating behaviors, and cultural expectations are complex, and that eating disorders may be more likely to develop when a young person experiences conflicting cultural demands. In one sample of 115 Hispanic-American college women, poor peer socialization and family rigidity were strong predictors of preoccupation with body weight and size, as well as symptoms of bulimia nervosa (Kuba & Harris, 2001). For the adolescent who is attempting to assimilate into a different culture, learned ways of behavior may conflict with the messages from the majority community and result in a crisis. Thus, if the Latin-American culture accepts a robust figure but the European-American culture values thinness, young Latina women may find themselves in conflict over the appropriate body image and eating behaviors. Similarly, Toshiaki Furukawa (1994) reported that Japanese exchange students developed maladaptive eating patterns (and experienced weight changes) during their time in the United States.

Ethnocultural identity develops as children learn about themselves in relation to the norms and expectations of others within their group. Most models of identity formation among people of color identify four or five distinct psychological states (Helms, 1995).

## Precultural awakening

Those in this stage often experience low self-esteem as they struggle to identify with a majority frame of reference. The roots of disordered eating often can be found in this struggle. For example, a young African-American woman may decide to stop eating certain foods because she is preoccupied with the size of her hips or thighs as she compares herself to European-American actresses.

## Dissonance stage

In this next stage, the individual becomes aware of her internal conflict and vacillates between the desire to be thin and to accept her body as it is. She may develop bulimic symptoms that represent the push and pull of two different cultures.

## Immersion-emersion

The third stage is characterized by greater self-appreciation as the young person immerses herself in her culture of origin. Although it may appear that she has formed a healthy identity, she may exaggerate her ethnocultural stereotype, even rejecting any attempt to appear physically attractive. Anger and mood swings are a predominant emotional theme of this stage. Compulsive eating may reflect this stage of thinking.

## Internalization stage

The final stage is marked by improved self-esteem and an integration of positive attitudes toward self and culture, with less anger and a greater appreciation for differences in attractiveness across cultures. One implication of these models is the need for preventive interventions that are sensitive to each individual’s stage of identity development. When the patient is in the precultural awakening stage, an appropriate strategy is to increase the young person’s awareness of her ethnocultural legacy as well as the prejudice inherent in majority cultures. Intervention during the dissonance stage should focus on the grief caused by the client’s sense of loss of culture. Development beyond this stage might be hastened by encouraging contact with others of similar ethnocultural identity.

In recent years, Western cultures have increasingly emphasized the positive attributes of slender bodies, especially for women. As Roberta Seid has noted, “Our culture has elevated the pursuit of a lean, fat-free body into a new religion. It has a creed: ‘I eat right, watch my weight, and exercise.’ Indeed, anorexia nervosa could be called the paradigm of our age, for our creed encourages us all to adopt the behavior and attitudes of the anorexic” (Seid, 1994, p. 4). Nowhere is this “religion” more apparent than in how women’s bodies are represented in the media.

## Body Image and the Media

The ideal female weight—represented by actresses, supermodels, and Miss Americas—has progressively decreased to that of the thinnest 5 to 10 percent of American women. Consequently, over three-fourths of normal-weight women think they weigh too much, and more than half are dieting at any given time (Jones, 2009). When shown images of unnaturally thin models, women often report feeling depressed, ashamed, and dissatisfied with their own bodies—emotions and attitudes linked to increased risk of eating disorders (Grabe, Ward, & Hyde, 2008).

Society’s current emphasis on thinness may be the clearest example of the power of advertising to influence cultural norms and individual behavior. Like clothing styles, body types go in and out of fashion and are promoted by advertising. Media images constantly reinforce the latest ideal, and the impact of the media in establishing role models is undeniable. With increasing Americanization and globalization, body image dissatisfaction is becoming more common among young women throughout the world, as well as among young men. Those who are most vulnerable to eating disorders are also those who idealize thinness and have the greatest body dissatisfaction (Kane, 2010; Stice, Rohde, & Shaw, 2013).

On a more encouraging note, long-term exposure to ultrathin celebrities and magazine models does not automatically lead to excessive dieting and other unhealthy behaviors. Eric Stice and his colleagues (2001) randomly assigned 13- to 17-year-old girls either to a group that received a 15-month subscription to *Seventeen* magazine or to a control group that did not receive the magazine. Over the next 20 months, only those who initially expressed body dissatisfaction experienced significant increases in dieting, depression, and symptoms of bulimia. The researchers suggested that previous studies probably found that brief exposure to ads showing lean, sinewy models resulted in sharply decreased satisfaction with personal appearance because the studies were nearly always conducted in a laboratory environment. Over a longer period of time in the more natural home environments of their participants, the feedback of supportive parents, peers, and dating partners might overshadow the media’s influence. The researchers caution, however, that their findings don’t mean that media influences should be discounted, since teenagers with poor body images might be more likely to read fashion magazines to learn more about weight-loss techniques.

## The Thin Ideal

**Over the years, judges have selected increasingly thin women as Miss USA, showing the current Western idealization of the “slim” woman.**

AP Photo/Isaac Brekken

## Treatment of Eating Disorders

A number of different therapies have been used to treat anorexia, bulimia, and binge-eating disorder. These include forcefeeding, family therapy, interpersonal therapy, dialectical behavior therapy, hypnosis, and psychodynamic approaches (Wilson, Grilo, & Vitousek, 2007). Experts agree that treatment must address both the behavior and the attitudes that perpetuate disordered eating.

Restoring body weight is, of course, the first priority in treating anorexia. In extreme cases, inpatient treatment includes force-fed diets that gradually increase from about 1500 to 3500 calories per day. In many cases, a number of secondary biological and psychological disturbances are reduced once body weight is restored. [**Family therapy**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term139) is the most heavily researched treatment for anorexia nervosa, and in general, the results of a dozen or more clinical trials have been encouraging (Wilson, Grilo, & Vitousek, 2007). The best known of these is a form of family therapy called the *Maudsley model*, an intervention applied to adolescent patients involving 10 to 20 family sessions spaced over 6 to 12 months. All family members are seen together, and initially, parents are coached to find effective ways to control their child’s eating behavior. In the next phases, this external control gradually fades and—especially with older adolescents—autonomous eating behavior is explicitly linked to long-term resolution of the eating disorder. Because motivational issues surrounding body image and food behavior must be addressed, interventions often must be maintained for long periods of time—one to two years of individual therapy is not uncommon in treating those with very low body weight (Wilson, Grilo, & Vitousek, 2007).

## family therapy

A type of psychotherapy in which individuals within a family learn healthier ways to interact with each other and resolve conflicts.

Historically, many eating disorder interventions focused on providing information about the unhealthy effects of these conditions, with the hope that this would result in behavioral changes. However, *psychoeducational programs* of this type generally were not very successful (Stice, Shaw, & Marti, 2007). As we’ll see, interventions limited to education alone have also been largely unsuccessful in preventing other problems, including substance abuse, unprotected sex, and depression.

Since the 1970s, cognitive behavior therapy (CBT) has become the treatment of choice for bulimia nervosa and binge-eating disorder (Wilson, Grilo, & Vitousek, 2007). Treatment focuses on procedures designed to: (a) enhance motivation for change, (b) replace unhealthy dieting with regular and flexible patterns of eating, (c) reduce an unhealthy concern with body weight and shape, and (d) prevent relapse. First, therapists monitor food intake, binge-eating episodes, and stimulus triggers of those episodes. They then use this information to gradually mold the patient’s eating into a pattern of three or more meals per day; introduce feared foods into the diet; and change faulty thinking and distorted attitudes about food intake, weight, and body image. Treatment typically includes 16 to 20 sessions of individual therapy over four to five months.

## How Effective Are Treatments for Eating Disorders?

Anorexia remains one of the most difficult behavior disorders to treat because many victims see nothing wrong with their eating behavior and resist any attempt to change (Agras and others, 2004). Christopher Fairburn, a leading bulimia researcher, has suggested that the long-term success rate of all eating disorder interventions is a function of two participant variables: self-esteem and body image. Regardless of the type of treatment used, patients with lower self-esteem and persistent body-image distortions tend to be less successful in terms of their long-term recovery (Fairburn, 2005; Fairburn & Wilson, 1993).

Although there are relatively few controlled studies comparing the results of treatments for anorexia, most therapies result in some weight restoration in the short term but a high relapse rate (often in excess of 50 percent) and poor long-term outcome (Wardle, 1997). Longer-term follow-up studies show that the majority of people with anorexia persist in their preoccupation with food and weight and that many continue to show psychological signs of the disorder, have low weight, and exhibit social or mood disturbances. Overall, these follow-up studies indicate that nearly 50 percent of those being treated eventually make a full recovery, 20 to 30 percent continue to show some residual symptoms, 10 to 20 percent remain severely ill, and 5 to 10 percent eventually die (Steinhausen, 2002).

Controlled outcome research on the efficacy of various forms of psychotherapy in treating bulimia nervosa is not extensive. CBT has, however, proved to be fairly effective as a primary prevention for binge eating in high-risk women (Kaminski & McNamara, 1996). The researchers recruited college women with warning signs for eating disorders: low self-esteem, poor body image, perfectionism, and a history of repeated dieting. The students were randomly assigned to either a treatment group or a control group. The treatment group received training in cognitive strategies for increasing self-esteem, challenging self-defeating thinking, improving body image, and combating social pressures for thinness. After 7 weeks, students in the treatment group showed greater improvement in self-esteem and body image than did students in the control group. They also reported significantly fewer disordered eating episodes. Overall, CBT typically eliminates binge eating and purging in about 30 to 50 percent of cases (Wilson, Grilo, & Vitousek, 2007).

Controlled studies of treatments for disordered eating show dropout rates ranging from 0 to 34 percent and long-term abstinence from disordered eating ranging from 20 to 76 percent. As Stewart Agras and his colleagues (1993, 2004) have noted, out of a treatment group of 100 binge eaters treated with cognitive behavior therapy (generally the most effective treatment), 16 will probably drop out of treatment, and 40 will be abstinent by the end of treatment. A failure rate of 60 percent suggests that researchers have not yet found the ideal treatment for eating disorders. Even so, a recent meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials found that cognitive behavioral interventions are effective in reducing binge eating (Vocks and others, 2010). Researchers have found that guided self-help (Banasiak, Paxton, & Hay, 2005), and even CBT-based self-help interventions delivered by computer, are effective with some bulimia nervosa and binge-eating patients, particularly if the programs are interactive and focused on girls over age 15 (Schmidt & Grover, 2007).

Eric Stice and his colleagues (2013) have recently developed an eating disorder intervention based on cognitive dissonance theory. Developed by social psychologist Leon Festinger (1957), [**cognitive dissonance theory**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term86) states that when our behavior is inconsistent with our thoughts, it creates psychological discomfort (dissonance) that motivates us to change either our cognitions or behaviors to restore consistency. Dissonance-based interventions use techniques such as role-playing, preparing and delivering speeches, and making a public commitment to reduce unhealthy behaviors.

## cognitive dissonance theory

The theory that when our behavior is inconsistent with our thoughts, it creates psychological discomfort (dissonance) that motivates us to change either our cognitions or behaviors in order to restore consistency.

*The Body Project* intervention targets the thin-ideal beauty standard. The reasoning is simple: If young women who endorse the “thin is beautiful” standard are given an opportunity to argue against it, and the sociocultural forces behind it (e.g., the media, fashion industry, dieting industry), they may experience dissonance that would lead to a change in their attitudes toward this unrealistic ideal, thereby reducing body dissatisfaction and their risk for unhealthy weight control behaviors. A growing body of research supports the effectiveness of dissonance-based interventions for eating disorders. Stice and his colleagues (2013) also have found that undergraduate peer leaders can also effectively deliver a dissonance-based eating disorder prevention program.

There is also good news in the finding that some victims of eating disorders may recover on their own with the passage of time. One longitudinal study followed a cohort of 509 women and 206 men who were teenagers in the late 1970s and early 1980s. The researchers surveyed the participants’ eating attitudes and behaviors while in college, and again 10 years later (Heatherton and others, 1997). The results showed that body dissatisfaction, chronic dieting, and eating disorder symptoms generally diminished among many of the women in the 10 years following college, with rates of apparent eating disorder dropping by more than half. However, a substantial number of the women, particularly those who were dissatisfied with their body weight or shape in college, continued to have eating problems 10 years after college. More than 1 in 5 of the women who met clinical criteria for an eating disorder in college also did so 10 years later.

These results suggest that some degree of disordered eating may be normative for college women, and that diminution of these problems after graduation is also normative. However, body dissatisfaction and chronic dieting remain problems for a substantial number of women. Changes in maturation and gender role status may partly explain why eating problems diminish after college.

Along with greater awareness of disordered eating, today there is an increased emphasis on healthful eating and diets that are based on nutrient-dense unprocessed foods, rather than diets that are just low in calories. Sociocultural messages about thinness have changed somewhat as well, again with greater emphasis on health and fitness and less on actual weight.

Health psychologists hope to continue this increased focus on overall good health rather than on attempting to achieve unattainably perfect physiques. This would help many of us avoid the dangers of obesity or eating disorders, as well as the anxiety and dissatisfaction caused by the disparity between our real and longed-for body images.

## Weigh In on Health

Respond to each question below based on what you learned in the chapter. **(Tip:** Use the items in “Summing Up” to take into account related biological, psychological, and social concerns.)

* **1.** People typically enjoy eating the kinds of foods they ate as children. Think about the foods you most enjoy eating, as well as your normal daily diet. How have these choices been influenced by your family’s diet when you were a child? What changes would be beneficial for your health? Why?
* **2.** In a conference about obesity in the United States—with participants ranging in age (from children to older adults) and experience (from those who struggle with obesity, to those with normal weight and low weight, to experts in the field)—you have been chosen as a college student representative to participate in a panel discussion about obesity hazards, factors, and treatments. What are five points that you want to present to the panel about obesity and college life?
* **3.** Your friend Tony has become a gym rat—so much so, he hardly does anything else. He’s constantly thinking about losing weight and building his muscles. You suspect he might have an eating disorder, as well as a problem with body image, and one day Tony confides in you that this is true. What would you advise him to do? Based on what you’ve read in this chapter, what are some biological, psychological, and social or cultural influences that could be affecting Tony?

## Summing Up

## Nutrition: Eating the Right Foods

* **1.** Overall, 68 percent of U.S. adults are overweight and 34 percent are obese, with rates varying with gender, race/ethnicity, income, and education. By 2020, three of four Americans will be overweight or obese.
* **2.** Besides water and daily caloric energy, the body requires 46 nutrients, which are grouped into five categories: proteins, fats, carbohydrates, vitamins, and minerals. “MyPlate” serves as a quick visual reminder to make healthy choices when choosing your next meal. It depicts a place setting divided into five food groups of approximately 30 percent vegetables, 30 percent grains, 20 percent fruits, and 20 percent protein.
* **3.** As lifestyles become increasingly hectic, fast-food consumption has become a central part of the diet of many people, with an estimated 11.3 percent of total daily calories coming from fast food among U.S. adults. Unit bias is an example of mindless eating, in which we allow situations to control our eating. Other examples include the tendency to eat more when eating with other people, to eat more when offered a variety of foods, and mistakenly believing that our stomachs will tell us when they are full so that we will stop before overeating.
* **4.** Poor nutrition has been implicated in 5 of the 10 leading causes of death: heart disease, cancer, stroke, diabetes, and atherosclerosis. There are three types of lipoproteins: Low-density lipoprotein (LDL) has been linked to heart disease, whereas high-density lipoprotein (HDL) may protect against atherosclerotic plaques. Dietary saturated fat and especially trans fat raise LDL cholesterol levels in the blood. Saturated fat has been implicated as a dietary factor in some forms of cancer. Nutritionists recommend a healthful balance of unprocessed foods, especially those with a low glycemic index (GI).
* **5.** Between 2000 and 2010, the percentage of American adults aged 45 and older with multiple chronic conditions (MCC) increased for men and women, all racial and ethnic groups, and most income groups. The most prevalent combinations of chronic conditions are hypertension and diabetes, hypertension and heart disease, and hypertension and cancer.

## Weight Determination: Eating the Right Amount of Food

* **6.** Basal metabolic rate (BMR) depends on a number of variables, including your age, gender, current weight, and activity level. Many people believe that their body weights fluctuate erratically, but in fact their bodies actually balance energy intake and expenditure quite closely. This supports the concept of a body weight set point. Once the number of fat cells in a person’s body increases, it never decreases.
* **7.** Researchers have located appetite centers in two areas of the hypothalamus: a side region called the lateral hypothalamus (LH), which may trigger hunger, and a lower area in the middle called the ventromedial hypothalamus (VMH), which may trigger satiety. One region of the hypothalamus, the arcuate nucleus, appears to be the master center for short-term regulation of appetite and long-term regulation of body weight.
* **8.** Two hormones produced by the digestive tract, known as ghrelin and peptide Y (PYY), have been linked to short-term feeding behaviors, whereas leptin (and to a lesser extent, insulin) are key to weight maintenance over months and years.

## Obesity: Some Basic Facts

* **9.** Obesity is a risk factor for many diseases. In addition, the obese also have social problems because they are the objects of discrimination. The most frequently used measure of obesity today is the body mass index (BMI), which is strongly correlated with percentage of body fat. Distribution of fat is also important, with abdominal (male pattern) fat being less healthy than lower-body (female pattern) fat. Furthermore, weight cycling may be more hazardous to health than a somewhat high but stable weight.
* **10.** The prevalence of *metabolic syndrome* (the set of obesity-related factors that increase the risk for coronary artery disease, stroke, inflammation, and diabetes) increases with BMI. Overweight men are six times as likely and obese men are 32 times as likely as normal-weight men to meet the criteria for MetS. Overweight women are five times as likely and obese women are 17 times as likely to meet the criteria.

## The Biopsychosocial Model of Obesity

* **11.** Obesity is partly hereditary. Researchers have discovered that laboratory mice with a defective gene cannot control their hunger and tend to become obese. The gene appears to regulate the production of leptin, a hormone produced by fat, which the hypothalamus monitors as an index of obesity. The amount of leptin is generally correlated with how much fat is stored in the body. Another study found that a variant of the FTO gene seems to double the risk of becoming obese.
* **12.** Hunger and eating behavior are not controlled by physiological factors alone. Psychosocial factors, such as stress, socioeconomic status, and culture, also come into play.
* **13.** Being overweight or obese is inversely related to income, education, and occupational level. Those who are at increased risk for obesity often have more limited access to health care services, less knowledge about the importance of a healthy diet and the hazards of obesity, lower perceived self-efficacy in being able to eat a healthy diet, and less exercise.

## Treatment and Prevention of Obesity

* **14.** At all ages, women are twice as likely as men to be dieting, even though there is only a small gender difference in the prevalence of obesity. Dieting is increasingly prevalent among adolescents, which is cause for concern because of the potential hazards to growth and development.
* **15.** The most successful ways to help kids lose weight are lifestyle interventions that combine diet, physical activity, and behavioral control *and* that target both parents and children simultaneously.
* **16.** Today, health psychologists recognize that patients differ in which treatment will be most effective for them. The stepped-care process can be used for determining which intervention is most appropriate for a given person.
* **17.** Many of us live, work, and attend school in an obesigenic (obesity-promoting) environment. Unhealthy foods are everywhere, and our bodies are genetically programmed to eat when food is available. Consequently, experts are calling for broader community strategies and public health measures in the war on obesity.

## Eating Disorders

* **18.** Eating disorders are multifactorial—determined by the interaction of biological, psychological, social, and cultural factors. The changes in fat distribution in adolescent girls, particularly those who mature early, may provide the foundations for body image dissatisfaction. A social and family environment in which there is an emphasis on slimness may foster additional frustration with body weight. At the individual level, competitiveness and perfectionism, combined with the stresses of adolescent peer pressure, may promote disordered eating.
* **19.** Anorexia nervosa is an eating disorder characterized by refusal to maintain body weight above a BMI of 18, intense fear of weight gain, disturbance of body image, and amenorrhea for at least three months. Bulimia nervosa involves compulsive bingeing followed by purging through self-induced vomiting or large doses of laxatives. Women with low self-esteem are particularly likely to have a negative body image and to be vulnerable to eating disorders. The families of people with bulimia have a higher-than-usual incidence of alcoholism, obesity, and depression. People with anorexia often come from families that are competitive, overachieving, and protective. Eating disorders may also be partly genetic and linked to abnormal levels of certain neurotransmitters.
* **20.** Cultural factors may explain why anorexia and bulimia occur more often in women than in men and more often in weight-conscious Western cultures, and why the prevalence of eating disorders has increased in recent years. Although eating disorders are more common among women—especially in occupations that emphasize appearance (such as dance)—these disorders also occur in men—especially male athletes in sports such as swimming.
* **21.** A range of therapies has been used to treat anorexia and bulimia, from psychoeducational campaigns to forcefeeding to family therapy. Experts agree that treatment must address both the behavior and the attitudes that perpetuate disordered eating. The most widely used therapy for anorexia and bulimia, cognitive behavior therapy, attacks faulty thinking about food intake, weight, and body image and gradually. A growing body of research supports the effectiveness of dissonance-based interventions.

***Chapter 10*: Cardiovascular Disease and Diabetes**

[**The Healthy Heart**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-1-1)

[**Cardiovascular Disease**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-1-2)

* [**The Causes: Atherosclerosis and Arteriosclerosis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-3) [**The Diseases: Angina Pectoris, Myocardial Infarction, and Stroke**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-4) [**Diagnosis and Treatment**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-5)

[**Framingham’s Risk Factors for Cardiovascular Disease**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-1-10)

* [**Uncontrollable Risk Factors**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-11) [**Controllable Risk Factors**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-15)

[**Psychosocial Factors in Cardiovascular Disease: The Type A Personality**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-1-22)

* [**Competitiveness, Hostility, and Time Urgency**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-23) [**Anger and Depression**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-24) [**Why Do Hostility, Anger, and Depression Promote Cardiovascular Disease?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-26) [**Positive Psychological Well-Being and Cardiovascular Disease**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-33)

[**Reducing the Risk of Cardiovascular Disease**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-1-34)

* [**Controlling Hypertension**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-35) [**Reducing Cholesterol**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-36)

[**After CVD: Preventing Recurrence**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-1-37)

* [**Managing Stress Following a Cardiovascular Episode**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-38) [**Controlling Hostility and Anger**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-39)

[**Diabetes**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-60)

* [**Types of Diabetes**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-41) [**Interpreting Data:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B10-24) [**Predicting Diabetes Prevalence Rates in 2050**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B10-24) [**Causes of Diabetes**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-42) [**Diabetes Self-Management**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-44) [**Health Psychology and Diabetes**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L10-2-45) [**Diversity and Healthy Living:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B10-25) [**Cultural Adaptations to Evidence-Based Interventions for Type 2 Diabetes**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B10-25)[**Your Health Assets:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B10-29) [**Benefit Finding**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B10-29)

*Bryan McIver, M.D., a dedicated young endocrinologist at the Mayo Clinic, was driving to his laboratory to check on an experiment. He thought nothing of the mild case of indigestion that he’d been feeling since having a curry dinner with some friends. Mild stomach acidity was something he often experienced, so it seemed like a normal night*.

*When he arrived at the hospital, he again felt some discomfort in his chest, but he ignored it. When he walked past the emergency room three minutes later, however, things changed dramatically. In his words, “the world went blank… and I died.”*

*What happened was a sudden and complete blockage of one of his heart’s main coronary blood vessels. Within seconds, McIver’s heart floundered into a chaotic rhythm, his blood pressure dropped to zero, the oxygen supply to his brain was cut off, and he passed into unconsciousness*.

*When the brain doesn’t have oxygen, it begins to die within about three minutes. After six minutes, brain death occurs, and there is almost no chance for recovery. This would almost certainly have happened to McIver had his heart attack happened a minute earlier, as he strolled through the darkened parking lot, or a minute later, once he’d reached the seclusion of his laboratory. Miraculously, he collapsed in the hospital corridor, just a few feet from the emergency room*.

*As a 37-year-old nonsmoker with no history of high blood pressure, vascular disease, or diabetes, McIver hardly fit the typical profile of a cardiac patient. Although one grandmother had died of a stroke (in her eighties), his family is generally long lived. McIver did have some risk factors. Although he was not overweight (6 feet 1 inch tall, 197 pounds), he rarely exercised, had a high-stress job, and had unhealthy cholesterol levels. Even so, less than a month before his heart attack*,*McIver had been given a clean bill of health during a thorough physical exam. He was told only to try to exercise a bit more and lose a pound or two. Yet here he was, being resuscitated from the near-death experience of a massive heart attack*.

*Although he continues his high-pressure work as a medical researcher, McIver has taken steps to improve his coronary risk factor profile to ensure that he lives a long, healthy life. Many others, however, are far less fortunate, and cardiovascular disease remains the number one cause of death in the United States and many other developed countries*.

In this chapter, we will consider the biological, psychological, and social risk factors in two major chronic illnesses: cardiovascular disease (including high blood pressure, stroke, and heart disease) and diabetes. Although some of the risk factors in these diseases are beyond our control, many reflect lifestyle choices that are modifiable. Because each of these disorders involves the circulatory system, let’s first review how the heart and circulatory system should work, and then take a look at what goes wrong when each of these diseases strikes.

**The Healthy Heart**

As you’ll recall from [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03), the cardiovascular system comprises the blood, the blood vessels of the circulatory system, and the heart. About the size of your clenched fist and weighing on average only about 11 ounces, the heart consists of three layers of tissue: a thin outer layer, called the *epicardium;* a thin inner layer, called the *endocardium;* and a thicker middle layer, the heart muscle itself, or *myocardium* (derived from the Greek roots *myo* [muscle] and *kardia* [heart]). The myocardium is separated into four chambers that work in coordinated fashion to bring blood into the heart and then to pump it throughout the body. Like all muscles in the body, the myocardium needs a steady supply of oxygen and nutrients to remain healthy. And the harder the heart is forced to work to meet the demands of other muscles in the body, the more nutrients and oxygen it needs.

In one of Mother Nature’s greatest ironies, the heart’s blood supply comes not from the 5 or more quarts of blood pumped each minute through the internal chambers of the heart, but rather from two branches of the aorta (the major artery from the heart) lying on the surface of the epicardium. These left and right *coronary arteries* branch into smaller and smaller blood vessels called *arterioles* until they become the capillaries that supply the myocardium with the blood it needs to function. (See [**page 85**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L3-1-16) in [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03) for a diagram of the heart and the flow of blood through it.)

**Cardiovascular Disease**

When the blood supply from the coronary arteries is impeded beyond a critical point, the risk of developing cardiovascular disease increases substantially. About 60 million Americans suffer from some kind of disorder of the heart and blood vessel system, collectively referred to as [**cardiovascular disease (CVD)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term69). Leading all diseases in killing one of every 2.9 people (34.3 percent of all deaths) each year in the United States, CVD appears in many guises, including stroke and [**coronary heart disease (CHD)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term102), a chronic illness in which the arteries that supply the heart become narrowed or clogged and cannot supply enough blood to the heart (American Heart Association, 2010). Before discussing the biological, social, and psychological factors that contribute to the onset of these diseases, we need to describe their underlying physical causes: atherosclerosis and arteriosclerosis.

**cardiovascular disease (CVD)**

Disorders of the heart and blood vessel system, including stroke and coronary heart disease (CHD).

**coronary heart disease (CHD)**

A chronic disease in which the arteries that supply the heart become narrowed or clogged; results from either atherosclerosis or arteriosclerosis.

**The Causes: Atherosclerosis and Arteriosclerosis**

Most cases of CVD result from [**atherosclerosis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term34), a condition in which the linings of the arteries thicken with an accumulation of cholesterol and other fats. As these [**atheromatous plaques**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term33) develop, the arterial passageways become narrowed, impeding the flow of blood through the coronary arteries (Kharbanda & MacAllister, 2005) ([**Figure 10.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F10-1)). Although plaques tend to develop in most people in their thirties and forties, these plaques will not threaten their health—at least not until age 70 or older. Those not so fortunate, like Bryan McIver, may develop damaging plaques as early as their twenties or thirties—or even younger.

**Figure 10.1: Atherosclerosis**

**Atherosclerosis is a common disease in which cholesterol and other fats are deposited on the walls of coronary arteries. As the vessel walls become thick and hardened, they narrow, reducing the circulation to areas normally supplied by the artery. Atherosclerotic plaques cause many disorders of the circulatory system. How atherosclerosis begins is not clear; possibly, injury to the artery causes scavenger macrophages to attack cholesterol deposits.**

**atherosclerosis**

A chronic disease in which cholesterol and other fats are deposited on the inner walls of the coronary arteries, reducing circulation to heart tissue.

**atheromatous plaques**

Buildups of fatty deposits within the wall of an artery that occur in atherosclerosis.

Inflammation in the circulating blood (*systemic inflammation*) can contribute to [**atherogenesis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term32)—the development of atherosclerosis that can help trigger heart attacks and strokes. Although the mechanism by which atherogenesis is triggered is unclear, the process begins with damage to the blood vessel wall that results in the formation of *fatty streaks*, which act as a “call for help” from the body’s immune system. As we saw in [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03), inflammation is the body’s response to injury, and blood clotting is often part of that response. Although researchers are not certain what causes the low-grade inflammation that seems to put otherwise healthy people at increased risk for atherosclerosis, many believe that a chronic bacterial or viral infection might be the underlying cause.

**atherogenesis**

The process of forming atheromatous plaques in the inner lining of arteries.

One of the proteins that increase during the inflammatory response, *C-reactive protein* (*CRP*), is increasingly being used to assess a person’s risk of CVD. CRP is a proinflammatory cytokine that is produced in the liver and released into the bloodstream when inflammation is present. The risk for heart attack in people with the highest CRP levels is twice that of people whose CRP levels are at the lowest levels (Abi-Saleh and others, 2008).

Closely related to atherosclerosis is [**arteriosclerosis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term30), or “hardening of the arteries” ([**Figure 10.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F10-2)). In this condition, the coronary arteries lose their elasticity, making it difficult for them to expand and contract. (Imagine trying to stretch a dried-out rubber band.) This makes it difficult for them to handle the large volumes of blood needed during physical exertion. In addition, a blood clot is much more likely to form in, and block, a coronary artery that has lost its elasticity due to arteriosclerosis.

**Figure 10.2: Arteriosclerosis**

**In arteriosclerosis, the coronary arteries lose their elasticity and are unable to expand and contract as blood flows through them.**

© J & L Weber/Peter Arnold

Biophoto Associates/Science Source

**arteriosclerosis**

Also called “hardening of the arteries,” a disease in which blood vessels lose their elasticity.

Although commonly assumed to be a modern disease, atherosclerosis and arteriosclerosis appear to have been common 4000 years ago among preagricultural hunter-gatherers. Whole-body CT scans of 137 mummies showed evidence of atherosclerosis in more than one-third of mummies from populations of ancient Egyptians, Peruvians, and ancestral Puebloans of southwest America (Thompson and others, 2013).

**The Diseases: Angina Pectoris, Myocardial Infarction, and Stroke**

Left unchecked, atherosclerosis and arteriosclerosis may advance for years before a person experiences any symptoms. This was the case with Dr. McIver. Once the process gets under way, however, the risk of developing one of three diseases increases with time.

The first begins with a gradual narrowing of the blood vessels. Any part of the body that depends on blood flow from an obstructed artery is subject to damage. For example, if the narrowing affects arteries in the legs, a person may experience leg pain while walking. When the arteries that supply the heart are narrowed with plaques, restricting blood flow to the heart—a condition called *ischemia*—the person may experience a sharp, crushing pain in the chest, called [**angina pectoris**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term23).

**angina pectoris**

A condition of extreme chest pain caused by a restriction of the blood supply to the heart.

Although most angina attacks usually pass within a few minutes without causing permanent damage, ischemia is a significant predictor of future coronary incidents. Although angina attacks can occur anytime—including while a person is sleeping—they typically occur during moments of unusual exertion, because the body demands that the heart pump more oxygenated blood than it is accustomed to handling—for example, when a casual runner tries to complete a 26-mile marathon. Angina may also occur during strong emotional arousal or exposure to extreme cold or heat. Mental stress during daily life, including feelings of tension, frustration, and depression, increases the risk of ischemia (Rosenfeldt and others, 2004).

The second, much more serious cardiac disorder occurs when a plaque ruptures within a blood vessel, releasing a sticky mass that can further reduce blood flow, or even obstruct it completely. Within seconds of the complete obstruction of a coronary artery, a heart attack, or [**myocardial infarction (MI)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term226), occurs, and a portion of the myocardium begins to die (an *infarct* is an area of dead tissue). Unlike angina, which lasts only a brief time, MI involves a chronic deficiency in the blood supply and thus causes permanent damage to the heart.

**myocardial infarction (MI)**

A heart attack; the permanent death of heart tissue in response to an interruption of blood supply to the myocardium.

The third possible manifestation of cardiovascular malfunction is cerebrovascular disease, or [**stroke**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term324). Strokes affect 795,000 Americans annually, claiming more than 137,000 lives each year (one out of every 18 deaths). They are the third leading cause of death, after myocardial infarctions and cancer (American Heart Association, 2010). The most common type of stroke—*ischemic stroke*—occurs when plaques or a clot obstruct an artery, blocking the flow of blood to an area of the brain ([**Figure 10.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F10-3)). *Hemorrhagic stroke* occurs when a blood vessel bursts inside the brain, increasing pressure on the cerebrum and damaging it by pressing it against the skull. Hemorrhagic stroke is associated with high blood pressure, which stresses the artery walls until they break or exposes a weak spot in an artery wall (*aneurysm*) that balloons out because of the pressure of the blood circulating inside.

**Figure 10.3: Stroke Damages the Brain**

**This CT scan of the brain of a 70-year-old stroke victim shows that when blood flow to the brain is blocked, cells in the brain may be destroyed. The darkened area on the right shows where brain tissue has died because of an inadequate blood supply. The lack of blood may be due to an obstruction in a cerebral artery or to the hemorrhaging of a weakened artery wall. The result is paralysis or weakness on the left side of the body (since the tissue destroyed is on the right side of the brain).**

© Mehau Kulyk/Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers

**stroke**

A cerebrovascular accident that results in damage to the brain due to lack of oxygen; usually caused by atherosclerosis or arteriosclerosis.

The effects of stroke may include loss of speech or difficulty understanding speech; numbness, weakness, or paralysis of a limb or in the face; headaches; blurred vision; and dizziness. Strokes usually damage neural tissue on one side of the brain, with a resulting loss of sensation on the opposite side of the body. An estimated 11 million American adults each year (4 percent of the population) have “silent strokes,” which damage tiny clusters of cells inside the brain but cause no immediately obvious symptoms. These strokes tend not to be detected until, over time, memory loss, dizziness, slurred speech, and other classic stroke symptoms begin to appear.

**Diagnosis and Treatment**

Medicine has made great strides in diagnosing and treating cardiovascular disease in recent years. Although CVD was once a quiet killer with seemingly no warning signals, there now is an array of techniques for detecting its precursors—atherosclerosis and arteriosclerosis—early in their development. And while a heart attack was once an almost certain death sentence, in many cases today, patients can be treated successfully with medication or with such techniques as angioplasty, bypass surgery, or even a heart transplant.

**Diagnostic Tests**

The most commonly used test of cardiac health is an [**electrocardiogram (ECG or EKG)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term125), in which electrodes attached to key points on the body measure the electrical discharges given off by the heart as it beats. A graphic representation of the discharges can reveal patterns of abnormal heart rhythms (*arrhythmia*), although in many cases abnormalities are not apparent unless the heart is stressed. When this is suspected, doctors administer an *exercise electrocardiogram*, or stress test, which is essentially an EKG done while a person walks or runs on a treadmill.

**electrocardiogram (ECG or EKG)**

A measure of the electrical discharges that emanate from the heart.

Another scanning technique, the *echocardiogram*, uses the echo of sound waves bounced against the chest to create an image of the heart. This image can reveal damage to the myocardium, the presence of tumors or blood clots, valve disorders, and even weakened regions of arteries where aneurysms have formed.

**Remember:**

**CVD = cardiovascular disease (includes heart disease and stroke)**

**CHD = coronary heart disease**

[**Coronary angiography**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term99) is the most accurate means of diagnosing CHD, with an estimated 2.3 million procedures performed annually in the United States (NCRPM, 2009). A small cardiac catheter (a thin, flexible tube) is threaded through an artery (typically in the groin) into the aorta, and from there into a coronary artery that is suspected to be blocked with plaque. Dye is injected through the catheter so that the artery becomes visible when x-rays are taken, revealing the extent of the blockage. Patients remain awake and are only partially sedated during the procedure. The results from coronary angiography affect people in many ways, ranging from how their illness is perceived through to their motivations for subsequent health behaviors (Devcich and others, 2012).

**coronary angiography**

A diagnostic test for coronary heart disease in which dye is injected so that x-rays can reveal any obstructions in the coronary arteries.

**Treatments**

Depending on the severity of the problem, coronary disease patients may be given medication to treat or prevent cardiac malfunction, or they may need surgery.

**Coronary Angiography**

**In this method of diagnosis, a small cardiac catheter is threaded through an artery into the aorta, then to the coronary artery suspected of blockage. The dye injected through the catheter enables the surgeon to x-ray the artery (see video monitor in the photo) and locate the blockage.**

SCPhotos/Alamy

**Cardiac Medications**

Several types of drugs may be used to treat CHD. These include *nitroglycerine*, which increases the blood supply to the heart and stabilizes the heart electrically; *beta-blockers* and *calcium-channel blockers*, which lower blood pressure and reduce the pumping demands placed on the heart; *vasodilators*, which expand narrowed blood vessels; and *anticoagulants*, which help prevent the formation of blood clots. If a heart attack is diagnosed within the first few hours, doctors commonly give an intravenous infusion of a *thrombolytic agent* to dissolve any blood clots quickly.

**Cardiac Surgery**

If angiography reveals substantial blockage in one or more coronary arteries, several surgical treatments may be recommended. In [**coronary artery bypass graft**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term101) surgery, an incision is made in the patient’s breastbone, and a small piece of a vein is removed from elsewhere in the body (typically from a leg, but sometimes from an arm or the chest) and grafted around the region of a blocked or narrowed artery. The bypass allows blood to circumvent the blockage and flow more freely to the undernourished section of myocardium. Bypass surgery is typically recommended when blockages are severe and when the patient has not responded to other forms of treatment.

**coronary artery bypass graft**

Cardiac surgery in which a small piece of a healthy vein from elsewhere in the body is grafted around a blocked coronary artery, allowing blood to flow more freely to a portion of the heart.

Another surgical intervention is [**coronary angioplasty**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term100). In this procedure, a catheter is threaded into a leg artery up into a blocked coronary artery, and a balloon at the tip is then inflated to press the plaque against the wall of the blood vessel. The balloon is then deflated and the catheter removed. In most cases, a fine metallic mesh tube called a *stent* is inserted into the artery to reduce the likelihood that it will become narrowed again. In other cases, an *atherectomy* is performed, and blockages are removed or destroyed surgically by laser, a rotating blade, or a diamond-studded drill.

**coronary angioplasty**

Cardiac surgery in which an inflatable catheter is used to open a blocked coronary artery.

Although medication and surgical procedures have been fairly successful in prolonging the lives of heart patients, some medical researchers are taking an entirely different approach that attempts to get around the fact that the heart, unlike other muscles, does not regenerate after it is damaged. Among the most promising techniques is transplanting muscle-derived embryonic stem cells into diseased portions of the myocardium. Now in its twelfth year of clinical trials, this experimental treatment has achieved notable successes in heart regeneration and someday may be a standard of care in restoring function to human hearts damaged by myocardial infarctions (Garbern & Lee, 2013).

**Framingham’s Risk Factors for Cardiovascular Disease**

What causes plaque to form in the coronary arteries? Why do the coronary arteries of some people escape the buildup of scar tissue while those of others become obstructed at a young age? Research has identified a number of risk factors that are linked to CVD. Much of this knowledge comes from the Framingham Heart Study, one of the most celebrated epidemiological studies in the history of medicine. When the study began in 1948, the mortality rate due to CVD in the United States was nearly 500 cases per 100,000 people. This rate increased to a peak of 586.8 cases per 100,000 in 1950 and has dropped steadily ever since ([**Figure 10.4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F10-4)). Much of the credit for this dramatic improvement in mortality rates is due to “healthy heart” initiatives that stem from the Framingham study. The results of this remarkable study have undoubtedly extended the lives of millions.

**Figure 10.4: Annual U.S. Cardiovascular Disease Mortality**

**Although the mortality rate from CVD has decreased in the United States and other affluent countries, it has increased in Eastern Europe and the developing world. In Europe, for instance, the CVD mortality rates range between 981 and 1841 per 100,000 people. In the Western Pacific and Southeast Asia, CVD mortality rates are as high as 3527 and 3752 per 100,000 people, respectively (WHO, 2000).**

**Sources:** National Center for Health Statistics. (2012). *Health, United States*. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, Table 30, pp. 133–135; World Health Organization. (2000a). *The world health report, 2000*. Geneva: World Health Organization, Annex Table 3, pp. 164–169.

Before Framingham, epidemiologists studied disease by examining medical records and death certificates. Framingham set a new standard for epidemiological research by inaugurating the concept of studying the health of living persons over time. This landmark study used a *prospective design* that included 5209 healthy people in the small town of Framingham, Massachusetts.

The plan of the original researchers was to follow the subjects for 20 years to see what factors—demographic, biological, and/or psychological—predicted the development of CVD. Although more than half of the original study group have died, the study has continued with researchers now also collecting data from the children of the original participants.

Every 2 years, the original participants received a complete physical exam that included an electrocardiogram, blood pressure test, and more than 80 separate medical tests. (Their children have exams every 4 years.) In addition, each participant completed a battery of psychological tests and health questionnaires. The researchers asked questions about the participants’ level of anxiety, sleeping habits, nervousness, alcohol and tobacco use, level of education, and their typical response to anger.

The Framingham study has identified two basic categories of *risk factors* for CVD: those that are largely uncontrollable, such as family history, age, and gender; and those that are more controllable, such as obesity, hypertension, cholesterol level, and tobacco use. Of course, there is some overlap in these dimensions because there are controllable and uncontrollable elements to almost any risk factor. Still, for organizational purposes, we will follow the Framingham study’s breakdown.

**Uncontrollable Risk Factors**

A number of risk factors for CVD stem from genetic or biological conditions that are largely beyond our control.

**Family History and Age**

Family history strongly predicts CVD. This is especially true for those who have a close male relative who suffered a heart attack before age 55 or a close female relative who had a heart attack before age 65. Advancing age is also a risk factor for CVD. Indeed, approximately half of all CVD victims are over the age of 65.

**Gender**

CVD is the leading killer of both women and men in the United States and most other developed countries (WHO, 2013b). The risk of CVD also rises sharply in men after age 40. Except in women who smoke cigarettes, the risk of CVD remains low until menopause, when, as we will explain, it begins to accelerate. However, the risk is still much higher among men until about age 65. In fact, men have roughly the same rate of CVD as women who are 10 years older (American Heart Association, 2010). Although the gap narrows with advancing age, this gender difference explains in part why women live longer than men. In all developed countries and most developing countries, women outlive men by as many as 10 years. In the United States, life expectancy at birth is currently about 80 years for women and 74 years for men.

Some experts believe that the gender difference in CVD mortality may be caused by differences in the sex hormones testosterone and estrogen. Testosterone has been linked with aggression, competitiveness, and other behaviors that are thought to contribute to heart disease (Sapolsky, 1998). Coincidentally, testosterone levels increase during early adulthood, just when the difference in mortality between men and women is at its peak. Some researchers therefore attribute the spike in mortality to “testosterone toxicity” (Perls & Fretts, 1998). However, if gender is truly a risk factor for CVD, then the differences between women and men should be similar throughout the world and should have been so throughout history. This does not appear to be the case. Gender differences in CVD mortality are much greater in some countries than in others, especially in Eastern Europe (Weidner & Cain, 2003). In the United States, the gender gap in CVD was modest until the 1960s, when prevalence in middle-aged men began to increase while rates in middle-aged women decreased (Lawlor, Ebrahim, & Smith, 2002). These findings suggest that something other that biology may be at work. As noted earlier, masculinity norms have been implicated in the so-called crisis in men’s health. Men are less likely to visit their general practitioner, more likely to be overweight and drink more alcohol than women, and more likely to make poorer dietary choices than women (Gough, 2013).

Although women may be at lower risk for CVD than men, heart disease takes the lives of more American women than any other cause, affecting one of about every three women (as opposed to one in eight for breast cancer). Still, many women and their doctors believe that breast cancer is the biggest threat to their health, despite the fact that CVD takes the lives of five times as many women as breast cancer ([**Figure 10.5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F10-5)). This may explain why men who complain of chest pain are more likely to be referred for heart diagnostic tests than women and why women are less likely to receive cholesterol-lowering drugs than men, despite having similar blood levels of cholesterol.

**Figure 10.5: Mortality Rates for Cardiovascular Disease and Breast Cancer in Women by Age**

**Although women may be at lower risk for CVD than men, heart disease takes the lives of more American women than any other cause, affecting one of about every three women.**

**Source:** National Center for Health Statistics. (2012). *Health, United States, 2011*. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office

Men and women also differ in their prognosis for recovery following a heart attack. Compared to men, women are twice as likely to die following a heart attack. Among survivors, women are more likely to suffer a second heart attack and more likely to die after bypass surgery than men are.

Several factors may explain these differences. For one, women with CVD tend to be older than their male counterparts. For another, before menopause women seem to be protected against CVD by their higher levels of estrogen and, compared to men, higher levels of high-density lipoprotein (HDL). Estrogen also appears to blunt sympathetic arousal, which may add to its protective effect in women (Matthews & Rodin, 1992). After menopause, women experience a higher risk of CVD, not only because of reduced estrogen levels, but also because growing older is often accompanied by increases in body weight, blood pressure, cholesterol, and triglycerides (Wing and others, 1991).

In addition, CVD tends to be recognized sooner in men than in women, perhaps reflecting the medical bias that CVD is more of a male problem. And until recently, women have been underrepresented in clinical studies of CVD. As a result, the gold standard in diagnosing and treating CVD is based on male physiology. Women also are less likely to receive counseling about heart disease than men, including the benefits of exercise, healthy nutrition, and other risk factor interventions (Holman, 2012).

Studies also have shown that men receive more aggressive diagnostic and treatment procedures than do women (Ayanian & Epstein, 1997; Mehilli and others, 2002). Men, for example, are twice as likely to be referred for coronary angiography and bypass surgery. Women are less likely than men to receive prescription drugs for the treatment of CVD, including beta-blockers and lipid-lowering medication. This gender bias is particularly strong for patients presenting CHD symptoms in the context of stressful life events (Chiaramonte & Friend, 2006).

**Race and Ethnicity**

The prevalence of CVD also varies across racial and ethnic groups. Compared with Americans of European ancestry, for example, African-Americans are at increased risk and Asian-Americans and Hispanic-Americans are at lower risk (American Heart Association, 2010). Economic factors may contribute to these differences. People of low socioeconomic status (SES) tend to have more total risk factors for CVD, including high-fat diets, smoking, and stressful life experiences such as racial discrimination (Huisman and others, 2005), and African-Americans are disproportionately represented among groups with lower SES.

Lack of exercise also may be a factor. As a group, affluent people tend to exercise more, perhaps because they have more free time, have greater access to well-equipped public areas such as parks and bike trails, can afford exercise equipment more easily, or may be better informed about the hazards of sedentary living (Onge & Krueger, 2008). European-American women, for example, are two to three times as active as African-American women during leisure time (Nevid and others, 1998).

It is natural to wonder whether ethnic and racial differences in risk of CVD would persist if disparities in education, family income, and disease risk factors for CVD did not. To find out, Marilyn Winkleby and her colleagues (1998) compared CVD risk factors among groups of African-American, Hispanic-American, and European-American women. Regardless of their ethnic background, low-SES women had elevated risk factors compared to high-SES women. However, after education and family income were controlled for, African-American and Hispanic-American women still had more risk factors than European-American women. These findings strongly indicate that both ethnicity and socioeconomic factors are involved in determining our risk of developing CVD.

Differences in psychosocial stress, such as single parenting, also may help explain racial and ethnic disparities in CVD (Macera, Armstead, & Anderson, 2001). Many African-American neighborhoods are segregated from the general population and include primarily low-SES, female-headed families (Jargowsky, 1997). For example, a 1990 study of urban neighborhoods in which at least 40 percent of the households fell below the poverty line found that nearly 75 percent of African-American families were female-headed. These women are more likely to die of coronary disease, perhaps as a result of the high levels of stress associated with raising a family without a partner (Leclere, Rogers, & Peters, 1998).

Another factor in racial and ethnic differences in CVD mortality rates involves limited access to and use of health care, as well as preferential medical treatment. As noted in [**Chapter 6**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch06), there are vast differences among ethnic groups in the availability of affordable health care. Furthermore, African-Americans—male or female—are less likely than white males to receive aggressive treatments such as bypass surgery and angioplasty. This double standard of care may be due to many factors, including, of course, discrimination, which causes some minority patients to mistrust the health care system in general.

**Controllable Risk Factors**

Uncontrollable risk factors do not necessarily doom a person to death by heart attack. Knowing one’s inherent risk profile is an important step in reducing the risk of CVD, however, because it allows high-risk individuals to minimize their total risk profile by changing those things they *can*control. Even with a family history of heart disease, for example, a person can reduce overall risk by working toward lowering blood pressure, eating a healthy diet, exercising regularly, and maintaining a normal body weight. These efforts can reap huge benefits. For instance, the Chicago Heart Association Detection Project evaluated the health outcomes for men between ages 18 and 39, men between 40 and 59, and women between ages 40 and 59 years. Younger men with the healthiest lifestyles had a life expectancy 9.5 years longer than other men in their age group. For healthy men aged 40 to 59 years, life expectancy was extended by 6 years. For women with the healthiest lifestyles, life was extended by 5.8 years (Stamler and others, 1999).

**Hypertension**

Blood pressure is the force exerted by blood as it pushes out against the walls of the arteries. When pressure is too high, it can damage the vessels and lead to atherosclerosis. Before the Framingham study, physicians believed that blood pressure increased as a natural consequence of aging. A rule of thumb had been that normal systolic blood pressure was equal to one’s age plus 100. Thus, a 65-year-old was considered normal if his or her systolic pressure was as high as 165. We now know that the risk of CVD, beginning at 115/75 mmHg, doubles with each increment of 20/10 mmHg (Chobanian and others, 2003).

Under new guidelines issued in 2003, blood pressure is considered normal if it is below 120/80 mmHg (Chobanian and others, 2003). Although the condition is not called [**hypertension**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term177) until it consistently exceeds 140/90, with the increased incidence of hypertension-related mortality, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) recently introduced a *prehypertension* category (blood pressure of 120–139/80–89 mmHg) associated with an increased risk of progression to full-blown hypertension (Chobanian and others, 2003).

**hypertension**

A sustained elevation of diastolic and systolic blood pressure (exceeding 140/90).

Most cases of high blood pressure are classified as *primary*, or *essential, hypertension*, meaning that the exact cause is unknown. Hypertension is the result of the interaction of biological, psychological, and social factors. Obesity, lack of exercise, dietary salt, and excessive stress can produce hypertension in biologically predisposed people. Hypertension is also related to anxiety and anger, especially in middle-aged men. In a major longitudinal study, researchers measured anxiety, anger, and blood pressure in middle-aged and older men. An 18- to 20-year follow-up revealed that men 45 to 59 who scored high on a standardized measure of anxiety were twice as likely to develop hypertension (Markovitz and others, 1993).

Stress is also linked with hypertension, particularly among people who have poor coping mechanisms or limited coping resources. Exposure to environmental stressors at a young age can be particularly harmful. Adolescents who report experiencing large numbers of chronic, uncontrollable negative family stressors exhibit greater systolic blood pressure throughout the day, regardless of their gender, ethnicity, body mass index, and activity level (Brady & Matthews, 2006). These early experiences may increase their risk of developing hypertension later in life.

Heredity plays a role in hypertension as well, as evidenced by the fact that the prevalence of hypertension varies widely among racial and ethnic groups. For instance, the prevalence of hypertension among African-American women and men in the United States is among the highest in the world. Compared with European-Americans, African-Americans develop hypertension at a younger age, and their average blood pressures are much higher (Flack and others, 2010).

Although genes may create a biological predisposition to hypertension, heredity alone cannot explain the widespread variation in the prevalence of hypertension among different ethnic and cultural groups. Within the African-American community, for instance, rates of hypertension vary substantially. Those with the highest rates are more likely to be middle-aged or older, overweight or obese, physically inactive, less educated, and to have diabetes (NHANES III, 2002). A number of researchers have proposed that the greater exposure to social and environmental stressors among lower-SES African-Americans, rather than genetic differences, may promote sodium retention by the kidneys, causing vasoconstriction and a corresponding increase in blood pressure (Anderson and others, 1992). Others have suggested that the prevalence of hypertension among African-Americans might reflect greater [**cardiovascular reactivity (CVR)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term70) to social stress—especially the stress of racial discrimination—in the form of larger increases in heart rate and blood pressure and a greater outpouring of epinephrine, cortisol, and other stress hormones. Researchers have found that acute exposure to stressors such as mental arithmetic tasks (Arthur, Katkin, & Mezzacappa, 2004), racially provocative speeches (Merritt and others, 2006), and role-playing scenarios such as being accused of shoplifting (Lepore and others, 2006) are associated with increases in cardiovascular activation (see Brondolo and others, 2003, for a review). Interestingly, low-SES African-American men tend to display greater CVR to racial stressors than high-SES African-American men *or women*. They also report significantly greater firsthand experience with racial prejudice (Krieger, Sidney, & Coakley, 1998). As noted in [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05), however, the impact of a stressor such as racism may depend on the individual’s past experience and coping resources. The presence of other factors, including anger, defensiveness, interpersonal skills, and coping style, all are potential mediators and moderators of CVR (Rutledge & Linden, 2003).

**cardiovascular reactivity (CVR)**

An individual’s characteristic reaction to stress, including changes in heart rate, blood pressure, and hormones.

**Obesity**

Excess body weight increases a person’s risk of hypertension and all CVD, in part because of its association with high cholesterol. The risk of excess fat depends somewhat on how the fat is distributed. *Abdominal obesity* associated with excess fat in the midsection (the “beer belly”) promotes the greatest risk of CVD, perhaps because it is often associated with lower levels of HDL cholesterol and higher triglyceride levels. People who carry excess weight in their midsections also have thicker artery walls, increasing blood pressure and the risk of stroke (De Michele and others, 2002). Indeed, waist circumference may be a more accurate predictor of hypertension than body mass index (Gus and others, 2004). Differences in where body fat is distributed may help to explain why men have higher rates of CVD than women, at least until menopause. Abdominal obesity is more common in men than in women.

**Cholesterol Level**

Doctors have known for years that people with a genetically high level of cholesterol also have a high rate of CVD, beginning at a young age. Before the Framingham Heart Study, however, there was no prospective evidence that excess dietary cholesterol was a coronary risk factor. The Framingham study found that people with low serum cholesterol rarely developed CVD, whereas those with high levels had a high risk.

**How High Is Too High?**

A blood cholesterol level lower than 200 milligrams per deciliter (mg/dl) is generally associated with a low risk of CVD. A level of 240 or greater doubles the risk.

**Recall from**[**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03)**that high-density lipoprotein, or HDL, is the so-called good cholesterol, and low-density lipoprotein, or LDL, is the so-called bad cholesterol. Triglycerides, also called very-low-density lipoproteins (VLDL), are especially bad.**

Total cholesterol is only part of the story, however. As noted in [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03), a more complete picture comes from comparing the relative amounts of *high-density lipoprotein (HDL), low-density lipoprotein* (*LDL*), and *triglycerides*. Men and women who have high total cholesterol levels and low HDL levels have the highest risk of CVD. However, even people with low levels of total cholesterol are at increased risk if these proportions are faulty. The higher a person’s HDLcholesterol level is, the better, but a level below 40 mg/dl in adults is considered a risk factor for CVD (AHA, 2004). Control of low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C) has also been show to substantially reduce cardiovascular disease morbidity and mortality (Kuklina and others, 2013).

Some studies have suggested that regular consumption of antioxidant nutrients (agents believed to promote health by reducing the buildup of cell-damaging waste products of normal metabolism), such as vitamin E, beta-carotene, selenium, and riboflavin (which are plentiful in fruits and vegetables), may help prevent CVD. Antioxidants neutralize oxygen free radicals and prevent them from causing the oxidation of LDL cholesterol. Oxidation would otherwise lead to injury, scarring, and the buildup of fatty plaque in the blood vessel walls. In one longitudinal study, researchers found that men with the highest levels of antioxidants had a two-thirds lower risk of CVD than those with the lowest levels (Morris, Kritchevsky, & Davis, 1994).

Research also suggests that moderate alcohol consumption may lower total cholesterol and raise HDL levels. Consider the *French paradox*: Mortality rates from CVD are markedly lower in France than in other industrialized countries, despite the fact that the French people eat more rich, fatty foods; exercise less; and smoke more (Ferrieres, 2004). Studies suggest that the French may suffer less CVD because of their regular consumption of red wine, which contains natural chemical compounds called *flavonoids*. Scientists think biologically active flavonoids lower the risk of CVD in three ways: reducing LDL cholesterol, boosting HDL cholesterol, and slowing platelet aggregation, thereby lessening the chances of a blood clot forming (Hackman, 1998). Despite this interesting possible relationship between moderate wine consumption and a healthy heart, the issue remains controversial. We *do* know that excessive alcohol consumption increases the risk of suffering a myocardial infarction.

Fortunately, an increasing number of people seem to be following these recommendations. Between 1976 and 2010, the prevalence of high LDL-C among U.S. adults decreased from 59 percent to 27 percent, and the percentage of adults consuming a diet low in saturated fat increased from 25 percent to 41 percent (Kuklina and others, 2013).

**Metabolic Syndrome**

For an estimated 47 million Americans, obesity, hypertension, and a poor cholesterol profile combine into the [**metabolic syndrome**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term216), defined as three or more of the following:

* Waist circumference greater than 40 inches in men and 35 inches in women
* Elevated serum triglyceride level
* HDL cholesterol level less than 40 mg/dl in men and 50 mg/dl in women
* Blood pressure of 130/85 mmHg or higher
* Glucose intolerance (commonly found in those x will see)

**metabolic syndrome**

A cluster of conditions that occur together—including elevated blood pressure and insulin levels, excess body fat, and unhealthy cholesterol ratios—that increase a person’s risk for heart disease, stroke, and diabetes.

People with the metabolic syndrome have a significantly higher risk of developing CVD and diabetes (American Heart Association, 2010). The age-adjusted prevalence of metabolic syndrome varies substantially among racial and ethnic groups in the United States; it is highest among Mexican-Americans (31.9 percent), followed by European-Americans (24.3 percent) and African-Americans (21.6 percent) (American Heart Association, 2010).

**Tobacco Use**

Smoking more than doubles the chances of having a heart attack and is linked to one of every five deaths due to CHD. Smokers have twice the risk of having a stroke and are less likely to survive an MI than are nonsmokers. On average, men who smoke die 13.2 years earlier than those who are nonsmokers, and female smokers die 14.5 years earlier than female nonsmokers (American Heart Association, 2010).

On the positive side, 1 year after quitting smoking, the risk of CVD decreases by 50 percent. Fifteen years after quitting, the relative risk of dying from CVD is about the same as that of a lifetime nonsmoker (American Heart Association, 2004). Since 1965, smoking in the United States has declined by more than 40 percent among people age 18 and older. Even so, 22.0 percent of men and 17.5 percent of women continue to smoke (NCHS, 2010).

**Psychosocial Factors in Cardiovascular Disease: The Type A Personality**

Puzzled by the fact that many coronary patients were *not* obese, middle-aged men with elevated cholesterol, researchers decided that they must have been overlooking something. So they broadened their search for risk factors that might offer an explanation. In the late 1950s, cardiologists Meyer Friedman and Ray Rosenman (1959) began to study personality traits that might predict coronary events. They found a coronary-prone behavior pattern that included competitiveness, a strong sense of time urgency, and hostility, which they labeled [**Type A**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term349). In contrast, people who are more relaxed and who are not overly pressured by time considerations tend to be coronary disease–resistant. This they called [**Type B**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term350) behavior.

**Type A**

Friedman and Rosenman’s term for competitive, hurried, hostile people who may be at increased risk for developing cardiovascular disease.

**Type B**

Friedman and Rosenman’s term for more relaxed people who are not pressured by time considerations and thus tend to be coronary-disease resistant.

In the 1960s and 1970s, hundreds of studies supported the association between Type A behavior and risk of future CVD in both men and women. In an effort to explain this relationship, researchers have focused on physiological differences between Type A and Type B people. Among their findings: Type A people have more rapid blood clotting and higher cholesterol and triglyceride levels under stress than their Type B counterparts (Lovallo & Pishkin, 1980). Type A people also often display greater autonomic arousal (see [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03)), elevated heart rate, and higher blood pressure in response to challenging events (Jorgensen and others, 1996). In relaxed situations, both types are equally aroused. When challenged or threatened, however, Type A people are less able to remain calm. This pattern of “combat ready” hyperreactivity is most likely to occur in situations in which Type A persons are subjected to some form of feedback evaluation of their performance (Lyness, 1993).

Believing that the Type A syndrome was too global, researchers began to analyze component behaviors, including competitiveness, hostility, time urgency, and anger, to determine whether one or more of these components might predict CVD more accurately.

**Competitiveness, Hostility, and Time Urgency**

In a classic study, Charles Carver and David Glass (1978) attempted to learn whether Type As and Type Bs responded differently to anger-provoking situations or interruptions in their efforts to reach a goal. A Type A or a Type B student was placed in a room with an actor hired by the experimenters. In the first part of the experiment, the actor and the student were asked to solve a difficult wooden puzzle in a short period of time. In the *instigation condition*, the actor disrupted the student’s attempts at the puzzle and made insulting comments about his or her performance (for example, “I don’t know what’s taking you so long; it’s not that difficult!”). In the *no-instigation*condition, the actor did not interact at all with the student.

In the second phase of the study, the student was required to “teach” the actor a concept by delivering an electric shock whenever the actor made an incorrect response (no actual shocks were delivered). The student was free to choose which of 10 shock intensities would be delivered each time the actor made an error.

In the instigation condition, Type A students chose significantly higher shock intensities than did Type B students. However, in the no-instigation condition, both types administered about the same level of shock. These results suggest that when provoked or prevented from reaching a goal, Type As have a more hostile reaction than do Type Bs ([**Figure 10.6**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F10-6)).

**Figure 10.6: Type A Behavior and Hostility**

**When provoked, Type A students retaliated against their instigators by choosing higher shock intensities. Type B students were less likely to show this tendency to retaliate. Note that the numbers representing shock intensity are arbitrary numbers; the students read their own meaning into each level of intensity.**

**Source:** Carver, C.S., & Glass, D.C. (1978). Coronary-prone behavior pattern and interpersonal aggression. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology, 36*, 361–366.

In another probe of the key variables in the Type A–CVD relationship, researchers used data from the 20-year Coronary Artery Risk Development in Young Adults (CARDIA) study of over 5000 women and men between the ages of 18 and 30 years to investigate the relationships among three components of Type A behavior (time urgency, hostility, and competitiveness) and risk of developing hypertension. Regardless of participants’ age, sex, race, education, body mass index, alcohol consumption, and fitness levels, those characterized by the highest levels of two variables—time urgency and hostility (but not competitiveness)—had an 80 percent greater risk of developing hypertension (Lijing and others, 2003).

Lately, researchers have focused most closely on hostility as the possible “toxic core” of Type A behavior, especially in men (Player and others, 2007). Hostility has been characterized as a chronic negative outlook that encompasses feelings (anger), thoughts (cynicism and mistrust of others), and overt actions (aggression). As such, it is considered an attitude that is generally longer in duration than specific emotions that trigger short-lived strong physical arousal. With hostility, as with other attitudes, it’s not so much *what* is said as *how* it is said. Erika Rosenberg and her colleagues (1998), for example, showed that facial expressions of contempt were significantly related to hostility and defensiveness (defined as the tendency to deny the existence of undesirable traits in oneself).

**In a controversial study, researchers noted a correlation between the estimated hostility scores of U.S. cities and the incidence of CVD. Philadelphia had the highest hostility score and the highest incidence of cardiovascular diseases (Huston, 1997). What other factors might explain this result?**

Redford Williams administered a questionnaire called the Cook-Medley Hostility Scale (Ho Scale) to a large group of coronary patients. They found a striking correlation between patients’ scores on the questionnaire and the severity of blockage in their coronary arteries. Hostile patients had significantly more severe coronary artery blockages than did less hostile patients (Williams, 1996).

In another study, Richard Shekelle and his colleagues (1983) reviewed the hostility scores of middle-aged men who earlier had participated in a study of Type A behavior. High hostility—but not designation as Type A—accurately predicted a patient’s risk of suffering a fatal heart attack, as well as his risk of dying at an early age from other stress-related diseases. The hostility–CVD relationship remained significant even when other risk factors (such as smoking, high serum cholesterol, and family history) were controlled for.

Compared with high blood pressure or smoking, how strong an effect does hostility have on coronary risk? Hostility is nearly as poisonous ([**Figure 10.7**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F10-7)). People with the highest scores on the Ho Scale are more than 1.5 times as likely to suffer an acute MI as are people with the lowest scores (Barefoot and others, 1995).

**Figure 10.7: Hostility and Heart Attacks**

**Even after other risk factors (such as hypertension and smoking) are controlled for, the highest scorers on a hostility scale are more than 1.5 times as likely to suffer an acute MI as are the lowest scorers. Similarly, people with untreated hypertension are 3.1 times as likely to suffer an acute MI as are people without hypertension. For treated hypertension, the relative risk drops to 2.0. Compared with nonsmokers, those who smoke 30 g of tobacco per day (about one and a half packs of cigarettes) have a relative risk of 2.8. Angry people are 2.66 times as likely to have an acute MI as are nonangry people.**

**Sources:** Barefoot, J.C., Larsen, S., von der Lieth, L., & Schroll, M. (1995). Hostility, incidence of acute myocardial infarction, and mortality in a sample of older Danish men and women. *American Journal of Epidemiology, 142*, 477–484; Whiteman, M.C., Fowkes, F.G.R., Deary, I.J., & Lee, A.J. (1997). Hostility, cigarette smoking and alcohol consumption in the general population. *Social Science and Medicine, 44*, 1080–1096.

Some researchers have speculated that hostility may underlie the relationship between CVD and several seemingly uncontrollable risk factors, including gender, age, and possibly ethnicity. For example, men have a higher incidence of CVD than do women; they also tend to be more hostile. Interestingly, Karen Matthews has provided evidence that male children also have higher hostility scores than their female peers (Matthews and others, 1992). Both hostility scores and incidence of CVD increase after people reach age 40 (Colligan & Offord, 1988). Furthermore, African-American men, who have an extremely high incidence of CVD, score higher on standard hostility tests than do African-American women and white men (Scherwitz and others, 1991).

Although hostility is related to CVD mortality, other factors such as socioeconomic status may mitigate its influence; its status as an independent risk factor for cardiovascular disease continues to be debated (Smith & Gallo, 2001). Hostility predicts CVD better in men than in women (Player and others, 2007), while anxiety seems to more accurately predict CVD in women (Consedine, Magain, & Chin, 2004). Hostility is also related to other behaviors that promote CVD, including obesity, hypertension, alcohol and tobacco use, negative life events, and little social support (Siegler and others, 1992). Children and adolescents who exhibit high hostility scores are also more likely to develop the metabolic syndrome than those who score low on measures of hostility (Raikkonen, Matthews, & Salomon, 2003). (See [**Table 10.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T10-1) to find out how you measure up when it comes to hostility.) These relationships have caused researchers to narrow their investigations to a specific component of hostility—anger.

**Table 10.1: Measuring Hostility**

For each of the following items, circle the answer that most closely fits how you would respond.

* 1. A teenager drives by my yard blasting the car stereo.
  + a. I begin to understand why teenagers can’t hear.
  + b. I can feel my blood pressure starting to rise.
* 2. A boyfriend/girlfriend calls me at the last minute “too tired to go out tonight.” I’m stuck with two $15 tickets.
  + a. I find someone else to go with.
  + b. I tell my friend how inconsiderate he or she is.
* 3. I am waiting in a long express checkout line at the supermarket, where a sign says “No more than 10 items, please.”
  + a. I pick up a magazine and pass the time.
  + b. I glance to see if anyone has more than 10 items.
* 4. Most homeless people in large cities:
  + a. Are down and out because they lack ambition.
  + b. Are victims of illness or some other misfortune.
* 5. At times when I’ve been very angry with someone:
  + a. I was able to stop short of hitting him or her.
  + b. I have, on occasion, hit or shoved him or her
* 6. When I am stuck in a traffic jam:
  + a. I am usually not particularly upset.
  + b. I quickly start to feel irritated and annoyed.
* 7. When there’s a really important job to be done:
  + a. I prefer to do it myself.
  + b. I am apt to call on my friends to help.
* 8. The cars ahead of me start to slow and stop as they approach a curve.
  + a. I assume that there is a construction site ahead.
  + b. I assume that someone ahead had a fender-bender.
* 9. An elevator stops too long above where I’m waiting.
  + a. I soon start to feel irritated and annoyed.
  + b. I start planning the rest of my day.
* 10. When a friend or coworker disagrees with me:
  + a. I try to explain my position more clearly.
  + b. I am apt to get into an argument with him or her.
* 11. At times when I was really angry in the past:
  + a. I have never thrown things or slammed a door.
  + b. I have sometimes thrown things or slammed a door.
* 12. Someone bumps into me in a store.
  + a. I pass it off as an accident.
  + b. I feel irritated at their clumsiness.
* 13. When my significant other is fixing a meal:
  + a. I keep a close watch on things to make sure nothing burns.
  + b. I talk about my day or read the paper.
* 14. Someone is hogging the conversation at a party.
  + a. I look for an opportunity to put him or her down.
  + b. I soon move to another group.
* 15. In most arguments:
  + a. I am the angrier one.
  + b. The other person is angrier than I am.

To score your responses, give yourself one point for each of the following answers: 1. b; 2. b; 3. b; 4. a; 5. b; 6. b; 7. a; 8. b; 9. a; 10. b; 11. b; 12. b; 13. a; 14. a; 15. a. Scores of 4 or higher indicate a tendency toward hostility.

**Source:** Williams, R.B., & Williams, V. (1994). *Anger kills: Seventeen strategies for controlling the hostility that can harm your health*. New York: Harper Perennial, pp. 5–11.

**Anger and Depression**

In contrast to hostility, anger is a transient emotional response that is triggered by provocation or the perception of mistreatment (Hogan & Linden, 2004). *Anger expression* refers to the specific behaviors that a person uses in response to feeling angry, with people tending toward either *expressive (anger-out*) or *suppressive (anger-in*) styles.

Can a sudden burst of anger lead to a heart attack? It does happen often enough to cause concern. By one estimate, 20 percent of fatal MIs occur in response to an angry outburst (Ferroli, 1996). In the massive Atherosclerosis Risk in Communities study, 256 of the 13,000 middle-aged participants had heart attacks. Janice Williams and her colleagues (2000) found that people who scored highest on an anger scale were three times more likely to have a heart attack than those with the lowest scores. People who scored in the moderate range on the anger scale were about 35 percent more likely to have a heart attack. This elevated risk was true even after taking into account the presence of other risk factors such as smoking, diabetes, elevated cholesterol, and obesity.

Indeed, strong negative emotions such as anger may be as dangerous to the heart as smoking, a high-fat diet, or obesity. In one study, researchers interviewed MI survivors, ages 20 to 92, for information about their emotional state just before their heart attacks. The researchers devised a seven-level anger scale ranging from calm to very angry to enraged. Heart attacks were more than twice as likely to occur in the two hours that followed an episode of anger than at any other time. The largest jump in risk occurred at level 5 anger (enraged), in which the person is very angry and tense, with clenching fists or gritting teeth. Arguments with family members were the most frequent cause of anger, followed by conflicts at work and legal problems (Hilbert, 1994).

**Road Rage**

**Hostility and anger, such as that displayed in extreme cases of aggressive driving, are powerful psychosocial influences on hypertension and cardiovascular disease. Road rage can also lead to assaults and collisions that result in injuries and even deaths.**

Chris Rout/Alamy

However, the anger that generates a heart attack may have been preceded by countless such episodes, reflecting a maladaptive pattern of coping with stress that has developed over a lifetime. In a massive longitudinal study, researchers studied the long-term effects of anger responses among lawyers divided according to their anger and hostility levels. Over the course of the 25-year study, there was a roughly equivalent rate of death due to coronary disease in Type A and Type B personalities. But when the researchers adjusted for hostility and anger, they found that the hostile and angry lawyers were dying at seven times the rate of the nonhostile and nonangry lawyers—in both Type A and Type B personalities (Williams, 1989).

Suppressed anger may be as hazardous to health as expressed anger (Jorgensen & Kolodziej, 2007). James Pennebaker (1992) has developed a general theory of inhibition that is based on the idea that to hold back one’s thoughts or feelings requires work that, over time, results in levels of stress that can create or exacerbate illness. In support of this theory, cardiac patients who deny their anger or frustration are 4.5 times more likely to die within five years than are other cardiac patients (Bondi, 1997). Suppressed anger was an even stronger predictor of mortality than elevated cholesterol level or cigarette smoking.

Taken together, research studies of anger expression and suppression suggest that both too much *and* too little can be hazardous to health. To summarize their review of the literature, Nancy Dorr and her colleagues captured the dilemma faced by those wondering how best to handle situations that trigger anger by applying the familiar expression, “Damned if you do; damned if you don’t” (Dorr and others, 2007). In a two-year longitudinal study of over 23,000 male health professionals, researchers found that men with moderate levels of anger expression had a reduced risk of nonfatal MI and stroke compared with those with lower levels of anger expression, even after adjusting for other health behaviors and coronary risk factors (Eng and others, 2003).

More generally, there is evidence that a number of the main psychosocial factors implicated in CVD, including social isolation, clinical anxiety, depression, socioeconomic status, and job stress, may act at least partly through their effects on an individual’s mood (Eng and others, 2003). Over an 18-month period, Tessa Pollard and Joseph Schwartz (2003) found women and men who reported the highest and most frequent levels of *tense arousal* (feeling anxious, jittery, and nervous) and negative emotions (feeling dissatisfied, sad, and sorry) had elevated blood pressure, compared with their more relaxed and happier counterparts. In addition, in the Normative Aging Study of older men, negative emotions strongly predicted the development of CHD even after adjusting for health behaviors, stress hormones, and sociodemographic differences among the participants (Kubzansky and others, 2006; Todaro and others, 2003).

**Depression and CVD**

Depression is strongly implicated as a risk factor in the development and progression of CVD and metabolic syndrome (Fraser-Smith & Lesperance, 2005; Suls & Bunde, 2005). Even after controlling for other controllable risk factors such as cholesterol and smoking, depression and anxiety predict the development of CVD (Goldston & Baillie, 2008; Shen and others, 2008). It is important to note that depression is not simply an aftereffect of a diagnosis of heart disease; rather, it is an independent risk factor in its own right that likely has both genetic and environmental causes (McCaffery and others, 2006). By some estimates, depression rivals regular exposure to secondhand smoke as a risk factor for CVD (Wulsin & Singal, 2003). Evidence of the relationship between depression and the development and progression of CVD is sufficiently strong that it is now generally recommended that at-risk patients be assessed and, if necessary, treated for depression (Davidson and others, 2006). Unfortunately, depression remains an underdiagnosed and often untreated condition in many people with CVD (Grace and others, 2005). Researchers have reported prevalence rates as high as 27 percent of major depression among patients hospitalized with CVD (Glassman, 2007).

**Why Do Hostility, Anger, and Depression Promote Cardiovascular Disease?**

An angry, hostile personality predicts an increased risk of CVD, but how do these traits work their damage? The key theoretical models differ in their relative emphasis on biological, psychological, and social factors.

**Psychosocial Vulnerability**

Some theorists maintain that hostile adults lead more stressful lives and have low levels of social support, which, over time, exerts a toxic effect on cardiovascular health. In support of this *psychosocial vulnerability hypothesis*, researchers have found that chronic family conflict, unemployment, social isolation, and job-related stress are all linked to increased risk of CVD (Kop, Gottdiener, & Krantz, 2001).

**Education, Income, and the Work Environment**

Low socioeconomic status, defined by lower educational level and/or low income, is a risk factor for cardiovascular disease (Huisman and others, 2005). A massive European study that followed 60,000 men and women over a 23-year period reported that those with less education were more likely to smoke, eat an unhealthy diet, and live a sedentary life than those with more education (Laaksonen and others, 2008). Interestingly, the inverse relationship between SES and CVD risk factors is greater in countries with larger class discrepancies in education and income than in countries with smaller social-class divisions (Kim and others, 2008). The SES-CVD risk factor connection also can be observed early in life, occurring even in children and adolescents (Karlamangla and others, 2005).

The work environment can be an important source of satisfaction or stress (Mills, Davidson, & Farag, 2004). As we saw in [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05), jobs associated with high productivity demands, excessive overtime work, and conflicting requirements accompanied by little personal control tend to be especially stressful. Data from the 20-year CARDIA study reveal that *job strain*, defined as high job demands and low decision latitude, predicts the incidence of hypertension, even after adjusting for baseline blood pressure, education, body mass index, and age (Markovitz and others, 2004). Over time, then, it is not surprising that assembly-line workers, as well as those who wait tables and perform similarly stressful jobs, are, in fact, more susceptible to coronary disease (Bosma, Stansfeld, & Marmot, 1998). In addition, workers who feel they have been promoted too quickly or too slowly, those who feel insecure about their jobs, and those who feel that their ambitions are thwarted are more likely to report stress and to show higher rates of illness, especially coronary disease (Taylor, Repetti, & Seeman, 1997).

Researchers also have found that especially complex jobs that make mental demands requiring skill and training may promote coronary disease, especially among hostile, hurried workers. Complex jobs may cause susceptible individuals to manifest Type A behavior because they elicit the impatience and hurriedness that are characteristic of the Type A person (Schaubroeck, Ganster, & Kemmerer, 1994). In general, however, white-collar workers evidence lower baseline blood pressure levels when compared with blue-collar workers, even after controlling for body mass index, smoking status, and other risk factors for hypertension (Gallo and others, 2004).

**Social Support**

As we saw in [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05), coping with stressful events is especially difficult when an individual feels cut off from others. Considerable prospective research also shows that loneliness and the perception of little social support in one’s life are risk factors for cardiovascular disease (Caspi and others, 2006; Krantz & McCeney, 2002). This risk becomes even more hazardous as we age (Hawkley & Cacioppo, 2007). William Ruberman and his colleagues (1984) found that three years after surviving an acute MI, those with a combination of high stress and social isolation had four times the death rate of people with low stress and strong social support.

Living alone after suffering a heart attack is also associated with a higher risk of a recurrence of CHD, as well as a fatal heart attack (Ramsay and others, 2008; Schmaltz and others, 2007). Redford Williams (1996) found that coronary disease patients who were unmarried and/or had no one with whom they could share their innermost concerns were three times more likely to die in the next five years than patients who had a confidante—a spouse or a close friend. More recently, among a sample of 180 older adults, greater loneliness, low levels of emotional support, and lack of companionship were all strongly associated with an increased probability of CHD (Sorkin, Rook, & Lu, 2002).

Other researchers have reported an elevated rate of coronary death among women who perceive little support either in the workplace or at home (Kawachi and others, 1994). They suggest that stress, accompanied by social isolation and feelings of subordination, is an independent risk factor for CHD. This relationship held true even after the researchers controlled for other traditional risk factors such as hypertension, total serum cholesterol, obesity, and smoking. On a positive note, the perception of social support from supervisors and coworkers has a powerful moderating effect on workers’ blood pressure during high-stress conditions (Karlin, Brondolo, & Schwartz, 2003).

Interestingly, Julianne Holt-Lunstad and her colleagues (2003) have found that the quality of people’s relationships with others actually predicts their blood pressure during everyday social interactions with these people. Interactions with family members and friends for whom the participants reported generally positive, supportive ties were accompanied by lower systolic blood pressure (measuring the force of the heart’s contraction), while interactions with people for whom participants reported ambivalent feelings (both positive and negative emotions) were associated with elevations in systolic blood pressure. Low perceived support at work or at home is associated with more rapid development of atheromatous plaques and coronary artery blockage (Wang and others, 2007).

**The Health Behavior Explanation**

We have seen that hostility, anger, job strain, and social isolation may affect health directly. Some researchers believe that they also may have an indirect effect on health. For example, people with poor support may not take care of themselves as well as those who have someone to remind them to exercise, eat in moderation, or take their medicine. Similarly, a person with a cynical attitude may perceive health-enhancing behaviors, such as adhering to a healthy diet and active lifestyle, as unimportant and may ignore warnings about smoking and other health-compromising behaviors. Hostility and anger have indeed been linked to excessive alcohol and caffeine consumption, greater fat and caloric intake, elevated LDL cholesterol, lower physical activity, greater body mass, hypertension, sleep problems, and nonadherence to medical regimens (Miller and others, 1996).

**Psychophysiological Reactivity Model**

Stress, hostility, depression, and anger may act slowly over a period of years to damage the arteries and the heart. When we vent our anger, our pulse quickens, the heart pounds more forcefully, and blood clots more quickly. In addition, blood vessels constrict, blood pressure surges, and blood levels of free fatty acids increase. Our immunity also decreases as adrenaline, cortisol, and other stress hormones suppress the activity of disease-fighting lymphocytes.

To pinpoint the physiological bases of hostility, researchers have studied hostile men and women who were harassed while trying to perform a difficult mental task. The stress caused an unusually strong activation of the fight-or-flight response in these people. When challenged, they displayed significantly greater cardiovascular reactivity (CVR) in the form of larger increases in blood pressure and greater outpourings of epinephrine, cortisol, and other stress hormones (Kop & Krantz, 1997). The Healthy Women Study showed that women who express Type A anger and symptoms of anxiety and depression also have impaired functioning in the endothelial cells lining the internal surface of the coronary arteries. Normally, these cells promote vascular health by releasing substances that cause the blood vessels to relax or contract as needed to promote homeostasis. When these cells do not work properly, this delicate balance is disrupted. Consequently, the coronary arteries may become constricted and inflamed, which facilitates the deposit of lipids and the development of atherosclerotic lesions, thus promoting the development of CHD (Harris and others, 2003).

Interestingly, nighttime cardiac response is normal in hostile people, suggesting the reaction is not innate but rather a direct response to daytime stressors. Hostile people apparently have a lower threshold for triggering their fight-or-flight response than do nonhostile people (Williams, 2001).

However, the association between anger expression and psychophysiological reactivity is far from perfect and varies with such factors as the tendency to dwell on anger-provoking events and a person’s tendency to forgive others. Hypertensive women and men who ruminate—that is, agree with such statements as “I think repeatedly about what I really would have liked to have done but did not”—tend to have higher resting blood pressure levels (Hogan & Linden, 2004). Conversely, college students who have a generally forgiving personality and are therefore less likely to ruminate have lower blood pressure levels and CVR during interviews about times when they felt betrayed by a parent or friend (Lawler and others, 2003).

Depression may be linked to elevated levels of inflammatory biomarkers such as interleukin-6 and C-reactive protein, which, as we saw earlier, have been implicated in atherogenesis (Matthews and others, 2007; Vaccarino and others, 2007). Depression is also associated with increased heart rate variability, especially following a heart attack, which may be another pathway between the two conditions (Glassman and others, 2007).

**The Biopsychosocial Model**

Health psychologists have combined the insights of these findings to provide a biopsychosocial explanation for how hurriedness, hostility, and anger contribute to cardiovascular disease. This model suggests that, for a chronic disease such as CVD to develop, a person first must have a physiological predisposition ([**Figure 10.8**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F10-8)). This is determined by family history of CVD and previous health history (other diseases, poor diet, tobacco use, and so on). Whether CVD develops then depends on a variety of psychosocial factors in the person’s life, including the level of stress from the work and home environments and the availability of social support. For example, hostile individuals with a strong sense of time urgency tend to elicit aggressive behaviors from others, producing interpersonal conflict and more hostility. This in turn leads to a reduction in social support, more negative affect, and artery-damaging cardiac reactivity. Thus, hostile attitudes create a selffulfilling prophecy for the mistrusting, hostile person by producing a hostile environment.

**Figure 10.8: A Biopsychosocial Model of CVD**

**For CVD to develop, a hostile person first must have a biological predisposition toward it. Then CVD may be more likely to develop because the hostile person’s attitude has chased away social support people and continues to elicit negative responses from others, which leads to more hostility and damaging cardiac reactivity.**

Fortunately, most people can minimize the health-compromising effects of hostility. Although changing one’s personality is not easy, hostility can be countered with efforts to control hostile reactions and treat others as you would have them treat you.

**Positive Psychological Well-Being and Cardiovascular Disease**

Much of the research linking psychological factors with CVD has focused on *psychological ill-being*(pervasive negative feelings and poor functioning in everyday life). In contrast, *psychological well-being* reflects the components of health that characterize people who feel good about life and function well (Keyes & Annas, 2009). Some evidence suggests that positive psychological well-being is associated with cardiovascular health. For example, optimism, emotional vitality, and displays of positive emotions have each been linked with reduced risk of incident CHD (fatal CHD, first nonfatal myocardial infarction, or first definite angina) and reduced cardiovascular mortality (Tindle and others, 2009; Davidson, Mostofsky, & Whang, 2010). Research studies in Japan have reported that *ikigai*—defined as having a life worth living—is associated with lower overall cardiovascular mortality (Tanno and others, 2009).

What accounts for the association between positive psychological well-being and cardiovascular health? Some experts have suggested that well-being may affect CVD indirectly by promoting healthier lifestyle behaviors such as increased physical activity and improved diet (Giltay and others, 2007). Others have pointed to possible direct effects via alternations in the neuroendocrine, cardiovascular, and inflammatory systems (Steptoe, Dockray, & Wardle, 2009). Some studies have found effects only in men (Koizumi and others, 2008), or only among certain age groups, such as elderly adults (Giltay and others, 2006).

To shed light on the issue, one study investigated the association between psychological well-being and incident CHD in a prospective cohort of middle-aged women and men from the Whitehall II study. Begun in 1985, the experiment followed 10,308 British civil servants in an effort to understand the relationship between socioeconomic status and health (Marmot and others, 1991). From this initial cohort, the researchers assessed psychological well-being and coronary risk factors between 1991 and 1994 among 7942 individuals without a prior cardiovascular event.

The results showed that both men and women who scored high in emotional vitality—defined as active engagement with the world, effective regulation of emotions, and an overall sense of well-being—and optimism had reduced risk of CHD over a five-year period. This association between well-being and CHD was not explained by differences in biological risk factors (age, gender, ethnicity) or health behaviors (smoking, alcohol consumption, exercise, fruit and vegetable consumption), although individuals with high psychological well-being were also healthier in both categories. Overall, the researchers found that the risk of a coronary event was reduced by 10 to 25 percent with every unit increase in positive psychological well-being (Boehm and others, 2012).

**Reducing the Risk of Cardiovascular Disease**

Although epidemiological research has provided a wealth of information that should help prevent cardiovascular disease—limit fat intake, quit smoking, lose excess weight, and get regular exercise—we persist in making heart-unhealthy choices. Working from an evolutionary perspective, some researchers believe that our poor decisions are made by brains that were shaped to cope with an environment substantially different from the one that our species now inhabits. On the African savanna, where our species originated, those who had a tendency to consume large amounts of usually scarce fat were more likely to survive famines that killed their thinner companions. Those with a rapid-fire fight-or-flight reaction had a clear advantage in hunting and reacting to hostile threats and were more likely to survive and pass on these traits to their offspring. And we, their descendants, still carry these evolved urges and hostile tendencies.

Health psychology aims to help us overcome these evolved tendencies by establishing heart-healthy habits and modifying behaviors that increase the risk of CVD. Lifelong behaviors such as a poor diet, tobacco use, and a sedentary lifestyle are particularly difficult to modify. Studies of high-risk children (those with elevated cholesterol, obesity, and hypertension) typically reveal that such children remain at increased risk of developing CVD throughout adulthood. Yet perception of control is also a factor. Patients who have experienced an MI or angina who report the highest levels of *perceived behavioral control* (see [**Chapter 6**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch06)) over being able to exercise regularly, give up smoking, and modify other CVD risk behaviors are more likely to report doing so 1 year later (Johnston and others, 2004).

Next, we focus on interventions aimed at controlling hypertension, reducing elevated serum cholesterol, and reversing atherosclerosis. The most serious behavioral risk factor in CVD, cigarette smoking, was discussed in [**Chapter 9**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch09).

**Controlling Hypertension**

For every 1-point drop in diastolic blood pressure, which measures the pressure between heartbeats, there is an estimated 2 to 3 percent reduction in the risk of an MI (Massey and others, 2000). Interventions aimed at lowering high blood pressure typically begin with pharmacological treatment. However, because hypertension is often symptom free, many patients fail to adhere to prescribed treatment regimens.

Changing behavior also can go a long way toward lowering blood pressure. For example, lowering sodium intake can bring about significant improvement in blood pressure readings. Many people with hypertension are sodium sensitive, meaning that excess sodium raises their blood pressure. Because there is no test for sodium sensitivity, almost everyone with hypertension should restrict dietary sodium to 2000 mg per day.

**Risk Reduction—and Preventing Recurrence**

**Regular exercise and good nutrition are significant factors in preventing CVD and in preventing recurrence of CVD. A former heart attack victim (left, below) saw his illness as a wake-up call and changed his life, beginning with a medically supervised program of aerobic exercise. The person in the photo on the right is improving his cholesterol ratios with a vegetarian diet and a glass of wine.**

JPL-Health/Alamy

allOver photography/Alamy

Numerous studies have shown that even moderate amounts of physical activity can help lower the resting blood pressure of people with hypertension (Ishikawa-Takata, Ohta, & Tanaka, 2003). It also can improve a person’s cholesterol profile by increasing HDL cholesterol and reducing body mass index (Nordstrom and others, 2003). Even when exercise fails to reduce hypertension or improve a person’s lipid profile, it conveys a heart-protecting benefit: Physically fit hypertensives with elevated cholesterol actually have a lower overall risk of CVD than unfit individuals who have normal blood pressure and cholesterol. Most impressively, data from the CARDIA study reveal that even after adjustment for age, race, sex, smoking, family history of hypertension, diabetes, and CHD, participants with low fitness levels (below the 20th percentile in performance on a treadmill test) were three to six times more likely to develop hypertension, diabetes, and the metabolic syndrome than participants with high fitness levels (above the 60th percentile) (Carnethon and others, 2003; Seeman and others, 2009). Regular exercise is also associated with significant reductions in the risk of ischemic and hemorrhagic strokes (Lee, Folsom, & Blair, 2003).

To be most beneficial, physical exertion should occur in the context of leisure and not work. In a recent case-control study of 312 patients with stable CHD, researchers found that participants who engaged in regular leisure-time physical activity also had lower levels of C-reactive protein—a protein that we have seen to be linked to the inflammatory response—and interleukin-6, a proinflammatory cytokine linked with immunosuppression (see [**Chapter 4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch04)) (Rothenbacher and others, 2003). By contrast, *work-related* physical exertion was strongly associated with *increased*risk of CHD. These results suggest that one mechanism of the heart-protective effects of regular exercise is a beneficial effect on the body’s inflammatory response.

Even if a person has had a heart attack, preventive behaviors can play an important role in controlling the negative effects of CVD. For example, exercise improves the heart’s ability to pump blood to working muscles, as well as the muscles’ ability to extract and use oxygen from the blood. Dozens of research studies involving thousands of heart attack patients demonstrate that patients who participated in cardiac rehabilitation exercise programs are significantly less likely to die from CVD (Stephens, 2009).

**Reducing Cholesterol**

Reducing serum cholesterol levels requires consuming less saturated fat (no more than 10 percent of your total daily calories). Saturated fats raise serum cholesterol by signaling the body to manufacture fewer LDL receptors, which help the liver to remove cholesterol from the body. The major sources of saturated fats are animal fats, butterfat, some tropical oils, and heavy hydrogenated oils. Even more important is never consuming trans-fatty acids (found in any foods with partially hydrogenated oils) due to the dangerous way that they increase LDL and triglyceride levels.

Monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fats, such as those contained in olive and grape-seed oil, are much healthier choices. Although they have just as many calories as saturated fats, they help lower serum cholesterol and improve the HDL/LDL cholesterol ratio. When carbohydrates replace saturated fat, the reduction in LDL cholesterol is often accompanied by an unhealthy increase in triglycerides and reduction in HDL cholesterol. However, when monounsaturated fats are substituted for saturated fats, the same beneficial degree of LDL cholesterol lowering often occurs, with less or no change in triglyceride or HDL levels. A Mediterranean-type diet, rich in fruits and vegetables, whole grains, olive oil and other monounsaturated fats, fish, and moderate consumption of red wine, has been associated with lower heart rates and a reduction in the risk of CVD that is independent of its effect on LDL cholesterol. This is true even after adjustment for differences in physical activity, smoking status, alcohol consumption, and body mass index (Dallongeville and others, 2003). Eating more fiber, fruits, vegetables, and grains also has a cholesterol-lowering effect, perhaps by binding with acids that cause cholesterol to be pulled from the bloodstream.

Regular exercise, too, can improve an individual’s lipid profile. How much exercise is needed? In a prospective study, William Kraus and his colleagues (2002) randomly assigned 111 sedentary, overweight men and women with mild-to-moderately-high HDL and triglyceride levels to participate for eight months in either a control group or one of three exercise groups: *high amount–high intensity exercise* (the caloric equivalent of jogging 20 miles per week at 65 to 80 percent of peak oxygen consumption), *low amount–high intensity exercise* (the caloric equivalent of jogging 12 miles per week at 65 to 80 percent of peak oxygen consumption), or *low amount–moderate intensity exercise* (the caloric equivalent of walking 12 miles per week at 40 to 55 percent of peak oxygen consumption). Although the greatest benefit on lipid profiles occurred in the high amount–high intensity group, both lower-amount exercise groups had significantly better lipid profiles than did sedentary participants in the control group. Other researchers have found that the combination of a low-fat, high-fiber diet and daily exercise for 45 to 60 minutes for three weeks can produce a significant decrease in total cholesterol and improved cholesterol ratios (Roberts, Vaziri, & Barnard, 2002).

**After CVD: Preventing Recurrence**

In 2007, there were 79,697,000 physician office visits, hospital emergency room visits, and outpatient visits in the United States that involved a primary diagnosis of CVD (American Heart Association, 2010). The same year, an estimated 7,235,000 inpatient cardiovascular operations and procedures such as coronary artery bypass graft (CABG) surgery were performed. Most people who survive an MI recover well enough to resume near-normal lives within a few weeks or months. However, they remain high-risk individuals and need to make lifestyle adjustments in order to improve their chances of living a long life and avoiding a recurrence of CHD. Longitudinal research reveals that even five years after CABG surgery, damage is still evident in measures of recognition memory, word recall, verbal learning, and other cognitive tasks (Stygall and others, 2003). Following discharge from the hospital for a cardiac event, both women and men tend to resume traditional gender-typed activities, with women assuming greater responsibility for domestic tasks such as laundry, cleaning, and cooking (Lemos and others, 2003). This imbalance in responsibility may help explain the poorer prognosis of female cardiac patients, who may not heed signs of overexertion.

A number of social and psychological factors contribute to how well patients adapt to CABG. Perceived social support, dispositional optimism, low hostility, and religious involvement have all been shown to have beneficial effects in the recovery of heart surgery patients (Saab and others, 2009).

Many stroke victims are not so lucky. Extensive paralysis of one side of the body prevents them from resuming anything like a normal life. However, with a lot of work and social support from their family and friends, some do return to a near-normal existence. Like those with CHD, they can make lifestyle adjustments that will increase their longevity.

In addition to enlisting physical assistance with household tasks, those with CVD may avoid recurrence by quitting smoking, improving cholesterol ratios, losing excess weight, exercising regularly, and keeping blood pressure within a healthy range. CVD survivors may need assistance in managing their levels of stress and controlling anger and hostility.

**Managing Stress Following a Cardiovascular Episode**

A heart attack or stroke can cause substantial distress to both the patient and his or her family members. Although many patients make a complete recovery and are able to resume most of their previous activities, some remain psychologically impaired for a long time. A major goal of many intervention programs is to deal with the approximately one-third of the patients who experience significant stress, anxiety, or depression lasting more than a year after their hospitalization (De Jonge & Ormel, 2007).

In one program, Nancy Frasure-Smith and Raymond Prince (1989) assigned nurses to contact post-MI patients regularly during the year following their heart attacks to evaluate whether they were experiencing stress. When a patient indicated that stress was indeed a problem, the nurses instigated what they considered the appropriate stress-reduction procedure. In some cases, this simply entailed talking through the source of stress with the patient; in more serious instances, patients were referred to other health professionals such as a psychologist, social worker, or cardiologist. Over the course of the seven-year study, patients in the stress-management group had significantly lower rates of cardiac mortality and morbidity compared with control patients, who received standard posthospitalization contact.

**Controlling Hostility and Anger**

A number of studies have reported positive effects of CVD interventions directed at reducing Type A behavior and hostility. These interventions are based on two premises:

* Hostile people are more likely to encounter stress, which increases the prevalence of atherosclerosis-promoting experiences involving anger.
* Hostile people are less likely to have stress-busting resources such as social support, partly as a result of their antagonistic behavior.

Intervention studies focus on helping hostile people gain control over their anger. In the typical program, the psychologist first attempts to gain insight into the triggers of anger-inducing incidents by having participants self-monitor their behavior. Next, the participants develop strategies for coping with aggravation—for example, by avoiding especially stressful situations such as rush-hour traffic, and controlling their reactions, perhaps by counting to 10 before reacting to a provoking incident. As the participants become increasingly able to cope with problem situations, the psychologist turns to a more cognitive intervention, helping participants learn to challenge cynical attitudes and modify unrealistic beliefs and expectations about life. Dozens of studies have supported the efficacy of these interventions.

Clinical health psychologists have used a variety of other strategies to help individuals cope with anger. One effective strategy is relaxation training, which was discussed in [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05) as an effective means of coping with stress. Another method involves teaching angry persons new social and communication skills in which they learn to be more civilly assertive and to become aware of other people’s cues that would normally provoke anger in them. Teaching participants to avoid provocative situations and to take themselves less seriously are also common goals of anger-intervention programs.

Jerry Deffenbacher and Robert Stark (1992) have demonstrated the efficacy of anger-control interventions. Using a combination of progressive relaxation, deep breathing, imagery, and cognitive restructuring, people who learned these skills experienced significant reductions in anger compared with those in a no-treatment control group. Promoting regular laughter, too, has been shown to decrease blood pressure, reduce stress hormones, and help reduce anger and improve mood (Hassed, 2001; Hayashi and others, 2003).

**Diabetes**

One of the most important risk factors for the development of CVD is [**diabetes mellitus**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term113), which involves the body’s inability to produce or properly use insulin, a hormone that helps convert sugar and starches from food into energy. There is no cure for diabetes, and its cause remains a mystery, although both heredity and lifestyle factors appear to play roles. Diabetes mellitus affects more than 25 million Americans (8.3 percent of the population), is the third most common chronic illness and seventh leading cause of death in this country, and has an annual cost of more than $174 billion. Overall, the risk of death among people with diabetes is twice that of people of the same age but without diabetes. Adding to the health burden caused by this chronic condition, medical expenses for people with diabetes average more than twice those for people without diabetes (CDC National Diabetes Fact Sheet, 2011).

**diabetes mellitus**

A disorder of the endocrine system in which the body is unable to produce insulin (Type 1) or is unable to use this pancreatic hormone properly (Type 2).

It is estimated that 57 million more Americans have *prediabetes*, characterized by blood glucose levels that are higher than normal but have not yet risen to the level that indicates a diagnosis of diabetes. People with prediabetes have an increased risk of developing *Type 2 diabetes*, heart disease, and stroke. In 2008, an estimated 35 percent of U.S. adults aged 20 years or older had prediabetes (CDC National Diabetes Fact Sheet, 2011).

Prevalence rates for diabetes vary markedly around the world: The disease is absent or rare in some indigenous communities in developing countries in Africa, the Eastern Mediterranean, and the Western Pacific, with prevalence rates of 14 to 20 percent in some Arab, Asian Indian, Chinese, and Hispanic-American populations (WHO, 2010a). In the United States, African-Americans, Hispanic-Americans, and Native Americans are at higher risk for adult-onset diabetes than European-Americans, Asian-Americans, and Cuban-Americans ([**Figure 10.9**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F10-9)).

**Figure 10.9: Estimated Age-Adjusted Prevalence of Diabetes in the United States by Ethnicity, 2005**

**Diabetes takes a greater toll on some ethnic groups than others, especially American Indians, Alaska Natives, non-Hispanic blacks, and Hispanic-Americans.**

**Source:** Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2012). National diabetes fact sheet, United States, 2011. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office.

**Types of Diabetes**

There are two basic types of diabetes: *Type 1 diabetes* (previously called *insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus*, or *juvenile diabetes*), and *Type 2 diabetes* (previously called *non-insulin-dependent diabetes mellitus*, or *adult-onset diabetes*) ([**Table 10.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T10-2)). Type 1 diabetes, which usually appears in childhood (usually between 5 and 6 years of age) or sometimes later during adolescence, is an autoimmune disease in which the person’s immune system attacks the insulin- and glucagon-producing *islet cells* of the pancreas. In a healthy person, the opposing actions of these hormones help regulate the blood level of the sugar glucose. Glucagon stimulates the release of glucose, causing blood sugar levels to rise, and insulin decreases blood sugar levels by causing cells to take up glucose more freely from the bloodstream. Without functioning islet cells, the body is unable to regulate blood sugar levels, and the individual becomes dependent on insulin delivered by injections or a pump. The symptoms of Type 1 diabetes, which include excessive thirst and urination, craving for sweets, weight loss, fatigue, and irritability, are largely the result of the body’s inability to metabolize glucose for energy, which forces it to begin feeding off its own fats and proteins.

**Table 10.2: Characteristics and Risk Factors of Type 1 and Type 2 Diabetes**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
|  | |
| **Type 1** | **Type 2** |
| Autoimmune disorder in which insulin-producing cells of the pancreas are destroyed  Peak incidence occurs during puberty, around 10 to 12 years of age in girls and 12 to 14 in boys  Accounts for 5–10 percent of all cases of diabetes  Symptoms may mimic flu, including excessive thirst, frequent urination, unusual weight loss, extreme fatigue, and irritability  Requires insulin injections | Chronic illness in which the body fails to produce enough insulin or to use insulin properly  Onset occurs after age 30/accounts for 90–95 percent of all cases of diabetes  Symptoms include any of the Type 1 symptoms and blurred vision, frequent infections, cuts that are slow to heal, tingling or numbness in hands or feet  Requires strict diet and exercise |
| **Who Is at Greater Risk?** | **Who Is at Greater Risk?** |
| Children of parents with Type 1 diabetes  Siblings of people with Type 1 diabetes  Affects women and men equally  Higher prevalence among European-Americans than other ethnic groups | People over age 45 with a family history of diabetes  Affects more women than men People who are overweight  Women who had gestational diabetes or who had a baby weighing 9 pounds or more at birth  People who don’t exercise regularly  People with low HDL cholesterol or high triglycerides  African-Americans, Native Americans, Hispanic-Americans, Asians, and Pacific Islanders/People of low socioeconomic status |

Type 2 diabetes—a milder form of the disease that usually appears after age 30—is found in more than 90 percent of all people with diabetes. It results from *insulin resistance* (also called *glucose intolerance*—a condition in which the islet cells of the pancreas fail to make enough insulin) and/or an insensitivity to insulin caused by a decrease in the number of insulin receptors in target cells. The symptoms of Type 2 diabetes include frequent urination, irregular menstruation in women, fatigue, slow healing of cuts and bruises, dryness of the mouth, and pain or cramps in the legs, feet, and fingers. Type 2 diabetes is more common among women, overweight people, members of certain ethnic groups, and those of low socioeconomic status. Approximately 29 million people in the United States, or 7.2 percent of the population, are expected to have a diagnosis of Type 2 diabetes by the year 2050, an increase of nearly 165 percent from the year 2000 (Fortmann, Gallo, & Philis-Tsimikas, 2011). See “[**Interpreting Data: Predicting Diabetes Prevalence Rates in 2050**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B10-24)” for a brief analysis of how current statistics are used to predict future trends in diabetes.

**INTERPRETING DATA: Predicting Diabetes Prevalence Rates in 2050**

In 2001, several teams of epidemiologists attempted to predict the number of individuals with diagnosed diabetes in the United States in 2050. Using data from a national survey, the researchers estimated the prevalence of diabetes at the turn of the century to be 10.4 million people. One group then used constant age-specific prevalence rates of diagnosed diabetes and projected a 46 percent increase in prevalence of diabetes in the United States over the next 50 years. They arrived at this figure by taking into account changes in the size and age composition of the population.

Other researchers pointed out that this estimate did not take into consideration future changes in the population distribution by race/ethnicity—an important consideration because of differences in the prevalence rates of diabetes for specific race/ethnic groups. Because census information indicated that the race composition of the U.S. population was likely to change over the next several decades, with an increasing proportion of minority groups, these researchers reasoned that the earlier projection of diabetes prevalence was likely to be inaccurate. In their forecasting, these epidemiologists developed total and group-specific projections in the prevalence of diabetes by extrapolating nationally representative data on age-, sex- and race/ethnic-specific prevalence rates of diabetes and applying these rates to the most recent population estimates from the Census Bureau. Specifically, they multiplied the Census Bureau’s population projections by the predicted diabetes prevalence rates for each age, sex, and race/ethnic subgroup.

The subgroup prevalence rates of diabetes were estimated using data from the U.S. representative *National Health Interview Survey* (*NHIS*). The NHIS is an annual survey that asks a subsample of respondents in each year whether any household member has diabetes. Diabetes prevalence data based on the NHIS are available by race/ethnicity, male and female respondents, and several age groups: 0–44, 45–64, 65–74, and 75 years and older. Future (predicted) prevalence rates were determined using the statistical procedure called *regression analysis*. This technique, which is widely used in forecasting events, determines the strength in relationship (correlation) between two variables over time, and then extrapolates from that trend to future points in time. For instance, over a 19-year period (1980–1998), the age, sex, and race/ethnic subgroup rates of diabetes increased at different rates. Statistically speaking, the coefficient of correlation on time was positive and significant for all subgroups.

Statisticians at the U.S. Census Bureau base their population projections on a series of assumptions (also based on trends established through regression analysis) regarding fertility rates, life expectancies, immigration rates, and other variables. Projected population rates are available year by year, by age, sex, and race/ethnicity.

After combining predicted changes in the population with expected diabetes prevalence rates, the researchers projected that the number of Americans with diagnosed diabetes will increase 165%, from 11 million in 2000 (prevalence of 4.0%) to 29 million in 2050 (prevalence of 7.2%). The largest percentage increase was predicted to occur among those 75 years and older (+271% in women and +437% in men). The race/ethnic group with the fastest-growing prevalence rate of diabetes is expected to be black males (+363% from 2000–2050), with black females (+217%), white males (+148%), and white females (+107%) following. Of the projected 18 million additional cases of diabetes by 2050, 37% are due to changes in demographic composition, 27% are due to population growth, and 36% are due to increasing prevalence rates.

Source: Boyle, J.P., Honeycutt, A.A., Venkat Narayan, K.M., Hoerger, T.J., and others (2001). Projection of diabetes burden through 2050. *Diabetes Care*, 24(11), 1936–1940.

*Gestational diabetes* is a temporary form of glucose intolerance that occurs in 5 to 10 percent of women about halfway through pregnancy as a result of the mother’s inability to produce sufficient insulin. Gestational diabetes usually goes away after the baby’s birth, but women who have had gestational diabetes have a greater risk of later developing Type 2 diabetes, as do women who gave birth to babies weighing 9 pounds or more at birth.

In both types of diabetes, two types of blood sugar problems can develop: *hypoglycemia* (blood sugar level that is too low) and *hyperglycemia* (blood sugar level that is too high). An estimated 50 to 75 percent of individuals with diabetes develop one or more long-term health complications as a result of their body’s inability to regulate blood sugar (CDC, 2009). [**Figure 10.10**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F10-10) illustrates these health complications. Elevated levels of glucose, for instance, cause the walls of arteries to thicken, accelerating the development of atherosclerosis and CVD. Men and women with diabetes have CHD mortality rates that are two to four times higher than adults without diabetes. Because unregulated glucose levels in the blood can damage the retinas of the eyes, diabetes is also the leading cause of blindness among adults. People with diabetes are 17 times more likely to go blind than those without the disease. Diabetes is also the leading cause of end-stage renal (kidney) disease and is associated with cancer of the pancreas, damage to the nervous system that may cause memory impairments (especially among older adults), and loss of sensation or pain in the extremities. In severe cases of poor circulation and loss of sensation in the extremities, amputation of the toes or feet may be required. Overall, the risk of death for people with diabetes is twice that of people without diabetes (CDC National Diabetes Fact Sheet, 2011).

**Figure 10.10: Health Complications Associated with Diabetes**

**Over time, consistently high blood sugar can cause complications that affect the eyes, teeth and gums, heart, kidneys, nerves, feet, and other parts of the body. Poor blood sugar control during pregnancy increases the risk of premature birth, miscarriage, and birth defects.**

**Source:** CDC National Diabetes Fact Sheet (2011).

**Causes of Diabetes**

As with other chronic illnesses, diabetes seems to be caused by multiple factors, including viral or bacterial infections that damage the islet cells of the pancreas, an overactive immune system, and genetic vulnerability. As with other chronic conditions, Type 2 diabetes is unequally distributed across ethnic groups. For instance, if current trends continue, 1 in 5 Latinos in the United States is expected to have this type of diabetes by the year 2031 (Fortmann, Gallo, & Philis-Tsimikis, 2011).

Obesity has been historically known as a major risk factor for Type 2 diabetes. Today, about 30 percent of overweight people have diabetes, and 85 percent of those who have diabetes are overweight (Powell, 2012). Recently, researchers have discovered two critical links between obesity and diabetes. Both are based on the fact that, generally speaking, the more fat tissue a person has, the less sensitive they become to insulin. First, it appears that fat cells release a protein called *pigment epithelium-derived factor* (*PEDF*) into the bloodstream, which causes muscle cells and the liver to become desensitized to insulin. In response, the pancreas works harder to produce more insulin. As fat accumulates, the pancreas eventually may slow or even stop the release of insulin, thus leading to Type 2 diabetes (Crowe and others, 2009).

A second line of research implicates immune factors in the relationship between obesity and diabetes and suggests that obesity can be uncoupled from insulin resistance. Researchers studied mice that were genetically engineered to lack *T-bet*, a protein that regulates the differentiation and function of immune cells. They found that the mice had improved insulin sensitivity despite being obese. Although the mice had more abdominal fat, it contained fewer immune cells and was less inflamed than that of normal mice. The researchers also found that by transferring immune cells lacking T-bet to young, lean mice, they were able to improve insulin-sensitive obesity (Stolarczyk and others, 2013).

Not all diabetes cases are linked to weight. Genetics and environmental factors such as *nutritional Westernization*, which includes a diet high in fat and processed foods as well as total calories, also may be contributing factors in diabetes. Ethnic groups that follow those diets, such as African-American females, experience higher rates of diabetes (Christoffel & Ariza, 1998). Increased television watching associated with reduced physical activity and poor nutrition may also contribute to Type 2 diabetes (Rosenbloom and others, 1999).

Stress has also been suggested as a precipitating factor in diabetes, especially Type 1 diabetes, among individuals with a strong family history of the disease (Sepa and others, 2005). People who have already been diagnosed with diabetes, as well as those at high risk for the disease, react to laboratory and environmental stressors with abnormally greater changes in their blood glucose levels than do people not at risk for diabetes (Weisli and others, 2005). Following the *diathesis–stress* model of disease (see [**Chapter 4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch04)), some investigators have suggested that abnormal blood sugar responses to challenging events (a symptom of an overreactive sympathetic nervous system), in conjunction with long-term exposure to high levels of stress, may be a *direct* path to the development of diabetes. Indirectly, stress also may promote the development of diabetes by adversely affecting the individual’s diet, level of compliance with treatment regimens, and tendency to exercise.

**Prevention of Diabetes**

The Diabetes Prevention Program (DPP), a large prevention study of people at high risk for diabetes, showed that lifestyle interventions to lose weight and increase physical activity reduced the development of Type 2 diabetes by 58 percent during a 3-year period. The reduction was even greater, 71 percent, among adults aged 60 years and older. Prevention or delay with lifestyle intervention was effective in all racial and ethnic groups studied and has been shown to persist for at least 10 years. Research also has found that lifestyle interventions are more cost-effective than medications.

**Diabetes Self-Management**

Self-management is a crucial aspect of treatment for diabetes. Fortunately, most people with diabetes can control their disease through lifestyle modifications—by changing their diet, regulating their weight, and exercising regularly, for example—and, in some cases, with daily injections of insulin. The goal of treatment, of course, is tight *glycemic control*—keeping blood sugar at a stable, healthy level—as revealed through a finger prick or venipuncture test measuring *HbA1c* (glycated hemoglobin) levels in the bloodstream, specifically in red blood cells, which contain the molecule hemoglobin. Glucose sticks to hemoglobin, forming HbA1c. The more glucose there is in the blood, the higher HbA1c levels will be. Because red blood cells live for 8–12 weeks before they are replaced, the HbA1c test reveals how high blood glucose has been on average for this period of time.

Diabetes self-management, a prerequisite for tight glycemic control, involves a daily regimen of several behaviors, including healthy eating, physical activity, blood glucose monitoring, foot care, taking medications, problem solving, and active coping (American Diabetes Association, 2010b). Completing these tasks day after day is demanding and often requires significant lifestyle modifications. Doing so, however, pays off. Researchers have consistently found an inverse association between diabetes self-management and HbA1c levels (Fortmann, Gallo, and Philis-Tsimikas, 2011).

Diabetes self-management training programs are especially critical for people who lack access to health care services, which is the case for many ethnic minorities (Anders and others, 2008). For instance, less than 60 percent of Latino adults with Type 2 diabetes receive annual eye and foot exams, and participate in daily blood glucose monitoring (CDC, 2011). To make matters worse, Latinos with Type 2 diabetes perceive self-monitoring of blood glucose as more difficult, and have more negative perceptions about their future well-being, than do African-Americans, Asian-Americans, and non-Latino whites with diabetes (Misra and Lager, 2009).

Diabetes self-management typically occurs in a social context of family, friends, health care providers, and the community, each of which can influence adherence (Barrera and others, 2006). Individuals with Type 2 diabetes who report receiving greater support resources for their disease management exhibit greater physical activity (measured as caloric expenditure from exercise), better dietary outcomes (fat and fiber intake), greater adherence to blood glucose monitoring, and tighter glycemic control than do people with less support (King and others, 2010b; Brody and others, 2008).

The medical community is currently debating whether both types of diabetes should be treated in the same way, including medication for precise glucose control, or differently (Tucker, 2002). Type 1 diabetes treatment requires insulin management, but Type 2 diabetes treatment could focus on weight control, exercise, and diet—in particular, reducing sugar and carbohydrate intake and keeping the total number of calories consumed each day within a narrow range. In practice, a combination of treatments is used with Type 1 diabetes, depending on the severity of the individual case and the effectiveness of dietary and exercise modifications. For preventing diabetes, moderate exercise, improved diet, and other lifestyle interventions win hands down over medications (Zepf, 2005).

**Health Psychology and Diabetes**

**Diversity and Healthy Living: Cultural Adaptations to Evidence-Based Interventions for Type 2 Diabetes**

Women of Hispanic heritage (Latinas) living in the United States have a prevalence of Type 2 diabetes that is almost twice that found for non-Latina white women (National Center for Health Statistics, 2007). If current trends continue, over 20 percent of the Latino population overall is expected to have diabetes by 2031.

To delay or prevent the numerous health problems associated with diabetes, people with the chronic condition must maintain tight glycemic control. Latinos with Type 2 diabetes, however, often exhibit poorer glycemic control, and thus, more frequent health complications, greater disease severity, and worse outcomes than non-Latino whites (Fortmann, Gallo, and Philis-Tsimikas, 2011).

One approach to the development of interventions for at-risk ethnic groups such as Latinos is the cultural adaptation of evidence-based interventions that have proven effective with other groups or health conditions (Castro, Barrera, & Holleran Streiker, 2010). A Spanish-language public education campaign called *Viva Bien!* was launched in 2005 by the American Diabetes Association, the American Heart Association, and the American Cancer Society. Aimed specifically at Latina women, the campaign was designed to help them make everyday choices that can improve their own health, as well as that of others in their community. The television commercials featured Latino families making healthy lifestyle choices such as taking a walk in the park, planting vegetables with their kids, and buying fruits at the market.

A recent study recruited 280 Latina women, 30–75 years of age, living in the Denver, Colorado, area, who had been diagnosed with Type 2 diabetes for at least 6 months. Extending the *Viva Bien!*program, health psychologists adapted the *Mediterranean Lifestyle Program*, which has proven effective in promoting diabetes self-management behaviors in non-Latina white women (Osuna and others, 2011). The intervention included a 2½-day retreat that introduced the components of the program and provided time for participants to practice new skills that included (1) following a Mediterranean-style diet adapted for Latino cultures, (2) daily stress-management techniques, (3) 30 minutes of daily physical activity, (4) smoking cessation, and (5) participation in problem-solving–based support groups. Following the retreat, weekly meetings continued for the next 6 months, followed by twice-monthly meetings for an additional 6 months.

Follow-up assessments of body mass index, physical activity, and saturated fat consumption were made at 6 and 12 months. Statistically significant intervention effects were found for each of these outcome variables. Interestingly, the researchers found an interaction between participants’ acculturation and several of the dependent variables. Specifically, Latina orientation was associated with both lower saturated fat intake (a protective factor) and less physical activity (a risk factor).

The knowledge, beliefs, and behavior of patients strongly affect their ability to manage their diabetes and its impact on every domain of their health. This makes the health psychologist’s role in the care and treatment of people with diabetes particularly important, as underscored by the standards of treatment recommended by the American Diabetes Association (ADA). Educationalinterventions are vitally important, but not sufficient on their own to promote adherence to healthier lifestyle regimens (Rutten, 2005). People with diabetes often have deficits in their knowledge about diabetes and their increased risk for heart disease and other chronic conditions (Wagner and others, 2006). The ADA standards focus on factors related to lifestyle, culture, psychological well-being, education, and economics, in addition to medication (ADA, 1997). The ADA also emphasizes that *self-management* is the cornerstone of treatment for all people with diabetes. As a result, psychologists are increasingly becoming involved in the primary care of people with diabetes (Gillies and others, 2007).

The primary diabetes outcome around which self-management interventions are based is glycemic control, as measured by a blood test that indicates average plasma glucose for the previous two to three months. The primary self-care tasks that help to maintain glycemic control, such as monitoring blood glucose levels, injecting insulin, and dosing insulin according to meter results, must be carried out several times per day, often around meals, and in varied contexts such as school, the workplace, home, and restaurants. Given the frequency and nature of these tasks, it is not surprising that completion rates are often suboptimal (Greening and others, 2007).

Increasingly, mobile phones and other electronic devices are being used to sample behaviors and experiences in real time, and as the basis of interventions to promote adherence to self-care behaviors in managing chronic conditions such as diabetes (Mulvaney and others, 2012). This type of *ecological momentary assessment* (*EMA*) may be particularly effective with adolescents because an estimated 93 percent of 13- to 17-year-olds use cell phones (Lenhart and others, 2010). Diabetes self-care behaviors measured via EMA include completion of blood glucose monitoring, timing of blood glucose monitoring, and timing and dosing of insulin.

**Promoting Adjustment to Diabetes**

A patient who receives a diagnosis of diabetes may experience a range of emotions, including shock, denial, anger, and depression (Jacobson, 1996). Helping patients accept their diagnosis is the first step in promoting self-management. Consider the case of Beatrice, a 64-year-old woman with a 20-year history of hypertension and a 4-year history of Type 2 diabetes. Beatrice reported feeling anger at her initial diagnosis. Over the next few months, she began exhibiting symptoms of depression and anxiety, and her already poor glucose control got even worse (Feifer & Tansman, 1999). Using *rational-emotive therapy*, psychologists challenged Beatrice’s negative perceptions about her disease and helped her to feel better about herself, manage her moods, and deal with her self-care tasks on a day-to-day basis. As her acceptance of the disease and the once seemingly overwhelming tasks of self-management improved, Beatrice ultimately gained much better control over her blood sugar levels.

**Illness Intrusiveness**

Even after accepting their diagnosis, many patients with diabetes continue to struggle with [**illness intrusiveness**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term182), which refers to the disruptive effect of diabetes on their lives. Illness intrusiveness can affect an individual’s well-being adversely in at least two ways: directly, when the condition interferes with valued activities and interests, and indirectly, as a result of reduced perceptions of personal control, self-efficacy, and self-esteem (Devins and others, 1997). One study found that illness intrusiveness was strongly correlated with symptoms of depression among a large sample of Canadian Type 2 diabetes patients (Talbot and others, 1999). However, research has shown that having strong social support and good personal coping resources—including high self-esteem, a sense of mastery, and feelings of self-efficacy in the face of adversity—are associated with fewer depressive symptoms in people with diabetes (and, for that matter, those with lung cancer or CVD) (Penninx and others, 1998; Rosal and others, 2005).

**illness intrusiveness**

The extent to which a chronic illness disrupts an individual’s life by interfering with valued activities and interests and reducing perceptions of personal control, self-efficacy, and self-esteem.

Psychologists have designed interventions to help those without the support or resources needed to cope with diabetes. They reduce diabetes intrusiveness on daily living by teaching people to redefine personal priorities, increase participation in enjoyable activities, and restructure irrational expectations regarding the intrusiveness of the disease. They also help patients mobilize social support and improve personal coping skills.

**Blood Glucose Awareness**

Diabetes patients often lack proper understanding of their disease and its symptoms. One study found that more than 50 percent of patients with diabetes had inaccurate beliefs about blood glucose levels, including the symptoms of hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia (Gonder-Frederick and others, 1989). As a result, the patients often overlooked or missed some potentially serious symptoms and overreacted to other, irrelevant ones. Health psychologists have reported impressive results from *blood glucose awareness training*, in which patients learn to gauge their blood sugar levels from environmental cues (such as time of day or ongoing activity), physical symptoms (such as nausea and mouth dryness), and mood (such as fatigue and irritability). Through such training, which is similar in many ways to biofeedback training, most people with diabetes can learn to reliably recognize various cognitive and behavioral indicators of different blood glucose levels. Compared with untrained control patients, those patients trained in blood glucose awareness have achieved these additional health benefits:

* Improved glucose control and fewer long-term health complications
* Fewer automobile and other accidents resulting from states of hypoglycemia
* Fewer hospitalizations for blood sugar level abnormalities

**Self-Management of Diabetes**

**The goal of diabetes treatment is to keep blood sugar at a stable, healthy level. Here, a health care professional instructs a young boy with diabetes on how to draw his own blood safely to monitor his blood sugar level.**

RIA Novosti/Science Source

**Treating Diabetes-Related Psychological Disorders**

People with diabetes tend toward feelings of depression, especially during the early stages of adjusting to the disease. Psychologists have also found that diagnosable clinical disorders such as major depression, anxiety, and eating disorders are more prevalent among adults with diabetes than they are in the general population (Katon & Sullivan, 1990; Lustman & Clouse, 2005). Prevalence rates for major depressive disorder, for example, which range from 5 to 25 percent in the general population, have been found to range from 22 to 60 percent among those with diabetes (ADA, 2010). In one study, over 30 percent of Latino participants with diabetes reported depressive symptoms in the moderate to severe range (Gross and others, 2005).

The physical and emotional demands placed on the individual with diabetes, including strict compliance to a complex treatment regimen of daily self-monitoring of blood glucose levels, preparing special meals, and taking medication, can be difficult and frustrating. This task is made all the more challenging when the individual suffers from unusual psychosocial distress or a psychological disorder. Many research studies have found an association between depression, and the higher hBA1c levels associated with poor glycemic control (e.g., Gross and others, 2005). With depression, for instance, self-care tasks such as daily monitoring of glucose levels or preparation of special foods may seem futile or too difficult to accomplish.

The mechanisms underlying the link between depression and glycemic control are likely to involve a combination of behavioral and physiological factors. Behaviorally, the low energy levels that characterize depression may interfere with a person’s ability to follow the self-management regimen. Physiologically, depression is associated with activation of the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis, sympathetic nervous system, and proinflammatory responses, each of which can induce insulin resistance and contribute to poorer diabetes-related health outcomes (Golden, 2007).

Many health professionals have suggested that individuals with diabetes should have psychosocial evaluations at some point during their medical treatment, preferably soon after the time of diagnosis (Gonzalez and others, 2008; King and others, 1998). Health psychologists who are involved in the primary care of people diagnosed with diabetes are in a good position to refer them to appropriate clinical psychologists, if needed.

**Managing Weight and Stress**

Effective weight management is particularly important for patients with diabetes because it improves the body’s ability to regulate glucose and thereby reduces the need for medication. Weight-loss programs often produce substantial success among people with diabetes by using a multimodal approach that combines nutrition, education, low-calorie diets, and regular exercise. As with all weight-loss programs, however, the main problem has been in maintaining the loss.

Regular exercise can also help prevent Type 2 diabetes. Several research studies have found that physically active women and men have a much lower incidence of Type 2 diabetes than those who are sedentary (CDC, 2010c). This protective effect remains even after researchers control for other major diabetes risk factors, including obesity, hypertension, and family history of the disease. Interestingly, people with Type 2 diabetes have the greatest difficulty maintaining healthy concentrations of blood sugar in March and April, perhaps because the preceding months of cold weather have promoted inactivity (Doro and others, 2006).

Equally important is stress management. In people with diabetes, reactions to stress strongly influence whether and how well they follow a particular regimen. For example, stress may begin the vicious cycle of overeating, poor control over diabetes, more stress, more overeating, and so on. Relaxation training and other stress-management techniques appear to be beneficial for many individuals with diabetes.

**The general topic of why certain people are more likely to delay making healthy lifestyle changes and seeking health care is discussed in**[**Chapter 12**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch12)**.**

**Increasing Adherence to Diabetes Treatment Regimens**

Health psychologists have approached the issue of adherence in two ways: by seeking to identify factors that predict compliance or noncompliance and by developing interventions to improve adherence to different aspects of a treatment regimen. Sociodemographic factors such as age, gender, ethnicity, and personality do not predict adherence to diabetes treatment regimens. Several factors contribute to noncompliance, including the sheer complexity of a lifelong regimen of self-care. Patients with diabetes also may perceive prescribed treatment as recommended and discretionary rather than mandatory, and they fail to comply. Those newly diagnosed with diabetes often feel no ill effects—severe medical complications of diabetes may not arise for a decade or more—and may find their current lifestyle too enjoyable to change. Social and environmental circumstances are also factors in poor adherence. During periods of unusual stress or social pressure to behave in unhealthy ways, for instance, dietary and exercise compliance often decreases among those with diabetes (Cramer, 2004).

Working from the transtheoretical model discussed in [**Chapter 6**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch06), health psychologists might try to get diabetes patients to adhere to treatment regimens by helping them cycle through the stages of precontemplation, contemplation, preparation, action, and maintenance. For example, the psychologist almost certainly would tell an obese woman newly diagnosed with Type 2 diabetes to lose weight. However, since she probably does not feel sick, she sees no reason to change from her delicious high-calorie, high-carbohydrate diet (precontemplation). To move her to the stage of contemplation, the psychologist would try to explain the connection between diet and diabetes. (She perceives a link, but she still isn’t ready to give up her favorite foods.) Further education and support for change (family members are enlisted to help her modify her diet, for instance) may nudge the patient into the stage of preparation (she knows she will diet), and then to action (the patient works hard at dieting). Finally, during the maintenance stage (working to avoiding relapse to unhealthy eating habits), she is likely to benefit from interventions that focus on how to maintain the treatment regimen in the face of circumstances that undermine it (such as unusual stress or social pressure to eat unhealthy foods). Let’s revisit the case of Beatrice, the diagnosed diabetic introduced earlier in this chapter who abandoned her medical regimen each time she encountered a stressful life event. For her, maintenance interventions involved exercises to promote stress management and improve her communication coping skills.

**Enhancing Communication and Increasing Social Support**

Empowering individuals with diabetes (or any chronic illness) to participate actively in decision making in their treatment regimen has a variety of benefits. Among these is an increased perception of control, enhanced doctor–patient communication, greater confidence in prescribed treatment regimens, and improved compliance. In one study, diabetes patients who were taught to be more assertive in acquiring knowledge about the disease and in using that information to negotiate treatment decisions with their physicians showed significant increases in their perceived self-efficacy, regulation of blood glucose, and satisfaction with their treatment regimen (Greenfield and others, 1988). Beatrice had received from her physician basic information about living with diabetes. She was too intimidated, however, to discuss her fears, self-care needs, and difficulty complying with her treatment regimen. She did, however, discuss these issues with her psychologist, who used assertiveness training to prepare Beatrice to approach her doctor to resolve these issues, which she later did.

The problems of managing diabetes extend beyond the individual to members of the family, who may react in ways that adversely (or favorably) affect the patient. The quality of marital relationships, for example, is an accurate predictor of diabetes regimen adherence (Trief and others, 2004). Among adolescents, elevated family conflict and weak parental monitoring are risk factors for poorer glycemic control (Hilliard and others, 2013). Family therapy is often helpful. Therapy often begins with education about diabetes, what must be done to achieve control, and how the behaviors of family members—including parental monitoring—affect the individual’s control. This can be particularly important in the management of Type 1 diabetes in children and adolescents. Parents, for example, may become overly protective of a teenager newly diagnosed with diabetes, unnecessarily restricting activities and promoting a sense of helplessness. Family therapy directed at improving communication and conflict resolution among family members has been demonstrated to improve diabetes control among children who perceive deficiencies in these areas in their families (Minuchin and others, 1978). When parents are actively involved in their child’s diabetes management (such as helping with blood glucose monitoring), greater control is achieved (Andersen and others, 1997).

Another factor that has been associated with better psychosocial well-being and improved adherence in many chronic illnesses is [**benefit finding**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term49) (see [***Your Health Assets***](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B10-29) on [**page 410**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B10-29)). Defined as the experience of identifying positive outcomes in the face of adversity, benefit finding is based on the idea that adversity can lead to a new sense of meaning and self-worth. Several recent studies have found that benefit finding is an important resource for adolescents who face heightened stress while dealing with an illness such as diabetes. One study reported that benefit finding was associated with better adherence to diabetes management behaviors, and fewer depressive symptoms, among a group of 252 adolescents diagnosed with Type 1 diabetes (Tran and others, 2011).

**benefit finding**

The experience of identifying positive outcomes in the face of adversity.

From our biopsychosocial perspective, we have seen that many factors play a role in the development of chronic conditions such as cardiovascular disease and diabetes. Healthy living helps many people avoid or significantly delay the development of chronic conditions. Even those who are already suffering chronic disease still may improve their health by following better health practices, including eating well, exercising, maintaining normal weight, and avoiding tobacco. And physical and psychological coping strategies help many limit the life disruption of chronic conditions.

***Your Health Assets*: Benefit Finding**

People who have diabetes, cardiovascular disease, or other serious conditions sometimes feel that their experiences have made positive contributions to their lives as well as causing problems. If you have gone through something like this, circle the appropriate number to indicate how often you experienced each of the following benefits. Add you answers. Higher scores indicate higher levels of benefit.

|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Having had has:\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_\_ | Not at all | A little | Moderately | Quite a Bit | Extremely |
| shown me that all people need to be loved. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| made me more sensitive to family issues. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| led me to be more accepting of things. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| taught me that everyone has a purpose in life. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| made us more in charge of ourselves as a family. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| made me more aware and concerned for the future of humankind. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| taught me how to adjust to things I cannot change. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| given my family a sense of continuity, a sense of history. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| made me a more responsible person. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| made me realize the importance of planning for my family’s future. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| given my life better structure. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| brought my family closer together. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| made me more productive. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| helped me take things as they come. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| helped me to budget my time better. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| made me more grateful for each day. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| taught me to be patient. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| taught me to control my temper. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| renewed my interest in participating in different activities. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| led me to cope better with stress and problems. | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |

Sources: Tomich, P.L., & Helgeson, V.S. (2004). Is finding something good in the bad always good? Benefit finding among women with breast cancer. *Health Psychology, 23*, 16–23; Tran, V.H. (2010). *Benefit finding, negative affect, and daily diabetes, management among adolescents with Type 1 diabetes*. Doctoral dissertation. Retrieved from [**https://repositories.tdl.org/utswmed-ir/bitstream/handle/2152.5/819/tranvincent.pdf?sequence=3**](https://repositories.tdl.org/utswmed-ir/bitstream/handle/2152.5/819/tranvincent.pdf?sequence=3).

**Weigh In on Health**

Respond to each question below based on what you learned in the chapter. (**Tip:** Use the items in “Summing Up” to take into account related biological, psychological, and social concerns.)

* **1.** How does hostility influence biological, psychological, and social or cultural aspects of heart health and cardiovascular disease?
* **2.** A friend, who knows that you are studying health psychology, wants to understand the relationship between practicing health psychology and reducing the risk of diabetes. Based on what you read in this chapter, how will you explain this relationship?
* **3.** Diverse populations have not experienced improvements in health status uniformly. What factors do you think may contribute to health disparities in cardiovascular disease and diabetes among different racial/ethnic, socioeconomic, and cultural groups? What individual actions, programs, or policies could be put in place to reduce these disparities?

**Summing Up**

**The Healthy Heart**

* **1.** The cardiovascular system consists of the blood, the blood vessels of the circulatory system, and the heart. The heart consists of three layers of tissue: a thin outer layer, called the *epicardium;* a thin inner layer, called the *endocardium;* and a thicker middle layer, the heart muscle itself, or *myocardium*. The myocardium is separated into four chambers that work in coordinated fashion to bring blood into the heart and then to pump it throughout the body.

**Cardiovascular Disease**

* **2.** Cardiovascular disease (CVD), which includes coronary heart disease (CHD) and stroke, is the leading cause of death in the United States and most developed countries.
* **3.** CVD results from atherosclerosis, a chronic condition in which coronary arteries are narrowed by fatty deposits and atheromatous plaques that form over microscopic lesions in the walls of blood vessels, and arteriosclerosis, or hardening of the arteries.
* **4.** When the arteries that supply the heart are narrowed with plaques, restricting blood flow to the heart (ischemia), the person may experience heart pain, called angina pectoris. When severe atherosclerosis or a clot causes a coronary artery to become completely obstructed, a heart attack, or myocardial infarction (MI), occurs, and a portion of the myocardium begins to die. A third possible manifestation of cardiovascular malfunction is a stroke, which occurs when a blood clot obstructs an artery in the brain.
* **5.** Medicine has made great strides in diagnosing and treating heart disease. Diagnostic techniques include electrocardiogram (EKG) monitoring and coronary angiography. Treatment interventions include medications for controlling blood pressure and cholesterol level as well as preventing blood clots; cardiac surgery in the form of coronary artery bypass grafts or balloon angioplasty is also an option.

**Framingham’s Risk Factors for Cardiovascular Disease**

* **6.** The Framingham Heart Study, a prospective study of CVD that has collected data for over half a century, has identified a number of coronary risk factors.
* **7.** The “uncontrollable risk factors” for CVD include family history of heart disease, age, gender, and ethnicity. The risk of CVD increases with age, is much higher among men than among women, and varies across racial and ethnic groups. Economic and social factors may be the actual causes of racial and ethnic variation in CVD.
* **8.** The major “controllable risk factors” for CVD are hypertension, obesity, elevated serum cholesterol, and smoking. Most cases of high blood pressure are classified as essential hypertension, meaning that the exact cause is unknown.
* **9.** Cholesterol levels that are too high promote the development of atherosclerosis. Those with metabolic syndrome are at particularly high risk of developing CVD and diabetes.

**Psychosocial Factors in Cardiovascular Disease: The Type A Personality**

* **10.** Characterized by a competitive, hurried, hostile nature, the Type A behavior pattern has been linked to increased risk of CVD. Researchers now point to hostility and anger as the toxic core of Type A behavior.
* **11.** Several theoretical explanations have been proposed to explain the relationship between a hostile, angry personality and cardiovascular disease. The psychosocial vulnerability model maintains that hostile people have more stressful life events and low levels of social support, which, over time, have a toxic effect.
* **12.** The health behavior model proposes that hostile people are more likely to develop cardiovascular disease because they tend to have poorer health habits than less hostile people.
* **13.** The psychophysiological reactivity model maintains that frequent episodes of anger produce elevated cardiovascular and stress hormone responses that damage arteries and contribute to coronary disease.
* **14.** The biopsychosocial model suggests that, for CVD to develop, a hostile person first must have a biological predisposition toward it. CVD then may be more likely to develop because the hostile person’s attitude has chased away social support and continues to elicit negative responses from others, which leads to more hostility and damaging cardiac reactivity.

**Reducing the Risk of Cardiovascular Disease**

* **15.** Lifestyle modifications can significantly reduce a person’s risk of cardiovascular disease. Interventions for hypertension include reducing weight, limiting salt and alcohol intake, increasing exercise, and improving cholesterol ratios. Eating more fiber, fruits, vegetables, grains, and mono- and polyunsaturated fats and less saturated fat can reduce serum cholesterol levels and improve the ratio of HDL cholesterol to LDL cholesterol.

**After CVD: Preventing Recurrence**

* **16.** Comprehensive interventions that combine stress management, aerobic exercise, relaxation training, and low-fat diets may prevent CVD recurrence.
* **17.** Interventions for hostility help people gain control of environmental triggers for their anger and learn to modify their negative emotions and cynical thought processes. Reducing hostility can substantially reduce the risk of future ischemia in cardiac patients.

**Diabetes**

* **18.** Diabetes mellitus is a chronic disease in which the body is unable to produce or properly use the hormone insulin. Diabetes can develop in either childhood (Type 1) or adulthood (Type 2), with Type 1 diabetes generally involving more serious health complications and the need for daily insulin injections. Many individuals with diabetes also benefit from lifestyle modifications that include a strict diet and exercise.
* **19.** Many individuals with diabetes also suffer from psychological disorders, including major depression, anxiety, and eating disorders. Health psychology’s role has included studying factors in adjusting to the disease, such as psychological distress, personal coping skills, and social support, as well as factors that affect compliance with treatment regimens.
* **20.** Health psychologists are becoming increasingly involved in the primary care of diabetes by reducing illness intrusiveness, increasing weight control and stress management, enhancing communication, and increasing compliance with complex treatment regimens.
* **21.** The primary diabetes outcome around which self-management interventions are based is glycemic control, as measured by a blood test that indicates average plasma glucose for the previous two to three months. Diabetes self-management, a prerequisite for tight glycemic control, involves a daily regimen of several behaviors, including healthy eating, physical activity, blood glucose monitoring, foot care, taking medications, problem solving, and active coping.
* **22.** Several recent studies have found that benefit finding is an important resource for people who face heightened stress while dealing with diabetes and other chronic conditions.

***Chapter 11*: Cancer**

[**What Is Cancer?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-1-1)

* [**Types of Cancer**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-2) [**Cancer Susceptibility**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-3)

[**Risk Factors for Cancer**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-1-4)

* [**Tobacco Use**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-5) [**Diet and Alcohol Use**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-6) [**Physical Activity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-10) [**Overweight and Obesity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-11) [**Family History**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-12) [**Environmental and Occupational Hazards**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-13) [**Stress and Immunocompetence**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-17)[**Childhood Adversity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-18)

[**Cancer Treatment**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-1-19)

* [**Early Diagnosis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-20) [**Treatment Options**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-21)

[**Coping with Cancer**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-1-26)

* [**Emotions, Masculinity, and Ethnicity**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-27) [**Knowledge, Control, and Social Support**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-31) [**Cognitive-Behavioral Interventions**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L11-2-36)

*Dad, can we go home now? I don’t feel sick, and I don’t want to be poked anymore.” So said my 6-year-old son, Jeremy, at the end of a very long day in which he was diagnosed with cancer. It was the day my family’s world seemed to turn upside down*.

*It began in a relatively uneventful manner, as childhood health problems often do: soreness and swelling on the left side of Jeremy’s neck that seemed to appear overnight and wouldn’t go away. An almost-casual visit to the family pediatrician revealed that the discomfort was due to swollen lymph glands, yet it did not seem to be a cause for alarm. Just to be safe, Jeremy was referred to the university’s pediatric hospital for a few more tests to rule out any (unlikely) serious health problems. We grew increasingly worried after a morning of blood tests; physical examinations by a stream of nurses, doctors, and interns; and finally magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of Jeremy’s neck. We were ushered into a small waiting room in the pediatric oncology wing of the hospital, where we were stunned by the diagnosis: non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma*.

*Our immediate reaction was disbelief. How? Why? As a health psychologist, I knew that there were probably no simple answers to those questions. There were no warning signs or symptoms. Jeremy had always been a healthy, active kid. He wasn’t overweight, ate a nutritious diet, and, to my mind, had no known risk factors for cancer (other than several relatives who’d battled skin cancer). Just as our son’s life was beginning, it seemed, inexplicably, to be in danger of ending*.

*Fortunately, we were not defenseless against this disease, which only a few decades earlier would almost certainly have been fatal. We immediately enacted a full biopsychosocial assault, including state-of-the-art biomedical interventions that arrested the cancer, a healthy diet and exercise program, and relaxation training to ease the discomfort of chemotherapy and promote a positive outlook. Jeremy’s family*, *friends, classmates, primary care physician, and especially nurses provided extensive social support, and Jeremy himself showed incredible strength of character—especially for a young child. He was stoic throughout his treatment, which was sometimes painful (as in the needle pokes) and included many nausea-inducing bouts of chemotherapy. But his stoicism was not accompanied by withdrawal. He shared his feelings, fears, and determination to beat the disease with us, and we grew stronger because of his strength. At times, he could even laugh at himself and turn adversity into an apparent asset. When chemotherapy caused his hair to fall out, Jeremy—who remains an ardent* Star Trek: The Next Generation *fan—joked that he looked like a young Captain Picard!*

*Today, many years later, Jeremy is a healthy graduate who has gone on to earn an MBA, start a successful company that generates popular mapping software for handheld computers, and is currently finishing his doctorate in scientific computing. He travels extensively, pilots his own plane (so that his wonderful mutt, Red, can sit beside him), and credits his survival to the powers of mind–body medicine*.

*While I wouldn’t wish this painful chapter of our lives on anyone, our family survived and thrived after bringing Jeremy back to health. We all became more health-conscious … and more aware of the interconnections among our physical, psychological, and social well-being*.

**What Is Cancer?**

Few of us have avoided the life-changing effects of cancer—either in ourselves or in a loved one. Indeed, [**cancer**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term65) is the second-leading cause of death in the United States, and many more suffer through nonfatal varieties, as Jeremy did. It is not one disease, but a set of more than 100 related diseases in which abnormal body cells multiply and spread in uncontrolled fashion, forming a tissue mass called a *tumor*.

**cancer**

A set of diseases in which abnormal body cells multiply and spread in uncontrolled fashion, forming a tissue mass called a *tumor*.

Not all tumors are cancerous. *Benign* (noncancerous) tumors tend to remain localized and usually do not pose a serious threat to health. In contrast, *malignant* (cancerous) tumors consist of renegade cells that do not respond to the body’s genetic controls on growth and division. To make matters worse, malignant cells often have the ability to migrate from their site of origin and attack, invade, and destroy surrounding body tissues. If this process of [**metastasis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term217) is not stopped, body organs and systems will be damaged, and death may result. Although some malignant cells remain as localized tumors and do not spread automatically, they still pose a threat to health and need to be surgically removed.

**metastasis**

The process by which malignant body cells proliferate in number and spread to surrounding body tissues.

**Types of Cancer**

Most cancers can be classified as one of four types:

* [**Carcinomas**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term67) attack the *epithelial cells* that line the outer and inner surfaces of the body. Carcinomas are the most common type of cancer, accounting for approximately 85 percent of all adult cancers. They include cancer of the breast, prostate, colon, lungs, pancreas, and skin. Affecting one out of every six people in the United States, skin cancer is the most common (and most rapidly increasing) type of cancer in America (National Cancer Institute, 2010).

**carcinoma**

Cancer of the epithelial cells that line the outer and inner surfaces of the body; includes breast, prostate, lung, and skin cancer.

* [**Sarcomas**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term300) are malignancies of cells in muscles, bones, and cartilage. Much rarer than carcinoma, sarcomas account for only about 2 percent of all cancers in adults.

**sarcoma**

Cancer that strikes muscles, bones, and cartilage.

* [**Lymphomas**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term209) are cancers that form in the lymphatic system. Included in this group are *Hodgkin’s disease*, a rare form of lymphoma that spreads from a single lymph node, and Jeremy’s *non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma*, in which malignant cells are found at several sites. About 74,490 people living in the United States were diagnosed with lymphoma in 2009 (8,510 cases of Hodgkin’s lymphoma and 65,980 cases of non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma).

**lymphoma**

Cancer of the body’s lymph system; includes Hodgkin’s disease and non-Hodgkin’s lymphoma.

* [**Leukemias**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term203) are cancers that attack the blood and blood-forming tissues, such as the bone marrow. Leukemia leads to a proliferation of white blood cells in the bloodstream and bone marrow, which impair the immune system. Although often considered a childhood disease, leukemia strikes far more adults (an estimated 44,000 cases per year) than children (about 4,000 cases per year) (Leukemia and Lymphoma Society, 2010).

**leukemia**

Cancer of the blood and blood-producing system.

**Cancer Susceptibility**

Many individual factors, such as gender, age, and ethnic background, affect susceptibility to cancer. For example, although over the course of a lifetime, more men (just under 1 in 2) develop cancer than women (just over 1 in 3), women are more likely to develop any cancer before age 60. Although women are more commonly diagnosed with breast cancer and men with prostate cancer, lung cancer is the top killer of both genders ([**Figure 11.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F11-1)) (NCI Fast Stats, 2010). The details of whether and where cancer strikes also vary with age. As is true for many other chronic diseases, the older people become, the greater their chances of developing and dying of cancer. But in the United States, cancer is also the second-leading cause of death (after accidents) among children between 1 and 14 years of age.

**Figure 11.1: Estimated New Cancer Cases and Deaths by Type and Gender, 2013**

**Although the breasts in women and the prostate in men are the leading sites of new cases of cancer (left), lung cancer continues to be the leading cause of cancer deaths in both men and women (right)**.

**Source:** American Cancer Society, Inc., Surveillance Research.

**A Malignant Tumor**

**This scanning electron micrograph shows a tiny lung tumor (center) filling an alveolus (one of the air sacs that make up the lungs). The individual cancer cells are coated with microscopic, hairlike structures known as *microvilli***

© Moredun Animal Health Ltd/Science

Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc.

Variations in the distribution of cancers by race and ethnicity add to the complexity of cancer’s epidemiology. For instance, African-Americans have the highest incidence rates for cancer overall—a 60 percent greater risk than Hispanic-Americans and Asian-Americans—primarily because of high rates of lung and prostate cancer among men. Not only are African-Americans more likely to develop cancer, but they are also about 33 percent more likely to die of the disease than are European-Americans, and more than twice as likely to die of cancer as Asian/Pacific Islanders, Native Americans, and Hispanic-Americans. Compared to European Americans, African-American cancer patients often report lower health-related quality of life at diagnosis and require more time to return to baseline levels of quality of life after treatment (American Cancer Society, 2010).

As noted in [**Chapter 1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch01), several variables contribute to ethnic differences in chronic disease incidence and mortality, and cancer is no exception. Among these variables are socioeconomic status, knowledge about cancer and its treatment, and attitudes toward the disease, which may affect access to health care and adherence to medical advice (SEER, 2010). For example, compared with other ethnic groups, Latino men have lower rates of participation in screening tests for prostate cancer and less knowledge about risk factors for the disease (Glenn and others, 2012). As another example, although white women are more likely to develop breast cancer than African-American women, African-American women are more likely to die of the disease. African-American women historically have been less likely to perform regular breast self-examination and to obtain mammograms, the two most effective means of early detection (American Cancer Society, 2010). African-Americans and other minorities also tend to have less access to health insurance and health care facilities and greater distrust of the medical establishment, which may be perceived as insensitive and even racist. This explains why cancer of all types is generally diagnosed in later (usually more serious) stages in African-Americans and Latinos than it is in white Americans (Woods, Engel, & Rankin, 2010). African-Americans have lower five-year relative survival rates than European-Americans when all cancers are considered together (American Cancer Society, 2010). Among African-American women who have moved up the socioeconomic ladder, the breast cancer rate is the same as for white women at that economic level.

African-American cancer patients are also less likely to complete treatment and receive optimal treatment than their European-American counterparts (Schwartz and others, 2009). This has been partially attributed to the less informative patterns of communication between African-American cancer patients and health care providers (HCPs) (Song, Hamilton, & Moore, 2012). During medical visits, HCPs tend to be more verbally dominant, use less patient-centered communication, and are less likely to understand the cultural values and beliefs of African-American patients. African-American patients are often perceived as less effective communicators and are treated more contentiously than other patients, all of which makes them feel that they are treated unfairly and with disrespect by HCPs (Street & Haidet, 2011).

The issue of culturally competent health care extends to other groups (Lu and others, 2012). Despite the fact that currently an estimated 17.3 million U.S. residents identify themselves as Asian (U.S. Census Bureau, 2012), their quality of life and overall health during cancer survivorship have largely been overlooked (Yoo and others, 2010). As another example, the few studies that focus on Latinas have demonstrated that Latinas are less likely to participate in the decision-making process and have higher treatment decision regret, greater dissatisfaction with treatment, and poorer quality of life after treatment (Hawley and others, 2008). In addition to facing language barriers, Latinas often interact with HCPs who have limited understanding of Latino culture and who tend to provide more psychosocial support with patients who are more educated and affluent (Yanez, Stanton, & Maly, 2012)

Finally, ethnic differences in diet, tobacco use, and other risk factors for cancer also play a role. For example, African-Americans tend to smoke more and consume fattier diets—two behaviors implicated in many forms of cancer—than other Americans.

**Risk Factors for Cancer**

It is interesting to speculate about the number of cancer cases that would arise naturally in a population of otherwise healthy people who completely avoided all environmental carcinogens. By one estimate, epidemiologists suggest that less than 25 percent of all cancers would develop anyway as a result of uncontrollable genetic and biological processes (Lindor, Lindor, & Greene, 2006). In most cases of cancer, controllable factors such as smoking and diet play the most important role.

This section examines a number of risk factors for cancer. Although risk factors increase a person’s chance of developing cancer, not every person with those risk factors will develop the disease. Many people with one or more risk factors never develop cancer, whereas others who develop the disease have no known risk factors.

**Tobacco Use**

As we saw in [**Chapter 9**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch09), smoking is the most preventable cause of death in our society. The American Cancer Society estimates that about one in every five deaths in the United States is caused by tobacco, and most of those tobacco-related deaths were the result of cancer. Tobacco is the single most lethal [**carcinogen**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term66) (agent that causes cancer) in this country (American Cancer Society, 2010).

**carcinogen**

A cancer-causing agent such as tobacco, ultraviolet radiation, or an environmental toxin.

In most Western countries, there is an increased prevalence of smoking during adolescence (Mercken and others, 2012). Among twelfth-graders in the 2010 Monitoring the Future Study, 42.2 percent reported having tried smoking, and 10.7 percent reported smoking every day (Johnston and others, 2010). Despite efforts on many fronts to discourage young people from smoking, prevalence rates remain unacceptably high. An important factor that may contribute to the prevention of smoking in children is whether their parents smoke. A growing body of evidence indicates that parents who don’t smoke, and those who quit smoking before their children reach third grade, have children who develop more negative attitudes toward smoking and, in turn, are less likely to smoke themselves (Wyszynski, Bricker, & Comstock, 2011).

Peer influence and identity formation are key factors in why many young people experiment with tobacco. Adolescence is a time of pronounced self-concept development, and the regulation of self-concept strongly influences health behaviors (Shepperd, Rothman, & Klein, 2011). A young person can develop an identity based on a particular behavior, such that it is internalized as a defining aspect of that individual. As a result of experimental smoking, an adolescent may develop a self-concept as a smoker and consequently smoke more frequently (Hertel & Mermelstein, 2012).

Adolescents tend to select friends with similar smoking behavior, and the ease with which teens become addicted to nicotine means that once they start to smoke, it is very hard to quit and they are more likely to become regular smokers than if they started later in life. To many young people, smoking seems cool and like a sign of maturity, and the immediate rewards that nicotine provides (a boost in energy, termination of withdrawal symptoms, etc.) make quitting difficult.

Exposure to pro-smoking media, such as to point-of-sale displays, magazine advertising, and portrayals of smoking in movies, is another factor that increases smoking in adolescents and young adults. In a recent study, researchers used ecological momentary assessment (EMA) to examine momentary changes in 135 college students’ future smoking risk in response to pro-smoking media. The students, who consisted of *never smokers* (never smoked, even a puff) and *ever smokers*(reported any level of past smoking), carried handheld computers for 21 days and recorded their exposures to all forms of pro-smoking media. They also responded to random control prompts during each day of the assessment period. After each media exposure event and control prompt, the students answered questions that measured their risk of future smoking. The EMA data showed that all participants reported significantly higher future smoking risk following exposure to pro-smoking messages. (Shadel and others, 2012).

These findings are consistent with other data showing that consideration of immediate consequences may be a more important determinant of health behaviors than [**consideration of future consequences (CFC)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term95), particularly for young people (Adams, 2012). A recent study of 160 smokers found that a simple intervention that presented feedback regarding expired-air carbon monoxide levels just before, and again just after smoking a cigarette, increased perceptions of susceptibility to smoking-related illnesses and was associated with a greater intention to quit smoking (Shahab, West, & McNeill, 2011).

**consideration of future consequences (CFC)**

The extent to which individuals consider, and are influenced by, the potential future outcomes of their behavior.

Other researchers have found that a person’s time perspective may be associated with his or her socioeconomic status (SES), with higher SES predicting greater CFC, which in turn predicts more perceived benefits and fewer perceived barriers to adopting many health behaviors, including not smoking, obtaining recommended cancer screenings, and so forth (Whitaker and others, 2011). Several explanations have been offered for the relationship between SES and CFC, including that people in higher-SES groups are more likely to have the experience of achieving major developmental tasks, such as completing college, later in life. It has also been suggested that lower-SES environments encourage *reactive responding*, characterized by rapid, emotional reactions to situational stimuli and the necessity of dealing with immediate daily hassles that don’t lend themselves to anticipatory planning (Ouwehand and others, 2009).

We now know that cancer morbidity and mortality reflects smoking patterns of years earlier. Because North American men have been quitting for decades, lung cancer deaths for 55- to 64-year-old males are about half what they were in 1970 (CDC, 2013e). Because few women smoked at the start of the twentieth century, and their smoking increased later in the century, lung cancer mortality rates for women doubled during this same time period.

Although cancer mortality is decreasing in most developed nations, including the United States, about one-third of adults in Japan, Turkey, and the Netherlands still smoke. In India and China, more than half of all men smoke, and rates of smoking and cancer continue to increase, particularly for women. These trends led the World Health Organization in 2010 to call tobacco “the single largest preventable cause of death and chronic disease in the world” (Blas & Kurup, 2010).

Smoking causes cancers of the lungs, mouth, stomach, larynx (voice box), esophagus, pancreas, uterus, cervix, kidney, and bladder (National Cancer Institute, 2010). Up to 20 percent of lung cancer patients who smoked prior to diagnosis continue to do so (see Schnoll and others, 2003, for a review). Continued use of tobacco after a cancer diagnosis increases the risk of recurrence and the development of additional tumors, reduces the effectiveness of chemotherapy and other cancer treatments, and exacerbates the unpleasant side effects of treatment.

**Diet and Alcohol Use**

Only diet rivals tobacco as a cause of cancer, accounting for nearly the same number of deaths each year. Diet is a primary factor in as many as one-third of all cancer deaths (American Cancer Society, 2013). A number of dietary factors can affect cancer risk, including the types of foods you eat, how the food is prepared, the size of your portions, whether you eat a balanced diet, and your overall caloric balance (AICR, 2010). Cancers are more prevalent among people who are chronically malnourished and among those who consume high levels of fats, certain food additives (such as nitrates and other preservatives), and alcohol.

Although little is known about the mechanisms by which specific foods convey their health-related effects, we generally know which foods people should avoid and which they should eat in abundance if they want to minimize their risk of getting cancer.

**Cancer-Causing Foods**

The American Institute for Cancer Research (AICR), in conjunction with the World Cancer Research Fund (WCRF), recently published a comprehensive analysis of the literature on diet and cancer (AICR, 2010). The report identifies five dietary recommendations that people can follow to help reduce their risk of developing cancer: (1) reducing intake of foods and drinks that promote weight gain, namely foods high in saturated fats and sugary drinks; (2) eating mostly plant-based foods; (3) limiting intake of red meat and avoiding processed meat; (4) limiting consumption of alcoholic beverages; and (5) reducing intake of salt and avoiding moldy cereals (grains) or pulses (legumes). The cancers that have been most directly linked to foods are those that affect the cells that line bodily tissues, including those in the lungs, colon, bladder, stomach, rectum, and, to a lesser degree, the uterus, prostate, breasts, and kidneys. It should come as no surprise that these cancers are most prevalent in cultures noted for high-fat diets, such as the United States.

In recent years, soy foods have been singled out as having a possible link to certain cancers. Soy foods (such as tofu, edamame, and products made with soy flour) contain organic compounds called *isoflavones*, which can act like estrogen (*phytoestrogens*) in the body, although at a very small fraction of the hormone’s naturally occurring potency. These effects can be good or bad. Estrogen has been linked to hormonally sensitive cancers in women, such as breast cancer. Breast cells contain estrogen receptors, which, when stimulated, can promote the growth of *estrogen-receptor (ER) breast tumors*. Anti-cancer drugs like tamoxifen are effective because they block estrogen receptors so that estrogen can’t reach them and stimulate the growth of tumors.

Most of the concern about soy has come from studies in laboratory animals. For instance, some studies have found that rats injected with ER-positive tumor cells and who also received large doses of isoflavones had a greater growth of the tumors than rats given little or no isoflavones. But not all animal studies have shown harmful effects. To further complicate matters, isoflavones also have antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties that are beneficial in fighting cancer. In addition, isoflavones have *anti*-estrogen properties that can block the more potent natural estrogens from binding to estrogen receptors. Epidemiological studies, in which large numbers of healthy women reported details about their diet and were followed for many years, have either found *no*association between soy and breast cancer or a *protective* association, meaning that *people who ate more soy had less breast cancer* (McCullough, 2012). The traditional soy-rich Asian diet may partially explain the normally low risk of breast, uterine, and other hormone-related cancers in Asian women.

Cross-cultural studies have also found that Japanese-American women are more likely to develop breast cancer when they live in the United States and consume a high-fat American diet (Wynder, Fujita, & Harris, 1991). Data from the National Cancer Institute (NCI) study of 188,736 postmenopausal women—the largest study ever to address the issue—reported that women whose diets included the most fat (40 percent of calories) were 15 percent more likely to develop breast cancer than women who ate the least fat (20 percent of calories) (Thebaut and others, 2007).

**Cancer-Fighting Foods**

Healthy foods include vegetables, fruits, legumes (such as beans and peas), whole-grain carbohydrates (such as brown rice and whole wheat bread, as opposed to processed or refined “white” flours and grains), good fats (unhydrogenated monounsaturated fats that come primarily from plant sources), and organic coffee (caffeinated or decaf) in moderation.

Foods that may play a protective role against some cancers do so by blocking carcinogenic processes in body cells. For example, *antioxidants* such as vitamins A and C may buffer against the cell-damaging activities of free radicals.

Especially beneficial are dark green, yellow, and orange vegetables that are rich in [**carotenoids**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term71), light-absorbing pigments found in certain plants. Carotenoids are responsible for the color of carrots, tomatoes, pumpkins, broccoli, cauliflower, Brussels sprouts, citrus fruits, and strawberries. One carotenoid, *beta-carotene*, is broken down by the body as a rich source of vitamin A. Vitamin A is essential in maintaining the health of the cells that line the lungs and stomach. Diets that include five to nine servings daily of foods that are rich in beta-carotene are linked to reduced risk of cancer of the lungs, stomach, colon and rectum, and, to a lesser degree, the breasts, bladder, and pancreas. Cooked tomato products, which are rich in the carotenoid *lycopene*, may reduce the risk of prostate cancer.

**carotenoids**

Light-absorbing pigments that give carrots, tomatoes, and other foods their color and are rich sources of antioxidant vitamins.

Other studies have found that diets rich in fruits, vegetables, and fiber may offer some protection against colon and rectal cancers, most likely because they promote rapid removal of cancer-causing wastes from the body. In a massive study, George Fraser (1991) found that people who ate fruit at least twice a day had one-fourth the risk of developing lung cancer as those who ate fruit fewer than three times a week. Participants who ate fruit three to seven times each week had about one-third the risk of developing lung cancer.

Data from the Nurses’ Health Study (NHS), one of the most significant studies ever conducted on women’s health, reveal that premenopausal women who consumed five or more servings per day of fruits and vegetables were 23 percent less likely to develop breast cancer than those who ate fewer than two servings per day (NHS, 2010). Although this level of protection appears to be modest, we should remember that the link between obesity and breast cancer is very strong (see [**Chapter 8**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch08)), and eating a lot of fruits and vegetables also helps to maintain a healthy weight.

Researchers are studying many other foods as possible weapons against cancer. Protective foods include garlic, onions, and leeks (which contain a compound called *allium* that may protect against breast cancer), and *seleniumrich* foods such as fish, liver, garlic (which has both allium and selenium), eggs, and whole grains (which may reduce the risk of prostate cancer). The newest anticancer candidates are green tea, olive oil (which may reduce the risk of breast cancer when used to replace other fats), and foods rich in vitamin D and calcium (which may reduce both breast and colon cancer). [**Table 11.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T11-1) summarizes the sources of several cancer-fighting foods and their possible benefits.

**Table 11.1: Foods That May Prevent Cancer**

| **Substance** | **Source** | **Possible Health Benefit** |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Garlic | Garlic powder, cloves, supplements | May have antioxidant properties that protect against breast and stomach cancer |
| Flavonoids | Red wine, grapes, apples, cranberries | May reduce the risk of lung and colorectal cancer |
| Lycopene | Tomatoes, red peppers, watermelon | May have stronger antioxidant properties than beta-carotene, which protect against several cancers, including prostate cancer |
| Beta-carotene | Dark yellow and orange fruits, leafy dark green vegetables, apricots, pumpkins, carrots, spinach, and squash | Associated with reduced risk of cancer of the lung, stomach, colon and rectum, and, to a lesser degree, the breasts, bladder, and pancreas |
| Selenium | Liver, mushrooms, garlic, fish | Believed to increase the antioxidant effects of vitamin E and protect against prostate cancer |
| Isoflavones | Beans, grains, soy products | May reduce the risk of breast and prostate cancer |
| Indoles | Cruciferous vegetables such as broccoli, Brussels sprouts, and cabbage | May reduce the risk of several forms of cancer |

**Alcohol**

Although moderate consumption of alcoholic beverages may reduce the risk of cardiovascular disease (see [**Chapter 10**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch10)), excessive drinking, especially among tobacco users, has been shown to be a major risk factor for cancer of the upper respiratory and digestive tracts. Alcohol may also contribute to breast, colorectal, and liver cancer. Women who consume two or more alcohol-containing drinks a day have at least a 25 percent greater risk of developing breast cancer than women who do not use alcohol (NHS, 2010). Alcohol-related cirrhosis is a frequent cause of liver cancer and may place the immune system in “overdrive,” even when no threat (other than excessive alcohol) is present. Animal research shows that drinking the equivalent of two to four alcoholic drinks per day also dramatically increases the growth of an existing tumor (Tan, Barger, & Shields, 2006).

However, we must be cautious in drawing conclusions about alcohol and immunocompetence. People who abuse alcohol may also suffer from poor nutrition and sleep deprivation and may be exposed to other pathogens that compromise their health. Sadly, alcoholism increases with poverty and causes disproportionately more harm in poor countries because prevention and treatment strategies have not caught up with alcohol abuse. Generally speaking, low-income nations see more alcohol abuse, while more affluent nations have more moderate drinkers (Blas & Kurup, 2010).

**Physical Activity**

Lack of physical activity may be a risk factor for certain cancers. An early prospective study of men with colon cancer, men with rectal cancer, and healthy men found that the more sedentary a man’s job, and the longer he had worked at that job, the greater his risk of colon cancer (Vena and others, 1985). More recently, researchers have similarly reported an inverse relationship between overall physical activity levels and the risk of colon cancer in both women and men (Lynch and others, 2010). These results suggest that a sedentary lifestyle is indeed a risk factor for colon cancer, one of the leading causes of cancer mortality.

Regular physical activity—either work-related or recreational—may also protect against breast cancer. For example, Suzanne Shoff and her colleagues (2000) found that physically active women who had lost weight since they were 18, or had gained only minimal amounts of weight, were only half as likely as their inactive counterparts to develop breast cancer after menopause. The most compelling evidence comes from the Nurses’ Health Study, which reported that women who exercised seven hours or more per week were 20 percent less likely to develop breast cancer than women who exercised less than one hour per week (Rockhill and others, 1999; NHS, 2010).

Walking, the most frequently reported exercise, was as effective in protecting against cancer as more strenuous forms of exercise. Similarly, data from the massive Women’s Health Initiative Cohort Study indicate that women who engaged in the equivalent of as little as an hour and a half of brisk walking each week had an 18 percent decreased risk of breast cancer compared with inactive women (McTiernan and others, 2003). Considering the impact of diet and physical activity together, researchers estimate that up to one-third of breast cancer cases could be prevented if women ate less and exercised more (Cheng, 2010).

**Overweight and Obesity**

The link between obesity and increased risk of death from cancer and other causes has long been established. Obesity increases the risk of cancers of the endometrium (the lining of the uterus), colon, kidney, esophagus, pancreas, ovaries, and gallbladder (NCI, 2010). The effect of obesity on the risk of breast cancer depends on a woman’s menopausal status. Before menopause, obese women have a lower risk of developing breast cancer than do women who are not obese. However, after menopause, obese women have 1.5 times the risk of developing breast cancer of women who are not obese. The relationship between obesity and breast cancer risk is strongest in women with a large amount of abdominal fat.

Until recently, the relationship between being overweight and increased risk of death remained uncertain. In 2012, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) reported that almost as many adults in the United States are overweight (34 percent) as are obese (35.9 percent). As you will remember from [**Chapter 8**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch08), overweight and obesity are defined using a measurement called body mass index (BMI), calculated as a person’s weight divided by the square of his or her height. A BMI of 18.5 to 25.0 is considered normal, whereas people who have a BMI of 25.0 to 29.9 are considered overweight, and individuals with a BMI over 30.0 are regarded as obese.

The massive NIH-AARP Diet and Health Study monitored the health status of over half a million Americans ages 50 to 71 years, from 1995 through 2005, by using mailed questionnaires and surveying death records. Among nonsmokers, the risk of mortality at age 50 among those who were overweight increased by 20 to 40 percent. Mortality risk among obese participants increased twofold to threefold (NCI, 2010).

The exact mechanisms by which obesity and being overweight increase cancer risk are not known and may be different for different cancers. Possible mechanisms in obese people include alterations in sex hormones (estrogen, progesterone, and testosterone) as well as in insulin and IGF-1 (a hormone similar to insulin) that may cause increased risk for cancers of the breast, endometrium, and colon (NCI, 2010d).

**Family History**

Only a small percentage of all breast cancer cases are inherited. The vast majority (nearly 95 percent) are linked to a combination of genetic and nongenetic risk factors. Nongenetic risk factors include obesity, younger age at menarche, lack of exercise, smoking, poor diet, use of oral contraceptives, the presence of other diseases of the breast, radiation exposure, and use of alcohol.

Genetic vulnerability can, however, interact with other risk factors to increase an individual’s risk. For example, approximately one-third of the 175,000 women diagnosed with breast cancer each year in the United States have a family history of the disease. Evidence again comes from the Nurses’ Health Study, which found that the daughters of women diagnosed with breast cancer before age 40 were more than twice as likely to develop breast cancer, as compared with women whose mothers had no history of the disease. The daughters of women with breast cancer after age 70 were one and a half times more likely to develop breast cancer. Participants who had a sister with breast cancer were more than twice as likely to develop this cancer themselves; when both mother *and* sister were diagnosed with breast cancer, the risk increased to two and a half times (Colditz and others, 1993; NHS, 2010).

Both men and women can inherit and pass on defective genes. Families in which breast cancer is inherited typically demonstrate the following characteristics:

* Breast cancer in two or more close relatives, such as a mother and two sisters
* Early onset—often before age 50—of breast cancer in family members
* History of breast cancer in more than one generation
* Cancer in both breasts in one or more family members
* Frequent occurrence of ovarian cancer
* Ashkenazi (Eastern and Central European) Jewish ancestry, with a family history of breast and/or ovarian cancer

Other forms of cancer also are linked to mutant genes. One example is *basal cell carcinoma*—the most common (and usually localized) form of skin cancer (NCI Fast Stats, 2010). Other examples include cancer of the ovaries, prostate, pancreas, and larynx (Smith, 1998). Men who carry this mutant gene are nearly twice as likely as noncarriers to develop prostate cancer by age 80.

**Environmental and Occupational Hazards**

The degree of cancer hazard posed by environmental toxins depends on the concentration of the carcinogen and the amount of exposure to the toxin. However, even low-dose exposure can represent a significant public health hazard when a large segment of the population is involved.

**Toxic Chemicals**

Various chemicals are clearly carcinogenic, including asbestos, vinyl chloride, and arsenic. In addition, some researchers believe that exposure to chlorine-containing compounds found in some household cleaning and pest-control products may increase the risk of breast cancer and, possibly, other hormone-related cancers. Although the popular media have focused on the dangers of pesticides, the very low concentrations found in some foods are generally well within established safety levels and pose minimal risks.

Environmental toxins in the air, soil, and water are estimated to contribute to about 2 percent of fatal cancers, mainly of the bladder and the lungs. Although long-term exposure to high levels of air pollution—especially by smokers—may increase the risk of lung cancer by as much as 50 percent, this pales in comparison to the 2000 percent increased risk caused by heavy smoking itself.

Although a few studies have linked water chlorinating and fluoridation with bladder cancer, most experts believe that the potential health risk is small and is outweighed by the greater danger of the spread of diseases such as cholera and typhoid fever by germs in unchlorinated water. Moreover, fluoride in drinking water is an effective agent in preventing tooth decay (NCI, 2010e).

**Radiation**

Beginning in the 1960s, a well-tanned complexion became fashionable. However, many people burn rather than tan, and we now know that a serious long-term effect of sunburn is skin cancer. In those days, when skinprotective sunscreens were generally unknown, sunbathing was especially risky. Is it any wonder that 40 to 50 percent of all Americans who reach age 65 develop skin cancer (American Cancer Society, 2010)? Even today, skin cancer is the most common and most rapidly increasing type of cancer in the United States.

High-frequency radiation, ionizing radiation (IR), and ultraviolet (UV) radiation are proven carcinogens. Ultraviolet B rays, which can damage DNA, cause more than 90 percent of all skin cancers, including [**melanoma**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term214)**,** a potentially deadly form of cancer that forms in skin cells. For at least 30 years, the incidence rate of melanoma has been increasing in the United States (American Cancer Society, 2013). A number of researchers believe that the overall frequency of sunburns during childhood is a key factor in melanoma. This explains why people who take longer to develop a sunburn have a lower incidence of melanoma than those who burn quickly. Another factor in the rising trend in skin cancer is the thinning of the Earth’s ozone layer, which filters skin-damaging UV radiation. A third factor in the rise of melanoma cases is believed to be an increase in suntanning and use of tanning booths, which has exposed people to greater amounts of ultraviolet (UV) radiation (Purdue and others, 2008).

**melanoma**

A potentially deadly form of cancer that strikes the melatonin-containing cells of the skin.

Given the evidence that the sun’s UV rays can cause cancer, why do so many people continue to bask in the sun? In one study, researchers interviewed sunbathers at California beaches to determine the factors that influenced their decision to lie in the sun (Keesling & Friedman, 1987). Those with the deepest tans (who also reported spending the largest amounts of time in the sun) were least knowledgeable about skin cancer. They also were more relaxed, more sensitive to the influence of peers who valued a good tan, more likely to take other risks, and more focused on their appearance. A more recent study of Australian teenagers reported that people with “medium” tans were perceived as healthier and more attractive than people with no tan (Broadstock, Borland, & Gason, 2006). Interestingly, this has not always been so. The tanning business skyrocketed in the 1990s, mostly in Western cultures. In some other parts of the world, fair skin remains the standard of beauty.

**Suntans Are Unhealthy**

**Ultraviolet radiation, whether from the sun or tanning booth, injures the skin and ages it prematurely (a 20-year-old who tans frequently may look 10 years older). In addition, frequent tanning may contribute to skin cancer. The only safe tan is a fake one created by a sunless, self-tanning product**.

© Stockbyte

Another factor in why people tan appears to be a hopeful belief that their risk of skin cancer is minimal. In a recent study, 211 sixth-, seventh-, and eighth-grade students were shown pictures of either tanned or fair-skinned models, and then responded to a questionnaire that included an assessment of their *comparative optimism* for skin cancer later in life. [**Comparative optimism**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term90) for a negative event refers to the tendency for people to believe that their personal risk is lower than that of their peers (Harris, Griffin, & Murray, 2008). For some individuals (people who avoid tanning), this belief may be accurate for certain health outcomes (such as skin cancer) because they are in fact at a lower risk than their peers (people who do not avoid tanning). Children as young as 8 years of age demonstrate comparative optimism for health events (Albery & Messer, 2005).

**comparative optimism**

Thetendency to think that one will experience more positive and fewer negative events than others.

The results of the study showed that the students, as a whole, were comparatively optimistic about their likelihood of developing skin cancer, despite the fact that more than half of them reported intentionally tanning. Among the older students (13- and 14-year-old adolescents), comparative optimism was greatest for those who did not tan but viewed a high-risk (tanned) model. However, although the younger students (11- and 12-year-olds) also demonstrated comparative optimism, their optimism did not vary as a function of their personal tanning behavior or the tanning status of the models that they were shown. These results suggest that the social comparison processes underlying comparative optimism become more complex with age (Roberts and others, 2011).

Nonionizing, or low-frequency, radiation (such as that arising from microwave ovens, radar screens, electricity, and radios) has not been shown to cause cancer. Another common fear—living near a nuclear plant—is largely unfounded. In a 35-year study of over 40 million people, researchers compared the cancer death rates of Americans who lived near nuclear plants with the cancer death rates of people who lived in counties that had no nuclear sites. No differences were found in the two groups (Jablon, Hrubec, & Boice, 1991). Similarly, although toxic wastes in dump sites can threaten health through air, water, and soil pollution, most community exposures involve very low-dose levels and do not pose serious health threats. A three-year study begun in late 2012 is examining cancer risk among people living near six nuclear power plants and one nuclear fuel facility. Pending these results, the study may be expanded to the rest of the nation’s 104 nuclear reactors (Ahlers, 2012)

**Occupational Carcinogens and Pollution**

People whose work involves exposure to certain chemicals have long been known to be at greater risk of developing cancer than others. *Occupational cancers* mostly affect the lungs, skin, bladder, and blood-forming systems of the body (NIOSH, 2010). For example, those who work with asbestos, chromium, and chromium compounds are much more likely than other workers to develop lung cancer. Workers exposed to benzene, a solvent used in making varnishes and dyes, are at high risk for developing leukemia.

Other substances now known to be carcinogenic include diesel exhaust and radon. In recent years, however, strict control measures in the workplace (at least in the developed world) have reduced the proportion of cancer deaths caused by job-related carcinogens to less than 5 percent. Unfortunately, such control measures generally lag behind the pace of industrialization in developing countries, where job-related cancers are still likely to increase.

**Stress and Immunocompetence**

With advances in *psychoneuroimmunology* (PNI), researchers are paying more attention to psychological risk factors—in particular, the role of stress—in the development of cancer. In [**Chapter 4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch04), we saw how PNI researchers study the relationships among the mind, the body, and immunity. [**Immunocompetence**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term186)—our immune system’s ability to mount an effective defense against disease and harmful foreign agents—depends on many factors, including our overall health, the nature of the health-threatening disease or foreign agent, and perceived stress.

**immunocompetence**

The overall ability of the immune system, at any given time, to defend the body against the harmful effects of foreign agents.

How might perceived stress promote the development of cancer? According to the [**immune surveillance theory**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term185), cancer cells, which develop spontaneously in the body, are prevented from spreading and developing into tumors by natural killer (NK) cells and other agents of the immune system. However, when the immune system is overwhelmed by the number of cancer cells or weakened by stress or some other factor, the immune system’s surveillance is suppressed, and cancer may develop.

**immune surveillance theory**

The theory that cells of the immune system play a monitoring function in searching for and destroying abnormal cells such as those that form tumors.

Perceived stress from exams, work, divorce, bereavement, caring for a terminally ill relative, environmental catastrophes, and unemployment, for example, adversely affects our immune functioning (see Cohen and others, 2001, for a review). Based on such findings, one early PNI model, the *global immunosuppression model*, proposed that stress always suppresses immune responses. This type of blunted immunity was assumed to be responsible for the increased incidence of infectious diseases and some cancers found in chronically stressed people.

Although the global immunosuppression model dominated the thinking of PNI researchers for years and continues to be influential, the concept of broad decreases in immunity does not make sense to some researchers as a species’ response to all stressors. They reason that if the stress-immune response did indeed evolve, a healthy person should not be adversely affected when it is triggered because this would be maladaptive; natural selection would have selected against this over the course of evolution. Indeed, studies done over the past 35 years, examining the relationship between stress and cancer risk, have produced conflicting results (Segerstrom & Miller, 2004). Some studies have reported an indirect relationship between stress and certain types of virus-related cancers, such as Kaposi’s sarcoma and some lymphomas (NCI, 2010c). And although many studies have demonstrated that stress can affect neuroendocrine and immune function adversely, the clinical significance of these changes for cancer patients is not clear (Luecken & Compas, 2002). One reason for the inconsistency in results when examining cancer risk is that it is difficult to separate stress from other factors such as smoking, using alcohol, becoming overweight, and even growing older.

To address this problem, the *biphasic model* proposes that only the most chronic stressors cause global immunosuppression. Short-term stressors that trigger our fight-or-flight response either have no effect on immunity or might actually *enhance* immunity to help prepare us to defend against possible infection or injury (Dhabhar & McEwen, 2001; Segerstrom & Miller, 2004). Examples of acute stressors that enhance natural immunity include challenging computer tasks, mental arithmetic, and loud noises. In contrast, chronic stressors such as bereavement, long-term caregiving, and suffering a traumatic injury produce global suppression of most measures of immune function.

**Childhood Adversity**

Childhood adversity has been associated with greater emotional and physiological sensitivity to stress (McLaughlin and others, 2010). For example, children who experienced adversity are more likely to report difficulties when they encounter stressors in adulthood than those who did not have these experiences earlier in life (Fagundes and others, 2013). They also have more pronounced cortisol and autonomic responses to stress (Heim and others, 2008). Stressful early life events also may disrupt cellular immune function. One study found that adolescents who were abused or institutionalized had higher antibody responses to the herpes simplex virus, reflecting poorer cellular immune system control compared to those who did not experience these adversities (Shirtcliff, Coe, & Pollak, 2009). Another found that children growing up in poverty had elevated cytomegalovirus (CMV) antibody titers compared with those from higher-income families (Dowd, Palermo, & Aiello, 2012). These studies suggest that childhood adversity may have an impact on whether cancer develops later in life.

Childhood stressors also may promote long-term immune system dysregulation. In addition, childhood adversity seems to heighten the impact of later-life caregiving stress, being associated with elevated inflammation, shorter telomere length, and poorer localized immune response to tumors (Kiecolt-Glaser and others, 2011). A recent study found that breast cancer survivors who experienced more childhood adversities had higher Epstein-Barr virus (EBV) and CMV antibody titers than those with fewer childhood adversities (Fagundes and others, 2013). They also had more depressive symptoms and poorer sleep quality.

**Cancer Treatment**

When cancer does develop, early detection and treatment can prevent death and perhaps reduce overall treatment time.

**Early Diagnosis**

A cancer diagnosis may result in months or years of painful or uncomfortable treatment. This is because cancer develops over time, as neoplastic cells grow into tumors that may metastasize to surrounding tissues. Detecting this process early on, before malignant cells have gained a strong foothold, can improve a person’s chances of survival dramatically ([**Figure 11.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F11-2)). Unfortunately, many people refuse to perform self-examinations and do not follow recommended screening schedules for cancer of the prostate, breasts, colon, rectum, and cervix ([**Table 11.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T11-2)). Also, as many as 30 to 50 percent of people with noticeable cancer symptoms delay three or four months before seeking medical attention (Arndt and others, 2002). (See [**Table 11.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T11-3).) A growing body of health psychology research demonstrates that the perception of risk and feelings of vulnerability are key factors in whether people follow recommended screening schedules (Fagerlin and others, 2010), and that risk perception can be influenced by tailored educational interventions (Dillard and others, 2012).

**Figure 11.2: Five-Year Relative Survival Rates by Race and Stage at Diagnosis**

**Five-year relative survival rates are commonly used to monitor progress in the early detection and treatment of cancer. This includes all survivors, whether in remission, disease-free, or under treatment. The term** *localized* **refers to a malignant tumor confined entirely to the organ of origin**. *Regional* **refers to a malignant tumor that has extended beyond the limits of the organ of origin into the surrounding organs or tissues and/or involves regional lymph nodes by way of the lymphatic system**. *Distant* **refers to a malignant cancer that has spread to parts of the body remote from the primary tumor either by direct extension or by metastasis, or via the lymphatic system to distant lymph nodes. The earlier the detection, the greater the likelihood that the tumor will be localized; thus, survival increases markedly the earlier the cancer is diagnosed**.

**Source:** Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program, by National Cancer Institute ([**search.nci.nih.gov/**](http://search.nci.nih.gov/)).

**Table 11.2: Prevalence of Cancer Screening among Five Racial and Ethnic Groups**

| **Cancer Screening** | **European-American** | **African-American** | **Hispanic-American** | **Native American** | **Asian/Pacific Islander** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Prostate test (protoscopy) within the past five years | 30.4% | 28.2% | 22.4% | 27.6% | California[**\***](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/NT11-1): 24.3%;  Hawaii[**\***](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/NT11-1): 40.7% |
| Colorectal test | 18.2% | 20.3% | 14.2% | 12.3% | California[**\***](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/NT11-1): 2.6%;  Hawaii[**\***](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/NT11-1): 23.8% |
| Mammogram within the past two years | 73.7% | 76.1% | 63.5% | Alaska[**\***](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/NT11-1): 93.5%  Hawaii[**\***](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/NT11-1): 80.7% |  |
| Cervical/uterine test within the past three years | 84.7% | 91.1% | 80.9% | 90.5% | Hawaii[**\***](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/NT11-1): 84.2% |
| **Source:** Behavioral Risk Factor Surveillance System, Surveillance Summary Report, 2000. National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. | | | | | |

\*

Indicates state-specific prevalence estimates available for the corresponding race/ethnic group

**Table 11.3: Signs and Symptoms of Cancer**

Signs are signals that can be seen by others. Symptoms are signals that are felt or noticed by someone who has them. The signs and symptoms of cancer depend on where the cancer is, its size, and whether it has metastasized. Having one or more of these symptoms doesn’t necessarily mean that you have cancer, but if a symptom has lasted for a long time or is getting worse, you should see your doctor.

* Unusual weight loss
* Fever
* Unexplained fatigue
* Pain
* Yellow, red, or darkened skin
* Pain or other changes in bladder or bowel habits
* Sores that won’t heal
* White spots on the tongue or inside the mouth
* Unusual bleeding
* Any lumps in the breast or other parts of the body
* Indigestion or difficulty swallowing
* Any noticeable changes in a wart or mole
* Persistent cough that won’t go away

For those with family histories of cancer, genetic screening has become a useful method of early detection. Nowadays a simple blood test can detect genetic mutations linked to an increased risk of many types of cancer. Such tests, however, have raised a host of ethical and practical questions. On the practical side, many laboratories administering these tests do not follow the (admittedly vague and inadequate) regulatory controls that help ensure the validity of genetic tests. And some labs market tests to physicians, obstetricians, and primary care providers who lack expertise in medical genetics.

The more significant problem has to do with the ethics of genetic testing and the knowledge that it provides. The ability to predict someone’s genetic future also raises a host of psychosocial concerns,both for the individual being tested and for other family members who might be at risk (Cella and others, 2002). If you were fated to develop cancer, would you want to know? What would you do in response? Providing people with a diagnosis of an untreatable disease raises concerns, especially when dealing with children who may not fully understand the implications of the tests. Others fear that children identified as carriers of serious diseases will be discriminated against. A related concern is the real possibility that insurance companies will deny coverage to individuals who have a predisposition toward developing a particular disease. An important goal of the new Affordable Care Act is to help prevent this by keeping insurance companies from refusing to cover people with preexisting conditions.

**Treatment Options**

Until recently, the treatment options for most forms of cancer were severely limited, and cancer was often a death sentence. Today, there are many effective treatment options that have reduced death rates from most types of cancer. These options include surgery, chemotherapy, radiation therapy, and combination regimes, such as those involving both bone marrow transplantation and radiation therapy (Varmus, 2006).

**Surgery**

Surgery is the oldest form of cancer treatment, and it generally offers the greatest chance for cure for most types of cancer. Approximately 60 percent of cancer patients have some form of surgery, which is usually recommended to achieve one or more of the following goals:

* *Diagnostic* surgery is used to obtain a tissue sample for laboratory testing to confirm a diagnosis and identify the specific cancer. A procedure to remove all or part of a tumor for diagnostic tests is called a *biopsy*.
* *Preventive* surgery is performed to remove a growth that is not presently malignant but is likely to become so if left untreated. Sometimes preventive surgery is used to remove an organ when people have an inherited condition that makes development of a cancer likely.
* *Staging* surgery is used to determine the extent of disease. In *laparoscopy*, for example, a tube is passed through a tiny incision in the abdomen to examine its contents and remove tissue samples.
* *Curative* surgery involves the removal of a tumor when the tumor appears to be localized and there is hope of taking out all of the cancerous tissue.
* *Restorative* (or reconstructive) surgery is used to restore a person’s appearance or the function of an organ or body part. Examples include breast reconstruction after mastectomy and the use of bone grafts or *prosthetic* (metal or plastic) bone or joint replacements after surgical treatment of bone cancer.

**Detecting Skin Cancer**

**Most important in the treatment of cancer is early detection. Here, a health care provider examines a blemish on the arm of a patient. An unusual sore, lump, marking, or change in the way that an area of skin looks or feels may be a sign of skin cancer or a warning that it might occur**.

© Lauren Shear/Science Source

**Chemotherapy**

*Chemotherapy* is the use of medicines to treat cancer. While surgery and radiation therapy destroy or damage cancer cells in a specific area, chemotherapy can destroy cancer cells that have spread, or metastasized, to parts of the body far from the original, or primary, tumor. These *systemic drugs*travel through the bloodstream to reach all areas of the body.

Depending on the type of cancer and its stage of development, chemotherapy can be used to cure cancer, to keep the cancer from spreading, to slow the cancer’s growth, to kill cancer cells that may have spread to other parts of the body from the original tumor, or to relieve symptoms caused by the cancer. In one of the newest forms of chemotherapy, [**immunotherapy**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term187)**,** medications are used to enhance the immune system’s ability to selectively target cancer cells (Disis, 2005).

**immunotherapy**

Chemotherapy in which medications are used to support or enhance the immune system’s ability to target cancer cells selectively.

Anticancer drugs are made to kill fast-growing cells; however, because these drugs travel throughout the body, they can affect normal, healthy cells as well. The normal cells most likely to be affected are blood cells that form in the bone marrow and cells in the digestive tract, reproductive system, and hair follicles (which is why Jeremy temporarily lost his hair). Some anticancer drugs also can damage cells of the heart, kidneys, bladder, lungs, and nervous system.

The most common side effects of chemotherapy are nausea and vomiting, hair loss, and fatigue. Less common side effects include bleeding, infections, and anemia. Although side effects are not always as bad as expected, their reputation makes chemotherapy an anxiety-provoking treatment.

**Alternative treatments for cancer will be discussed more fully in**[**Chapter 15**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch15) .

**Radiation Therapy**

All cells, cancerous and healthy, grow and divide. But cancer cells grow and divide more rapidly than many of the normal cells around them. Radiation therapy delivers high doses of x-rays, gamma rays, or alpha and beta particles to cancerous tumors, killing or damaging them so that they cannot grow, multiply, or spread. Although some normal cells may be affected by radiation, most appear to repair themselves and recover fully from the effects of the treatment. Unlike chemotherapy, which exposes the entire body to cancer-fighting chemicals, radiation therapy affects only the tumor and the surrounding area.

An estimated 350,000 cancer patients receive radiation therapy each year, more than half of all cancer cases. It is the primary treatment for cancer in almost any part of the body, including head and neck tumors, early-stage Hodgkin’s disease, non-Hodgkin’s lymphomas, and cancers of the lungs, breasts, cervix, prostate, testes, bladder, thyroid, and brain. Radiation therapy also can be used to shrink a tumor prior to surgery (so that it can be removed more easily) or after surgery to stop the growth of any cancer cells that remain.

Like chemotherapy, radiation is often associated with side effects, including temporary or permanent loss of hair in the area being treated, fatigue, loss of appetite, skin rashes, and loss of white blood cells. On the positive side, thousands of people have become cancer-free after receiving radiation treatments alone or in combination with surgery or chemotherapy.

**When child psychologist Elizabeth King was diagnosed with cancer, her son created a story and illustration about a character named “Kemo Shark,” who swam around in his mother’s body eating cancer cells (and sometimes healthy ones by mistake, which caused her to feel sick). When King completed her treatment, she developed her son’s story into a children’s comic book and funded the nonprofit organization KIDSCOPE to raise money to distribute the book at no cost**.

See [**http://www.kidscope.org**](http://www.kidscope.org/).—Courtesy of KIDSCOPE; Concept by Mitchell McGraugh.

**Alternative Treatments**

Many cancer patients have tried one or more treatments as alternatives to medical treatments. Among these are aromatherapy, biofeedback, meditation, music therapy, prayer and spiritual practices, yoga, tai chi (an exercise-based form of “moving meditation”), art therapy, massage therapy, and herbal treatment. Although alternative therapies are generally unproven and have not been scientifically tested, many *can* be used safely along with standard biomedical treatment to relieve symptoms or side effects, to ease pain, and to improve a patient’s overall quality of life.

**Coping with Cancer**

Life-threatening chronic diseases such as cancer create unique stresses for both victims and their families. Cancer is a dreaded disease, which most people realize can be intensely painful and lead to disability, disfigurement, or death. An estimated 20 to 40 percent of all cancer patients report elevated levels of affective distress (Holland & Alici, 2010; Hart & Charles, 2013). At diagnosis, during treatment, and even years after treatment, people with a history of cancer often report higher levels of anxiety, anger, hostility, and depression than do their nonaffected same-age peers (Hinz and others, 2010). However, this varies with the age of the individual. Older age generally is associated with less distress among both cancer patients and cancer survivors (Brant and others, 2011). Importantly, although cancer survivors seem to experience similar numbers and types of stressful events as the general population, some studies show that cancer survivors may perceive stressors as somewhat more severe and disruptive, particularly when they involve interpersonal tension (Costanzo and others, 2012).

As patients’ expectations of survival have increased, so has the need for psychosocial supports aimed at restoring or maintaining quality of life. Health psychologists are helping focus attention and resources on enabling patients and their families to cope with the adverse effects of cancer treatment. They also are helping health care professionals recognize that the course of adjustment to cancer is not the same for all patients (Helgeson, Snyder, & Seltman, 2004).

Research on the emotional and behavioral responses of cancer patients to surgery consistently shows high levels of anxiety both before and after the operation. Compared with patients who are undergoing surgery for benign conditions, cancer surgery patients have higher overall levels of distress and slower rates of emotional recovery. In one study, breast cancer patients’ presurgery expectations were significant predictors of their *postsurgery* pain, fatigue, and nausea (Montgomery, 2004).

Even when cancer treatment is successful and the disease is in remission, the fear, stress, and uncertainty do not go away. The threat of recurrence looms, for some patients for the rest of their lives. In fact, the distress associated with cancer recurrence is often greater than that following the initial diagnosis (Vickberg, 2003). The words of one breast cancer survivor poignantly illustrate this anxiety:

* This is what cancer is about to me, living with possible recurrence. Cancer is not about two months of treatment and a couple of minor surgeries…. I think the hardest thing for women like me who have found their cancers early and kept their breasts is to believe we are going to get away with all this. Am I really going to be OK? as quoted in Vickberg (2003).

**True “Fighting Spirit”**

**Canadian Terry Fox’s refusal to be defeated by cancer has inspired several generations. In this photo, Terry, who lost his right leg to cancer, runs along a highway just before reaching the halfway mark in his cross-Canada run. Terry ran coast to coast on an artificial limb—often as far as a 26-mile marathon each day—to raise money to fight the killer disease. The annual “Terry Fox Run,” first held shortly after his 1981 death, has grown in size to involve millions of participants in over 60 countries. It is the world’s largest one-day fund-raiser for cancer research**.

© Bettmann/CORBIS

Feelings such as these argue for educating cancer patients about what’s normal following treatment and for improving the quality of life of cancer patients. Unfortunately, many health insurance providers do not distinguish between mental illness and psychosocial interventions for cancer patients. As a result, many patients find that psychological healing is not covered by their health care insurance.

**Emotions, Masculinity, and Ethnicity**

Health psychologists are paying increasing attention to the experiences and coping techniques of ethnically diverse samples of people following the diagnosis of cancer, as well as those of men and of people who vary in their ability to regulate emotions.

**Emotions and Coping**

Although the link between personality traits and the development of cancer is tenuous, some personality factors do predict how well a person copes with cancer. For instance, expression of both positive and negative emotions can be beneficial in adjusting to a diagnosis of cancer (Quartana, Laubmeier, & Zakowski, 2006). In a sense, then, emotion-focused coping and nonacceptance of the diagnosis may be *positive* traits for cancer victims.

Other researchers have found that an optimistic disposition at the time the cancer is diagnosed is associated with an active, engaged coping style and less psychological distress over time (Carver and others, 2005). Breast cancer patients who scored very low on a measure of dispositional optimism at the time of diagnosis reported greater symptoms of anxiety and depression and relied more often on avoidant, emotion-focused coping than did their more optimistic counterparts (Epping-Jordan and others, 1999). At three and six months after diagnosis, symptoms of anxiety and depression tended to occur only in those who continued to be troubled by persistent, intrusive thoughts about their illness. However, the relationship between optimism and long-term outcome in cancer patients remains unclear (Segerstrom, 2007), perhaps because optimists may have more difficulty adjusting to disappointing outcomes than those who are less optimistic but more realistic (Winterling, Glimelius, & Nordin, 2008).

More generally, a growing body of research indicates that emotional regulation is critical to coping with traumatic events such as a diagnosis of cancer (Chuah, 2006). People who possess good skills at identifying and articulating emotions, therefore, might be expected to fare better at coping with traumatic events than people who lack these skills. One dispositional characteristic that psychologists have focused on is *emotional intelligence* (*EI*), defined as the ability to perceive, understand, express, and regulate emotions accurately (Mayer and others, 2001).

In one study, John Schmidt and Michael Andrykowski (2004) investigated the relationships among several social and dispositional variables and adjustment to breast cancer among 302 members of five Internet-based breast cancer support groups. In all cases, women who scored higher on a 30-item dispositional measure of EI reported less anxiety, depression, and overall distress than women who scored lower on the dispositional measure for EI. The beneficial effects of EI were especially pronounced among participants who perceived weaker social support and more social constraints that discouraged them from sharing their thoughts and feelings regarding their cancer. The researchers suggest that the presence of social constraints and absence of social support may have caused the women to actively avoid thinking about their cancer experience, thus inhibiting active processing and coping. To make matters worse, women who score low in EI may be less able to identify, communicate, and control their emotions effectively; thus, they “may be seen as irrational, demanding, or aversive” by others around them, who then respond in a manner that further discourages discussion (Schmidt & Andrykowski, 2004, p. 264). Those who have low EI also might be less effective in eliciting social support from others and less capable of recognizing and responding to supportive responses that they may make.

**Cancer and Masculinity**

As noted in [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05), higher levels of aspects of masculinity, gender role conflict, and gender-linked personality characteristics are related to poorer outcomes in men with cancer. Consider men being treated for prostate cancer. Worldwide, prostate cancer is the second most common cancer in men, accounting for about 14 percent of all new cancer cases among males each year (Ferlay and others, 2010). The recorded incidence rate of prostate cancer has increased dramatically in the last 30 years, mainly because of improvements in early detection of the disease (Rachet and others, 2009).

Common symptoms associated with prostate cancer treatment such as erectile dysfunction, loss of libido, pain, fatigue, and feelings of vulnerability and fear are linked to traditional gender role expectations and threatened masculine self-image (Storey and others, 2011; Arrington, 2008). Prostate cancer patients often describe difficulties maintaining social and family role functions and report experiencing bodily changes that cause embarrassment, frustration, and feelings of weakness. Researchers have developed a questionnaire to measure *cancer-related masculine threat* (*CMT*). Consisting of statements such as “Cancer makes me feel like less of a man,” “Cancer makes me feel inferior to other men,” and “Cancer is taking away my masculinity,” the CMT questionnaire recently was used in a longitudinal study of 66 men who underwent radical prostatectomy and/or radiation therapy for prostate cancer. After controlling for baseline health and age, the researchers found that men who scored high in CMT had poorer prostate-related functioning over time, including sexual, urinary, and bowel functioning. Men with higher CMT were also less likely to process their cancer-related emotions and more likely to engage in rumination and other less constructive forms of emotional processing. (Hoyt and others, 2013).

Of particular concern to many men who are coping with cancer treatment is how it affects their ability to fulfill work-related roles. One recent qualitative study of 50 prostate cancer survivors revealed several common themes during a semi-structured interview following completion of their treatment. The first concerned the importance of work to the survivors’ self-identity. Consider the following comments from one 52-year-old survivor:

* The only way I know how to live my life is if I work and my work is my life. And therefore when I’m not doing my work my life is obviously, unfortunately not full. My work/life balance is tipped more toward work, than life, I guess. That’s just how it is. Grunfield and others (2013).

Another difficulty for men coping with prostate and other cancers is that role models may not be as readily available as they are to female cancer survivors. This is due to the fact that men are less likely to disclose a cancer diagnosis, and male cancers are underrepresented in the media in comparison to female cancers (Gough, 2006). Fortunately, things are beginning to change. There is a growing amount of literature on masculinity and health, with a move away from a strongly gender-typed view of masculinity toward a more dynamic construct that changes from one context to another (Wall & Kristjanson, 2005).

Once prostate cancer has been diagnosed, masculinities may affect treatment, including men’s attitudes toward *active surveillance* (*AS*). Following the AS protocol, men diagnosed with low-grade, early-stage prostate cancer are monitored, and treatment is deferred until disease markers indicate that active treatment is warranted. During this period of “watchful waiting,” no medical treatment—medications, surgery, or radiation—is delivered. The benefits of AS include avoiding comorbidities such as impotence and incontinence, and the reduced quality of life often associated with treatment for prostate cancer (Tosoian and others, 2011). Despite these benefits, some research suggests that less than 10 percent of eligible American men opt for AS, in part because the perception of “doing nothing” is difficult for men to accept (Mroz, Oliffe, & Davison, 2013).

**Ethnicity and Coping**

Health psychologists are paying increasing attention to the experiences of ethnically diverse samples of people following the diagnosis of cancer. As an example, among breast cancer survivors, African-Americans report more difficulties with physical functioning and activities of daily living than do European-Americans; European-Americans report more sexual difficulties than do African-Americans; Latinas score higher than the other groups on measures of distress; and Filipina patients report the most difficulties with emotional functioning (see Giedzinska and others, 2004, for a review).

Other researchers have found that women of lower SES, as well as African-American and Hispanic women, are more likely than European-Americans to perceive *benefits* from a diagnosis of breast cancer, such as a renewed focus on relationships in their lives (Tomich, 2004). The researchers suggest that impoverished and minority women are more likely to face discrimination in their daily lives, which has prepared them to derive benefits from traumatic events. Low-SES and minority persons also are more likely to turn to religion to cope with trauma, which has been characterized as a way of cognitively restructuring events to search for their significance (Harrison and others, 2001).

Because ethnicity often serves as a proxy for other sociodemographic variables, such as income, education, and the nature of the medical treatment received, interpreting differences in coping such as these is difficult. At the very least, however, these findings demonstrate that psychologists and health care providers should not assume that the experiences provided by one ethnic group can be generalized to all others.

The idea that people can overcome challenges to experience a more hardy state is relatively new in health and disease research. Positive change among patients coping with chronic illness has been referred to as [**post-traumatic growth (PTG)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term265), but also as *benefit finding*, or *thriving*. PTG is theorized as occurring when an adverse life event, such as cancer, disrupts a person’s view of the world and his or her place in it (Arpawong and others, 2013). Disruption in turn may cause cognitive restructuring, a search for meaning, and the rebuilding of a more positive life perspective. Those who experience PTG after being diagnosed and treated for cancer often report several types of benefits, including greater appreciation for life, personal strength, relationships with others, recognition for new possibilities in life, and spiritual understanding (Lelorain, Bonnaud-Antignac, & Florin, 2010; Schroevers, Kraaij, & Garnefski, 2011). A recent cross-sectional study of 114 adult outpatients in active cancer treatment reported that 87 percent of the participants reported at least one positive life change over the course of treatment (Arpawong and others, 2013).

**post-traumatic growth (PTG)**

Positive psychological change experienced as the result of struggle with a highly challenging life circumstance. Also referred to as *benefit finding*, or *thriving*.

A number of studies have found that the ability to find positive meaning from stressful life events, including a diagnosis of cancer, is associated with improved immune responses. In one study, Julienne Bower and her colleagues (2003) asked women who had lost a close relative to breast cancer to write about the death (cognitive processing/disclosure group) or about nonemotional topics weekly for four weeks. Women in the cognitive processing/disclosure group who placed greater importance on goals such as cultivating relationships and striving for meaning in their lives following the intervention had stronger measures of immune functioning.

**Knowledge, Control, and Social Support**

Considering the stress associated with being treated for cancer, most patients display remarkable physical and psychological resilience. Important factors in adjusting to cancer treatment include having access to information, perceiving some degree of control over treatment, and being able to express emotions while feeling supported by others.

**Knowledge and Control**

Health psychologists have made considerable progress in understanding the psychological reactions of patients to cancer treatment and the types of interventions and information that are effective in assisting their adjustment. They have found, for example, that procedural information (such as how the surgery, radiation, or chemotherapy regimen will be administered, as well as what the patient can expect before and after treatment) has wide-ranging benefits. Among these are fewer negative emotions, reduced pain, and briefer hospitalization (Johnson & Vogele, 1993). Information presented in narrative form, as compared to non-narrative (usually statistical) form, may be particularly effective (McQueen and others, 2011). The power of *narrative communication*may lie in its ability to reduce the amount of counterarguing and to promote the view’s identification with the narrator.

The Internet is an increasingly important source of information for many cancer survivors. Recent data indicate that 81 percent of the U.S. population uses the Internet, and 35 percent have gone online to get information about a medical condition (Fox & Duggan, 2013). Internet use is relatively independent of age (92 percent of 18-year-olds online; 72 percent of 64-year-olds online), gender (76 percent of men and 74 percent of women), and race/ethnicity (76 percent of non-Hispanic whites, 60 percent of African-Americans, and 56 percent of Hispanics online). According to recent statistics, 8 of every 10 Internet users look for health information online (Pew Internet, 2009). One study found that using the Internet for as little as 1 hour per week to search for breast health information was associated with greater feelings of social support and less loneliness in women with breast cancer (Fogel and others, 2002). One in five Internet users say they went online in the last year to find others who might share the same health concerns (Fox & Duggan, 2013).

Also beneficial are interventions that focus on preventing patients from feeling helpless during their treatment. Even something as simple as encouraging patients to make choices about the hospital environment can improve a patient’s well-being. For this reason, patients often are encouraged to decorate their room with pictures, photographs, and other personal items from home. Although the sense of doom and the stigma that once were attached to a diagnosis of cancer have largely disappeared, interventions aimed at *self-presentation* can help patients overcome difficulties in managing social relationships with family, friends, and coworkers that result from changes in their physical appearance (Leary, Tchividjiam, & Kraxberger, 1994; Leary & Kowalski, 1990). Such interventions can range from the use of wigs by patients who have lost their hair as a result of chemotherapy to cognitive behavior therapy to improve self-esteem.

**Social Comparison**

Another source of information that can affect how people cope with cancer is *social comparison*with other cancer patients (Brakel and others, 2012). Listening to testimonials of fellow patients can have a reassuring effect and help patients develop a more positive perspective (Buunk and others, 2009). Whether such information is beneficial for a person coping with cancer depends, first, on how the person perceives the other individual. Is this other individual perceived as doing better (*upward comparison*) or worse (*downward comparison*) than the patient? Second, it depends on the extent to which the person feels similar to the comparison person (*identification*), or feels different, and therefore represents a state that is not a possible future (*contrast). Upward identification* may lead to positive feelings and improved quality of life, while *upward contrast* may lead to negative consequences in which the patient feels inferior. People also differ in their sensitivity to social comparison information. One recent study of 139 Dutch cancer survivors found that those with good health status and a strong social comparison orientation reported a significant improvement in quality of life two months after listening to audio interviews with cancer survivors who talk about the use of active coping strategies, expression of emotion, and seeking social support (Brakel and others, 2012).

**Emotional Disclosure**

Key to any effective intervention is providing cancer patients with emotional support and an opportunity to discuss their fears about the disease and its treatment. For example, women with metastatic breast cancer who were allowed to discuss their fears showed an 18-month increase in survival (Spiegel and others, 1989). Similarly, men and women with melanoma who met regularly with a support group showed increased survival rates and reduced recurrence after five to six years, compared to control patients who received standard biomedical treatment (Fawzy and others, 1993).

A more recent study (Stanton and others, 2000) examined the importance to patients of being able to actively process and express the emotions involved in coping with breast cancer. The participants were recruited within 20 weeks of completing surgery, chemotherapy, or radiation. Over the next three months, women who expressed their emotions about cancer had fewer medical appointments for cancer-related health problems and reported significantly lower stress levels than their less expressive and less socially receptive counterparts. The researchers suggest that by openly expressing one’s fears—for instance, a loss of perceived control—“one may begin to distinguish what one can and cannot control [in order] to channel energy toward attainable goals, and to generate alternate pathways for bolstering control” (Stanton and others, 2000, p. 880). They also suggest that repeated expression of emotions may decrease negative emotions and the physiological arousal that comes with them, leading cancer patients to believe that their situation is not as dire as originally thought and to derive some benefit from their adversity. Other studies (for example, Smyth & Pennebaker, 2001) have reported that experimentally inducing individuals to write or talk about stressful experiences can enhance their physical and psychological health.

**For many cancer patients, there is a wide gap between optimal care and the care that they actually receive. A report from the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, for instance, found that despite the existence of evidence-based clinical practice guidelines, many patients do not receive the recommended care**.

A spouse or significant other provides an important source of social support for many cancer patients. When this relationship is perceived as solid and supportive, the patient’s physical and emotional well-being benefits greatly. For example, cancer patients who are married tend to survive the disease better than unmarried persons (Pistrang & Barker, 1995). This is partly because married patients—often because of input from their spouse—generally detect cancer and other diseases at an earlier stage of development, and they are more likely to seek early treatment.

The benefits of social support extend beyond marriage. Women and men who feel “socially connected” to a network of caring friends are less likely to die of all types of cancer than their socially isolated counterparts (Reynolds & Kaplan, 1990).

**Social Support and Other Systematic Interventions**

A great deal of research has shown the protective value of social relationships on health in general and cancer-related stress in particular. For instance, among women with breast cancer, spousal support is associated with lower levels of depression and anxiety, improved psychological adjustment to cancer, greater feelings of intimacy, and improved quality of life (Belcher and others, 2011; Shelby and others, 2008). However, cancer patients also report unsupportive negative behaviors that include minimizing their problem, forced cheerfulness, and insensitive comments. Such undesired support may cause people to view others as insensitive or patronizing and has been associated with poorer adjustment to certain cancers (Gremore and others, 2011).

Other, more systematic interventions focus on improving the ability of patients to cope with their anxiety and stress during and immediately following cancer treatments. For example, Nancy Fawzy and her colleagues (1993) evaluated survival rates in patients suffering from malignant melanoma. For six weeks following surgery, half the patients attended weekly group meetings that centered on health education, stress-management skills, and social support. The others (the control group) did not attend any such meetings. A six-year follow-up revealed that the intervention group had significantly better survival rates than the control group did. However, several large-scale, well-controlled studies have failed to find a significant effect of psychosocial interventions on cancer progression or survival (for example, Cunningham and others, 1998; Edelman and others, 1999).

Other studies have demonstrated that peer support and specific interventions are most effective when delivered individually and at certain times. For example, face-to-face support delivered by one individual can be effective, even over the Internet (Hoey and others, 2008). In one study, researchers divided breast, colon, lung, and uterine cancer patients into two groups, one that began a group intervention soon after entering the study and the other after 4 months (Edgar, Rossberger, & Nowlis, 1992). At the start of the study, both groups were measured on depression, anxiety, worry about illness, and perceived personal control; follow-up measures were taken at 4-, 8-, and 12-month intervals. The intervention consisted of five 1-hour sessions that focused on developing coping skills with such techniques as goal setting, problem solving, cognitive reappraisal, and relaxation training, and providing workshops on health care resources. Coping improved for all patients, but the greatest reduction in stress levels occurred in the group whose intervention began 4 months after being diagnosed with cancer. According to the researchers, patients’ needs shortly after being diagnosed with cancer are probably quite different from their needs a few months later, after the emotional shock of the situation has been overcome.

A limited number of studies also have suggested that behavioral and psychosocial interventions may lower stress hormone levels and improve immune function in cancer patients and people coping with cancer in a loved one. For instance, among breast cancer patients, biofeedback training, cognitive therapy, relaxation training, guided imagery, and stress management all have been associated with significant decreases in cortisol levels and increases in the number of circulating lymphocytes (for example, Cruess and others, 2000). Although a few studies have even shown lower recurrence rates among cancer patients who participate in psychosocial interventions relative to waiting-list control participants, as noted earlier, the potential effects of such interventions on clinical outcomes remain speculative (see Luecken & Compas, 2002, for a review).

Social animals also fare worse in isolated environments. Researchers at the University of Chicago separated mice, which are highly social and normally live in groups of three or four, into normal and socially isolated groups just a few days after they had been weaned from their mothers’ milk. Three weeks later, the researchers found abnormal changes in gene expression in the isolated animals’ mammary glands. Gene pathways related to metabolism, known to contribute to increased growth of breast cancer, had been activated. In addition, the isolated mice also released more corticosteroid stress hormones than normally raised mice (Doheny, 2009).

**Social Support**

**Women and men who feel “socially connected” to a network of caring friends are less likely to die of all types of cancer than their socially isolated counterparts**.

© Design Pics Inc./Alamy

**Cognitive-Behavioral Interventions**

Health psychologists have made considerable progress in developing cognitive-behavioral interventions in comprehensive cancer care. During and following treatment, a variety of interventions have been used. For adults, they have focused on depression, stress, fatigue, pain, control of aversive reactions to treatment (such as nausea during chemotherapy), and enhancement of emotional well-being (Montgomery and others, 2009). For children, they have focused on increasing adherence and reducing suffering. Although the question of whether such interventions can prolong life for people with cancer remains controversial (Coyne, Stefanek, & Palmer, 2007), it is clear that such interventions can be successful in helping cancer patients manage their distress levels (Manne & Andrykowski, 2006). Among the most widely used interventions are hypnosis, progressive muscle relaxation with guided imagery, systematic desensitization, biofeedback, and cognitive distraction. For instance, before Jeremy’s attending physician performed a *lumbar puncture* (spinal tap) to sample my son’s spinal fluid, the nurse engaged Jeremy in a detailed (and distracting) discussion of the most recent *Star Trek* program. In this section, we describe two of the more common techniques: guided imagery and systematic desensitization.

Many of these interventions stem from the field of psychoneuroimmunology (PNI). PNI researchers believe that the risk for many diseases (including cancer), the course that a particular disease follows, and the remission and recurrence of symptoms are all influenced by the interaction of behavioral, neuroendocrine, and immune responses.

Mindfulness-based stress-reduction interventions are being used with increasing frequency (Bartley, 2012; Gregoire, 2013). In one early study of prostate and breast cancer patients, a mindfulness intervention that focused on cultivating conscious awareness through relaxation, meditation, and yoga resulted in increased quality of life among participants, as well as a healthy shift in neuroendocrine response (Carlson and others, 2003). A recent meta-analysis of 22 studies found that mindfulness-based therapies—which included yoga, meditation, breathing exercises, and cognitive training—were associated with significantly reduced symptoms of anxiety and depression in pre- and postcancer treatment (Piet, Wurtzen, & Zachariae, 2012).

Exercise is also increasingly recommended as a general intervention to improve the well-being of cancer patients (Floyd and Moyer, 2010). Several studies have reported that physical exercise improved the physical functioning, quality of life, self-efficacy, and emotional well-being of cancer patients (McAuley and others, 2010; Milne and others, 2008). One of the most consistent outcomes of physical activity is self-efficacy, or the individual’s belief in his or her personal capabilities. Self-efficacy expectations may well mediate the effects of exercise on depression and fatigue in cancer survivors (McAuley and others, 2010).

As noted earlier, emotional disclosure can have a beneficial effect for people coping with chronic illness. Writing interventions that focus on expressing emotions or potential benefits derived from illness have been linked to fewer additional medical problems among cancer patients (Low, Stanton, & Danoff-Burg, 2006). More generally, as noted in earlier discussions of positive health psychology, the psychological states that seem to accompany emotional disclosure and expressive writing have been associated with health-related benefits (Aspinwall & Tedeschi, 2010). However, the proposed pathways and evidence linking positive psychological states with cancer outcomes remain very controversial (Coyne, Tennen, & Ranchor, 2010).

**Guided Imagery**

[**Guided imagery**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term158) draws on patients’ psychophysiological reactions to the environment to help them optimize physiological activity in various body systems and thus relieve pain or discomfort. For example, a patient who views an impending surgery as a life-threatening trauma may exhibit hypertension, cardiac arrhythmia, and other health-compromising responses prior to surgery. Conversely, a patient who looks forward to the same operation as a lifesaving event is more likely to remain relaxed before, during, and following treatment.

**guided imagery**

The use of one or more external devices to assist in relaxation and the formation of clear, strong, positive images.

In guided imagery, the therapist uses one or more external devices to help the patient relax and then form clear, strong, positive images to replace the symptoms. Effective images draw on several sensory modalities, including vision, hearing, touch, and even smell or taste and may be stimulated by taped music, sounds of nature, verbal suggestions, pictures of objects or places, aromas from scented candles, or a variety of other devices.

Guided imagery begins with the patient assuming a comfortable position, either lying down or sitting, with eyes closed or open. After taking several slow, deep breaths, the person begins a process of systematically attending to any areas of bodily tension, which are then relaxed. A variety of techniques may be used to assist relaxation, including progressive muscle relaxation, biofeedback training, or autogenic training (see [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05)).

Once a relaxed state is reached, the person visualizes a safe, peaceful place and strives to make the image as clear and intense as possible by focusing on sights, sounds, smells, and other sensory aspects of the moment. At this point, the patient follows taped suggestions (or a nurse’s or therapist’s verbal suggestions) and forms a mental image of a symptom, such as pain or nausea. The patient then imagines the symptom changing. For example, the “red” fiery pain changes to a cool shade of blue, or queasiness is expelled from the body with each exhalation.

After a few minutes of focusing on the altered symptom (sometimes describing its changed appearance to the nurse or therapist), the patient is instructed to relax, breathe deeply, and return to the peaceful place. After several sessions, which may last only 5 or 10 minutes, most patients are able to perform imagery without assistance.

Imagery may be beneficial for several reasons (Naparstek, 1994):

* Imagery triggers a state of relaxed concentration that enhances the person’s sensitivity to health-promoting images.
* Imagery gives the patient an increased sense of control and a decreased sense of helplessness over stressful aspects of disease or treatment.
* Imagery also may work through the *placebo effect*. In fact, people who believe that imagery and relaxation have the potential to improve their health may experience physiological changes that enhance their ability to fight disease.

**Systematic Desensitization**

After several sessions of chemotherapy, nearly one-third of all patients begin to feel nauseated in anticipation of an upcoming treatment session. Many health psychologists consider this *anticipatory nausea* to be a form of classical conditioning, in which events leading up to treatment (such as driving to the hospital and sitting in the waiting room) function as *conditioned stimuli*, becoming linked to the powerful physiological reactions elicited as *unconditioned responses* by the cancer drug.

Health psychologists have learned that incorporating guided imagery into [**systematic desensitization**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term332) effectively counters this classically conditioned side effect of chemotherapy. In this form of behavior therapy, commonly used to help people overcome phobias, the person is gradually exposed to increasingly fearful stimuli or situations, while remaining deeply relaxed. In one study, Gary Morrow and his colleagues (1992) trained a group of oncologists and nurses to use desensitization with cancer patients. The patients then were assigned randomly to one of two treatment groups (one conducted by a psychologist and one conducted by a nurse) or to a control group that received no intervention.

**systematic desensitization**

A form of behavior therapy, commonly used for overcoming phobias, in which the person is exposed to a series of increasingly fearful situations while remaining deeply relaxed.

In the first stage, cancer patients established a hierarchy of difficult moments related to an approaching chemotherapy session, such as awakening on the morning of treatment, driving to the hospital, and sitting in the treatment room. After instruction in several relaxation-inducing techniques, the patients used guided imagery to visualize each moment in the hierarchy while remaining in a relaxed state. As they gradually worked their way up from the least threatening image to the most threatening image, the patients were *reconditioned* to feel relaxation rather than anxiety and nausea.

Both treatment groups experienced a substantial decline in the duration of their nausea following treatment. In contrast, the control group’s nausea actually lasted 15 hours *longer* than before, perhaps as a result of additional classical conditioning. In follow-up studies, Morrow and his colleagues have found that the benefits of desensitization often increase over time. Like athletes who gradually improve their visual imagery skills, many patients report much less nausea and vomiting over time as they improve their control over their anxiety in anticipating treatment.

The intervention studies that we have discussed in this chapter provide substantial evidence that psychosocial factors can influence a cancer patient’s response to treatment and, quite possibly, the course of recovery (or the likelihood of recurrence). Those studies that have reported longer survival for cancer patients are especially vivid demonstrations of the value of such interventions.

**Weigh In on Health**

Respond to each question below based on what you learned in the chapter. (**Tip:** Use the items in “Summing Up” to take into account related biological, psychological, and social concerns.)

* **1.** As you move forward in your life, what have you learned in this chapter about cancer that helps you better understand your risk, as well as what you can do now to try to prevent an occurrence of cancer in the future?
* **2.** Barring unforeseen difficulties, researchers predict that testing for inherited cancer risk and hundreds of other disease genes soon will be available. For treatable conditions, genetic testing is rarely controversial. But for untreatable conditions such as Huntington’s disease, genetic testing raises many ethical questions. For instance, should all people have equal access to genetic tests? Under what circumstances should the results of genetic tests be shared with others? What other ethical issues does genetic testing raise?
* **3.** Use what you learned in this chapter to write a checklist about positive ways in which people have learned how to cope with cancer. This checklist could be a valuable resource for someone you know (or even for yourself) one day.

**Summing Up**

**What Is Cancer?**

* **1.** Cancer is the second-leading cause of death in the United States. It is actually more than 100 different but related diseases. They result from the uncontrolled multiplication and spread of body cells that form tumors.
* **2.** There are four general types of cancer: Carcinomas are cancers of the epithelial cells, which line the outer and inner surfaces of the body. Lymphomas are cancers of the lymph system. Sarcomas are cancers that develop from muscle, bone, fat, and other connective tissue. Leukemias are cancers of the blood and blood-forming system.
* **3.** Cancer defies a simple description because its occurrence varies with gender, age, ethnicity, and race. Several variables contribute to ethnic differences in cancer, including socioeconomic status, knowledge about cancer, and attitudes toward the disease, which may affect access to health care and adherence to medical advice. In addition, health care providers do not always provide culturally competent medical care.

**Risk Factors for Cancer**

* **4.** The leading risk factor for cancer is smoking. Cancers of the lungs, mouth, pharynx, larynx, esophagus, pancreas, uterus, cervix, kidney, bladder, and breast are linked to all forms of tobacco use, including smokeless tobacco and cigars.
* **5.** In most Western countries, there is an increased prevalence of smoking during adolescence. Adolescence is a time of pronounced self-concept development, and the regulation of self-concept strongly influences health behaviors. Peers who smoke and exposure to pro-smoking media, such as to point-of-sale displays, magazine advertising, and portrayals of smoking in movies, are also associated with increased smoking in adolescents and young adults.
* **6.** A person’s time perspective, including consideration of future consequences, is another factor in health behaviors.
* **7.** Diet is a factor in as many as one-third of all cancer deaths. Fatty diets promote cancer of the colon, prostate, testes, uterus, and ovary. Excessive intake of salt, sugar, and alcohol may increase the risk of certain types of cancer. Diets that include plenty of fruits, vegetables, and whole grains may play a protective role against some cancers. Regular exercise may also be a protective factor for certain cancers. Alcohol use, especially among tobacco users, is a major risk factor for cancer.
* **8.** Some forms of cancer are inherited. Most cases of breast cancer, however, are caused by nongenetic factors.
* **9.** Research has linked a variety of environmental factors to cancer, including ultraviolet light, toxic chemicals, and occupational carcinogens. A history of frequent sunburns during childhood, the use of tanning booths, and the tendency of people to believe that their personal risk of negative outcomes is than that of others (comparative optimism), are factors in the increased prevalence of melanoma.
* **10.** According to the immune surveillance theory, cancer cells are prevented from spreading by agents of the immune system that constantly patrol the body for abnormal cells. Prolonged stress may compromise the immune system and allow malignant cells to spread. Reduced immunocompetence has been demonstrated following exams, divorce, bereavement, unemployment, and occupational stress.
* **11.** Childhood adversity has been associated with greater emotional and physiological sensitivity to stress. Childhood stressors also may promote long-term immune system dysregulation, which influences cancer morbidity.

**Cancer Treatment**

* **12.** When cancer does develop, its impact on health nearly always can be minimized through early detection and treatment. Advances in genetic screening, mammography, computerized tomography (CT) scans, and other detection technologies have dramatically improved the survival rates for many types of cancer. Many people fail to heed early warning signs of cancer, however.
* **13.** Biomedical treatments for cancer include surgery, chemotherapy, and radiation therapy. Surgery generally offers the greatest chance for cure for most types of cancer. Chemotherapy is used to destroy fast-growing cancer cells that have spread to parts of the body far from the primary tumor. Unlike chemotherapy, radiation therapy affects only the tumor and the surrounding area.
* **14.** Many cancer patients try one or more alternative treatments (such as meditation, biofeedback, or herbal treatments) to relieve side effects and to improve their overall quality of life.

**Coping with Cancer**

* **15.** Cancer and cancer treatment create unique stresses for both patients and their families. Even when treatment is successful, the threat of the disease’s recurrence looms. Although cancer survivors seem to experience similar numbers and types of stressful events as the general population, some studies show that cancer survivors may perceive stressors as somewhat more severe and disruptive.
* **16.** A variety of psychosocial interventions have been used to assist patients in coping with cancer. Effective interventions enhance patients’ knowledge about what to expect from treatment, increase the perception of control over their lives, and offer a supportive social environment in which to share fears and concerns.
* **17.** Higher levels of masculinity, gender role conflict, and gender-linked personality characteristics are related to poorer outcomes in men with cancer.
* **18.** Interventions that provide health education and teach specific skills for solving problems and managing stress are also beneficial to patients’ well-being. Information presented in narrative, as compared to non-narrative (usually statistical) form, may be particularly effective. Another source of information that can affect how people cope with cancer is *social comparison* with other cancer patients. Guided imagery and systematic desensitization effectively help patients control the side effects of chemotherapy and other cancer treatments.

## *Chapter 12*: HIV and AIDS

[**The AIDS Epidemic**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-1-1)

* [**A Brief History of AIDS**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-2) [**The Epidemiology of AIDS**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-5) [**How HIV Is Transmitted**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-8) [**Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) and HIV**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-9)

[**Symptoms and Stages: From HIV to AIDS**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-1-10)

* [**How HIV Progresses**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-11) [**Physiological Factors in the Progression of AIDS**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-14) [**Psychosocial Factors in the Progression of AIDS**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-15)

[**Medical Interventions**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-1-19)

* [**The HAART Regimen**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-20) [**A Preventive Vaccine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-21)

[**Psychosocial Interventions**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-1-22)

* [**The Basis for Psychosocial Interventions**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-23) [**Educational Programs**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-24) [**Mass Screening and HIV Counseling**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-25) [**Promoting Disclosure of HIV-Positive Status**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-26) [**Cognitive Behavioral Stress Management (CBSM)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-27) [**Community-Wide Interventions**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-28) [**Psychosocial Barriers to AIDS Intervention**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-29)

[**Coping with HIV and AIDS**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-1-30)

* [**Impact on the Individual**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-31) [**Impact on Family Members, Partners, and Caregivers**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L12-2-32)

*Mercy Makhalemel, a 23-year-old woman from Durban, South Africa, discovered that she was HIV positive when she became pregnant with her second child. She had always been faithful to her husband of five years, but fearing what might happen if her husband and employer found out about her condition, Mercy kept her secret for almost a year. When she finally realized that her husband’s infidelity must have been the source of the virus and confronted him with the news, he became violent, beating her and pushing her against a hot stove that badly burned her wrist. Then he threw her out of the house, refusing to admit that he had given her the virus. Later, he stormed into the shoe store that Mercy managed, shouting in front of her coworkers and customers that he wanted nothing to do with someone with AIDS. Mercy was fired later that day.*[***1***](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/N12-1)

*Mercy’s experience is not an isolated story. To date, AIDS has killed about 35 million people and become the world’s leading cause of death and lost years of productive life among adults aged 15 to 59 years (World Health Organization, 2013c). In most African towns, however, asking whether AIDS is common will lead to a quick denial. The social stigma attached to AIDS is so strong that few will admit to being HIV positive; and those who do come forward are shunned*.

*AIDS arouses such passion because it is associated with two highly taboo subjects: sex and death. The shame that AIDS victims feel and the treatment they receive from their neighbors, coworkers, and even family members is the greatest barrier in the battle to stop the spread of the disease. Even when AIDS testing is available, many Africans don’t want to know if they have the virus. Those who know that they have the disease are ashamed and afraid to admit it, so they act as if nothing is wrong, which often contributes to the spread of the disease* *Similarly, many AIDS victims do not go to the available clinics because they are too ashamed to be seen there, even though early treatment can prolong survival and dramatically improve the quality of life among those who are infected*.

*This tendency to “blame the victim” for his or her plight is not confined to developing countries. Many Americans also believe that AIDS patients are being punished for their immorality (Herek and others, 2003). Because of fears about AIDS and because many people link drug abuse and homosexuality to AIDS, patients and their families typically feel stigmatized. Afraid that disclosing their illness will lead to rejection by their friends, neighbors, and coworkers, some may withdraw and become secretive. In doing so, they cut off the social support that can play a vital role in their survival*.

Although AIDS and some other [**sexually transmitted infections (STIs)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term309) seem to be newly discovered, some health experts believe that they actually may be thousands of years old. AIDS has become a global problem only recently because of the dramatic increase in mobility of most of the world’s population, which has allowed the disease to spread from continent to continent. Although the initial panic created by the outbreak of the HIV virus has subsided somewhat in developed countries, where early screening and aggressive new drug treatments have given cause for hope, in developing countries, the picture is bleaker than ever.

## sexually transmitted infections (STIs)

Infections that are spread primarily through person-to-person sexual contact.

This chapter takes a thorough look at the AIDS epidemic. We begin by examining the origins of the virus that causes AIDS, its impact on the body, and how the virus is spread. Next, we will take up the issue of medical and psychosocial interventions for HIV/AIDS. The chapter concludes with a discussion of health psychology’s role in the design and implementation of programs to stop the progress of sexually transmitted infections, and to help AIDS patients, partners, and family members cope with their crisis.

## The AIDS Epidemic

[**Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term4) is a life-threatening disease caused by the [**human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term174). The virus attacks the body’s immune system and leaves it vulnerable to infection. As HIV infection develops into AIDS, its victims usually struggle with infections that otherwise would be handled with relative ease if their immune systems were not compromised. In this way, AIDS increases its victims’ vulnerability to *opportunistic infections*, such as pneumonia and certain cancers, which prey on their weakened immune systems.

## acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)

The most advanced stages of HIV infection, defined by a T-cell count of less than 200 and the occurrence of opportunistic infections or HIV-related cancers that take advantage of a weakened immune system.

## human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)

A virus that infects cells of the immune system, destroying or impairing their function.

## A Brief History of AIDS

In the late 1970s, unrecognized cases of what we now know to be AIDS began to appear. Although no one knows exactly how the AIDS virus affected the first human, it appears to have originated in west-central Africa, spreading quickly through neighboring countries. HIV is one of a family of primate viruses similar to a harmless virus found in certain subspecies of chimpanzees and green monkeys. Of particular interest in the investigation into the origins of AIDS is the *simian immunodeficiency virus* (*SIV*) that affects monkeys, which is believed to be at least 32,000 years old and bears a very close resemblance to HIV1 and HIV2, the two types of HIV (Worobey and others, 2010).

Certain viruses can pass between species, and the most commonly accepted theory is that SIV was transferred to humans as a result of chimps being killed and eaten or their blood getting into cuts or wounds on the hunter’s body. Normally, the hunter’s body would have fought off SIV, but over time, the virus may have adapted to its new human host and become HIV1 (AVERT, 2013).

## Patient Zero

Whatever the origins of HIV, both national and international travel undoubtedly played a major role in the initial spread of HIV. Much was made in the early years of the epidemic of the case of “Patient Zero,” a Canadian flight attendant named Gatan Dugas, whose job and sexual habits made him seem a likely candidate as a potent carrier for spreading HIV. While Dugas was a real person who did eventually die of AIDS, the Patient Zero story has been discredited. HIV in the United States was to a large degree initially spread by gay men, but this occurred on a large scale over many years, and probably began long before Dugas even began to travel. Several instances of HIV infection have been documented from plasmas and tissue samples dating back as far as the late 1950s and 1960s (AVERT, 2013).

The disease was first noticed in humans in 1980, when 55 young men (including Dugas) were diagnosed with a cluster of similar symptoms with an unknown cause. The symptoms were indicative of [**Kaposi’s sarcoma**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term198), a rare cancer usually found only among the elderly. Epidemiologists suspected that the cause of the unexpected illness was a weakened immune system. Since most of the first reported victims were gay men and intravenous (IV) drug users, it appeared that the disease was being transmitted sexually or through the exchange of infected blood.

## Kaposi’s sarcoma

A rare cancer of blood vessels serving the skin, mucous membranes, and other glands in the body.

In 1983, the National Institutes of Health (NIH) in the United States and the Pasteur Institute in France concluded that a new virus was the probable cause of the disease. In March 1984, Dugas died. One month later, the U.S. Department of Health announced that it had isolated the new virus—HIV.

## The Spread of AIDS

During the last half of the 1980s, AIDS began to threaten the general population. Once limited mostly to white gay men in the United States, AIDS began surfacing among other ethnic groups. In January 1991, AIDS claimed its 100,000th global victim. Public fear escalated when basketball legend Magic Johnson announced later that same year that he was HIV positive, and again in 1993, when tennis player Arthur Ashe died of AIDS contracted through a blood transfusion during heart surgery. No cure was in sight as AIDS claimed its 200,000th victim in 1993. The disease continued to grow exponentially, reaching 400,000 cases worldwide by 1994, with increased incidence among women and still no effective drug treatments.

## AIDS Awareness

**On November 7, 1991, NBA superstar Earvin “Magic” Johnson stunned the world by announcing that he was HIV positive. Because of Johnson’s fame and the esteem and affection that his fans felt for him, this statement was a major factor in increased AIDS awareness and removal of the stigma associated with the disease, both in the United States and around the world.**

AP/Wide World Photos

As the millennium approached, new anti-HIV drugs were finally proving to be effective, and death rates from AIDS declined sharply in the United States (UNAIDS, 2007). However, these drugs weren’t available to everyone who needed them, and, worldwide, the AIDS [**pandemic**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term249) continued to spiral out of control (see [**Table 12.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T12-1)). Now, 35 years into the still-emerging pandemic, HIV has reached every corner of the globe, infecting more than 65 million people (of whom 25 million have died). Worldwide, 34 million people are living with HIV/AIDS, the vast majority in low- and middle-income countries ([**Figure 12.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F12-1)). This number includes 2.5 million people—slightly more than half of them women—who became infected in 2011 (UNAIDS, 2012). The same year, 1.7 million people died of AIDS-related illnesses, making this disease the fourth-leading cause of death worldwide (World Health Statistics, 2012).

## pandemic

A worldwide epidemic such as AIDS.

## Table 12.1: Regional HIV/AIDS Statistics, End of 2010

| **Region** | **Adults and Children Living with HIV/AIDS** | **Adults and Children Newly Infected** | **Main Mode(s) of Transmission** |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Sub-Saharan Africa | 22.9 million | 1.9 million | Hetero |
| North Africa and Middle East | 470,000 | 59,000 | IDU, Hetero |
| East Asia | 790,000 | 88,000 | IDU, Hetero, MSM |
| South and Southeast Asia | 4 million | 270,000 | IDU, Hetero, MSM |
| Latin America | 1.5 million | 100,000 | MSM, IDU, Hetero |
| Caribbean | 200,000 | 12,000 | Hetero, MSM |
| Eastern Europe and Central Asia | 1.5 million | 160,000 | IDU, MSM |
| Western Europe and Central Europe | 840,000 | 30,000 | MSM, IDU |
| North America | 1.3 million | 58,000 | MSM, IDU, Hetero |
| Oceania | 54,000 | 3,300 | MSM, IDU |
| **Total** | 34 million | 2.7 million |  |
| MSM (sexual transmission among men who have sex with men); IDU (transmission through intravenous drug use); Hetero (heterosexual transmission)  **Sources:** UNAIDS (2011). UNAIDS World AIDS Day Report 2011. [**http//www.unaids.org**](http://http/www.unaids.org). UNAIDS (2010). Report on the global AIDS epidemic. [**http://www.unaids.org/globalreport**](http://www.unaids.org/globalreport). | | | |

## Figure 12.1: Global Causes of Death by Income Group

**Imagine a diverse, representative group of 1000 people from around the world who died in one year. Of those people, (a) 163 would have come from low-income countries (where HIV/AIDS is the third-leading cause of death), (b) 677 from middle-income countries (where HIV/AIDS is the sixth-leading cause of death), and (c) 159 from high-income countries (where HIV/AIDS is not in the top 10 causes of death).**

**Source:** World Health Organization (2011, May). The 10 leading causes of death by broad income group, 2008. Fact sheet, no. 310, [**http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs310\_2008.pdf**](http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs310_2008.pdf).

**Of the 42,514 newly diagnosed cases of AIDS in the United States during 2004, nearly 9000 involved adults age 50 and older (CDC Fact Sheet, 2010)**.

Some progress has been made, however. Globally, there were half a million fewer HIV-related deaths in 2011 than in 2005, and 25 countries have seen a 50 percent or greater drop in new HIV infections since 2001. Half of the reductions in new infections have been among newborn children (UNAIDS, 2012). Sadly, although global HIV prevalence began leveling off in 2007, progress is uneven, and the battle against AIDS has not yet been won anywhere. Two-thirds of all HIV-infected people live in Africa, where about 1 in 12 adults is infected, and one-fifth live in Asia. Since 2001, the number of newly infected people in the Middle East and North Africa increased by more than 35 percent. In Eastern Europe and Central Asia, there has also been an increase in new HIV infections in recent years. By 2020, HIV researchers project that more than 65 million people will have died from the disease, more than three times the number who died in the first 20 years of the pandemic (Mathers & Loncar, 2006). Worldwide, unprotected heterosexual intercourse is the predominant mode by which the virus is transmitted, accounting for 70 to 75 percent of AIDS cases (UNAIDS, 2012).

## AIDS In Africa

**Six weeks after she gave birth, 29-year-old Mathato Notsi discovered that both she and her baby were HIV positive. Pediatric doses of antiretroviral drugs are available to only one in four children living in Lesotho, South Africa. Luckily, Mathato’s daughter is one of those children receiving this lifesaving treatment.**

Gideon Mendel/Corbis

## The Epidemiology of AIDS

As you learned in [**Chapter 2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch02), the first step in fighting and preventing a chronic disease like AIDS is taken by epidemiologists, who investigate the factors that contribute to its prevalence and incidence in a particular population. Keeping track of the distribution of AIDS by demographic traits is a difficult job because of the fluidity of the disease, but it is most prevalent among certain populations. In the United States, the AIDS epidemic has taken the greatest toll on gay, bisexual, and other men who have sex with men (MSM), particularly young African-Americans ([**Figure 12.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F12-2)). An estimated 1.1 million people in the United States are living with HIV, and almost 1 in 5 (18 percent) are unaware of their infection (CDC, 2013a). Relatively few children have been diagnosed with AIDS (1 percent of those between the ages of 0 and 14), even though they make up over 25 percent of the total U.S. population. This figure may be misleading, however, due to the long incubation period associated with the HIV virus. Many AIDS victims who are now in their twenties undoubtedly were infected while still in their teens. The increase in HIV among those over age 50 is partly due to advanced HIV therapy, which has increased life expectancy. However, research suggests that it is also because older people, as well as their health care providers, incorrectly perceive older adults as having little risk of HIV and other sexually transmitted infections and therefore recognize it less often (or more slowly) when they do get such diseases. In addition, the popularity of drugs such as Viagra has also contributed to the surge in sexual activity and HIV/AIDS among this group (Anderson, 2009). Adding to the problem is the fact that the symptoms of HIV infection are harder to detect among older adults because they are masked by normal signs of aging.

## Figure 12.2: New HIV Infections in the United States by Risk Group

**The estimated incidence of HIV has remained stable in recent years, at about 50,000 new cases each year. Some groups are affected more than others, especially men who have sex with men (MSM), intravenous drug users (IDUs), and, among races/ethnicities, African-Americans.**

**Source:** Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. (2013). *HIV Surveillance Report, 2011, vol. 23*. [**http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/library/reports/surveillance/index.html**](http://www.cdc.gov/hiv/library/reports/surveillance/index.html).

## Gender

Since 1985, the *proportion* of all AIDS cases in the United States reported among women has more than tripled, with the largest rate of growth occurring among women of color. In 2010, women accounted for an estimated 20 percent of new HIV infections. Most of these (84 percent) were from heterosexual contact. African-American women and Latinas are disproportionately affected by HIV compared with women of other races/ethnicities. The rate of new HIV infections among African-American women is 20 times that of white women, and the rate among Hispanic/Latino women is 4 times that of white women. For more than a decade, AIDS has been the third-leading cause of death among African-American women aged 25 to 44 (CDC, 2013b).

These statistics are sobering, but the situation elsewhere in the world is much worse. Throughout Africa, 12 to 13 women are infected for every 10 men (UNAIDS, 2008). Women are often less able to protect themselves from HIV because they are typically subordinate to men in intimate relationships (Ickovics and others, 2001). Women who use illegal drugs are likely to use a needle only after their male counterparts have used it. They also have less control over whether a condom will be used during sexual intercourse.

More of the virus is found in ejaculate than in vaginal and cervical secretions, so unprotected vaginal sex is much riskier for HIV for women than for men, and unprotected anal sex is even riskier for women than unprotected vaginal sex (CDC, 2013b). After intercourse, the infected lymphocytes in semen may remain in the vagina and cervix for many days, thus giving the virus more time to infect the woman. By contrast, secretions from an HIV-positive (HIV1) vagina and cervix are washed from the penis easily. Male-to-female transmission of HIV through vaginal intercourse is far more common than is female-to-male transmission.

On average, HIV levels in women are about half those of men with similar lymphocyte counts. Women progress to AIDS at a lower overall viral load than men (Farzadegan and others, 1998). These findings suggest the need for gender-based specificity in HIV/AIDS treatment, such as the need for lower HIV level cut-off points for women in determining their drug treatment regimens. Indeed, when women receive treatment when they should, they have the same rate of disease progression as men (Greiger-Zanlungo, 2001).

Sadly, among many impoverished young women, the risk of HIV infection is linked to sex that is used to obtain food and shelter or to support a drug habit. These women are much less likely to practice safe sex (Slesnick & Kang, 2008).

## Demographic Patterns

Worldwide, at least three large-scale patterns of HIV transmission have been identified. The first pattern is found in North America and Western Europe, where the most commonly affected groups are gay men and IV drug users. The second pattern includes sub-Saharan Africa and the Caribbean, where HIV and AIDS are commonly found in heterosexuals and equally distributed among men and women (Cohen, 2006). The third pattern involves areas where HIV-infection rates are still relatively low and there are no specific lines of transmission. This pattern is found in Asia, Eastern Europe, North Africa, and some Pacific countries.

AIDS has had a devastating effect on minority populations in the United States. For instance, although African-Americans make up around 13 percent of the U.S. population, they account for 50 percent of all new HIV cases and 68 percent of recent HIV diagnoses among 13- to 24-year-olds (CDC, 2013a). The main transmission route for HIV in this population is high-risk sexual contact (e.g., unprotected sex and sex with multiple partners)—behavior that is made worse by alcohol and drug use (NIMH Multisite HIV/STD Prevention Trial for African American Couples Group, 2010).

Ethnic and racial differences in rates of HIV transmission are thought to reflect sociocultural differences in drug use. For example, in impoverished minority communities, drug users commonly share needles; of course, when they share with HIV-positive drug users, they become infected themselves and expose their sexual partners. Injection drug use (IDU), therefore, is considered a cause of roughly 45 percent of AIDS cases among both African-Americans and Hispanic-Americans, whereas only 17 percent of AIDS cases among whites are linked to shared needles.

The initial spread of the HIV virus among IV drug users and gay men in the United States and other Western countries is believed to have occurred because these are relatively small, closed populations in which an individual is more likely to be exposed to the virus repeatedly. Although rates due to IDU and heterosexual contact are increasing, male-to-male (MTM) sexual contact remains the largest exposure category among AIDS sufferers in the United States. Although men who have sex with men represent only 4 percent of the male population in the United States, in 2010, MTM sexual contact accounted for 78 percent of new HIV infections among males and 63 percent of all new infections, compared to 25 percent due to heterosexual contact and 8 percent due to IDU (CDC, 2013a).

**AIDS is *not* transmitted by**

* **donating blood;**
* **exposure to airborne particles, contaminated food, or insect bites;**
* **shaking hands, drinking from the same cup, closed-mouth kissing, hugging, sharing drinking fountains, public telephones, or toilets; or**
* **sharing a work or home environment**.

## How HIV Is Transmitted

Present in high concentration in the blood and semen of HIV-positive individuals, HIV can enter the body through any tear in the skin or mucous membranes, including those not visible to the human eye. Certain sexual behaviors and drug-related activities are by far the primary means by which AIDS is spread, but HIV may be transmitted through the sharing of any virus-infected lymphocytes in bodily fluids—blood, semen, vaginal and cervical secretions, and breast milk. Fortunately, HIV is transmitted less easily than most other less deadly viruses (such as malaria). Without a supportive environment of blood, semen, or the cytoplasm of a host cell, the virus quickly dies, usually within 30 minutes.

A less common route of infection involves a transfusion of infected blood. In the early years of the AIDS epidemic, HIV spread rapidly through transfusions of infected blood to victims of [**hemophilia**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term168). Since 1985, however, blood banks have been screening all donor blood for HIV antibodies, and the risk of contracting HIV through transfusion has all but disappeared, accounting for only about 2 percent of all AIDS cases in the United States.

## hemophilia

A genetic disease in which the blood fails to clot quickly enough, causing uncontrollable bleeding from even the smallest cut.

Children usually are infected through exposure to white blood cells from the mother’s blood that pass through the placenta during labor and birth. Worldwide, it is estimated that one in four offspring of HIV1 women are infected in this way. Another 10 percent become infected after birth via breastfeeding. The use of antiseptic vaginal and cervical washes is one way to reduce potential viral exposure to newborns during delivery. Another is a “bloodless delivery,” an elective Cesarean section in which the mother’s blood vessels are cauterized so the baby is not exposed to the mother’s blood (Project Inform, 2005).

## Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs) and HIV

People who are infected with other sexually transmitted infections (also called *sexually transmitted diseases*) are up to five times more likely than uninfected people to acquire HIV infection if they are exposed to the virus (CDC Fact Sheet, 2013). HIV-infected individuals also are more likely to transmit HIV to others sexually if they are also infected with another STI.

[**Genital human papillomavirus (HPV)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term152), the most common STI, is passed on through genital contact, most often during vaginal and anal sex. HPV also may be passed on through oral sex, even when the infected person has no signs or symptoms. Although the highest prevalence rates for HPV infection have been found among women aged 20–24, anyone who is having (or has ever had) sex can get HPV. HPV is so common that nearly all sexually active women and men get it at some point in their lives (CDC, 2013c). Most people with HPV never develop symptoms or health problems and do not even know they have it. HPV can cause serious health problems, however, including genital warts and certain cancers. Most HPV infections are cleared by a person’s immune system, making it biologically plausible that the local immune response triggered by HPV infection may put women at increased risk for HIV (Smith-McCune and others, 2010).

## genital human papillomavirus (HPV)

The most common sexually transmitted infection.

STIs increase susceptibility to HIV infection in two other ways ([**Table 12.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T12-2)). Genital ulcers such as syphilis, herpes, and chancroid cause lesions or breaks in the lining of the genital tract, which create entry points for HIV and other viruses to attack. In addition, inflammation resulting from genital ulcers or nonulcerative STIs such as chlamydia, gonorrhea, and trichomoniasis increases the concentration of CD4+ and other cells in genital secretions that can serve as targets for HIV.

## Table 12.2: About Some STIs

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| **Chlamydia** | **Symptoms** | **Complications** |
| The most common STD.  Caused by a bacterium that is known to create infections in the throat, genitals, and anus.  Spread through contact with infected semen and vaginal fluids during unprotected vaginal sex, anal sex, and oral sex.  Treated with antibiotics, although some strains are resistant. | Women usually do not show symptoms. Some may experience pain during sex or urination. Men usually do show symptoms, including a discharge or itchy feeling in the penis, painful urination, or an infection of the throat or anus. | Women: If untreated, the disease may cause infertility, infected cervix, pelvic pain, pelvic inflammatory disease, ectopic pregnancy, or arthritis. Infants can get pneumonia or become blind.  Men: If untreated, the disease may cause infertility, arthritis, eye infections, or urinary infections. |
| **Gonorrhea** | **Symptoms** | **Complications** |
| Caused by a bacterium that commonly infects the genitals, anus, and throat.  Spread by infected semen and vaginal fluids during unprotected vaginal sex, anal sex, and oral sex.  Treated with antibiotics. | Most women show *no* symptoms or some vaginal discharge, or pain on urination.  Men usually notice thick yellow-green discharge from the penis, pain on urination, or pain in the penis. If infected in the rectum, men and women have pain, bleeding, and discharge. Sore throats if the throat is infected. | Women: If untreated, the disease may cause sterility or pelvic inflammatory disease.  Men: If untreated, the disease may cause sterility, swollen testes, or urinary infections.  Women and men have have brain, heart, or liver infections, or arthritis. |
| **Trichomoniasis** | **Symptoms** | **Complications** |
| Caused by the parasite *Trichomonas vaginalis*. The vagina is the most common site in women, and the urethra in men.  Spread through unprotected vaginal sex.  Treated with antibiotics. | Abdominal pain; unusual vaginal discharge; vulval or vaginal redness; irritation, itching, or burning inside the penis; and pain during urination or intercourse. | Premature delivery or increased HIV susceptibility. |
| **Genital Herpes** | **Symptoms** | **Complications** |
| Caused by the herpes simplex virus with accompanying blisters on the genitals, in the anal area, and sometimes the mouth.  Spread through unprotected vaginal sex, anal sex, oral sex, and direct skin-to-skin touch.  Treated with antibiotics. No complete cure. | Fatigue, fever, painful blisters that redden the skin, itch, ulcerate, and may cause scarring. | The virus hides in nerve endings and recurs. |

Fortunately, preventive vaccines exist for many STIs. In 2006, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved the first vaccine developed to prevent genital warts and cervical cancer caused by several types of HPV. Although HPV vaccines are safe, effective, and recommended for 11- or 12-year-old boys and girls before their first sexual encounter, their use is uneven and controversial (Knox, 2011). Among the barriers to HPV vaccination are beliefs about sexuality; the cost, perceived effectiveness, possible negative health consequences and safety of the vaccine; and lack of information about the timing of vaccination relative to sexual activity (Gerend, Shepherd, & Shepherd, 2013; Pruitt and Schootman, 2010). In addition, racial disparities exist, including a recent finding in one study that African-American girls were nearly 40 percent less likely than European-American girls to be vaccinated (Keenan, Hipwell, & Stepp, 2012).

Conversely, several factors have been shown to promote HPV vaccination, including a doctor’s recommendation and subjective norms regarding vaccination (Krawczyk and others, 2012). In addition, females who have more positive attitudes and perceive greater benefits (e.g., prevention of HPV infection and/or cervical cancer) and fewer barriers (e.g., cost, side effects) are more likely to receive the vaccine (Juraskova and others, 2011). Taken together, this body of research suggests that social influence, especially the advice of trusted doctors, friends, and family, are of particular importance in motivating young women to get vaccinated.

## Symptoms and Stages: From HIV to AIDS

HIV infects mostly lymph tissues, where *lymphocytes* develop and are stored. Recall from [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03)that lymphocytes are immune cells that help prevent cancer and other chronic illnesses by controlling cell growth. They also guard against infection by producing antibodies. HIV invades and destroys a type of lymphocyte called the T cell, which is a crucial player in the immune response because it recognizes harmful microbes and triggers production of antibodies. It also coordinates the release of natural killer (NK) cells.

## The AIDS Virus

**HIV is classified as a retrovirus because it destroys lymphocytes by injecting a copy of its own genetic material into the host cell’s DNA.**

James Cavallini/Photo Researchers

## How HIV Progresses

HIV is classified as a [**retrovirus**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term298) because it works by injecting a copy of its own genetic material, or genome, into the DNA of the T cell (the host cell). Like all viruses, HIV can replicate only inside cells, taking over their machinery to reproduce. However, only HIV and other retroviruses incorporate their own genetic instructions into the host cell’s genes.

## retrovirus

A virus that copies its genetic information onto the DNA of a host cell.

The infected DNA may remain dormant in the chromosome of the host lymphocyte for a period of time. Eventually, however, the infected lymphocyte is certain to become activated against another virus or some other foreign substance. At that point, it divides, replicating HIV along with itself. As infected cells continue to divide, vast numbers of HIV particles emerge from the infected host and invade other lymphocytes.

Healthy human blood normally contains approximately 1000 T cells per cubic milliliter. Despite the fact that HIV is reproducing in an infected person’s body, this level may remain unchanged for years following HIV infection. Then, for reasons that biomedical researchers are still struggling to understand, T cell levels begin to decline, and the immune system grows steadily weaker. Eventually, the victim is left with few functional immune cells and is unable to mount an effective defense against cells harboring HIV, HIV itself, and other invading microorganisms.

## The Four Stages of HIV

HIV progresses through four stages of infection that vary in length from person to person (see [**Figure 12.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F12-3)). During the first stage, which lasts from one to eight weeks, the immune system destroys most HIV, so people experience only mild symptoms that are similar to those of many other illnesses, such as swollen lymph glands, sore throat, fever, chronic diarrhea, skeletal pain, gynecological infection in women, neurological problems, and, in some cases, a skin rash. These symptoms are often so mild that they go unnoticed or unremembered.

## Figure 12.3: The Course of HIV/AIDS

**HIV infection may be carried for many years in the unsuspecting victim before symptoms appear. Unfortunately, this long “dormant” period often means that carriers who are unaware of their infection spread HIV unwittingly.**

The second stage, which may last for months or years, appears to be a period of latency. The person has no obvious symptoms except perhaps for swollen lymph nodes, which may go unnoticed, but HIV is far from inactive. In fact, during stage 2, as T cell concentration falls, HIV is constantly being replicated. Within five years, 30 percent of infected people move to stage 3, when T cells are further reduced, immune function is impaired, and opportunistic infections occur. Among the most common are Kaposi’s sarcoma (a cancer of blood vessels that causes purplish spots in the skin, mouth, and lungs), lymphoma, parasitic gastrointestinal infections, and *pneumocystis carinii pneumonia* (*PCP*), which is the cause of death in 60 percent of AIDS victims.

During stage 4, the number of T cells drops from a healthy count of 1000 to 200 or less per cubic milliliter of blood, and almost all natural immunity is lost. At this point, HIV has developed into AIDS. As T cell levels drop below 100, the balance of power in the immune system shifts to favor the invading virus. HIV levels soar, and microorganisms that the immune system normally would destroy easily begin to proliferate. Without treatment, death generally occurs within a year or two.

## The Neurological Impact of AIDS

HIV affects many body systems, including the central nervous system. When HIV migrates to the brain and attacks brain cells, it triggers a variety of emotional and cognitive problems in half of all HIV-positive patients. In most cases, these disturbances involve forgetfulness, inability to concentrate, general confusion, and language impairment. In the later stages of AIDS, patients may display signs of depression, paranoia, and hallucinations that signal the [**AIDS dementia complex**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term12), a progressive cognitive deterioration that involves more substantial memory loss and confusion as well as shifts in personality. This complex may be caused by a dramatic loss of brain cells. Researchers comparing samples of tissue from the brains of people who died from AIDS with those who died from other causes found a 40 percent lower density of neurons in the HIV group (NINDS, 2010).

## AIDS dementia complex

An AIDS-related syndrome involving memory loss, confusion, and personality changes.

## Physiological Factors in the Progression of AIDS

The period from diagnosis of full-blown AIDS until death is notoriously unpredictable—as short as several months or as long as five years. Although the average time from HIV infection to AIDS is about 10 years, people with HIV who start treatment with anti-AIDS drugs have life expectancies around 80 percent of that of the general population, provided they start treatment before their CD4 count drops below 200 cells per microliter (Johnson, 2013). Several factors are thought to play a role in the prognosis of AIDS.

One factor is the strength of the initial immune response. HIV progresses much more slowly among patients whose immune systems mount strong lymphocyte activity in the acute stage of HIV sickness (stage 2). This strong defense apparently helps preserve the body’s later ability to produce the T cells that target HIV.

Genetic vulnerability also may affect the rate at which AIDS develops. Viruses require collaboration from the body, which in the case of AIDS is the existence of the protein receptor to which HIV particles bind. AIDS researchers suspect that some people have genes that protect against the development of this receptor. Indeed, it appears that 1 percent of people of Western European descent inherit a gene from both parents that blocks this development, giving them apparent immunity to HIV infection. Another 20 percent inherit the protective gene from only one parent and, while not immune to HIV, display a much slower progression of symptoms. Researchers have also found ethnic differences in responsiveness to anti-HIV drugs. For example, Andrea Foulkes and her colleagues (2006) found that African-American patients undergoing antiretroviral therapy were less prone to fatty arterial deposits than European-American and Hispanic-American patients undergoing the same treatment.

## Psychosocial Factors in the Progression of AIDS

After HIV exposure, the pace at which clinical symptoms of AIDS begin to appear and the severity of illness at all stages of the disease varies tremendously. Poor nutrition, drug use, repeated HIV exposure, and other viral infections all can accelerate the progression of the disease. As with other diseases, however, epidemiologists have discovered that even after these physical risk factors are accounted for, there is still a tremendous amount of unexplained variability in the course of AIDS.

## Discrimination, Social Exclusion, and HIV Risk

Researchers have begun to focus on psychosocial factors that may contribute to ethnic/racial disparities in HIV risk (Stock and others, 2013). In particular, racial discrimination has been suggested as an important contributing factor in health-risk behaviors and HIV infection. One prospective study found evidence of a link between discrimination and substance use two to five years later among African-American adolescents and their parents (Gibbons and others, 2007). Another experimental study with a group of adolescents demonstrated that envisioning a discriminatory experience (either one they actually had or one described by the researchers) was associated with greater willingness to engage in substance use (Gibbons and others, 2010). Data from the Family and Community Health Study (FACHS) have shown that experiences of discrimination at ages 10–11 were associated with greater sexual risk-taking at ages 18–19, even after controlling for neighborhood risk, SES, gender, age, the absence of a father, and other variables. These data also demonstrate that discrimination is often associated with heightened perceived norms for deviant behavior among peers, which in turn predict higher levels of substance use and risky sex behaviors (Roberts and others, 2012).

Social exclusion is one of the most commonly reported forms of discrimination faced by minorities (Williams & Carter-Sowell, 2009) and has been associated with numerous adverse psychological outcomes (Smart Richman & Leary, 2009). Several recent studies have manipulated social exclusion via *Cyberball*, a computer ball-tossing game in which participants compete against other bogus players, who either include or exclude them as play moves along (Stock and others, 2013). In these studies, most black participants who were excluded by white “players” attributed it to racism, which in turn was linked to reduced feelings of belonging, control, and self-esteem (Goodwin, Williams, & Carter-Sowell, 2010), as well as increased feelings of anger and substance use cognitions (Stock and others, 2013).

Findings such as these highlight the potential of preventive interventions that target substance use and risky sex behaviors in reducing HIV risk, particularly among young black adults, for whom the incidence of HIV/AIDS is 14 times higher than it is for other racial groups in the United States (CDC, 2013a). Interventions that focus on the effects of substance use on sexual risk taking in response to discrimination and other stressors seem especially warranted. In addition, parenting that involves communication, warmth, and discipline (Gibbons and others, 2010), and racial identity and socialization (Stock and others, 2013), may buffer the adverse effects of discrimination on HIV risk taking.

## Stress and Negative Emotions

Stress, negative emotions, and social isolation may influence the pace at which AIDS progresses, perhaps by altering hormonal and immune environments that affect the resistance of host cells to the invading virus (Ironson and others, 2005). Several researchers have reported that low self-esteem, a pessimistic outlook, chronic depression, and other negative emotions may influence theproduction of pro-inflammatory cytokines (Pala and others, 2012) and are linked with a decline in T cells and a more rapid course of illness and the development of opportunistic infections among HIV-infected individuals (Cole, 2008). Those who maintain hope and are able to find meaning in their struggle are more likely to practice healthy behaviors and therefore tend to show slower declines in T cell levels and are even less likely to die (Ironson & Hayward, 2008).

As is true of cancer victims, AIDS patients who deny their diagnosis may experience a more rapid development of symptoms. Gail Ironson and colleagues (2005) studied the progression of AIDS symptoms in a group of HIV-positive men who were all asymptomatic. Two years later, those who refused to accept their HIV-positive status showed a greater decline in T cells, a decreased lymphocyte response, and other symptoms not seen in patients who accepted their status.

The relationship between denial and AIDS may be part of a larger syndrome of *psychological inhibition*. For example, gay men who hide their sexual orientation deteriorate more rapidly following HIV infection than do men who are more open (Cole and others, 1996), perhaps because of changes in the autonomic nervous system (see [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03)) that adversely affect immunity (Cole and others, 2003). However, some evidence indicates that HIV-positive men who refuse to accept their diagnosis actually survive *longer* than those who accept their fate more readily.

Why the inconsistency? One problem is that stress, depression, and feelings of social support were often measured only at the *start of the study*. But feelings of stress and depression are not static; they may differ from one day to the next, depending on events in a person’s life. Comparing the results of different studies could be misleading. Depression, for example, may accelerate T-cell decline in HIV-infected people. One study reported that a cognitive behavior stress management (CBSM) intervention not only reduced symptoms of depression but also enhanced the effects of antiretroviral therapy medication (Antoni and others, 2006). Other research has found that patients without depression have significantly healthier immune systems and higher quality of life than depressed patients (Schroecksnadel and others, 2008). Interventions that reduce depression are valuable in the fight against AIDS because depression increases the severity of many immune-related disorders (Safren and others, 2010).

## Stress and Social Support

Social support, particularly from peers (Galvan and others, 2008), is also a critical factor in the progression of HIV sickness and AIDS (Fasce, 2008). This is the case even if the contact is over the Internet (Mo & Coulson, 2008). In one study, patients who tested positive for HIV were followed for five years. Those who reported greater isolation and less emotional support at the start of the study showed a significantly greater decline in T cells over the course of the study than those who reported feeling more socially connected (Theorell and others, 1995). In another study, Margaret Kemeny and her colleagues (1994) reported that HIV-positive men who recently lost an intimate partner to AIDS showed more rapid disease progression. The same is true of HIV-positive women who have lost a partner (Ickovics and others, 2001).

Lack of social support may cause AIDS to develop more quickly, partly because it leaves those who are HIV positive less able to cope effectively with stressful life events (Deichert and others, 2008). In a prospective study that began in 1990, Jane Leserman and her colleagues (2000) studied 82 HIV-infected gay men every six months. The participants reported the number of stressful events in their lives, their styles of coping, and their satisfaction with the social support available to them. The researchers also measured blood levels of T cells, as well as serum levels of cortisol and other stress hormones.

Although none of the HIV-positive men had any AIDS symptoms at the start of the study, one-third of them have exhibited some symptoms to date. For every increase in the number of stressful life events—equivalent to one severely stressful event or two moderately stressful events—the risk of developing AIDS symptoms doubled. The risk of AIDS has also doubled for every significant *decrease* in the average score on the satisfaction with social support scale, every *increase* in the use of denial as a coping strategy, and every 5 mg/dl increase in the level of serum cortisol.

Given the health benefits of having a strong social network, it is particularly tragic that AIDS is often a stigmatizing condition, and that many of its victims also lose friends and companions. Studies suggest that pet ownership can provide a buffer against the isolation-induced depression that can accompany AIDS. Judith Siegel and her colleagues (1999) surveyed more than 1800 gay and bisexual men and found that those with AIDS, particularly those with the lowest levels of satisfaction with their social networks, showed markedly higher levels of depression than did HIV-positive men without AIDS and HIV-negative men in a control group. But whereas men with AIDS without pets were 300 percent more likely to report symptoms of depression than men without AIDS, men with AIDS who owned a pet were only 50 percent more likely to do so. The benefits of owning a dog or cat were strongest for men who felt the closest attachment to their pets.

Understanding how psychosocial factors affect the course of AIDS may improve a person’s chances of surviving HIV infection. The results of these studies also will help us gain a perspective on the interaction of biological, psychological, and social factors in health and disease and thus to refine our understanding of the connections between mind and body.

**HIV infection is a highly stigmatizing disease because it is difficult to conceal as the disease progresses, it is disruptive to the person’s life and relationships, and it can cause physical disfigurement as part of its degenerative course. AIDS-related stigmas result in discrimination, prejudice, and isolation and are a major factor in limiting social support and assistance for coping with HIV**.

## Medical Interventions

Until recently, HIV infection was almost always a progressive, fatal disease. Medical interventions focused almost exclusively on treating the opportunistic diseases that resulted from immune failure, not on eliminating (or even controlling) the HIV virus. Today, however, scientists have a much better understanding of how the virus behaves, and treatment advances have transformed AIDS into a manageable chronic condition in which people are living with HIV for longer periods of time (Shrestha and others, 2010; Cole and others, 2007). Several tests directly monitor the levels of the virus in the body, giving doctors a more accurate means of determining how well a treatment regimen is working. In addition, several new classes of drugs have made it possible to treat HIV aggressively, improving overall health and dramatically increasing chances of survival. Doctors continue to monitor levels of the virus in the patient’s blood and modify ineffective treatments before immune failure results and the invading virus gets the upper hand.

## AIDS Intervention

**Over the last few years, AIDS patients have been required to take a variety of pills each day on a very strict timetable. However, with research advances, more streamlined pharmacological regimens have been used and were equally effective.**

Veronique Burger/Science Source

## The HAART Regimen

Today’s optimum treatment regimen is *highly active antiretroviral therapy*, or *HAART* for short. HAART involves a combination of antiretroviral drugs that attack different parts of HIV or stop the virus from entering cells. Although the treatment does not get rid of HIV, it slows the pace at which the virus continues to reproduce.

One of the most commonly used drugs in the HAART regimen is [**zidovudine (azidothymidine, or AZT)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term358), one of a class of drugs called *reverse transcriptase inhibitors*, which block HIV replication by inhibiting production of the enzyme that HIV needs to reproduce itself. AZT reduces AIDS symptoms, increases T cell levels, and may prolong the patient’s life. However, many patients on AZT experience a variety of side effects, including anemia, which requires frequent blood transfusions; reduced white blood cell formation, which increases the risk of other infections; headaches; itching; and mental confusion. In addition, AZT’s effectiveness wears off as the virus becomes resistant to it. For this reason, AZT is often combined with a promising new group of anti-HIV drugs called *protease inhibitors*, which block the production of mature viral proteins. This combination of drugs has reduced HIV to undetectable levels in some patients.

## zidovudine (azidothymidine, or AZT)

The first anti-AIDS drug; a reverse transcriptase inhibitor which blocks the activity of an enzyme needed for replication of HIV and other viruses.

HAART used to be complicated, requiring patients to take a series of pills at varying times of the day, but a newer, once-a-day regimen has greatly simplified treatment. At a cost of up to $15,000 a year, however, many AIDS patients simply can’t afford it. Even in affluent, developed countries, many people lack the income or health insurance coverage necessary to handle such costs. Of course, countless impoverished people in developing countries have little hope of getting these treatments. Worldwide, fewer than one in five people who need anti-HIV drugs is receiving them (Fauci, 2006).

Poor adherence remains a substantial problem among those on anti-HIV drug regimens. Nonadherence can lead to significantly decreased life expectancy and also increases the likelihood of HIV transmission. In addition to treatment complexity, other predictors of nonadherence include active substance abuse, depression, homelessness, and side effects of treatment. While side effects of HAART treatment vary considerably with the particular drugs making up the therapy, and from one individual to another, the most common side effects include diarrhea, nausea, and vomiting. These side effects become such a burden for some that about 25 percent of patients stop therapy within the first year (d’Arminio, Lepri, & Rezza, 2000).

Slowing the development of AIDS in developing countries (where 90 percent of those infected with HIV live) is a top priority for researchers. More efficient and cheaper manufacturing methods, better drug formulations, lower-dose prescriptions, and shorter treatment periods are all being investigated as potential ways of making anti-HIV medications more accessible (*Science News*, 2012). The inequities in treatment and prevention hit children the hardest. In some parts of Africa, 4 out of every 10 children lose at least one parent to AIDS before age 15—and 1600 babies are born with HIV every day. To help stop the transmission of HIV to infants, the United Nations AIDS agency began a program of prenatal care, AZT, and delivery assistance to women in 11 of the world’s poorest countries. In the face of mounting evidence that HIV also can pass to a child through breast milk, the program helps infected mothers find safe alternatives to breastfeeding. Fortunately, there has been some improvement. By 2011, a majority of people eligible for HIV treatment in low- and middle-income countries—a record 8 million people—were receiving antiretroviral therapy, a twentyfold increase since 2003 (UNAIDS, 2012).

One way that health psychologists have become involved in the war on AIDS is by designing interventions to promote HIV adherence. A recent example is the use of [**dynamic tailoring**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term122), which refers to the delivering of individualized health messages over multiple time periods to provide unique feedback based on the individual’s status at that moment in time (Johnson, Cummins, & Evers, 2008). In one study, researchers delivered dynamically tailored messages via mobile phones to 52 HIV-positive MSM. For participants who had reported nonadherence to their regimen, as well as those who were just beginning HAART, the reminder messages were delivered one to three times each day (e.g., “Stop, drop, and pop. Take your meds now.”). Participants who were adherent received weekly messages that encouraged them to keep taking medications (e.g., “He shoots! He scores! Perfect med adherence. Great job!”). Over the three-month intervention period, participants reported reading and enjoying the text messages, as well as significantly fewer missed days, and researchers found a significant decrease in viral load and increase in CD4 cell counts (Lewis and others, 2013).

## dynamic tailoring

The delivery of individualized and targeted health messages over multiple periods of time.

## A Preventive Vaccine

Given the capacity of HIV to become integrated into a host cell’s DNA, prospects are bleak for a true cure that would detect and destroy every HIV-infected cell in the body. Despite nearly 30 years of research, we remain a long way from an effective, affordable vaccine against HIV; there hasn’t been a single well-documented case of an infected person whose immune system has been completely cleared of the virus (AIDS Vaccine, 2010; Fauci, 2006). As an alternative, some researchers are looking for a vaccine to minimize and control the impact of HIV on the body. One of the major stumbling blocks is the enormous variability of HIV. In an infected person with replicating HIV, it is estimated that more than 10 billion new viruses are made every day, with new strains constantly appearing. A second difficulty is the rapid speed with which the virus infects T cells and the long life of infected cells, making the prospects for an effective vaccine quite unlikely.

Still, researchers are hopeful of developing a treatment that will block one of the many steps in the HIV life cycle completely ([**Figure 12.4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F12-4)). If this is accomplished, the virus may be stopped dead in its tracks. To date, the most promising vaccine is RV 144, a combination of two genetically engineered vaccines developed in animals and recently subjected to a six-year clinical trial involving more than 16,000 volunteers in Thailand. The largest HIV/AIDS vaccine trial in history, it included participants ranging in age from 18 to 30 who were recruited from the general population rather than from high-risk groups. All participants received condoms, instruction on how to use them and how to avoid infection, and the promise of lifelong antiretroviral treatment if they got AIDS. Half received six doses of RV 144, and half were given placebos. They were then regularly tested for three years. Those who were vaccinated became infected at a rate nearly one-third lower than the other participants, who received the placebo. This finding suggests that RV 144 does not work by producing neutralizing antibodies, as most vaccines do, but rather by activating white blood cells that attack the virus (McNeil, 2009).

## Figure 12.4: Strategies to Combat HIV Reproduction

**Doctors have a number of potent anti-HIV drugs at their disposal. These widely used drugs block specific steps in the HIV life cycle.**

Although there still is no “cure” for AIDS, the advances in treatment that have been achieved since 1995 are unparalleled in the history of medicine. Before 1995, “treatment” for HIV consisted almost entirely of making patients as comfortable as possible as they prepared to die. Today, the use of reverse transcriptase inhibitors, protease inhibitors, and the “AIDS cocktail” approach of HAART has increased hope that someday AIDS will become a manageable chronic disease—much like diabetes—rather than a terminal illness, and that AIDS patients may look forward to long, productive lives.

## Psychosocial Interventions

As researchers press on in their search for effective medical interventions, psychosocial interventions remain the primary means of battling AIDS, in which health psychologists play a number of roles, including both primary and secondary prevention interventions. Primary prevention includes counseling people about being tested for HIV and helping individuals modify high-risk behaviors. Secondary prevention includes helping AIDS patients cope with emotional and cognitive disturbances and conducting bereavement therapy for those in the last stages of the illness and their loved ones.

Since the beginning of the AIDS epidemic, many different interventions have been implemented. The earliest programs targeted high-risk groups such as gay men or IV drug users, using behavior modification and educational interventions to try to change attitudes and behaviors. Programs at the high school and college level have typically focused on increasing knowledge of AIDS and promoting safe sex. Mass media campaigns have emphasized awareness of how AIDS is transmitted—and they have been quite successful. Despite a slow beginning, AIDS education and other intervention programs skyrocketed during the 1990s, thanks initially to the efforts of the gay community in the United States. As a result, public awareness of AIDS increased, and a corresponding reduction in risk-related behaviors occurred, accompanied by a sharp decline in the number of new cases of HIV infection. Worldwide, a number of innovative prevention programs have appeared that attempt to link violence reduction with HIV/AIDS education in gang members, who are particularly vulnerable to HIV (Cohen, 2006; UNAIDS, 2007). Let’s take a look at the theories on which the intervention programs are based, and then at some of the interventions that are effective in reducing HIV/AIDS risk-related behavior.

## The Basis for Psychosocial Interventions

Many of the theoretical models described in [**Chapter 6**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch06) have been used to predict whether and when people will change a risky health-related behavior, so they often form the basis for HIV/AIDS intervention programs (Naar-King and others, 2008).

Social-cognitive theory, which focuses on the interaction of environmental events, our internal processes, and our behaviors, has served as the framework for a number of interventions (Kelly & Kalichman, 2002). Three factors addressed by this model appear to be particularly important in successful intervention programs: (1) *perceived social norms* regarding peer acceptance of HIV risk-reducing behaviors; (2) *self-efficacy beliefs* controlling one’s own thoughts, emotions, and behaviors in order to avoid unsafe behaviors; and (3) *social skills*, the ability to respond assertively in negotiating risky behaviors. This was demonstrated by Seth Kalichman and his colleagues (1998, 2008), who found that gay men who practice high-risk behaviors also score lower on measures of perceived safer-sex norms, safer-sex self-efficacy, and social skills.

The health belief model, which is based on the idea that beliefs predict behavior, has achieved modest success with a variety of high-risk groups in predicting condom use, the number of sexual partners, and knowledge of partners’ past sexual history. The theory of reasoned action, which also considers the person’s attitude toward complying with other people’s views, has achieved greater success, probably due to the influence of social norms on the sexual activity of many at-risk populations, including teenagers. Researchers have consistently found that people with more favorable attitudes toward condoms, as well as those who believe their friends are supportive of condom use, are more likely to engage in protected sex. They have also found that individuals in high-risk groups, such as young men who have sex with men, often have overly optimistic beliefs about their risk, which does little to deter their risk behaviors (MacKellar and others, 2007).

Support for stage models comes from evidence that certain individuals may profit more than others from a specific intervention. For example, younger, less knowledgeable individuals tend to benefit from educational interventions that close gaps in knowledge about how AIDS is transmitted, while older individuals in certain high-risk groups may be more likely to profit from interventions that stir them into preventive action.

## Education Aimed at Prevention

**In the absence of a vaccine, preventing HIV infection remains our best weapon against AIDS. Throughout the world, educational campaigns are the major means of primary prevention.**

Borderlands/Alamy

## Educational Programs

Educational programs and media campaigns are most likely to be effective when messages are adapted to the target group’s sex, nationality, and acculturation (Latkin & Knowlton, 2005). A meta-analysis of over 100,000 participants in HIV-prevention interventions found that groups with higher percentages of Latinos benefited most from interventions delivered by lay community members that included threat-inducing messages, while in samples with low percentages of Latinos, health messages delivered by experts that did not include threat-inducing arguments were more effective (Albarracin and others, 2008). A similar meta-analysis with heterosexual African-Americans found that successful interventions included *cultural tailoring* aimed at modifying social norms regarding safe-sex behavior (Darbes and others, 2008). Special, targeted interventions were also found to be more effective in cultures where social customs or religious beliefs support male dominance and that tend to have high rates of male-to-female HIV transmission (UNAIDS, 2007).

Another successful program targeted people 50 years of age and older who were living with HIV/AIDS (Heckman and others, 2006), providing age-appropriate counseling focused on reducing loneliness, depressive symptoms, and avoidant coping. Its success is especially important because it is predicted that by 2015, one-half of all cases of HIV/AIDS in the United States will be in persons 50 years of age or older (CDC, 2006). Researchers have found that peer-led interventions are also particularly effective with young people (Maticka-Tyndale & Barnett, 2010). However they are delivered, all educational messages have one thing in common—to make people aware of AIDS and how to prevent it.

There are a number of simple precautions that will protect against AIDS and other STIs. Health experts offer the following specific precautions:

* Stay sober. Alcohol and many other drugs lower inhibitions and increase the likelihood of high-risk behaviors.
* Avoid anal intercourse. The thin lining of the rectum makes this the most hazardous form of sex for transmitting HIV.
* Be selective in choosing partners and limit the number of partners in the *sexual network*. Avoid sexual contacts with people who are known to engage in high-risk sexual or drug-use behaviors.
* Use latex condoms during vaginal, anal, and oral sex. These barriers block nearly all sexually transmitted microorganisms, including HIV. Doctor-prescribed and fitted vaginal diaphragms or cervical caps that block semen and spermicides that paralyze sperm (and lymphocytes) are also advisable.
* Never share hypodermic needles, razors, cuticle scissors, or other implements that may be contaminated with another person’s blood or bodily fluids.
* Do not be lulled into a sense of complacency about AIDS and STIs by media reports about treatment breakthroughs. There is still no cure for AIDS.

## Mass Screening and HIV Counseling

While education is important, it is often not enough. HIV screening and basic counseling are also primary preventive interventions in most state and federal programs. In the most ambitious screening program to date, in 2006 over 110 million Japanese citizens were tested ([**KaiserNetwork.org**](http://kaisernetwork.org/), 2007). Despite efforts such as this, at the end of 2011 it was estimated that only half of all people living with HIV were aware of it (UNAIDS, 2012).

People being screened for HIV benefit from interventions that help reduce their anxiety over testing positive. In a series of studies by Michael Antoni and his colleagues (2000), gay men were randomly assigned to intervention and control groups several weeks *before* HIV screening. Those in the intervention group participated in a multifaceted program that included aerobic exercise, relaxation training, and cognitive therapy aimed at modifying self-defeating attitudes. Each participant’s psychological status and immunocompetence were assessed several times before and after receiving the results of screening. Among men who tested positive for HIV, those in the intervention group reported significantly lower anxiety and depression than those in the control group. They also displayed significantly stronger immune functioning, including increases in the levels and activity of T cells and NK cells.

Health psychologists have also developed interventions to counteract the reality that many sexual encounters, especially with new partners, are emotionally intense, rushed, fueled by alcohol use, and not conducive to clear thinking and negotiating about safe sex (Collins and others, 2005). The goal of such interventions is therefore to teach young men and women how to exercise self-control in sexual relationships and how to resist coercive sexual pressure. For example, intervention participants have been asked to use mental imagery to visualize risky sexual encounters that result in HIV infection. When coupled with role-playing exercises, modeling, and feedback, this type of intervention can be highly effective in giving young people the skills needed to avoid high-risk behaviors.

Unfortunately, successful counseling interventions are more often the exception than the rule. In one study, researchers found no difference in the prevalence of HIV-risky behaviors between women who sought HIV testing and counseling at urban clinics and women who used other clinic services. Both groups engaged in high-risk sexual behaviors, including having unprotected intercourse with partners of uncertain or high risk (Ickovics and others, 1998). Clearly, HIV counseling is not automatically effective. Increasingly, health psychologists recognize that modifying sexual behaviors is a complex process involving two people with different agendas and different attitudes toward safe-sex practices. It cannot be assumed that both partners are equally empowered to consent to sex and to make decisions about risk. Abuse, dominance, and coercion by male partners are factors in HIV infection for many women (Lichtenstein, 2005). And although the female partner often is held responsible for ensuring the use of a contraceptive, she may not be empowered to insist that her male partner use a condom.

Research has shown a strong association between perceived *self-efficacy* and the prevalence of high-risk behaviors. For example, self-efficacy is linked to greater condom use among adolescents and college students (Halpern-Felsher and others, 2004), gay men (Teng & Mak, 2011), African-American teenagers (Crosby and others, 2001), and Hispanic-American women (Nyamathi and others, 1995). Gay men who have strong feelings of self-efficacy also tend to have fewer sexual partners and to be better informed about the sexual history of those with whom they are intimate (Wulfert, Wan, & Backus, 1996).

An important motivational factor in many models of health behavior (see [**Chapter 6**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch06)) is *outcome expectancy*, as a person balances the pros and cons of a specific action, such as using a condom. In a recent study of 410 MSM recruited at different gay venues in Hong Kong, participants completed a costs and benefits of condom use questionnaire that tapped a range of different consequences that could occur if people use condoms with their partner ([**Table 12.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T12-3)). The items were rated on a 6-point Likert scale, from (1) *extremely unlikely* to (6) *extremely likely*. The results showed that the perceived benefits of condom use were significantly and most strongly related to condom use intentions, underscoring the importance of emphasizing these issues in STI-prevention campaigns (Teng & Mak, 2011).

## Table 12.3: Costs and Benefits of Condom Use for MSM

How likely do you think it is that condom use can …

|  |
| --- |
| * 1. Protect both of you against HIV? * 2. Show your concern for your partner’s well-being? * 3. Offend your partner? * 4. Provide variety in your sex life? * 5. Reduce sexual pleasure? * 6. Interrupt foreplay? * 7. Reduce the intimacy of sex? * 8. Destroy the spontaneity of sex? * 9. Reduce trust between you and your partner? |
| **Source:** Teng, Y., & Mak, W.W.S. (2011). The role of planning and self-efficacy in condom use among men who have sex with men: An application of the Health Action Process Approach Model. *Health Psychology, 30(1*), 119–128. |

Researchers have also found a relationship among outlook on life, self-efficacy, and the tendency to engage in high-risk sexual behaviors. One study showed that among sexually active inner-city minority adolescents (aged 15 to 18 years), those who were more optimistic were also more confident of their ability to practice safe sex and more aware of and concerned about the dangers of unsafe sex (Carvajal, Garner, & Evans, 1998). Pessimists, on the other hand, were less concerned about the potential danger of unsafe sex, perhaps because they felt they had less to lose than their more optimistic counterparts. Furthermore, the pessimists’ lack of feelings of self-efficacy led them to believe that there was nothing they could do to avoid those dangers, or the behaviors.

And finally, in a longitudinal study of heterosexual women, those who avoided unprotected intercourse had more favorable attitudes toward condoms and had a greater internal locus of control regarding their health. That is, they felt more personally responsible for protecting their bodies against HIV infection (as well as other health threats) than did women who more often had unprotected intercourse (Morrill and others, 1996).

All these results suggest that the frequency of unprotected sex can be dramatically reduced with a few steps: help people to improve their outlook on life, their feelings of self-efficacy, and their sense of personal control, and encourage them to talk more openly about safe sex.

## Promoting Disclosure of HIV-Positive Status

Because of fears about AIDS, and because the disease is commonly associated with homosexuality and IV drug use, HIV-positive people often feel ashamed and conceal their status. Many don’t even tell their immediate family. Recent survey data indicate that concerns about AIDS stigma still discourage many individuals from even being tested for HIV infection (Herek and others, 2003).

Withholding one’s HIV-positive status or misrepresenting one’s sexual history obviously prevents a partner from making an informed decision about sexual behavior and may result in the transmission of the virus to that person and others. Does preventive counseling at the time of HIV diagnosis lead to greater self-disclosure of HIV status to sexual partners? Among a sample of HIV-positive men, researchers found that men who were counseled to disclose their status were indeed more likely to do so (as well as to engage in safer sex practices) than men who were not counseled.

Although most HIV/AIDS interventions have focused on preventing infection in at-risk uninfected persons, a growing number are aimed at preventing risky behaviors in people who have tested positive for HIV. One in three HIV-positive people continues to practice HIV transmission risk behaviors *after* they test positive for the virus (Kalichman and others, 2000). In one recent intervention, Thomas Patterson and his colleagues (2003) found that a brief (90-minute), targeted behavioral intervention among HIV-positive individuals that focused only on changing those risky behaviors that had been identified as problematic for the individual (for example, unprotected sex, disclosure) resulted in a significant reduction in HIV transmission risk behaviors over the next year. In another study, Seth Kalichman and his colleagues (2002) designed targeted interventions that successfully assisted HIV-positive men in developing adaptive coping behaviors to replace alcohol use (a risk behavior) as a means of coping with or escaping from the stress of living with HIV/AIDS.

## Cognitive Behavioral Stress Management (CBSM)

One of the roles of health psychology in helping people cope with HIV and other STIs is helping people live with their infection and illness. Coping with a life-threatening illness is especially challenging for people with the greatest risk for HIV infection, since they are more likely to have a history of trauma and comorbid mental health problems, including anxiety disorders, depression, and substance abuse (Gaynes and others, 2008). This is significant because it indicates that they may lack good coping skills (Whetten and others, 2008).

As we have seen, the neuroendocrine consequences of stress may contribute to health problems, including a more rapid course of illness in people with AIDS and an increased likelihood of developing opportunistic infections (Cole, 2008). A growing body of research demonstrates that comprehensive cognitive-behavioral intervention programs focused on increasing positive coping skills are effective in improving the quality of life and emotional and physiological well-being of HIV-positive individuals.

One study evaluated the effectiveness of a 10-week cognitive behavior stress management (CBSM) intervention consisting of both stress-management and relaxation training components in reducing stress among HIV-positive men (Antoni and others, 2000). The stress-management portion focused on helping the men to identify cognitive distortions in their thinking and to use cognitive restructuring to generate more rational appraisals of everyday stressors. The meetings also taught the men techniques to improve their coping skills, be more assertive, manage their anger, and make greater use of social support. Through group discussions and role-playing exercises, the men also learned to share experiences, disclose their fears, and apply various stress-management concepts. The relaxation portion included progressive muscle relaxation training, meditation, abdominal breathing exercises, and guided imagery.

The results showed that the men who participated in the CBSM intervention reported significantly lower post-treatment levels of anxiety, anger, total mood disturbance, and perceived stress compared to the men who were assigned to an untreated control group ([**Figure 12.5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F12-5)). Moreover, those in the intervention group also displayed less norepinephrine output and significantly greater numbers of T cells 6 to 12 months later.

## Figure 12.5: Pre- and Post-CBSM Treatment Anxiety and Anger in HIV-Positive Men

**Prior to intervention, the men assigned to CBSM showed mood and anxiety scores similar to those men assigned to the control condition, as measured by scores on the Profile of Mood States. Following the intervention, CBSM participants reported significantly lower post-treatment anxiety and anger than their control group counterparts.**

**Source:** Antoni, M.H., and others. (2000). Cognitive-behavioral stress management intervention effects on anxiety, 24-hour urinary norepinephrine output, and T-cytotoxic/suppressor cells over time among symptomatic HIV-infected gay men. *Journal of Consulting & Clinical Psychology, 68*, 31–45.

Several more recent CBSM intervention studies have shown similar efficacy. In one, a 10-week group CBSM intervention was associated with reduced life stress and odds of cervical pre-cancer in women with HIV (Antoni and others, 2008). In another study involving racial/ethnic minority women with HIV and HPV, a 10-week CBSM intervention was associated with increased positive affect, positive states of mind, benefit finding, and spiritual well-being (Jensen and others, 2013). In this latter study, women who most increased their confidence in stress management skills showed the largest changes in positive well-being.

CBSM interventions have also been linked with positive physiological changes. One recent clinical trial reported that HIV-positive participants in a 10-week CBSM intervention showed better immune cell functioning and used fewer emotion-focused coping strategies to deal with their distress than control group participants (McCain and others, 2008). A meta-analysis of 35 randomized, controlled trials found that CBSM interventions were successful in reducing anxiety, depression, distress, and fatigue in HIV-positive adults. However, these interventions did not result in improved CD4 cell counts, lower viral load, or other indicators of improved immunity (Scott-Sheldon and others, 2008). The shorter (one-week) duration of the post-intervention assessment period in the meta-analysis may have been a factor in the conflicting results. Interestingly, men participating in CBSM also experienced significant increases in testosterone levels.

Because of the biopsychosocial, interactive nature of cognitive, affective, behavioral, and social elements of stress responses, it appears that the most effective way to “package” stress-management interventions for HIV-infected persons may be a multimodal CBSM program (Antoni & Schneiderman, 2001). Those who test positive also may need counseling and other interventions to help them cope with a wide array of problems over the course of the illness, including pain management, adherence to complicated medical regimens, and facing the possibility of death.

## Community-Wide Interventions

Intensive, coordinated, community-wide interventions have proved to be the best way to educate people about HIV and to change social norms that influence sexual behavior. The largest AIDS prevention program of this kind to date was implemented in San Francisco in 1982. The *San Francisco Model* involved seven different organizations chosen to reach people at different levels of risk (Coates, Stall, & Hoff, 1990): the mass media, schools, family planning centers, drug abuse clinics, health care organizations, churches, and clubs.

Each organization developed an educational program that was appropriate for its clientele. At each site, classes, videos, and models were used to teach safer-sex practices. In addition, mass media motivational messages and social action groups focused on increasing awareness of high-risk behaviors and reducing the social stigma attached to HIV-positive persons.

The program was an immediate success, with reported high-risk behavior among the sample dropping from 60 percent to 30 percent within five years. The continuing success of the program indicates that HIV/AIDS interventions need to strike on several fronts. Effective interventions are those that

* target high-risk behaviors among at-risk individuals,
* teach specific skills to reduce risk (such as proper condom use and needle cleaning),
* promote interpersonal assertiveness and other communication skills necessary to initiate and maintain lower-risk sexual relationships,
* address social and cultural norms that surround sexual activity,
* focus on improving self-esteem and feelings of self-efficacy regarding how to practice safer sex,
* address faulty, even “magical” thinking regarding HIV transmission and personal vulnerability (see below), and
* involve coordinated, community-level education.

## Psychosocial Barriers to AIDS Intervention

Despite massive efforts to educate the public and discourage high-risk behaviors, condom use remains startlingly low. As a group, men who have sex with men (MSM) are the most at-risk population for HIV infection in several countries. In Hong Kong, for instance, the prevalence of HIV infection among MSM (4.05 percent) is 40 times higher than that of the general population (0.1 percent) (Centre for Health Protection, 2009). As noted earlier, engaging in unprotected anal intercourse (UAI) is the major reason behind the higher rates of HIV among MSM. Yet a recent survey study of 13,882 MSM over 17 countries of East and Southeast Asia showed that 41 percent of them reported having UAI with either a regular or casual partner in the past six months (Koe, 2010).

In the United States, results from the National College Risk Behavior Survey indicate that 84 percent of college men and 88 percent of college women report having engaged in sexual intercourse. Only one-third, however, reported consistent condom use (Abbey and others, 2007). Media depictions of sexual encounters, which almost never include the awkward searching for and fumbling with a condom, do little to promote AIDS interventions aimed at promoting safe sex. This is particularly damaging for teenagers, who acquire a misleading personal script of how things are supposed to progress and attempt to follow that script during their first intimate experiences. Feeding into this is poor communication between sexual partners. One recent study of 701 sexually active African-American females aged 14–20 found that partner communication was the strongest predictor of condom use (DePadilla and others, 2011).

A surprisingly common example of faulty reasoning about HIV/AIDS is the belief that the danger of HIV infection depends on the depth of the relationship with the HIV-positive person. This line of thinking causes many people to worry needlessly about casual contact with HIV-positive coworkers and strangers, but to behave recklessly with people they know more intimately. Among college students, for instance, condom use appears to drop off abruptly over the time of a relationship (Pluhar and others, 2003). Our faulty HIV/AIDS thinking is often the result of believing that we are somehow less vulnerable to infection than others are. This *optimistic bias* and *perceived invincibility* contribute to our tendency to underestimate the risk that results from high-risk behaviors.

Ironically, a significant impediment to AIDS prevention programs is the success of recent advances in medical treatment, which have brought new hope and optimism for HIV-infected people but at the cost of greater public complacency regarding the dangers of the disease. Widespread news of AIDS treatment breakthroughs has led to premature claims that HIV is more of a chronic than a life-threatening illness and that a complete cure is on the horizon. As we’ve seen, anti-HIV drugs have become increasingly successful in reducing the concentrations of HIV in the infected person’s body, suggesting to some that people under treatment may be less infectious. Those who perceive a reduced threat of HIV/AIDS are more likely to engage in high-risk sexual behaviors, as are people who suppress HIV-related thoughts during intimate encounters (Hoyt and others, 2006).

Researchers also have found that some individuals engage in risky sexual behavior because the risk makes the behavior more exciting and pleasurable. A particularly important variable is the *sensation-seeking personality*, defined as the tendency to seek optimal arousal and sensory stimulation. In a survey of HIV-negative gay and bisexual men, Jeff Kelly and Seth Kalichman (1998) found that the subjective reinforcement value (pleasure) of UAI more strongly predicted condom use than perceived vulnerability to infection. The emotional meaning of having unprotected sex, including trust of one’s partner, may also be a factor in the failure of some individuals to practice safe sex. In another study, Kalichman and his colleagues (2002) found that HIV-positive men who score high in measures of sensation seeking tend to have cognitive expectancies that alcohol use enhances sexual performance and pleasure, which may promote their engaging in unprotected sex. Current condom use messages are neutral in tone, oriented mostly toward disease prevention. In the future, HIV interventions may need to increase more explicitly the perceived value of safe sex, particularly among those who score high in sensation seeking.

## Coping with HIV and AIDS

Chronic illnesses such as AIDS can have a dramatic impact on the individual, as well as on family, friends, and caregivers. Those who have AIDS often find themselves isolated from social support networks as coworkers, neighbors, and even family and friends withdraw from them. Early studies suggested that psychological and emotional difficulties were common, with as many as half of AIDS patients having diagnosable psychological and emotional disorders. However, most of the studies involved only gay men, making it difficult to rule out the impact of other variables (such as social stigma) on the individual’s adjustment to the disease (Cochran, Sullivan, & Mays, 2003).

## Impact on the Individual

People who test positive for HIV face the challenges of coping with the stigma of AIDS, acknowledging the possibility of dying young, and developing strategies for minimizing the impact of the disease on their physical and emotional health (Swendeman and others, 2006). Ironically, with advances in biomedical technology, the fear of developing symptoms actually may be magnified. New tests now are able to forecast when symptoms probably will appear.

## The National AIDS Quilt

**HIV-positive individuals who remain socially connected fare better than those who feel shunned or isolate themselves. The national AIDS quilt, shown here in Washington, DC, is being transported around the country to increase AIDS awareness and to prompt people to provide social support to sufferers.**

Richard Ellis/Alamy

When the challenges and fears associated with AIDS become overwhelming, victims may suffer depression and suicidal thinking. This is especially true for those who feel a withdrawal of family and social support, lose their jobs, or become disfigured as a result of the disease’s progression or treatment. Depression is the most frequently diagnosed psychiatric condition in the HIV-positive population (Treisman, Angelino, & Hutton, 2001), affecting an estimated 18 to 60 percent of people with HIV (Orlando and others, 2002). HIV-positive people who tend to rely on avoidance-oriented coping strategies rather than approach-oriented coping strategies are especially likely to experience psychological distress (Penedo and others, 2003). They are also more likely to think about and actually commit suicide (Heckman and others, 2002). Jane Simoni and her colleagues (2007) have demonstrated the value of a peer support intervention focused on providing informational, emotional, and spiritual support in reducing symptoms of depression and promoting medication adherence among those with HIV/AIDS.

Not all patients who test HIV positive develop psychological problems. As with other chronic illnesses, AIDS patients who use active coping strategies to solve their problems and maintain an upbeat outlook tend to fare much better than those who distance themselves physically or emotionally from their plight (Fleishman & Fogel, 1994). Active coping measures that have proved effective in reducing AIDS-related stress reactions include seeking information and social support (Siegel, Gluhoski, & Karus, 1997) and taking an active role in one’s medical treatment regimen (Baum & Posluszny, 1999).

A number of researchers have studied long-term AIDS survivors in an effort to identify behavioral factors that might promote longevity. Three factors, in particular, seem to distinguish long-term survivors from those who succumb more quickly:

* *Maintaining physical fitness by engaging in regular exercise*. Aerobic exercise interventions bolster immunocompetence in AIDS patients by preventing declines in level and activity of NK cells (Bopp and others, 2004). These interventions also help prevent the dramatic weight loss and other telltale signs of disease that often accompany the later stages of AIDS (Lox, McAuley, & Tucker, 1996).
* *Keeping an upbeat, positive outlook*. AIDS progresses more rapidly among patients who are chronically depressed, leading to significantly shorter survival times (Moskowitz, 2003; Ironson & Hayward, 2008). One intervention study that used CBSM to treat depression was found not only to reduce negative affect, but also to enhance the effects of anti-retroviral therapy on HIV viral load (Antoni and others, 2006). In addition to CBSM, antidepressants can be effective (Repetto & Petitto, 2008).
* *Avoiding social isolation*. In fact, having a large social network is strongly correlated with longevity among AIDS patients (Patterson and others, 1996). The Internet is an important resource in this regard. People who use the Internet in conjunction with managing their HIV-positive status are more knowledgeable about the disease, have more active coping skills, and perceive higher levels of social support than HIV-positive individuals who do not (Kalichman and others, 2003; Bowen and others, 2008).

## Impact on Family Members, Partners, and Caregivers

The effects of AIDS extend beyond the individual to family members, partners, and other caregivers. Research into the effects on families is lacking because AIDS poses several unique problems. First, AIDS often changes family structure and roles. Children may die before their parents, or young children and grandparents may be forced to become caregivers at a time when they normally would be in a more dependent role themselves. Second, AIDS places the additional burden of the disease’s social stigma on its victims and their families. Uninfected family members may find their friends shying away from them, or even harassing them. And the social rejection may persist even after the AIDS victim has died.

AIDS can have a profound impact on a surviving partner. Most common is the fear of loneliness and, for those who are HIV positive themselves, a fear of dying with no one to care for them. Anger at their partner’s “abandonment” by dying first is also common. Even for partners who are not infected, the fear of being “tarnished” by having shared a relationship with an infected partner may cast a long shadow, making it difficult for the survivor to establish new relationships (Bor, 1997).

AIDS also has a powerful impact on health care providers and caregivers, many of whom have concerns about being infected themselves. Despite the relatively low risk, anxiety about working with AIDS patients persists and may lead to unusual occupational stress and burnout. Family members who provide caregiving are at increased risk for depression, infection, stress-related disorders, and other health problems (Mausbach and others, 2007). These effects are heightened by the fact that caregivers are often elderly, and their new demands affect their already eroded health (Gallagher and others, 2009). Older caregivers report suffering from a number of chronic conditions, but they put the needs of those in their care ahead of their own, often neglecting their own health (Lee, 2009).

On average, caregivers devote over 20 hours per week solely to providing care. Almost two-thirds experience at least one chronic physical symptom, the most common of which are severe backaches and headaches. Caregiving also has been associated with adverse immune and neuroendocrine effects (Li, Hewitt, & Grant, 2007), increased risk of depression, poor quality of sleep, long-term changes in stress responses, cardiovascular disease, and even early mortality (Mausbach and others, 2007). Caregivers who are experiencing other stressors in their lives and those whose caregiving burden is especially heavy are at particular risk (Kim, Knight, & Flynn Longmire, 2007). More than anything else, though, it is the length of the patient’s illness that has the greatest impact on the caregiver’s health.

At present, no cure for AIDS exists, and the disease continues to infect people throughout the world. Health psychologists play an important role in battling the HIV pandemic. In the early years, psychologists were key players in designing and implementing primary and secondary prevention efforts to reduce the spread of HIV and to help those who were HIV positive cope with their illness. These efforts included interventions to reduce risky behaviors for AIDS and to help those who were HIV positive adhere to complex treatment regimens. More recently, health psychologists have teamed up with immunologists and other scientists to study how psychosocial factors, such as beliefs about AIDS and disclosing HIV status, perceived social support, coping style, and possible symptoms of anxiety and depression, influence the course of HIV infection and its progression to AIDS. Based on the growing evidence from these investigations, we have seen that psychologists are designing interventions that not only improve the quality of life of HIV-positive persons, but also increase the odds of their long-term survival.

## Weigh In on Health

Respond to each question below based on what you learned in the chapter. (**Tip:** Use the items in “Summing Up” to take into account related biological, psychological, and social concerns.)

* **1.** Among a group of friends, the topic of HIV/AIDS comes up. Maria says that she knows very little about AIDS except for commercials that tell people to use condoms. What do you think would be good for her to know about the history of this disease and how it progresses from initial infection to HIV and then AIDS?
* **2.** Let’s return to the discussion among friends in [**question 1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/P12-301). Anthony says that there’s not much to worry about anymore because AIDS is not as prevalent as it used to be, and treatments are available. What would you say to him about why it’s important for everyone at every life stage to remain vigilant against this disease?
* **3.** Imagine that you and your friends who had the conversation about HIV/AIDS in the first two questions decided that students at your college should be more aware of this disease, plus other STIs. When it comes to this problem, what aspects of intervention and coping with HIV/AIDS or STIs (biological, psychological, and social or cultural) do you think all college students should know about?

## Summing Up

## The AIDS Epidemic

* **1.** The first human cases of acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), which is a sexually transmitted infection (STI) caused by the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), appeared in 1980, when 55 young men (most of whom were gay or intravenous drug users) were diagnosed with a rare form of cancer. During the last half of the 1980s, AIDS began to threaten the general population.
* **2.** In the United States, the AIDS epidemic has taken the greatest toll on gay, bisexual, and other men who have sex with men (MSM), particularly young African-Americans. For a variety of biological, economic, and sociocultural reasons, women are more vulnerable than men to HIV infection and tend to contract the virus at a younger age and lower HIV viral load. Unprotected vaginal sex is a much higher risk for HIV for women than for men, and unprotected anal sex is riskier for women than unprotected vaginal sex.
* **3.** In other parts of the world, AIDS affects men and women equally, and heterosexual sex is the most common mode of transmission. Ethnic and racial differences in rates of HIV transmission are thought to reflect sociocultural differences in drug use and the acceptance of homosexual and bisexual practices.
* **4.** Genital human papillomavirus (HPV), the most common STI, is passed on through genital contact. Anyone who is having (or has ever had) sex can get HPV. HPV can cause serious health problems, but most people who have it never develop symptoms or even know they have it. Most HPV infections are cleared by the immune system, making it biologically plausible that the local immune response triggered by HPV infection may put women at increased risk for HIV. Although HPV vaccines are safe, effective, and recommended for 11- or 12-year-old boys and girls before their first sexual encounter, their use is uneven and controversial.

## Symptoms and Stages: From HIV to AIDS

* **5.** HIV is transmitted primarily through the sharing of virus-infected lymphocytes in bodily fluids—blood, semen, vaginal and cervical secretions, and breast milk.
* **6.** High-risk behaviors that promote HIV infection include having unprotected sex with multiple partners, using IV drugs, and sharing needles. HIV also may be transmitted from an infected mother to her unborn child during pregnancy, as well as from mother to child during breastfeeding.
* **7.** The chances of casual transmission of AIDS without sexual contact or IV drug use are very low. The best ways to guard against HIV infection are limiting sexual partners, choosing partners carefully, and avoiding sexual contact with those who are known to engage in high-risk behaviors.
* **8.** HIV is a retrovirus that causes host cells to reproduce the virus’s genetic code. In doing so, HIV destroys T cells, progressively reduces immunocompetence, and leaves its victims vulnerable to a host of opportunistic infections.
* **9.** HIV sickness progresses through four stages, which vary in length from person to person. The average time from HIV infection to AIDS is about 10 years, although 5 percent of HIV-positive people live more than 15 years. HIV progresses much more slowly among patients whose immune systems mount strong lymphocyte activity in the acute stage of HIV sickness.
* **10.** Stress, negative emotions, and social isolation may influence the pace at which the disease progresses, perhaps by altering hormonal and immune environments that affect the resistance of host cells to the invading virus. Interventions that reduce depression are valuable in the fight against AIDS because depression increases the severity of many immune-related disorders.
* **11.** Racial discrimination may be a contributing factor to health-risk behaviors and HIV infection. Discrimination often is associated with heightened perceived norms for deviant behavior among peers, which in turn predict reduced feelings of belonging and higher levels of substance use and risky sex behaviors. Findings such as these highlight the potential of preventive interventions that target substance abuse and risky sex behaviors in reducing HIV risk, particularly among young African-American adults.

## Medical Interventions

* **12.** Until recently, HIV infection was almost always a progressive, fatal disease. Today, however, doctors in developed nations have a number of potent drug treatment regimens to offer HIV-positive patients to improve quality of life and longevity. These drugs include antiretroviral drugs, reverse transcriptase inhibitors, protease inhibitors, and “cocktail” combinations of these drugs.
* **13.** Treatment advances have transformed AIDS from a mortal illness into a manageable chronic condition in which people are living with HIV for longer periods of time. Poor medication adherence remains a substantial problem among those on anti-HIV drug regimens. Nonadherence can lead to significantly decreased life expectance and also increases the likelihood of HIV transmission. In addition to treatment complexity, other predictors of nonadherence include active substance abuse, depression, homelessness, and side effects of treatment.
* **14.** Slowing the development of AIDS in developing countries (where 90 percent of those infected with HIV reside) is a top priority for researchers. More efficient and cheaper manufacturing methods, better drug formulations, lower-dose prescriptions, and shorter treatment periods are all being investigated as potential ways of making anti-HIV medications more accessible.
* **15.** Researchers continue to work toward developing a vaccine that will minimize and control the impact of HIV on the body. However, the capacity of HIV to become integrated into a host cell’s DNA and the enormous variability of HIV make this a challenging proposition.

## Psychosocial Interventions

* **16.** Health psychologists play a number of roles in the battle against AIDS, including counseling people about being tested for HIV, helping individuals modify high-risk behaviors, helping AIDS patients cope with emotional and cognitive disturbances, and conducting bereavement therapy for those waiting to die and for their loved ones.
* **17.** Although AIDS prevention programs have had some success, many barriers to prevention remain. Misinformation, feelings of personal invulnerability, cultural norms, and personal resources are all factors in the success (or failure) of AIDS prevention measures.
* **18.** HIV screening is readily available in most developed countries, but complacency or fear of knowing prevent some people from seeking out their HIV status. Many people who do know their HIV status avoid telling their partners and relatives.
* **19.** A particularly effective way to package stress-management interventions for HIV-positive patients seems to be a multimodal, cognitive behavioral stress management (CBSM) approach.

## Coping with HIV and AIDS

* **20.** Chronic illnesses such as AIDS can have a dramatic physical and psychological impact on the individual, as well as on family members, partners, friends, coworkers, and caregivers. The main problems faced by AIDS victims are adjusting to the possibility of dying young and coping with heightened anxiety and depression. Family members who provide caregiving are at increased risk for depression, infection, stress-related disorders, and other physical and mental health problems.
* **21.** Coping with a life-threatening illness is especially challenging for people who are at greatest risk for HIV infection, since they are more likely to have a history of trauma and comorbid mental health problems, including anxiety disorders, depression, and substance abuse.
* **22.** Health psychologists have designed a variety of psychosocial interventions to help people cope with AIDS. These include aerobic exercise, active coping strategies, relaxation training, and avoiding social isolation.

***Chapter 14*: Managing Pain**

[**What Is Pain?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-1-1)

* [**Epidemiology and Components of Pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-2) [**Significance and Types of Pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-3)

[**Measuring Pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-1-6)

* [**Physical Measures**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-7) [**Behavioral Measures**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-8) [**Self-Report Measures**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-9)

[**The Physiology of Pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-1-10)

* [**Pain Pathways**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-11) [**The Neurochemistry of Pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-14) [**Genes and Pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-15) [**Gate Control Theory**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-16)

[**Factors That Influence the Experience of Pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-1-17)

* [**Age**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-18) [**Diversity and Healthy Living:**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B14-22) [**Phantom Limb Pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/B14-22) [**Gender**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-21) [**Sociocultural Factors**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-22)

[**Treating Pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-1-27)

* [**Pharmacological Treatments**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-28) [**Surgery, Electrical Stimulation, and Physical Therapy**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-31)[**Cognitive Behavioral Therapy**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-32) [**Evaluating the Effectiveness of Pain Treatments**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-2-42)

*During the 1932 Los Angeles Olympics, the Japanese gymnastics team finished dead last—a humiliating defeat that triggered a national mission to become an international gymnastic power. When the games resumed following World War II, the mission was finally fulfilled, as the Japanese team won the gold medal in four consecutive Olympics: Rome, Tokyo, Mexico City, and Munich. In their attempt at a fifth straight title at the 1976 Montreal games, however, Shun Fujimoto, their star competitor, broke his kneecap while performing the floor exercise. Remarkably, he didn’t disclose the injury to his coaches or teammates. “I did not want to worry my teammates,” he recalled. “The competition was so close, I didn’t want them to lose their concentration with worry about me.”*

*Blessed with incredible strength and a nearly perfect gymnastic physique, Fujimoto was a fierce competitor and team leader whose buoyant spirit and national pride had rallied his teammates many times in previous competitions. But how could he continue? Although Olympic rules prohibited him from taking a painkiller, Fujimoto decided to stay in the competition and endure the excruciating pain. Fortunately, the next apparatus was the pommel horse—an event in which the knees are mostly locked in place. Unless he fell, the pain might be tolerable. Fujimoto completed a nearly flawless performance, receiving a score of 9.5 out of a possible 10*.

*The final event, however, would be much more demanding. The high rings test arm strength, but vital points can also be lost during the dismount, when the gymnast descends from a great height after a swinging routine that propels him onto the mat at high velocity. “I knew when I descended from the rings, it would be the most painful moment,” Fujimoto remembered. “I also knew that if my posture was not good when I landed, I would not receive a good score. I must try to forget the pain.”*

*After another nearly perfect routine, Fujimoto landed, smiled for the judges, held his position for the required few seconds, and then fell* *to the mat as his injured leg buckled beneath him. Incredibly, his near-perfect score of 9.7 was enough to propel his team to gold medal victory!*

Biological, psychological, and social factors contributed to Fujimoto’s development as a gymnast, and those same factors played a role in his triumphant Olympic victory. The story also makes clear one of health psychology’s most fundamental themes: that the mind and body are inextricably intertwined. Fujimoto’s determination not to let his teammates down allowed him to overcome a painful injury that in other circumstances most certainly would have been crippling.

The struggle to understand pain—what causes it and how to control it—is a central topic in health psychology. Until recently, however, researchers knew next to nothing about this common, yet extraordinarily complex, phenomenon. Moreover, medical schools did not spend much time covering the topic of pain. Over the past three decades, health psychologists have made considerable progress in filling in the gaps. In this chapter, we discuss the components of pain—the ways in which it is experienced, how it is measured, and the biological, psychological, and social factors that influence the experience of pain. Since many instances of pain begin with physical injury or a disruption to the normal functioning of human systems, we will explore technical details about the biology of pain that often initiate its full biopsychosocial health experience. And we will take a look at how pain is treated within medicine and in the latest multidimensional interventions introduced by health psychology.

**What Is Pain?**

Few topics in health psychology are as elusive as pain. Pain is obviously a physical sensation. Yet the pain of losing a loved one or ending a long-term relationship, which is more psychological than physical in nature, often feels just as real. And pain is highly subjective (and sometimes not altogether unpleasant). After a hard workout on the track, for example, I often feel fatigue that is definitely uncomfortable, yet somehow also warm and pleasant.

This chapter focuses on [**clinical pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term83), which is pain that requires some form of medical treatment. Let’s begin by considering how many of us suffer pain and how often.

**clinical pain**

Pain that requires some form of medical treatment.

**Epidemiology and Components of Pain**

Pain is a major public health problem, affecting more 1.5 billion people worldwide and an estimated 100 million Americans—more than the number affected by heart disease, cancer, and diabetes combined (AAPM, 2013). According to a recent report, pain is a significant public health problem that costs society at least $560–$635 billion annually, an amount equal to about $2000 for every person living in the United States (IOM, 2011). A cross-sectional, Internet-based survey of a nationally representative sample of adults in the United States found that chronic pain is experienced by about one-third of the population. The prevalence of chronic pain was higher for females (34.3 percent) than males (26.7 percent) and increased with age (Johannes and others, 2010). Another study found that nearly 25 percent of people who live in nursing homes have chronic pain (Sengupta, Bercovitz, & Harris-Kojetin, 2010). Pain is the most common reason that people seek medical treatment and is so pervasive that now it is considered a fifth vital sign, along with blood pressure, pulse, temperature, and respiration. No other class of health problems even approaches this level of impact.

Pain clearly illustrates the biopsychosocial model, which distinguishes among the biological mechanisms by which the body processes painful stimuli; the subjective, emotional experience of pain; and the social and behavioral factors that help shape our response to pain. For Shun Fujimoto, the gymnast highlighted at the start of this chapter, the biological mechanisms of his injury sparked an interplay of his emotions with his social perspective, based on principles of Japan’s collectivist culture, which resulted in a triumphant performance despite the physical pain of a broken kneecap.

**Components of Pain**

**Pain obviously has a strong physical component, as the face of this soccer player clearly reveals. It also has emotional and psychological components—his pain would probably be more bearable if his injury involved a kick that won the game for his team.**

[**imagebroker.net**](http://imagebroker.net/)/SuperStock

**Significance and Types of Pain**

Despite the discomfort and stress that it can cause, pain is essential to our survival. It can be bothersome, but it is that bothersome nature that makes it highly adaptive. Pain sounds a warning that something is wrong and alerts you to try to prevent further physical damage. In fact, if you did *not* feel pain, it would be hazardous to your health.

**Types of Pain**

In general, researchers divide pain into three broad categories: acute, recurrent, and chronic. [**Acute pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term6) is sharp, stinging pain that is usually localized in an injured area of the body. It can last from a few seconds to several months and generally subsides as normal healing occurs. Examples include burns and fractures. [**Recurrent pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term286) involves intermittent periods of discomfort that recur for more than three months (Gatchel & Maddrey, 2004). Periodic migraines and noncardiac chest pain, which is experienced by nearly 10 percent of school-age children (Veeram Reddy & Singh 2010; Lee and others, 2013) fall into this category.

**acute pain**

Sharp, stinging pain that is short-lived and usually related to tissue damage.

**recurrent pain**

Involves episodes of discomfort interspersed with periods in which the individual is relatively pain-free, that recur for more than three months.

[**Chronic pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term80), which is traditionally defined as pain that lasts six months or longer—long past the normal healing period—may be continuous or intermittent, moderate or severe, and felt in just about any of the body’s tissues (Turk & Okifuji, 2002). Chronic pain lowers overall quality of life and increases vulnerability to infection, and thus to a host of diseases. Chronic pain also can take a devastating psychological toll, triggering lowered self-esteem, insomnia, anger, hopelessness, depression, personality disorders, and many other signs of distress.

**chronic pain**

Dull, burning pain that is long-lasting.

**Painful Struggle**

**Ashlyn Blocker’s mother, shown here with Ashlyn (right) and her sister, struggles daily with Ashlyn’s inability to sense pain, hot, and cold. “Pain’s there for a reason. It lets your body know something’s wrong and it needs to be fixed. I’d give anything for her to feel pain” (quoted in Bynum, 2004).**

AP Photo/Stephen Morton

**Hyperalgesia**

Those with chronic pain may become even more sensitive to pain, a condition known as [**hyperalgesia**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term176). Hyperalgesia also happens during sickness or injury and and may facilitate recovery by stimulating recuperative behaviors. For example, the flu makes you weak and achy and drives you back to bed, which is exactly where you need to be to recover.

**hyperalgesia**

A condition in which a chronic pain sufferer becomes more sensitive to pain over time.

Hundreds of experiments over more than 100 years have confirmed that hyperalgesia often occurs as a normal adaptation during sickness. Most kinds of internal pain are accompanied by increased sensitivity in nearby tissues. In the 1890s, physiologists Henry Head and Mames MacKensie proposed that signals from diseased parts of the body set up an “irritable focus” in the central nervous system that creates areas of enhanced pain sensitivity in nearby, otherwise healthy, body parts, suggesting that the signals originate in the central nervous system. In *opioid-induced hyperalgesia*, long-term use of opioids leads to an increasing sensitivity to noxious stimuli, even to the point at which common sensory stimuli become painful (Angst & Clark, 2006). Researchers believe this sensitization occurs because of a long-lasting enhancement of neural impulses (*long-term potentiation*) among cells in the spinal cord that are involved in relaying pain messages to the brain (Drdla and others, 2009).

**Measuring Pain**

Because of its multidimensional and subjective nature, pain is not easily measured. Nevertheless, clinicians and researchers have developed a number of ways to assess pain: *physical measures, behavioral measures*, and *self-report measures*.

**Physical Measures**

There are no objective measures of pain, only subjective ones. It’s not that clinicians and researchers haven’t tried to find them. In fact, the problem of measuring pain set the stage for the very earliest *psychophysical studies* in the new field of psychology. These studies highlight the familiar *mind–body problem*: How does conscious awareness derive from, and affect, the physical sensations of the body?

One way to assess pain is to measure the specific physiological changes that accompany pain. For example, *electromyography* (*EMG*) assesses the amount of muscle tension experienced by patients suffering from headaches or lower back pain. Researchers have also recorded changes in heart rate, breathing rate, blood pressure, skin temperature, and skin conductance—all indicators of the *autonomic arousal* that may accompany pain. But these measures have not demonstrated any consistent differences between those with and those without a specific type of pain. This failure may well be because pain is only one of many factors that contribute to autonomic changes; others include diet, attention, activity level, stress, and the presence of illness.

**Behavioral Measures**

Another assessment technique measures signs of pain in a patient’s behavior. Relatives and friends of the patient or health care professionals can do this in structured clinical sessions. Wilbert Fordyce (1982), a pioneer in pain research, developed a pain behavior-training program in which an observer is asked to monitor 5 to 10 behaviors—the amount of time the patient spends in bed and the number of requests for painkillers, for example—that frequently signal the onset of pain.

In clinical settings, nurses and other health professionals are trained to observe patients’ pain behaviors systematically during routine care procedures. One frequently used pain inventory is the *Pain Behavior Scale*, which consists of a series of target behaviors, including verbal complaints, facial grimaces, awkward postures, and mobility (Feuerstein & Beattie, 1995). Observers rate the occurrence of each target behavior on a three-point scale: “frequent,” “occasional,” and “none.”

More recently, the *Pain Response Preference Questionnaire* (*PRPQ*) has been used to assess the degree to which a range of potential pain-related responses are desired from a spouse or partner (McWilliams and others, 2009). The PRPQ includes items that fall into four separate scales: *solicitude* (“treat me with extra care and concern”; “ask me about my pain”); *management*(“encourage me to rest”; “tell me to take it easy”); *encouragement* (“tell me I can do things despite pain”; “tell me to keep active”); and *suppression* (“help me ignore the pain”; “act like I’m not in pain”) (McWilliams and others, 2012).

With children, there is growing consensus that measuring emotional responses to pain is a core outcome measure (McGrath and others, 2008). Fear in children is common and can increase the perception of pain (Rhudy & Meagher, 2003). Needle fears are particularly prevalent. Several scales have been developed to capture the dimensions of pain and fear in children, including the *Children’s Anxiety and Pain Scales* (*CAPS*), and the *Children’s Fear Scale* (*CFS*) (McMurtry and others, 2011).

**Self-Report Measures**

The simplest way to measure pain is to have patients fill out a questionnaire, assigning a numerical value to their discomfort in a given situation. *Pain-rating scales* also may be based on verbal reporting, in which people choose from a list the word that most accurately describes the pain. Rating scales are so easy to use that they are the preferred means of assessing pain in young children (see [**Figure 14.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F14-1)). The numerical scales also are used in verbal reports.

**Figure 14.1: The Wong-Baker FACES® Pain Rating Scale**

**The Wong-Baker FACES® Pain Rating Scale is a widely used and preferred self-assessment tool for children ages 3 and above, adults and seniors. It is easy to administer and shows a strong relationship with numerical self-rating scales. Instructions are available from**[**www.wongbakerfaces.org**](http://www.wongbakerfaces.org/)**.**

Some years ago, pain research pioneer Ronald Melzack developed a system for categorizing pain along three dimensions (Melzack & Torgerson, 1971). The first dimension, *sensory quality*, highlighted the tremendous variations that occur in the sensation of pain. The second dimension, *affective quality*, focuses on the many different emotional reactions that pain can trigger. The final dimension is *evaluative quality*, which refers to the sufferer’s judgment of the severity of the pain, as well as its meaning or significance. From this multidimensional model of pain, Melzack derived the McGill Pain Questionnaire (MPQ), which has become the most widely used pain inventory today ([**Figure 14.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F14-2)).

**Figure 14.2: The McGill Pain Questionnaire**

**The Physiology of Pain**

You slip on an icy sidewalk and fall hard on your elbow. In the instant before you feel the pain, a cascade of biochemical and electrical reactions occurs. The processing of all sensory information begins when *sensory receptors* in your skin convert a physical stimulus into neural impulses. The pressure of striking the ground activates the receptors in your elbow, which stimulates the peripheral nervous system to relay the message to your brain. Only when the brain registers and interprets this neural input is pain experienced. What happens in between the stimulation of sensory receptors and the brain’s interpretation has been the subject of a great deal of exciting research.

**Pain Pathways**

Pain is not triggered by only one type of stimulus—nor does it have a single type of receptor. Tissue injury isn’t the only thing that will produce pain. The corneas of your eyes, for instance, are exquisitely sensitive. Almost any stimulus, from a speck of dust to the application of a bit too much pressure when inserting a contact lens, will be experienced as pain, even though the cornea suffers no damage. All of these stimuli trigger the pain response in the brain through different receptors.

**Pain Receptors**

For more than a century, researchers have been on a quest to find the definitive sensory receptors for pain. Among the candidates are [**free nerve endings**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term145), which are found throughout the body: in the skin, muscles (cramps), internal organs of the viscera (stomachaches), membranes that surround joints and bones (arthritic pain), and even the pulp of teeth (toothaches).

**free nerve endings**

Sensory receptors found throughout the body that respond to temperature, pressure, and painful stimuli.

Free nerve endings are simple, yet they are poorly understood. We know that they respond primarily to temperature change and pressure, and also to certain chemicals secreted in damaged tissues. However they are aroused, it appears that free nerve endings begin a process that ends when the brain registers and interprets the sensation as pain. For this reason, researchers refer to free nerve endings that are activated by *noxious* (painful) stimuli as [**nociceptors**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term235).

**nociceptor**

A specialized neuron that responds to painful stimuli.

**Fast and Slow Fibers**

The pain process begins when neural signals from free nerve endings are routed to the central nervous system via *fast nerve fibers* and *slow nerve fibers* [**Fast nerve fibers**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term140) are relatively large, myelinated neurons that conduct neural impulses at about 15 to 30 meters per second. [**Slow nerve fibers**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term311) are smaller, unmyelinated fibers that conduct electrical impulses at about 0.5 to 2 meters per second.

**fast nerve fibers**

Large, myelinated nerve fibers that transmit sharp, stinging pain.

**slow nerve fibers**

Small, unmyelinated nerve fibers that carry dull, aching pain.

Fast and slow fibers are the messengers for two pain systems in the brain. The *fast pain system*(involving the fast nerve fibers) appears to serve only the skin and mucous membranes; the *slow pain system* (involving the slow nerve fibers) serves all body tissues except the brain itself, which does not experience pain. The fast pain system carries pain that is perceived as stinging and localized in one area, whereas slow nerve fibers signal dull, aching pain that may be generalized throughout the body.

Strong mechanical pressure or extreme temperatures normally stimulate fast nerve fibers, whereas slow nerve fibers are typically activated by chemical changes in damaged tissues. These chemical changes make both types of nerves more responsive to further stimulation. This is why even the lightest touch on an injured area of skin can be extremely painful.

To get a feeling for the practical differences in the speed of the two pain systems, consider that slow fibers relaying a painful message from your foot could take as long as 2 seconds to reach the brain. In contrast, the faster fibers relay their messages in a fraction of a second. This explains a familiar experience. Sticking your toe in unbearably hot bath water will stimulate the fast pain fibers, producing an immediate sharp pain. The message is carried from the skin to the spinal cord, where it is passed via a single interneuron to motor neurons that cause you to jerk your toe out of the water. But this highly adaptive *spinal reflex* is completed well before you experience the deeper, dull pain that really hurts.

After leaving the skin, the sensory fibers of the fast and slow pain systems group together as nerves to form *sensory tracts* that funnel information up the spinal cord to the brain ([**Figure 14.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F14-3)). Both types of pain fibers enter through the back of the spinal cord, where they synapse with neurons in the [**substantia gelatinosa**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term328). In the spinal cord, the pain fibers link up with sensory nerves that carry touch, pressure, and limb movement sensations to the thalamus, the brain’s sensory switchboard.

**Figure 14.3: Pain Pathways**

**The thinner black line illustrates the pathway for fast, acute pain, which originates with fast nerve fibers in the spinal cord and projects to the somatosensory cortex. The thicker blue line illustrates the pathway for slow, chronic pain, which begins with slow nerve fibers in the spinal cord.**

**substantia gelatinosa**

The dorsal region of the spinal cord where both fast and slow pain fibers synapse with sensory nerves on their way to the brain.

On its way to the thalamus, the fast pain pathway triggers neural activity in the reticular formation, which is the brain’s mechanism for arousing the cortex in response to important messages and for reducing our awareness of unimportant stimuli. Once in the thalamus, incoming messages are routed to the *somatosensory area* of the cerebral cortex, the area that receives input from all the skin senses.

The amount of somatosensory cortex allotted to various regions of the body determines our sensitivity in that region. For example, even though your face has a much smaller surface area than your back, it has much more somatosensory cortex dedicated to it, making it capable of sensing weaker touch stimuli than your back. The internal organs of the body are not mapped in the cortex in the same way as the skin, making it difficult to pinpoint pain from the body’s interior. In fact, visceral (internal) pain often becomes [**referred pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term287), in that it feels as though it originates on the surface of the body rather than in the organ that produced the pain. So reliable is this phenomenon that referred pain is often used to diagnose serious medical conditions. A patient complaining of pain in the shoulder, for example, is often scheduled for an electrocardiogram (EKG) stress test because that type of pain often accompanies advanced heart disease.

**referred pain**

Pain manifested in an area of the body that is sensitive to pain, but caused by disease or injury in an area of the body that has few pain receptors.

The slow pain system follows roughly the same pathway as the fast system up the spinal cord to the brainstem (see [**Figure 14.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F14-3)). In the brainstem, slow pain messages are reprocessed; from there, they travel to the hypothalamus, the rear portion of the thalamus, and then to the amygdala of the limbic system.

**The Neurochemistry of Pain**

Like all neurons, those that carry pain messages depend on several types of chemical neurotransmitters to relay information across synapses. One neurotransmitter, called [**substance P**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term327), with another neurotransmitter, called *glutamate*, continuously stimulates nerve endings at the site of an injury and within your spinal cord, increasing pain messages.

**substance P**

A neurotransmitter secreted by pain fibers in the spinal cord that stimulates the transmission cells to send pain signals to the brain.

A third group of neurotransmitters called [**enkephalins**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term131) (the smallest member of the brain’s natural opiates, the endorphins) bind to receptors in the brain to deaden pain sensations. Through their synapses with slow fibers, enkephalin-containing neurons are believed to regulate how much substance P is released. If substance P is not released, or released in small quantities, an incoming pain message may be reduced or completely blocked.

**enkephalins**

Endogenous (naturally occurring) opioids found in nerve endings of cells in the brain and spinal cord that bind to opioid receptors.

The search for what activates enkephalin neurons has led researchers to the [**periacqueductal gray (PAG)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term253) area of the midbrain. When this area is stimulated, pain is reduced almost immediately, with the *analgesia* (pain relief) continuing even after stimulation is discontinued (Goffaux and others, 2007). The PAG is also believed to be the primary site at which drugs such as morphine exert their analgesic effects. Sensory neurons in the PAG project into the medulla, a lower brain structure also involved in the perception of pain (Fairhurst and others, 2007).

**periacqueductal gray (PAG)**

A region of the midbrain that plays an important role in the perception of pain; electrical stimulation in this region activates a descending neural pathway that produces analgesia by “closing the pain gate.”

Recent functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) studies have implicated another brain region, the dorsal [**anterior cingulate cortex (ACC)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term26), as being specifically involved in the cognitive modulation of pain (Chapin and others, 2013). The ACC is known to be involved in other areas of self-regulation as well (Anderson, 2013). Interestingly, chronic pain patients are often deficient in self-regulatory skills, such as self-control (Nes, Roach, & Segerstrom, 2009).

**anterior cingulate cortex (ACC)**

The front part of the cingulate cortex, which resembles a collar in surrounding the corpus callosum, and plays a role in pain processing and many self-regulating functions.

Thus, it appears that the brain is capable of “turning off” pain through a *descending neural pathway*—the ACC to the PAG down to neurons in the medulla and then to the substantia gelatinosa of the spinal cord. This descending pain control pathway uses the neurotransmitter *serotonin* to activate enkephalin-containing spinal neurons, which, in turn, inhibit pain information coming from substance P fibers ([**Figure 14.4**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F14-4)).

**Figure 14.4: The Pain-Inhibiting System**

**Neural activity resulting from stimulation of the midbrain’s periaqueductal gray (PAG) activates inhibitory neurons in the spinal cord. These in turn act directly on incoming slow nerve fibers to block pain signals from being relayed to the brain. The slow nerve fibers contain substance P and glutamate. When the nerve fibers’ release of substance P is inhibited, as it is here, the ascending pain signal is aborted (i.e., prevented from traveling to the brain).**

But what turns on the pain-inhibiting cells in the PAG? While still a graduate student, Candace Pert, a pioneer in the field of psychoneuroimmunology, discovered that neural chemicals called [**endogenous opiate peptides**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term130) function as information messengers that affect the mind, emotions, immune system, and other body systems simultaneously. One of the peptides that she identified was *endorphin*, a natural opioid powerful enough to produce pain relief comparable to that of morphine and other opiates (Julien, Advokat, & Comaty, 2011). It turns out that the PAG has numerous opiate/endorphin receptors.

**endogenous opiate peptides**

Opiatelike substances naturally produced by the body.

Research is ongoing, but a variety of events have been demonstrated to increase the level of endorphins. One is stress. [**Stress-induced analgesia (SIA)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term320) refers to the pain relief that results from the body’s production of endorphins in response to stress. In one study, rats exposed to extremely loud noises (the stressor) became relatively insensitive to pain for a minute or two afterward, as indicated by their lack of response to a painful stimulus (Helmstetter & Bellgowan, 1994). However, rats injected with an endorphin-blocking drug called [**naloxone**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term227) before the noise did not show the SIA, showing clearly that the pain-relieving effect depends on endorphins.

**stress-induced analgesia (SIA)**

A stress-related increase in tolerance to pain, presumably mediated by the body’s endorphin system.

**naloxone**

An opioid antagonist that binds to opioid receptors in the body to block the effects of natural opiates and painkillers.

In addition to endorphins, proteins produced by the immune system called *proinflammatory cytokines* are involved in the experience of pain (Watkins and others, 2007). Recall from [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03)that cytokines trigger a range of sickness responses, including fatigue and increased sensitivity to pain. Cytokines may also be involved in the development of chronic pain by increasing the sensitivity of structures in the spinal cord that affect the message ascending pain pathways transmit to the brain.

Similar neurochemical effects may account for the *placebo effect* (see [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05)) in pain relief. Many research studies have demonstrated that one-quarter to one-third of people suffering pain receive significant relief simply by taking a placebo. A classic field study of dental pain (Levine and others, 1978) was the first to suggest that endorphins might mediate SIA and thus produce the placebo effect. Three hours after having a major tooth pulled (ouch!), one-half of a group of dental patients were given a placebo, which they referred to as a “painkiller.” The remaining subjects received an injection of naloxone. One hour later, subjects who had received the placebo were injected with naloxone, and those who had received naloxone were injected with the placebo. After each injection, the participants were asked to indicate on a standard pain-rating scale the degree of pain that they were experiencing.

Under the “influence” of the placebo painkiller, patients reported some relief from their pain, which provides additional support for the validity of the placebo effect. Under the influence of naloxone, patients reported feeling increased pain compared to that reported in the placebo condition, indicating that the placebo effect is at least partly the result of the body mustering its own mechanisms of pain relief. More recent research shows that injections of a drug that blocks cholecystokinin, a hormone that inhibits the action of endorphins, enhance the placebo effect in pain relief (Sullivan Paice, & Beneditti, 2004). Other studies using fMRI have found that when patients expect to feel reduced pain after taking a placebo, their brains also display decreased activity in pain-processing regions (Wager and others, 2004). As we’ll see later in the chapter, some other nonmedical techniques for producing analgesia may also work because they trigger the release of endorphins.

**Genes and Pain**

Chronic pain conditions, as well as sensitivity to pain, have been shown to have a considerable genetic component (Kato and others, 2006). Several rare but serious pain disorders are caused by mutations in a gene called SCN9A, which encodes instructions for sodium channels that help nerve cells that relay painful sensations in the body’s tissues to the central nervous system. In two of the disorders, people have faulty alleles of the gene and suffer intense pain because their sodium channels either open too easily or can’t close. In another disorder, which leaves people completely unable to feel pain, SCN9A produces a protein that cannot function (Thompson and others, 2010).

Studies of twins have reported heritability of about 50 percent for different pain traits, including variation in how people respond to painful stimuli such as skin heating (Norbury and others, 2007). These studies suggest that genes may exert their influence in at least two ways: by mediating anxiety and depression—both of which have been linked to individual variation in the prevalence and experience of pain—and by affecting individual sensitivity to painful stimuli (Robinson and others, 2013). One study of patients suffering from *fibromyalgia* (*FM*), a chronic form of generalized musculoskeletal pain, found that those with one variation of the COMT gene displayed the most severe psychological and functional impact scores of FM pain (Desmeules and others, 2012). COMT, or catechol-o-methyl-transferase, is one of several enzymes involved in the metabolism of catecholamine neurotransmitters (dopamine, epinephrine, and norepinephrine). The results of other studies suggest that COMT genetic variations influence the severity of pain reports, as well as the length of physical and psychological recovery from traumatic events such as car accidents that cause the musculoskeletal pain associated with whiplash (McLean and others, 2011).

**Gate Control Theory**

In the past, several theories have been proposed to explain pain perception. Most, however, fell short in accounting for all aspects of pain—biological, psychological, and social. In 1965, Ronald Melzack and Peter Wall outlined a [**gate control theory (GCT)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term148) that overcame some of the shortcomings of earlier theories. Although the theory has received its share of criticism, it was the impetus for the biopsychosocial model of pain, which is the dominant theory of pain today (Gatchel and others, 2007).

**gate control theory (GCT)**

The idea that there is a neural “gate” in the spinal cord that regulates the experience of pain.

The GCT first introduced the idea that the pain experience is not the result of a straight-through sensory channel that begins with the stimulation of a skin receptor and ends with the brain’s perception of pain. Rather, as we have seen, incoming sensations that *potentially* signal pain are modulated in the spinal cord as they are conducted to the brain. They are also subject to modification under the influence of descending pathways from the brain.

The theory proposed the existence of neural structures in the spinal cord and brainstem that function like a gate (see [**Figure 14.5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F14-5)), swinging open to increase the flow of transmission from nerve fibers or swinging shut to decrease the flow (Melzack & Wall, 1965). With the gate open, signals arriving in the spinal cord stimulate sensory neurons called *transmission cells*, which, in turn, relay the signals upward to reach the brain and trigger pain. With the gate closed, signals are blocked from reaching the brain, and no pain is felt.

**Figure 14.5: The Gate Control Theory of Pain**

**In Melzack and Wall’s gate control theory, excitatory signals (pluses) tend to open the gate; inhibitory signals (minuses) tend to close the gate. The drawing on the far left—with a net of +9 excitatory signals—illustrates the conditions that might exist when the pain gate remains open and strong pain is felt. The drawing to the right—with a net of only +1—illustrates the conditions that might exist when the pain gate is closed as a result of strong inhibitory stimulation from the brain and peripheral nerve fibers. In both situations, messages from fast pain fibers tend to close the gate, and messages from slow pain fibers tend to open it.**

**Source:** Melzack, R., & Wall, P.D. (1988). *The challenge of pain*. New York: Basic Books.

Melzack and Wall (1988) suggested that the mechanism for opening and closing the gate is found in the substantia gelatinosa (the “gatekeeper”) of the spinal cord, where both small and large pain fibers have synapses (see [**Figure 14.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F14-3)). Activity in the fast pain fiber system tends to close the gate, whereas activity in the slow pain fiber system tends to force the gate open.

To account for the influence of thoughts and feelings on the perception of pain, Melzack and Wall also described a *central control mechanism* by which signals from the brain can shut the gate. Through this mechanism, anxiety or fear may amplify the experience of pain, whereas the distraction of other activities, such as athletic competition, can dampen the experience of pain.

Melzack now proposes that a widely distributed network of brain neurons, which ultimately determine a person’s perceptual experience, further processes messages reaching the brain. This network of cells, called the *neuromatrix*, also seems to operate even in the absence of sensory input, placing still greater emphasis on the role of the brain in our experience of pain (as in the phantom limb sensation described in the Diversity and Healthy Living Box), as well as in reducing pain.

**Factors That Influence the Experience of Pain**

The experience of pain is a complex, multidimensional phenomenon involving not only physical events but also psychological factors and social learning (Reimann and others, 2010). All pain patients are unique individuals who are acting (and reacting) members of social groups. In this section, we take a look at how such factors influence the experience of pain.

**Age**

Certain pains tend to increase in frequency with age, especially headaches, facial pain, and abdominal pain. In a survey of adults aged 25 to 74, those over 56 were twice as likely as the 25- to 45-year-olds to have experienced two or more pain episodes during the previous month and three times as likely to have had five or more episodes (Mechanic & Angel, 1987). But before we conclude that aging is inevitably accompanied by a world of pain, we would do well to ask ourselves whether other factors, such as overall health, differences in socialization, and coping resources might account for age-related differences in pain experiences. As we have seen, it is very easy for researchers examining differences between groups of people (such as age cohorts) to overlook such factors. If we look at the study by David Mechanic and Ronald Angel more closely, we find that adults over age 65 who reported a greater sense of overall well-being complained less about pain than those in other age groups. When questioned, those in the oldest age group were more likely to attribute physical symptoms to normal age-related changes. This finding supports the idea that pain perceptions are influenced by social comparisons with people in other reference groups. For example, adults who reported that their parents had experienced frequent severe pain were themselves more likely to report substantial back, muscle, and joint pain. Older people are also generally more vigilant than young people in monitoring their health status, and they see themselves as more vulnerable (Skevington, 1995). This may help explain why there is a progressive increase in reports of pain and a decrease in tolerance to experimentally induced pain as individuals grow older.

**Diversity and Healthy Living: Phantom Limb Pain**

Sometimes people experience pain that has no apparent physical cause. One example is [**phantom limb pain**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term255), which is the experience of pain in an amputated body part. Most amputees experience some sort of phantom sensations, but between 65 and 85 percent actually report severe phantom pain (Williams, 1996). The pain may be occasional or continuous and is usually described as “cramping,” “shooting,” “burning,” or “crushing.”

**phantom limb pain**

Pain following amputation of a limb; false pain sensations that appear to originate in the missing limb.

Phantom pain develops most often in patients who experienced pain in the limb prior to amputation. In addition, phantom pain often resembles the type of pain that was present before the amputation. Ronald Melzack (1993) describes a patient who continued to report a painful sensation from a splinter in his hand long after he had lost the hand in an industrial accident. Phantom limb sensations are incredibly “real” in their sensory qualities and precise location in space—so real that an amputee may try to step off the bed onto a phantom foot. Even minor sensations, such as a wedding ring on a phantom finger, are felt. Parkinson’s patients may even continue to perceive “tremors” like those that occurred prior to amputation.

**The Search for a Cause**

While the underlying cause remains a mystery, recent studies have shed light on a possible mechanism in phantom limb pain—evidence that neurons in the brain rewire themselves to seek input from other sources after a limb is amputated. A team of researchers led by Michael Merzenich amputated the middle fingers from a group of adult owl monkeys. After the monkeys recovered, the researchers electrically stimulated the remaining fingers on each monkey’s paw while recording electrical activity from the somatosensory area of the monkeys’ brains. Remarkably, Merzenich found that cortical neurons that originally fired in response to stimulation of the amputated fingers responded every time he touched the remaining fingers of the monkeys’ paws. The neurons had not responded to stimulation of these fingers before the amputation (cited in Ranadive, 1997).

Vilayanur Ramachandran conducted experiments on people who had lost a finger or a hand (Ramachandran & Rogers-Ramachandran, 2000). Blindfolding his patients, Ramachandran applied pressure to different parts of their bodies and discovered that several subjects reported phantom hand sensations as areas of their face were touched. Ramachandran suggested that his findings made sense because the cortical areas that once served the missing finger or hand are adjacent to those that serve the face. Perhaps neurons in these adjacent areas invade those areas that are left fallow because sensations are no longer received from the missing limb.

**Treatment**

Phantom limb pain is a condition that often is extremely resistant to conventional pain therapies. Among the treatments that have been tried, with varying degrees of success, are the fitting of prosthetic limbs, ultrasound, transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS) (see [**p. 545**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-3-41)), anti-inflammatory and anticonvulsant drugs, and nerve blocks such as injections of local anesthetics into trigger points (Williams, 1996).

More recently, researchers have found that blocking glutamate receptors may prevent abandoned cortical neurons, which are no longer communicating with a missing limb, from forming new synapses with neurons linked to other parts of the body. When the blockage to the spinal cord subsides, the original cortical connections and functions remain intact. Research testing whether blocking glutamate receptors also will prevent neural reorganization in those with amputated limbs (thereby reducing phantom limb pain) is presently underway.

In the meantime, Ramachandran has devised a simpler therapy—a mirror box, which allows a person to “see” the phantom limb. For example, when James Peacock, a security guard whose right arm was amputated, slips his intact left arm into the box, mirrors make it appear as if his missing right arm is there as well. The box has provided the only relief Peacock knows from wrenching spasms in his phantom hand. “When I move my left hand,” he says, “I can feel it moving my phantom hand” (quoted in Brownlee, 1995, p. 76).

**Gender**

Gender differences in health behavior are already apparent in adolescence, with boys being less likely than girls to seek medical care. As adults, women are more likely to report medical symptoms to a doctor, to experience more frequent episodes of pain, and to report lower pain thresholds and less tolerance to painful stimuli than are men (Wickelgren, 2009; Gatchel & Maddrey, 2004; Muellersdorf & Soederback, 2000).

Gender differences extend to the types of pain most commonly reported by women and men (Henderson, Gandevia, & Macefield, 2008). Women seem to suffer more than men from migraines and tension headaches, as well as from pelvic pain, facial pain, and lower back pain. Gender differences are also apparent in how the medical community responds to certain pain syndromes. Research studies reveal that women consistently receive 5 to 10 percent more prescription drugs for common complaints than men. One study found that male physicians prescribed higher doses of painkillers to males than to females, while female physicians prescribed higher doses to females (Weisse and others, 2001).

A number of researchers believe that gender differences reflect stereotyped medical views about treating men and women rather than specific symptoms (Skevington, 1995). The essential similarity of women and men is made clear in studies of gender differences in the experience of pain. Although some researchers have reported that females have a lower pain tolerance than males (Woodrow and others, 1972), others have found only trivial differences (Elton, Stanley, & Burrows, 1983). Moreover, the conclusions of many of these early studies may be the result of intervening social factors of the time. This line of reasoning was explored in a study in which subjects immersed a hand and forearm in icy water for several minutes (Levine & DeSimone, 1991). The results showed that women reported more pain than men did. More interesting was the fact that men reported significantly lower pain ratings to a female experimenter than to a male experimenter. However, there was no difference in the female subjects’ self-reports of pain to experimenters of either sex. These and other researchers have suggested that gender differences reflect traditional sex roles, with men responding to female experimenters with a more stoic “macho” image (Fillingim, 2000). Consistent with this view, men who identify more strongly with traditional gender roles are less likely than others of either gender to admit feeling pain (Pool and others, 2007).

**Sociocultural Factors**

Why would two patients undergoing the same surgical procedure report vastly different levels of postoperative pain? The answer is that pain is a variable personal experience not closely linked to tissue damage. In this section, we examine social and cultural factors that are the foundation of how pain is conceptualized and experienced.

**Socioeconomic Status and Stress**

As we have seen, people at lower socioeconomic levels have greater morbidity and mortality across many diseases when compared with those at higher SES levels (Gallo and others, 2005). They also experience more stressful life events (Hatch & Dohrenwend, 2007), live in environments that expose them to more chronic stressors (Gee & Payne-Sturges, 2004), and have fewer psychosocial resources for managing stressful experiences (Gallo & Matthews, 2003). Lower SES is also associated with more frequent reports of musculoskeletal pain, pain intensity, and physical disability (Jablonska, Soares, & Sundin, 2006).

The challenges associated with lower SES also makes those who suffer chronic pain more vulnerable to the harmful effects of stress on health and physical functioning. A recent study of 250 women with osteoarthritis, fibromyalgia, or both reported that participants with greater levels of economic hardship reported greater pain severity in response to daily financial worries than their counterparts with little or no economic hardship (Rios & Zautra, 2011). Interestingly, the effect of day-to-day financial worry was moderated by employment. Having a job, even a part-time position, was a psychological resource that protected against the adverse effects of day-to-day financial worries on pain.

**Culture and Ethnicity**

Cultural and ethnic groups differ greatly in their response to pain, suggesting that different groups establish their own norms for both the degree to which suffering should be expressed openly and the form that pain behaviors should take (Cleland, Palmer, & Venzke, 2005).

It is important to note that cultural differences in pain reactions are probably related to differences in *pain tolerance*, not to differences in *pain threshold*. Pain threshold, defined as the minimum intensity of a noxious stimulus that is perceived as pain, tends to be affected more strongly by physiological factors, whereas pain tolerance is more strongly influenced by psychological factors, such as expectations about an upcoming experience or the meaning attached to a certain type of pain.

Childbirth provides a vivid example of cultural variation in the experience of pain. Among Yap women in the South Pacific, childbirth is treated as a run-of-the-mill activity that brings little pain. Expectant mothers continue their daily activities almost to the point at which labor pains begin, when they stop briefly to deliver their child and shortly thereafter resume their normal schedule of activities. In sharp contrast to this matter-of-fact approach is the experience of many women in traditional Hispanic cultures, where childbirth is viewed as a cause for worry. Even the Spanish word for labor, *dolor*, means sorrow or pain. As expected, researchers have found a significantly higher incidence of painful labor and delivery complications among Latinas than among Yap women.

However, as with age and gender differences, we should be cautious in interpreting cultural variations in reported pain. One reason is that cross-cultural studies often are criticized for lacking linguistic and semantic equivalence. For example, while English has at least four basic words to describe pain—*ache, sore, hurt*, and *pain*—the Japanese have three words for pain, and the Thais have only two, making it difficult to equate subjective pain reports across groups.

Moreover, studies of *within-group variation* have been far less popular than studies of *between-group variation*. That is, researchers are frequently victims of faulty reasoning that leads them to focus on the relatively few ways in which certain groups differ rather than on the greater number of ways in which they are the same.

A final reason for being cautious in interpreting the results of cultural pain studies is that cross-cultural studies are correlational in design, making it difficult to rule out socioeconomic pressures, social support, coping resources, and other underlying factors that may also be contributing to the differences.

**Personality and Mood State**

Researchers have used a variety of tests, especially the Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI), to determine whether there is such a thing as a *pain-prone personality*. The MMPI contains 10 clinical scales, and acute and chronic pain patients often show elevated scores on two of them: hysteria (the tendency to exaggerate symptoms and behave emotionally) and hypochondriasis (the tendency to be overly concerned about health and over-report symptoms).

**Psychosocial Influences on Pain**

**The experience of pain is shaped by the meanings that we attach to events. In some cultures and religions, tattooing and seemingly excruciating body piercing are perceived as benign and bring great honor. In many Western cultures today, tattooing, body piercing, and “branding” are not only acceptable behaviors but also are desirable in certain age and social groups**

Digital Vision/Thinkstock

Research also demonstrates that mood disturbances are linked with the experience of pain (Beesdo and others, 2010; Lee & Tsang, 2009). People who are anxious, worried, fearful, depressed, and negative in outlook report more pain (Leeuw and others, 2007). In fact, depression is more prevalent among lower back pain patients than among the general population (Williams and others, 2006) and among children coping with certain types of pain (Lee and others, 2013). However, these results could simply be reflecting the challenges of dealing with pain. Similarly, people who are experiencing pain are more likely to report anxiety and/or depression, with those reporting the highest levels of these emotions also reporting the highest levels of pain (Mok & Lee, 2008).

Because the research linking depression, anxiety, and pain is correlational in nature, it is impossible to conclude that there is a causal relationship between mood state and pain, or if there is, whether depression causes chronic pain or chronic pain causes depression. One study found that patients undergoing dialysis who initially reported symptoms of depression were more likely to develop severe pain during the 2½ year follow-up period (Yamamoto and others, 2010).

Some researchers believe that individual differences in how patients cope with serious health problems are more telling than personality types and that that tailoring treatments to match a patient’s coping style will achieve better, longer-lasting results. Pain researchers have identified three subtypes of pain patients:

* *Dysfunctional patients* report high levels of pain and psychological distress, feel they have little control over their lives, and are extremely inactive.
* *Interpersonally distressed patients* feel they have little social support and that other people in their lives don’t take their pain seriously.
* *Adaptive copers* report significantly lower levels of pain and psychological or social distress than those in the other two groups and continue to function at a high level.

**Social Learning**

Social and cultural factors can influence people’s experience of pain and actually lead to the *social construction* of an illness (Lucire, 2003). But how do they exert their influence? Many health psychologists believe that social learning and social comparison play a critical role in determining future processing of the pain experience, with the family and surrounding culture acting as the earliest models for pain behavior. Observing family members and other people in the reference group helps a person determine what pain behaviors are appropriate in a given situation.

The social environment also shapes an individual’s pain experience by way of operant conditioning. The expression of pain serves an adaptive function by capturing the attention of others and triggering caregiving and helping behaviors (Vervoort and others, 2011, 2012). Pioneering researcher Wilbert Fordyce’s *operant conditioning model of pain* suggests that chronic pain sufferers receive social reinforcement for [**pain behaviors**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term247) from the attention that they receive from family and friends (Butler, 2010). These *secondary gains* can help maintain these pain behaviors (McClelland & McCubbin (2008). In some social and cultural groups, a person who grimaces or moans in response to pain is reinforced for that response by receiving attention from others. In other groups, open expressions of pain are either ignored or received with hostility, and therefore not reinforced.

**pain behaviors**

Actions that are a response to pain, such as taking drugs, grimacing, or taking time off from school or work.

As with many behaviors, how we learn to respond to pain begins in childhood. Children whose parents disregard their pain behavior may grow up more stoic in their approach to pain than children whose parents pay undue attention to every minor ache and pain (Pennebaker, 1982).

**Treating Pain**

The treatment of pain is big business. In 2008, global expenditures on pain-management drugs and devices amounted to $19.1 billion; they are expected to increase to well over $30 billion in 2014 (Global Information Inc., 2010). There are two broad categories of pain treatment: medical interventions and nonmedical interventions, which include cognitive behavior treatments such as hypnosis and biofeedback. Although health care professionals once scoffed at most nonmedical treatments, the proven effectiveness of using psychological techniques with pain patients, as well as evidence that some, such as the placebo effect, work partly by mobilizing the body’s physical system of analgesia, have increasingly led to the realization that there is no sharp dividing line between physical and nonphysical pain treatments.

In this section, we’ll look first at the better-known pharmacological, surgical, and electrical stimulation treatments, then at the cognitive behavior treatments now widely used in pain control.

**Pharmacological Treatments**

For most patients, analgesic drugs are a mainstay in pain control. Analgesics fall into two general classes. The first includes *opioid (centrally acting*) drugs such as morphine. The second category consists of *nonopioid (peripherally acting*) chemicals that produce their pain-relieving and anti-inflammatory effects at the actual site of injured tissue.

**Opioid Analgesics**

Formerly called *narcotics* (from the Greek word *narke*, which means “numbness”), the opioids are *agonists* (excitatory chemicals) that act on specific receptors in the spinal cord and brain to reduce either the intensity of pain messages or the brain’s response to pain messages.

**A 2001 survey of Australian registered nurses found that there was “a clear knowledge deficit” in the management of pain in the elderly. For example, only 4 out of 10 nurses knew that it is unnecessary to avoid giving potent painkillers to frail elderly patients. Nurses who specialized in palliative care showed the greatest knowledge of treating older patients’ pain**.

The most powerful and most widely used opioid for treating severe pain is morphine. After binding to receptors in the PAG, the thalamus, and cells at the back of the spinal cord, morphine produces intense analgesia and indifference to pain, a state of relaxed euphoria, reduced apprehension, and a sense of tranquility. Because of morphine’s powerful effects, regular users predictably develop tolerance so quickly that doctor-prescribed doses of morphine sometimes have to be increased to retain their effectiveness—from clinical doses of 50 to 60 milligrams per day to as high as 500 milligrams per day, over as short a period as 10 days (Julien, Advokat, & Comaty, 2011).

There is one drawback to the powerful effects of morphine, however: Its effectiveness makes it highly addictive. And as we’ve seen, long-term use may eventually lead to increasing sensitivity to painful stimuli when opioids are withdrawn (hyperalgesia). Therefore, many physicians are reluctant to prescribe opioid analgesics and often *undermedicate* pain patients by prescribing doses that are too weak to produce meaningful relief (Reid, Gooberman-Hill, & Hanks, 2008). One solution to the problem of undermedication has been *patient-controlled analgesia*—giving responsibility for administering the pain-killing drugs to the patient. Today, some patients with severe, chronic pain have small morphine pumps implanted near sites of localized pain. Patients can activate the pump and deliver a small pain-relieving dose whenever they need it.

A recent alternative to the use of prescription opioids stems from the finding that many chronic pain patients have lower-than-normal levels of endorphins in their spinal fluid. Clinicians are experimenting with synthetic endorphins to boost these stores. Patients have, for example, reported excellent, long-lasting pain relief after receiving injections of a synthetic form of endorphin called *beta-endorphin*.

**Nonopioid Analgesics**

The nonopioid analgesics include aspirin, acetaminophen, and ibuprofen. Also called [**nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term238), these drugs produce several effects, including pain reduction without sedation, reduction of inflammation, and reduction of body temperature when fever is present.

**nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)**

Aspirin, ibuprofen, acetaminophen, and other analgesic drugs that relieve pain and reduce inflammation at the site of injured tissue.

NSAIDs relieve pain by blocking a chemical chain reaction that is triggered when tissue is injured. Consider sunburn pain. One of the chemicals produced at the site of the burn is called *arachidonic acid*, which the body converts into [**prostaglandin**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term276), the substance responsible for sunburn pain and inflammation. NSAIDs work their magic by blocking production of the enzyme needed to convert arachidonic acid into prostaglandin.

**prostaglandin**

The chemical substance responsible for localized pain and inflammation; prostaglandin also causes free nerve endings to become more and more sensitized as time passes.

**Surgery, Electrical Stimulation, and Physical Therapy**

For centuries, healers have used surgery in their attempts to relieve severe pain. Their reasoning made sense: If pain is a simple *stimulus-response* connection between peripheral pain receptors and the brain, why not simply cut, or lesion, pain fibers so that the messages don’t get through?

Sometimes surgery is helpful. For example, destroying thalamic cells of the slow pain system has been demonstrated to alleviate some deep, burning pain, without altering the sense of touch or the more acute, stinging pain of the fast pain system. More often, however, surgery has unpredictable results, and its effects are short-lived, perhaps because of the nervous system’s remarkable regenerative ability. As a result, some pain patients have endured numerous “hit-or-miss” surgeries that provide only short-term relief. And in some cases, patients actually experience *worse* pain due to the cumulative damage of repeated surgeries. For these reasons, surgery is rarely used to control pain today, and only as a last-ditch effort.

More effective than surgery is [**counterirritation**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term105), which involves stimulating one area of the body to reduce pain in another. For example, spinal stimulation has proven effective in controlling the low back pain of many patients (De Andres & Van Buyten, 2006). In [**transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term346), brief pulses of electricity are applied to nerve endings under the skin near the painful area or where nerve fibers enter the back of the spinal cord, and patients can administer treatment themselves. TENS can produce a feeling of numbness that overcomes the sensation of pain, and it has yielded excellent local pain relief for some chronic pain patients.

**counterirritation**

Analgesia in which one pain (for example, a pulled muscle) is relieved by creating another counteracting sensation (such as rubbing near the site of the injury).

**transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS)**

A counterirritation form of analgesia involving electrically stimulating spinal nerves near a painful area.

For more widespread and severe pain (such as that associated with some advanced cancers), another electrical form of analgesia, called *stimulation-produced analgesia* (*SPA*), involves delivering mild electrical pulses through electrodes that are surgically implanted in the brain and appears to work by stimulating endorphin neurons. Accordingly, SPA electrodes are implanted in brain sites known to be rich in opioid receptors. Once again, patients self-administer treatment, determining when and how much stimulation is needed. Although SPA is expensive and risky, many pain patients report that their pain seems to melt away.

People who are in pain, as well as those who are suffering disability as a result of disease, injury, or surgery, also may be referred to a physical therapist for assistance. *Physical therapists* are rehabilitation professionals who promote optimal health and functional independence through their efforts to identify, correct, or prevent movement dysfunction, physical disability, and pain. Physical therapy often begins in the hospital and continues as long as needed.

**TENS**

**Back pain can be relieved with transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS). Portable TENS machines help relieve the pain of thousands of sufferers. After the person logistically places the pads shown here on either side of the painful area, he or she can hook the small electrical conduit to a belt and continue with daily activities while pulses are delivered to the body.**

Hilary Morgan/Alamy

**Cognitive Behavioral Therapy**

Because no single pain-control technique has proved to be the most effective in relieving chronic pain, many health care providers today use an *eclectic*, or “cafeteria,” approach to helping their patients manage pain. This means that treatment is tailored to each individual case, and that patients are taught several pain-management strategies from which they may choose as needed.

One example of such a program is [**cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term84), an umbrella term for a variety of multidisciplinary interventions aimed at changing people’s experience of pain by changing their thought processes and behaviors and employing such strategies as distraction, imagery, relaxation training, exercising, and deep breathing. CBT has become the dominant model for treating chronic pain. Although specific components of CBT vary, most programs include education and goal-setting that focus on the factors influencing pain and that clarify the client’s expectations for treatment, cognitive interventions to enhance patients’ self-efficacy and sense of control over pain, teaching new skills for responding to pain triggers, and promoting increased exercise and activity levels.

**cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT)**

A multidisciplinary pain-management program that combines cognitive, physical, and emotional interventions.

**Education and Goal-Setting**

CBT counselors often begin by briefly explaining the differences between acute and chronic pain; the mechanisms of gate control theory; and the contributions of depression, anxiety, lack of activity, and other controllable factors to pain. Patients are encouraged to generate examples from their own pain experiences, perhaps by keeping a daily diary that records pain frequency, duration, and intensity; medication use; and mood and activity levels. The diary almost always gives clients new insights into some of the factors that affect their pain experience, which is invaluable in promoting an increased sense of control over pain.

This phase is most useful for establishing specific goals for the intervention. Goals need to be specific and measurable to prevent miscommunication and the development of unrealistic expectations and also should be phrased in a way that downplays the common tendency to dwell on pain. For example, rather than, “I would like to be able to resume my normal activities without feeling pain,” a better goal is, “I would like to take a brisk, 30-minute walk, four times a week.”

**Cognitive Interventions**

Our emotions, attitudes, and beliefs are powerful influences on our health. Faulty reasoning often contributes to poor health outcomes and interferes with treatment. Negative emotions such as anxiety, anger, and depression intensify pain, which in turn intensifies negative emotions (Gilliam and others, 2010). Negative emotions also intensify pain behaviors and complicate treatment (Burns and others, 2008). For this reason, depression and thought processes often need to be targeted along with pain management (Teh and others, 2010; Berna and others, 2010). *Cognitive restructuring* challenges maladaptive thought processes and helps pain sufferers to redefine pain as an experience that is more manageable than they once believed. It also helps correct irrational beliefs.

Health psychologists recognize a general pattern of cognitive errors in the thinking of chronic pain patients, including the following:

* *Catastrophizing*. Many pain sufferers overestimate the distress and discomfort caused by an unfortunate experience, such as being injured. They also tend to focus excessively on the negative aspects of pain (Michael & Burns, 2004) and use more pain medication than those who think less catastrophically (Severeijns and others, 2004).
* *Overgeneralizing*. Some pain victims believe that their pain will never end and that it will ruin their lives completely, often leading to depression and poorer health outcomes.
* *Victimization*. Some chronic pain patients feel that they have experienced an injustice that consumes them, with many unable to get beyond the “Why me?” stage.
* *Self-blame*. In contrast, some chronic pain patients come to feel worthless and blame themselves for not being able to carry on with their responsibilities.
* *Dwelling on the pain*. Some pain sufferers can’t stop thinking about their pain problem, often replaying painful episodes and negative thoughts over and over in their minds.

A growing body of evidence demonstrates that cognitive errors and other individual differences in how people cope with pain are important contributors to variability in the pain experience in part because of neurobiological effects (Edwards and others, 2009b). For instance, several fMRI studies using standardized pain stimuli have reported that higher levels of [**catastrophizing**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term73) are associated with enhanced neural activity in the anterior cingulate cortex and amygdala (Gracely and others, 2004; Strigo and others, 2008), brain regions that are intimately involved in processing the pain experience. Moreover, among healthy subjects exposed to mildly painful electrical stimulation, there was a positive relationship between the degree of catastrophizing about pain and pain-related responses in cortical pain-processing regions of the brain (Seminowicz & Davis, 2006).

**catastrophizing**

An error in thinking in which a person believes something, such as pain, is far worse than it actually is.

Catastrophic thinking also may intensify pain because of its effects on blood pressure reactivity and muscle tension (Shelby and others, 2009; Wolff and others, 2008). Correlational research also links catastrophizing to stronger inflammatory responses to stress and pain (Edwards and others, 2006). This association appears to be specific to catastrophizing. One study of rheumatoid arthritis patients suggested that helplessness (a key component of catastrophizing) was associated with elevated levels of *C-reactive protein* (*CRP*), a protein produced during the inflammatory response, while anxiety and depression were unrelated to CRP levels (Edwards and others, 2008). Catastrophizing during an acute pain experience also has been associated with elevations in *interleukin-6*, a proinflammatory cytokine that regulates immune functions and inflammation (Edwards and others, 2009b). Catastrophizing and other cognitive errors probably exert their influence through descending, or “top-down,” cortical circuits, rather than by directly affecting peripheral pain pathways (Wiech, Ploner, & Tracey, 2008). Researchers speculate that catastrophizing and other cognitive errors may interfere with activation of opioid-mediated descending pain modulatory systems.

In contrast with catastrophizing, victimization, and other cognitive errors, pain-coping strategies such as distraction, efforts to increase the perception of self-control over pain, and reappraising or reinterpreting pain sensations provide potential benefits in terms of reduced pain and improved function (Van Damme, Crombez, & Eccleston, 2008).

**Cognitive Distraction**

Does *cognitive distraction* have any practical usefulness in pain control? Many CBT therapists think so. One early study exposed dental patients to one of three conditions. One group listened to music during their dental procedure; another group listened to the music *after* receiving a verbal suggestion that the music might help relieve their pain and stress; a third group served as control subjects, receiving neither the suggestion nor the music. Compared to control subjects, patients in both of the music conditions reported experiencing significantly less discomfort during their treatment (Anderson and others, 1991). In addition, music is frequently used to help burn victims distract their attention from painful treatments, such as having wound dressings changed. In addition, verbal suggestions that distract people with pleasant images (“Think of a warm, comfortable environment”) or drawing attention away from painful stimulation (“Count backward by 3’s”) are especially effective ways to activate pain-inhibiting processes and increase pain tolerance (Edwards and others, 2009).

Diverting attention away from a painful stimulus can diminish self-reported pain intensity by 30 to 40 percent and also seems to reduce activity in pain-processing regions of the cortex (the anterior cingulate cortex) by well over 50 percent (Edwards and others, 2009)—an amount comparable to the effects of potent analgesic drugs. Distraction from pain also may engage some of the descending pain-inhibitory pathways that catastrophizing seems to disrupt (Wiech, Ploner, & Tracey, 2008). Some researchers have reported that analgesic medication combined with a virtual-reality video game distractor task can interact to have analgesic effects, illustrating the potential benefits of multimodal interventions in clinical settings (Hoffman and others, 2007).

**Guided Imagery**

Often used alongside cognitive distraction, guided imagery (GI; see [**Chapter 11**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch11)) is a pain-control technique that is designed to promote changes in perception by combining a mental process (as in *imagining*) and a procedure (as in *guided*). GI is actually a form of self-hypnosis because it involves focused concentration and attention. It is incorporated into relaxation techniques that involve suggestions (for example, “Your hands are heavy”) and into *mental rehearsal*, which helps patients prepare for an uncomfortable medical treatment and relieves the anxiety, pain, and side effects that are exacerbated by heightened emotional reactions.

GI techniques are based on the concept that our attention and awareness have a limited capacity and that different stimuli compete for our attention. The purpose of the intervention is to teach patients to switch their attention from pain to other stimuli. For example, a pain patient may be taught to construct a vivid, multisensory image, such as strolling through a meadow on a beautiful day, focusing intently on the surrounding sights, sounds, textures, and smells. The elaborated features of the image presumably compete with the painful stimulus and lower its impact.

How effective is GI in controlling pain? A recent review of randomized clinical trials (RCTs) reported that eight of nine studies provided evidence of the effectiveness of guided imagery as a stand-alone therapy in reducing *musculoskeletal pain* (lower back pain, tendonitis, and muscle pain) (Posadzki & Ernst, 2012). A separate review of RCTs testing the effectiveness of GI in reducing *non-musculoskeletal pain* (i.e., pain from the skin, cardiovascular system, and other structures outside the musculoskeletal system) similarly reported that 11 of 15 studies provided evidence of GI’s effectiveness (Posadzki & others, 2011). Despite these encouraging results, the researchers concluded that the methodological quality of many of the RCTs was poor. Thus far, it seems that GI works best with low to medium levels of pain intensity. Patients who have been trained in the use of positive imagery may experience benefits such as reduced anxiety and pain during medical procedures, reduced use of pain medication, fewer side effects, and increased pain tolerance.

**Cognitive Reappraisal**

As noted earlier, chronic pain patients are often deficient in self-regulatory skills, such as self-control and the ability to reappraise situations, which may exacerbate their experience of pain (Nes, Roach, & Segerstrom, 2009). A key component of CBT is helping individuals *reinterpret* pain-related sensations (e.g., labeling a noxious stimulus as “pressure” rather than pain), *restructure*maladaptive thought patterns (e.g., “this pain will never get better”), and make *positive self-statements* (e.g., “I can handle this”). For example, writing interventions that help pain patients express their emotions and find meaning in their experience have been effective in reducing both pain and distress (Graham and others, 2008). A growing body of evidence demonstrates that these pain-coping strategies, collectively referred to as [**cognitive reappraisal**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term87), are associated with reduced activation of key regions of the pain-processing areas of the brain. For example, *naloxone*, a drug that blocks the binding of endorphins and other opiates to neural receptor sites, disrupts the beneficial effects of cognitive reappraisal, strongly suggesting that these internal biochemical pathways are involved in these effects (Edwards and others, 2009). These findings dovetail with those on the neurobiology of distraction, suggesting that CBT interventions that enhance these cognitive processes function by activating descending pain-inhibiting systems that originate in the prefrontal cortex (Wiech, Ploner, & Tracey, 2008).

**cognitive reappraisal**

A key component of CBT that focuses on helping individuals *reinterpret* pain-related sensations, *restructure* maladaptive thought patterns, and make *positive self-statements*.

**Relaxation Strategies**

There is also an emerging body of evidence from neuroimaging studies of meditation and self-hypnosis that suggests that such strategies may activate the same descending pain-inhibitory pathways that are involved in distraction and cognitive reappraisal. For example, one structural MRI study showed that experienced meditation practitioners had enhanced thickness in regions of the anterior cingulate cortex, which we have seen to be an important region of pain-inhibitory processes (Lazar and others, 2005). In addition, fMRI research has shown that expert practitioners of transcendental meditation showed roughly 50 percent less activation of pain-processing brain regions during painful heat stimulation than did control participants. Interestingly, this effect occurred even while individuals were not in a meditative state. Importantly, similar effects were observed in new meditation practitioners after five months of training, suggesting that the benefits are not limited to those who are experts (Orme-Johnson and others, 2006).

**Exercise**

Many types of pain are made worse by a lack of flexibility and weak muscles. For this reason, exercise and physical therapy can be effective as pain-management interventions. Both aerobic exercise and resistance (strength) training can help decrease pain. Researchers in one study compared the effectiveness of four common self-management strategies in women with fibromyalgia (Rooks and others, 2007). The participants were randomly assigned to a 16-week program of either aerobic and flexibility training; strength training, aerobic, and flexibility training; a fibromyalgia self-help course; or a combination of resistance training and the self-help course. The results showed that women who completed *any* of the types of exercise training reported significantly greater improvements in terms of reduced pain and enhanced functioning than their counterparts who received only the self-help program.

As we discussed in [**Chapter 7**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch07), people who exercise regularly also have lower levels of disability. In another study, researchers randomly assigned fibromyalgia patients to either a 12-week program of 60-minute *tai chi* sessions twice a week, or a control group that received wellness education training and participated in light stretching for the same amount of time (Wang and others, 2010). Tai chi is an ancient Chinese form of exercise consisting of graceful and slow movements (see [**Chapter 15**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch15)). At the end of the six-month follow-up period, participants in the tai chi group displayed significant clinical improvement in fibromyalgia symptoms, as well as in their quality of life.

**Reshaping Pain Behavior**

The mainstay of the behavioral aspect of CBT is the targeting of specific pain behaviors that are associated with continued pain and disability for modification. Consider the case of Mrs. Y, a 37-year-old office administrator who entered the University of Washington’s pain-management program. For the past 18 years, Mrs. Y had experienced constant lower back pain that only allowed her to get out of bed for two hours or less a day. Despite having had four major surgical procedures, her ability to function continued to deteriorate. She was taking several hundred milligrams of highly addictive opiate painkillers per day, even though there was no evidence of any actual organic problem.

Although pain may initially be caused by an injury or underlying organic pathology, its expression over time often is maintained by social and environmental reinforcement. In some cases, treatment may not progress because of the “benefits” (attention, lots of rest, not having to work, and so on) of being a pain patient. Comprehensive treatment programs, therefore, try to modify pain behaviors, such as excessive sleeping and use of pain medication. Stemming from a conditioning model, the intervention begins by identifying the events (stimuli) that precede targeted pain behaviors (responses) as well as the consequences that follow (reinforcers). Treatment then involves changing the *contingencies* between responses and reinforcers to increase the frequency of more adaptive ways of coping with discomfort. In the case of Mrs. Y, reinforcing consequences (hospital staff attention, rest, and so on) were made contingent on desirable behaviors (such as some form of mild exercise) rather than on maladaptive pain behaviors such as complaining and dependence. As a result of the combined efforts of both hospital staff and family members (who participated in the treatment program), Mrs. Y’s pain behaviors were quickly extinguished.

**Religious/Spiritual Coping**

Religious and spiritual coping activities are widely used among chronic pain patients, although their effectiveness is controversial. Some research studies report positive pain-related effects, while others have actually found more negative outcomes among spiritual copers, including higher pain reports. One possible explanation for the inconsistent results is that spiritual coping techniques that encourage passivity may be ineffective, while those that include active coping efforts may engage the same descending pain-inhibiting pathways as do distraction and cognitive reappraisal (Edwards and others, 2009). One interesting fMRI study found that contemplation of a picture of the Virgin Mary by practicing Catholics was associated with increased activity in the prefrontal cortex and decreased perceived intensity of a painful stimulus (Wiech and others, 2008). Non-Catholic participants viewing the same image showed no pain reduction or increased prefrontal activity, and Catholics viewing a similar but nonreligious image also showed no beneficial effects. The researchers suggested that Catholics viewing the religious image were able to achieve a calm, distracted state and activate descending pain-inhibitory systems.

**Evaluating the Effectiveness of Pain Treatments**

Which approach to pain control works best? The answer seems to be, “It depends.” Research studies comparing cognitive behavior treatments with traditional physical therapy for chronic pain generally have found that *physical* functioning improves the most in patients who receive physical therapy, while *psychosocial* gains are greatest in patients who receive CBT (Turk & Okifuji, 2002). The most effective pain-management programs are multidisciplinary ones that combine the cognitive, physical, and emotional interventions of CBT therapy with judicious use of analgesic drugs (Hoffman and others, 2007; Peat and others, 2001).

**Recall from**[**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05)**that biofeedback is a technique that provides visual or auditory feedback about certain supposedly involuntary physiological responses so the person can learn to control those responses.**

**The Culture of Childbirth Pain**

**Childbirth is not feared as a painful event in all cultures. Prepared childbirth that takes place in a calm and comfortable environment, such as in this home birth, in which loved ones surround the new mother, can greatly reduce both anxiety and the pain that it often causes.**

Bubbles Photolibrary/Alamy

In studies with tension headache sufferers, for instance, biofeedback has proved to be about twice as effective as a placebo in reducing pain and slightly more beneficial than relaxation training. As [**Figure 14.6**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F14-6) shows, however, headache sufferers who received biofeedback and relaxation training in a combined treatment experienced the greatest relief. Recently, research using neuroimaging devices has shown that people who are prone to migraines have abnormally excitable neurons in their brainstems (Bahra and others, 2001). This may explain why, for migraine headaches, biofeedback combined with relaxation training appears to be nearly as effective as conventional pharmacological treatments.

**Figure 14.6: Headache Relief**

**Both biofeedback and relaxation training are more effective than a placebo in relieving the pain of tension headaches. Across many studies, however, the greatest relief occurred when biofeedback and relaxation training were combined.**

**Source:** Holroyd, D.A., & Penzien, D.B. (1990). Pharmacological versus nonpharmacological prophylaxis of recurrent migraine headache: A meta-analytic review of clinical trials. *Pain, 42*, 1–13.

Most important, effective programs encourage patients to develop (and rehearse) a specific, individualized [**pain-management program**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term248) for coping when the first signs of pain appear and as pain intensifies. In doing so, patients learn to be active and resourceful participants in managing their pain, rather than passive victims. The increased feelings of self-efficacy that follow from these steps are an important element in determining the patient’s degree of pain and overall well-being. Individualized CBT programs have proven effective in treating low back pain (Ostelo and others, 2007), rheumatoid arthritis (Astin, 2004), headaches (Martin, Forsyth, & Reece, 2007), fibromyalgia (Garcia and others, 2006), and pain associated with various types of cancer (Breibart & Payne, 2001).

**pain management program**

An individualized, multimodal intervention aimed at modifying chronic pain through neurological, cognitive, and behavioral strategies.

**In**[**Chapter 15**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch15)**, we will consider several alternative treatments for pain, including acupuncture, hypnosis, relaxation, meditation, and chiropractic.**

Several organizations that set standards for health care programs have underscored the psychological effects of pain by establishing new guidelines for the assessment and management of pain (Rabasca, 1999). Under the guidelines, health care facilities (including nursing homes) are expected to do all of the following:

* Recognize that patients have a right to the appropriate assessment and management of pain.
* Assess the existence, nature, and intensity of pain in all patients.
* Facilitate regular reassessment and follow-up.
* Educate staff about pain management and assessment.
* Establish procedures that allow staff to prescribe effective pain medications appropriately.
* Educate patients and their families about effective pain management.

The goals of pain-management programs extend beyond controlling pain to restoring the patient’s overall quality of life by decreasing the reliance on medication, restoring activity levels, and enhancing psychological and social well-being.

**Weigh In on Health**

Respond to each question below based on what you learned in the chapter. **(Tip:** Use the items in “[**Summing Up**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L14-1-43)” to take into account related biological, psychological, and social concerns.)

* **1.** Think about a time or an incident that caused you to feel pain. How do you understand that experience differently now that you’ve read about what pain is and how it is measured? Using what you learned, describe the components of pain you experienced. Also, explain your pain experience according to the gate control theory.
* **2.** Imagine that a friend of your family is going to seek treatment for pain. According to research, what does his gender, age of 65 years, and Latino background indicate about his pain experience? What does research indicate about whether his personality is one that is pain-prone?
* **3.** Compare and contrast biomedical and cognitive therapies used to treat pain. Name two kinds of biomedical and cognitive therapies. What pain experiences does each kind of therapy seem to treat best?

**Summing Up**

**What Is Pain?**

* **1.** Pain involves our total experience in reacting to a damaging event, including the physical mechanism by which the body reacts; our subjective, emotional response (suffering); and our observable actions (pain behavior).
* **2.** Pain is categorized in terms of its duration as acute, recurrent, or chronic. Chronic pain is experienced by about one-third of the population. The prevalence of chronic pain is slightly higher for females (34.3 percent) than males (26.7 percent) and increases with age.
* **3.** Another challenge faced by people who have chronic pain is that they may become even more sensitive to pain over time (hyperalgesia). In *opiod-induced hyperalgesia*, the long-term use of morphine, hydrocodone, oxycodone, and other opioids leads to an increasing sensitivity to noxious stimuli, even to the point to which common sensory stimuli become painful.

**Measuring Pain**

* **4.** Researchers have tried unsuccessfully to develop objective, physical measures of pain. Because of pain’s subjective nature, however, they have had to rely on behavioral measures, rating scales, and pain inventories such as the McGill Pain Questionnaire (MPQ) and the Pain Response Preference Questionnaire (PRPQ).
* **5.** Fear in children is common, and it can increase the perception of pain. Needle fears are particularly prevalent: many children consider getting an injection one of the most painful and feared experiences.

**The Physiology of Pain**

* **6.** Pain typically begins when free nerve endings in the skin called *nociceptors* are stimulated. The nociceptors relay this input to fast nerve fibers that signal sharp, acute pain, or slow nerve fibers that signal slow, burning pain. Pain signals travel from these peripheral nerve fibers to the spinal cord, and from there to the thalamus, a message-sorting station that relays the pain message to your cerebral cortex, the reasoning part of your brain. The cortex assesses the location and severity of damage.
* **7.** Endorphins and enkephalins produced in the brain act as neurotransmitters and inhibit pain by acting on cells in the substantia gelatinosa of the spinal cord and the periacqueductal gray region of the brain. In addition, fMRI studies have implicated another brain region, the dorsal anterior cingulate cortex, as being specifically involved in the cognitive modulation of pain.
* **8.** Chronic pain patients are often deficient in self-regulatory skills, such as self-control.
* **9.** Chronic pain conditions, as well as sensitivity to pain, have a considerable genetic component. Several rare but serious pain disorders are caused by mutations in a gene called *SCN9A*, which encodes instructions for sodium channels that help nerve cells that relay painful sensations in the body’s tissues to the central nervous system.
* **10.** The gate control theory suggests that a pain gate exists in the spinal cord. The pain gate may be closed by stimulation of the fast pain fiber system, whereas activity in the slow pain system tends to open the gate. The gate also may be closed by influences on the brain’s descending pathway.

**Factors That Influence the Experience of Pain**

* **11.** The experience of pain is subject to a variety of psychosocial factors. Although older people and women are more likely to report higher levels of pain than younger people and men, the relationships among pain, gender, and aging are complex. In addition, they may reflect faulty reasoning that tends to exaggerate the relatively few ways in which age groups, women, and men differ, while ignoring the greater number of ways in which they are similar.
* **12.** There seems not to be a “pain-prone personality,” though certain traits do affect our ability to cope effectively with pain. People who are anxious, worried, fearful, and negative in outlook, in addition to those who score high in depression, also report more pain. In addition, depression is more prevalent among children coping with certain types of pain.
* **13.** Low SES is associated with more frequent reports of musculoskeletal pain, and pain intensity and physical disability. The challenges associated with lower SES also makes those who suffer chronic pain more vulnerable to the harmful effects of stress on health and physical functioning.
* **14.** Cultural differences in pain reactions are probably related to differences in pain tolerance rather than differences in pain threshold. Although some researchers have reported ethnic differences in pain, others have found much greater variation among individual members within an ethnic group than variation between ethnic groups.
* **15.** Wilbert Fordyce’s operant conditioning model of pain suggests that chronic pain sufferers receive social reinforcement for pain behaviors from the attention that they receive from family and friends.

**Treating Pain**

* **16.** The most common biomedical method of treating pain is the use of analgesic drugs, including opioids such as morphine. These centrally acting drugs stimulate endorphin receptors in the brain and spinal cord. A less addictive class of analgesics, the nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), produce their pain-relieving effects by blocking the formation of prostaglandins at the site of injured tissue. Electrical stimulation techniques, such as transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS), deliver mild electrical impulses to tissues near the pain-producing area to close the pain gate in the spinal cord.
* **17.** Negative emotions such as anxiety, anger, and depression intensify pain, and pain intensifies these and other negative emotions. For this reason, depression and thought processes often need to be targeted along with the management of pain.
* **18.** Health psychologists recognize a general pattern of cognitive errors in the thinking of chronic pain patients, including catastrophic thinking, overgeneralizing, victimization, self-blame, and dwelling on pain. Cognitive errors are associated with abnormal patterns of neural activity in the anterior cingulate cortex, greater blood pressure reactivity, and elevations in certain pro-inflammatory cytokines.
* **19.** Diverting attention away from a painful stimulus can diminish self-reported pain intensity by 30 to 40 percent and also seems to reduce activity in pain-processing regions of the cortex—an amount comparable to the effects of potent analgesic drugs. In addition, guided imagery is an effective strategy for managing pain.
* **20.** A key component of CBT is cognitive reappraisal, which entails helping individuals *reinterpret* pain-related sensations, *restructure* maladaptive thought patterns, and make *positive self-statements*. Cognitive reappraisal and other adaptive pain-coping techniques also have been associated with improved neuroendocrine functioning, especially healthy cortisol rhythms.
* **21.** There is also an emerging body of evidence from neuroimaging studies of meditation and self-hypnosis that suggests that these and other relaxation strategies may activate the same descending pain-inhibitory pathways that are involved in distraction and cognitive reappraisal.
* **22.** Many types of pain are made worse by a lack of flexibility and weak muscles. For this reason, exercise and physical therapy can be effective as pain management interventions. Religious and spiritual coping activities also are widely used among chronic pain patients, although their effectiveness is controversial.
* **23.** The most successful pain treatment programs are multidisciplinary and combine the use of analgesic drugs with eclectic cognitive behavior programs. These programs use a mix of techniques to develop individualized pain-management programs, including cognitive restructuring of pain beliefs, distraction, imagery, and relaxation training.
* **24.** Behavioral interventions rely on operant procedures to extinguish undesirable pain behaviors while reinforcing more adaptive responses to chronic pain.

***Chapter 15*: Complementary and Alternative Medicine**

[**What Is Complementary and Alternative Medicine?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-1-1)

* [**Establishing a Category for Unconventional Medicine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-2-2) [**Three Ideals of Complementary and Alternative Medicine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-2-3) [**How Widespread Is Complementary and Alternative Medicine?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-2-7)

[**Medicine or Quackery?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-1-8)

* [**What Constitutes Evidence?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-2-9)

[**Does Complementary and Alternative Medicine Work?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-1-12)

* [**Acupuncture**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-2-13) [**Mind–Body Therapies**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-2-18) [**Biofeedback**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-2-24) [**How Effective Is Biofeedback?**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-2-25)[**Chiropractic**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-2-26) [**Naturopathic Medicine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-2-29)

[**Looking Ahead: Complementary and Alternative Medicine in Our Future**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-1-39)

* [**The Best of Both Worlds**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-2-40) [**The Politics of Medicine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-2-41)

*In August 2003, a 53-year-old woman—call her Cynthia—visited an Oregon clinic to undergo chelation therapy. Although she was in good health, Cynthia opted for the unconventional treatment (against the advice of her doctor) because of its reputed health and anti-aging effects. Proponents claim that chelation, which involves intravenous infusions of the drug ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA), removes heavy metals and other environmental toxins from the body. Although there were no apparent adverse effects from the earlier treatments, about 15 minutes into her fourth infusion, Cynthia lost consciousness. She was rushed to the emergency room of a local hospital, where cardiopulmonary resuscitation was initiated, but it failed, and Cynthia died. The medical examiner determined the cause of death to be cardiac arrhythmia resulting from abnormally low levels of calcium in Cynthia’s body (Quackwatch, 2006*).

*In contrast to Cynthia’s tragic story, consider the experience of one patient of alternative medicine guru Andrew Weil, MD. After being diagnosed with bone cancer at age 21, the young man developed feelings of hopelessness and frustration with the treatment offered by conventional doctors, who made his condition seem like a death sentence. Believing he could fight the disease by adopting a healthier lifestyle, the man started an extreme exercise program of biking 500 miles, and running 60 miles, each week. He also made radical dietary changes by consuming only fresh fruit, whole grains, and juices. He credits this unconventional treatment for returning him to “wholeness” (Weil, 1998*).

The National Institutes of Health (NIH) estimates that less than one-third of the world’s health care is delivered by biomedically trained doctors and nurses (NCCAM, 2012). The remainder comes from self-care and traditional indigenous approaches. This may mean a trip to the acupuncturist, massage therapist, faith healer, or chiropractor; purchases of aromatherapy ingredients, herbal medicines, or megavitamins; or a daily hour of yoga or meditation.

Celebrity accounts and personal testimonials on behalf of unconventional treatments contribute to the growing interest in such therapies. Perhaps best known was author and critic Norman Cousins’s powerful description of his battle with an illness that doctors said was incurable. Cousins attributed his successful recovery to his unconventional approach to healing: a program of massive doses of vitamin C and comedy movies. The success of his treatment led him to become a crusader for the view that “the hospital is no place for a person who is seriously ill” (Cousins, 1976). This grim warning took on new meaning in November 1999, when a scathing report by the Institute of Medicine at the National Academy of Sciences indicated that medical errors kill 44,000 to 98,000 patients in hospitals in the United States each year, making these errors the eighth-leading cause of death—ahead of car accidents and AIDS.

But do these methods work? Unconventional treatments must be subjected to the same rules of **evidence-based medicine** that traditional biomedical interventions undergo, including rigorous testing and careful evaluation of alleged health benefits. In this chapter, we will consider several alternative treatments, which have varied widely in their tested effectiveness.

**evidence-based medicine**

An approach to health care that promotes the collection, interpretation, and integration of the best research-based evidence in making decisions about the care of individual patients.

**What Is Complementary and Alternative Medicine?**

Our consideration of alternative approaches to health care prompts the question: What is traditional medicine? The answer to this question depends to a large extent on our belief systems and culture. [**Conventional medicine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term97) (also called Western or *allopathic* medicine) is health care as practiced by holders of MD (medical doctor) and DO (doctor of osteopathic medicine) degrees and by allied professionals, including physical therapists, psychologists, and registered nurses.

**conventional medicine**

Biomedically based medicine as practiced by holders of the MD (medical doctor) or DO (doctor of osteopathy) degrees and their allied health professionals.

The term [**alternative medicine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term19) has been used to identify a broad range of therapeutic approaches and philosophies that are generally defined as health care practices that are not taught widely in medical schools, not generally used in hospitals, and not usually reimbursed by insurance companies. A number of these approaches are considered a part of a [**holistic medicine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term171) approach, in which the practitioner addresses the physical, mental, emotional, and spiritual needs of the whole client. The boundaries between alternative medicine and conventional medicine are not absolute and may change over time, as specific interventions are subjected to clinical trials and become widely accepted.

**alternative medicine**

A broad range of health care practices that are not taught in medical schools, not generally used in hospitals, and not usually reimbursed by insurance companies.

**holistic medicine**

An approach to medicine that considers not only physical health but also the emotional, spiritual, social, and psychological well-being of the person.

In earlier chapters, we discussed several unconventional techniques, including guided imagery, stress management, and cognitive reappraisal. In this chapter, we focus on larger-scale unconventional therapies that encompass some of these techniques: *acupuncture, mind–body therapies, chiropractic*, and *naturopathy*.

**Establishing a Category for Unconventional Medicine**

Some “alternative” methods have been around for a very long time, so the term *complementary medicine* is actually more appropriate because it emphasizes that many “alternative medicines” are best used in conjunction with—rather than instead of—regular medicine. For example, the combined effect of drug *and* relaxation-training interventions for hypertension exceeds that of either the drug or relaxation by itself, and relaxation may reduce the doses of the drug needed.

In this chapter, we will use the term [**complementary and alternative medicine (CAM)**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term92) to refer to the use of health-promoting practices and diagnostic therapies that are not generally considered part of conventional medicine together with conventional biomedical interventions. As an example, I used CAM recently to treat the pain of a running injury by visiting my primary health care provider—an MD who is also a licensed acupuncturist. In addition to several sessions of acupuncture, my treatment consisted of rest (time off from running), daily ice massage, and a moderate course of oral ibuprofen every four to six hours.

**complementary and alternative medicine (CAM)**

The use and practice of therapies or diagnostic techniques that fall outside conventional biomedicine.

The Office of Alternative Medicine (OAM) at the NIH has recently developed the classification scheme depicted in [**Table 15.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T15-1), which separates CAM practices into five major domains.

**Table 15.1: Domains of Complementary and Alternative Medicine**

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| Whole medical systems | Complete health care systems that evolved independently of Western biomedicine. Examples include traditional Chinese medicine, ayurveda, and homeopathy. |
| Mind and body medicine | Techniques designed to affect the mind’s capacity to influence bodily functions and symptoms. Examples include meditation, yoga, acupuncture, deep-breathing exercises, guided imagery, hypnosis, progressive relaxation, qi gong, and tai chi. |
| Natural products | This area of CAM includes use of a variety of herbal medicines (also known as *botanicals*), vitamins, minerals, and other “natural products.” Many are sold over the counter as dietary supplements. CAM natural products also include probiotics—live microorganisms (usually bacteria) that are similar to microorganisms normally found in the human digestive tract and that may have beneficial effects. Probiotics are available in foods (e.g., yogurt) or as dietary supplements. |
| Manipulative and body-based practices | Techniques that focus primarily on the structures and systems of the body, including the bones and joints, soft tissues, and circulatory and lymphatic systems. Two commonly used therapies fall within this category:   * Massage therapy * Spinal manipulation as practiced by chiropractors, osteopathic physicians, naturopathic physicians, and physical therapists |
| Other CAM practices | CAM also encompasses *movement therapies*—a broad range of Eastern and Western movement-based approaches such as Pilates, used to promote physical, mental, emotional, and spiritual well-being. *Traditional healers* use methods based on indigenous beliefs and experiences handed down from generation to generation. A familiar example in the United States is the Native American healer/medicine man/woman. Other CAM practices involve manipulation of various energy fields to affect health (e.g., magnet therapy and light therapy). Practices based on *putative energy fields* (also called biofields) generally reflect the concept that human beings are infused with subtle forms of energy; qi gong, Reiki, and healing touch are examples of such practices. |
| **Source:** National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine, [**http://nccam.nih.gov/health/whatiscam?nav=gsa#types**](http://nccam.nih.gov/health/whatiscam?nav=gsa#types). | |

**Three Ideals of Complementary and Alternative Medicine**

Despite the endless variety of alternative therapies, most forms of alternative medicine *do* share several features that distinguish these interventions from traditional medicine. Most work from three fundamental ideals: to provide health treatment that is natural, that is holistic, and that promotes wellness.

**Natural Medicine**

During most of the twentieth century, the public seemed to have an undying faith in modern technology, science, and biomedicine. Then, in the second half of the twentieth century, evidence increasingly indicated that advances in health-related technology were not always healthy—and things began to change.

The growing popularity of CAM seems to indicate a growing desire for more “natural” treatments. Immunization is a powerful example. Although vaccinations are an essential component of pediatric well-child care and are required for entering school, the possibility of adverse side effects and the use of multiple-antigen vaccines are subjects of some controversy (Bonhoeffer, 2007). Today, in some parts of the United States, vaccination rates have dropped so low that the incidence of certain childhood diseases is approaching levels that existed before effective vaccines became available (Wallace, 2009). One exception was the push in 2010 for college students and children to get the H1N1 “swine flu” vaccine.

**Navajo Healing**

**Complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) includes a wide variety of practices, some more or less accepted in Western civilization. Here, a Navajo medicine man treats a patient.**

Scott [**McKiernan/ZUMAPRESS.com**](http://mckiernan/ZUMAPRESS.com)

Although the philosophy of a “natural” medicine inspires many CAM practitioners, it is a mistake to assume that all CAM therapists agree. Herbal therapy and massage certainly are natural, but some other popular alternative treatments are not. Consider the chelation therapy that Cynthia from our chapter opener tried. This controversial intervention involves ingesting or injecting into the bloodstream the synthetic chemical EDTA as a treatment for angina and atherosclerosis.

**holistic Medicine**

CAM also aims to avoid the narrow specialization of conventional biomedicine. As physician Patch Adams, a pioneer of holistic medicine, noted, “Treat a disease and you win or lose, treat the person and you win every time” (Adams & Mylander, 1998, p. 22). Many patients seek out alternative care because they prefer to work with practitioners who will see (and treat) them as a whole person. Steven Bratman describes one extreme case of a man whose various symptoms eventually led to treatment by six medical specialists: a neurologist (for cognitive symptoms stemming from a stroke), an orthopedist (for bone degeneration), an ophthalmologist (for eye pain), a dermatologist (for skin lesions), a urologist (for bladder problems), and a cardiologist (for heart valve leakage). Until an elderly neighbor (who happened to be a retired general practitioner) realized that the seemingly independent symptoms were similar to the syphilis cases that he had often seen 40 years earlier, no one suspected that a simple program of penicillin shots was all the man needed.

Specialization and fragmentation are predictable consequences of the analytical nature of biomedicine, which encourages doctors to focus on the fine details of the symptoms that each patient presents. As a backlash against the overspecialization of conventional medicine, many alternative practitioners broaden their analysis of each patient’s complaints to examine diet, emotions, and lifestyle as well as the specific symptoms of the disease or condition. This is especially true of traditional Chinese medicine, *ayurveda*, and homeopathy (a largely unproven system of so-called energy medicine developed in the nineteenth century by Samuel Hahnemann, which advocates such ideas as the “law of similars”—that is, the most effective remedy for a particular disease is a minute quantity of the very substance that would trigger the disease’s symptoms in a healthy person).

**Promoting Wellness**

Given Western biomedicine’s historical focus on battling disease, it is understandable that the concept of wellness is too vague for medical science to rally around. Instead, biomedicine orbits around disease, while the primary focus of many alternative treatments is to strengthen the individual, even if the person currently has no serious symptoms.

Alternative practitioners believe that medication, surgery, and other mainstream interventions can fight illness but generally cannot produce an optimal state of healthy vitality. Indeed, although most medical interventions eliminate major symptoms, they often leave behind one or more adverse side effects, such as an upset stomach or headache.

Many alternative treatments do make the person “feel like a million bucks,” even if only temporarily. Acupuncture, aromatherapy, and massage therapy may produce feelings of relaxation—even symptom relief among cancer patients (Fellowes, Barnes, & Wilkinson, 2004); chiropractic generates a feeling of being energized. Whether these effects are due to positive suggestion, a placebo effect, or the patient’s expectations doesn’t matter—the patient still benefits.

**Ayurvedic Heat Treatments**

**In ayurveda, the practitioner emphasizes treatment of the whole person, including diet, emotions, and lifestyle, as well as the specific symptoms of the disease or disorder. The patient in this photo is receiving ayurvedic oils and massage to improve blood circulation at a clinic in New Delhi, India.**

Poznyakov/Shutterstock

Complementary and alternative medicine is not so rigid that practitioners believe theirs is the only right way; many admit that both disease-focused and wellness-focused approaches are needed, depending on the circumstances. Health care providers who practice [**integrative medicine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term194) combine traditional biomedical interventions with CAM therapies for which there is evidence of both effectiveness and safety (NCCAM, 2010). For many varieties of CAM, the concept of wellness is closely connected with belief in the existence of a “life energy” or “vital force,” known as [**vitalism**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term353). In [**traditional Chinese medicine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term344), as you’ll recall from [**Chapter 1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch01), the life force of *qi* (pronounced *chee* in Chinese and *kee* in Japanese) is believed to flow through every cell of the body. Acupuncture, herbal therapy, and other interventions supposedly restore vitality by correcting blockages, deficiencies, and isolated excesses of qi.

**integrative medicine**

A multidisciplinary approach to medicine that involves traditional biomedical interventions, as well as complementary and alternative medical practices that have been proven both safe and effective.

**vitalism**

The concept of a general life force, popular in some varieties of complementary and alternative medicine.

**traditional Chinese medicine**

An ancient, integrated herb- and acupuncture-based system of healing founded on the principle that internal harmony is essential for good health.

**How Widespread Is Complementary and Alternative Medicine?**

Health care in the United States remains primarily based on allopathic medicine, yet, according to a recent survey conducted by the National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM), an estimated 38 percent of adults (about 4 in 10) and 12 percent of children (about 1 in 9) regularly use some form of CAM (NCCAM, 2013). Americans visited alternative therapy practitioners some 354 million times in 2007 and spent approximately $33.9 billion out of pocket on alternative therapies—nearly half as much as they spent on all physician services the same year (Nahin and others, 2010). Almost two-thirds of CAM expenditures were for self-care therapies such as nonvitamin and nonmineral dietary supplements, homeopathic products, and yoga. Some people are more likely to use CAM than others. Overall, CAM is used more by women than men, by people with higher education levels, and by people who have been hospitalized during the past year primarily for back problems, anxiety or depression, sleeping problems, and headaches (NCCAM, 2012).

The use of unconventional medical therapies is increasing throughout the world. Even more important, the perceived effectiveness of CAM therapies seems to be increasing among both the general public and traditional allopathic physicians ([**Table 15.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T15-2)). A growing number of traditionally trained physicians now practice integrative medicine by incorporating some CAM therapies into their practices (Aratani, 2009). In addition, a 2008 survey of U.S. hospitals by the American Hospital Association (AHA) found that more than 37 percent of responding hospitals indicated they offer one or more alternative medicine therapies, up from 26.5 percent in 2005 (AHA, 2008).

**Table 15.2: Percentage of Physicians’ Responding to Questions Regarding CAM Treatments**

| **Treatment** | **Understand treatment but uncomfortable counseling patients** | **Understand treatment and comfortable counseling patients** |
| --- | --- | --- |
| Acupuncture | 45 | 21 |
| Biofeedback | 48 | 47 |
| Megavitamin therapy | 25 | 30 |
| Chiropractic | 29 | 38 |
| Massage | 27 | 41 |
| Homeopathy | 23 | 16 |
| Herbal medicine | 35 | 21 |
| Spiritual healing | 28 | 22 |
| Aromatherapy | 29 | 8 |
| Energy healing | 12 | 5 |
| Magnetic therapy | 14 | 12 |
| Naturopathy | 12 | 7 |
| Relaxation | 24 | 38 |
| **Source:** Adapted from Wahner-Roedler, D.L., Vincent, A., Elking, P.L., Loehrer, L.L., Cha, S.S., & Bauer, B.A. (2006). Physicians’ attitudes toward complementary and alternative medicine and their knowledge of specific therapies: A survey at an academic medical center. *Evidence-Based Complementary and Alternative Medicine*, 3(4), 495–501. | | |

**Medicine or Quackery?**

Many of the same trends that led to the emergence of health psychology also have fueled increasing interest in alternative forms of medicine. These trends include increasing public concern about

* the costly and impersonal nature of modern medical care,
* the adverse effects of treatment, and
* the seemingly profit-driven nature of health care and medical research that ignores unpatentable (and unprofitable) treatment options, such as herbal medicines.

Ironically, the surge in popularity of CAM also is due, at least in part, to the success of Western biomedicine. Although people living in developed countries are less likely to die from infectious diseases such as smallpox, as average life expectancy has increased, so have the rates of chronic diseases for which biomedicine has, as of yet, no cure. CAM therapies give people something else to try as they battle such diseases and strive to increase their average health expectancy.

**“I’ve been told to see a chiropractor, to have my liver flushed out, and to drink hydrogen peroxide! My doctor muttered a nasty word when I said I planned to try alternative medicine. She told me it was all garbage. I’d believe her, except for one thing: I’m in pain, and her treatments are not helping me.”**

**—A patient with low back pain**

Finally, the “doctor knows best” attitude, which has dominated patient–provider relations, seems to be giving way to a more activist, consumer-oriented view of the patient’s role. This, coupled with the growing public distrust of the scientific outlook and a reawakening of interest in mysticism and spiritualism, has given strong impetus to the CAM movement.

**What Constitutes Evidence?**

CAM advocates and conventional physicians and scientists differ most in their views of what constitutes an acceptable research design and which kinds of evidence are needed to demonstrate effectiveness. Biomedical researchers demand evidence from controlled clinical trials, in which treatments that are effective in eradicating or controlling individual pathogens are isolated. CAM practitioners, whose therapies are based on a more holistic philosophy, claim that treatment variables cannot always be studied independently. Many practitioners of herbal medicine, for example, claim that certain tonics and combinations of plant medicines are effective precisely *because* of the interactions among the various substances. According to this view, any attempt to isolate one ingredient from another would render the treatment useless.

As a result of such differences in perspective, many alternative practitioners are willing to endorse interventions even when the evidence backing their claims is far from convincing based on conventional standards of scientific reasoning. Health food stores, for example, have shelf after shelf of impressive-sounding literature that is largely unsupported. As always, one should keep this in mind when evaluating statements made by alternative practitioners.

Finally, the two groups differ in their focus. Rather than just seeking to remove a pathogen or to “cure” a physical condition, as biomedical practitioners do, CAM therapists emphasize the overall quality of a patient’s life, broadening their focus to include important psychological, social, emotional, and spiritual aspects. Consequently, many CAM studies appear unfocused, do not use hypothesis testing or large samples, and tend to rely more on verbal reports from patients as evidence of effectiveness. It is not surprising that the quality of many CAM studies, as judged by Western scientists, is considered poor (NCCAM, 2010).

**Participant Selection and Outcome Measures**

As noted in [**Chapter 2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch02), scientists have established specific criteria for the proper design of a clinical trial. Besides the obvious need to use the scientific method, researchers must begin by selecting large, representative samples of research participants, grouped by gender, age, socioeconomic status, and similarity of medical condition. Then these people are assigned randomly to groups so that each has an equal chance of either receiving or not receiving the treatment of interest.

For both practical and ethical reasons, however, randomized clinical trials (RCTs) sometimes present problems for medical researchers, especially for CAM researchers. Many CAM trials include too few people in a group to allow researchers to determine whether results are statistically significant or due to chance alone. Furthermore, CAM practitioners often find it difficult (or morally unacceptable) to persuade volunteers to participate in a study in which they may be “randomized” into a no-treatment control group. For this reason, CAM evidence is often based on informal case studies. This type of *anecdotal evidence*, based as it is on subjective opinions regarding diagnosis and treatment outcomes, does little to advance the credibility of unconventional treatments.

Another weakness in CAM research is the use of incomplete, biased, or invalidated treatment outcome measures. Many CAM studies rely on self-reporting. Although within certain guidelines, self-reporting can yield useful information, skeptics are naturally concerned about the truthfulness of self-report data. Answers can be influenced by the research participants’ desire to please the researchers, to appear “normal,” and even to persuade themselves that they are experiencing symptom relief. This criticism is made all the more important by the fact that CAM studies too often rely on single-outcome measures rather than on several different measures that might or might not provide converging lines of evidence. An NIH panel evaluating research on acupuncture, for example, concluded that there were few acceptable studies comparing the effectiveness of acupuncture with either placebo or sham controls, and so it encouraged future researchers to provide accurate descriptions of protocols for the types and number of treatments, subject enrollment procedures, and methods of diagnosing outcomes (NIH, 1998).

**Participant Expectancy and the Placebo Effect**

Medical students are often taught the story of “Mr. Wright,” a California cancer patient who was given only a few days to live. After hearing that scientists had discovered that a horse serum, called *Krebiozen*, might be effective against cancer, he begged his doctor to administer it. Reluctantly, the patient’s physician gave Mr. Wright an injection. Three days later, the disbelieving doctor found that the patient’s golf-ball-sized tumors “had melted like snowballs on a hot stove.” Two months later, after reading a medical report that the serum was actually a quack remedy, Mr. Wright suffered an immediate relapse and died.

Although many doctors dismiss this story as an anecdote, researchers have long recognized that part of medicine’s power to heal is derived from the expectations that both patients and practitioners bring to therapy. Whenever patients are treated for an illness or health condition, any improvement may be due to one of four explanations:

* The treatment may actually be effective.
* The illness simply improved on its own over time. This is true of most illnesses, including pain, which tend to be cyclical, *self-limiting conditions*. Because most people seek help when they are symptomatic, any intervention that occurs—whether inert or otherwise—is likely to be followed by improvement, often creating a powerful illusory correlation that it is the intervention, rather than the passage of time and the body’s self-healing, autonomous responses, that caused the improvement.
* The patients were misdiagnosed and in fact did not have an illness at all.
* Patients improve on their own because of some nonspecific effect, such as their belief that the treatment will be beneficial(*placebo effect*).

*Placebos* are physiologically inert substances that have been shown to treat a variety of conditions successfully due to the patient’s expectations of healing. Inert substances, however, also can have adverse health effects. When they do, they have been called *nocebos*. A [**nocebo**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term234) (a word that means in Latin “I will harm,” in contrast to *placebo*, which means “I will please”) is a harmless substance or treatment that ends up creating a harmful effect. A *nocebo response* occurs, for example, when a participant in a controlled clinical trial of a drug reports uncomfortable side effects after taking a placebo. The same substance or treatment can work as both a placebo and a nocebo. In one study, researchers gave participants who believed they were allergic to various foods an injection that they were told contained the allergen. Although the injection contained only salt water, a number of participants experienced allergic reactions. Then the researchers injected salt water again, this time telling participants it would neutralize the effects of the previous injection. In many cases, it did (Barsky and others, 2002).

**nocebo**

A harmless substance that nevertheless creates harmful effects in a person who takes it.

Why do placebos and nocebos work? According to one explanation, the medical treatments that we receive over the course of our lives are like conditioning trials, and we still may experience a therapeutic benefit as a *conditioned response* to the same medical stimuli. Herbert Benson (1996) has suggested that “remembered wellness” is another conditioned factor in placebo responding. After any therapeutic intervention, he suggests, we have a memory of past events, which helps to trigger a beneficial physical response.

A closely related explanation is that placebos tap into the body’s natural “inner pharmacy” of self-healing substances (Brody, 2000). For instance, placebos may reduce levels of cortisol, norepinephrine, and other stress hormones. Researchers also strongly suspect that at least part of placebo-based pain relief occurs because placebos stimulate the release of *endorphins*, morphine-like neurotransmitters produced by the brain. In one remarkable study, Fabrizio Benedetti (1996) asked 340 healthy people to squeeze hand exercisers repeatedly while tourniquets on their arms limited blood flow, causing pain that increased over time ([**Figure 15.1**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F15-1)). Throughout the ordeal, the participants periodically rated their pain on a 10-point scale that ranged from 1 (no pain) to 10 (unbearable). When participants reached 7 on the scale, one of several drugs or saline solution was administered through an intravenous line, either fully within their view or surreptitiously.

**Figure 15.1: Placebo Analgesia**

**Visible injections of placebos were significantly more effective in reducing pain than hidden injections, suggesting that it was not the placebo itself, but rather knowledge of the placebo that produced analgesia. In addition, injections that blocked endorphin production (naloxone) disrupted placebo-induced analgesia, whereas those that enhanced the activity of endorphins (proglumide) strengthened placebo-induced analgesia.**

**Source:** Benedetti, F. (1996). The opposite effects of the opiate antagonist naloxone and the cholecystokinin antagonist proglumide on placebo analgesia. *Pain*, 64(3), 540.

Benedetti’s results were important for several reasons. First, because only a *visible* placebo reduced pain, it was clearly not the placebo itself that reduced the pain, but rather the *knowledge* of the placebo that did the trick. Second, placebo-induced analgesia (pain relief) clearly was mediated by the body’s autonomous production of endorphins in response to the expectation that a treatment (a visible injection) would be beneficial: pharmacological interventions that blocked endorphin production (naloxone) disrupted placebo-induced analgesia, while those that enhanced the activity of endorphins (proglumide) strengthened placebo-induced analgesia.

Although any medical procedure—from drugs to surgery—can have a placebo effect, critics contend that CAM is entirely placebo based. When conventional therapies fail to help, the acupuncturist, chiropractor, or herbalist presents a powerful belief system designed to give the suffering patient hope that help is available. It is ironic that biomedicine’s insistence on rigorous standards of scientific “proof” of the efficacy of a new drug or alternative therapy actually may have provided the strongest testimony for the prevalence of the placebo effect. “Scientific proof” requires the use of a double-blind RCT (see [**Chapter 2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch02)). The method is based on the premise that if either the patient or the researcher knows which treatment is “supposed to work,” it would indeed work. Thus, the working assumption is that the placebo effect occurs routinely.

**Does Complementary and Alternative Medicine Work?**

How good is complementary and alternative medicine? What works and what doesn’t? In this section, we will try to answer these questions for several of the most widely used alternative treatments: acupuncture, mind–body therapies, chiropractic, and naturopathic medicine.

**Acupuncture**

[**Acupuncture**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term5) was first practiced during the Bronze Age in ancient China as part of an integrated system of healing that was founded on the principle that internal harmony is essential for good health. In the West, it was recognized only 100 years ago or so. Although Asian-Americans have a long history with acupuncture, general interest in acupuncture in the United States did not increase noticeably until 1972, when a *New York Times* reporter underwent an emergency operation in China, was later treated with acupuncture for complications, and then wrote all about it for the newspaper. Since then, acupuncture schools have begun springing up, and there are now about 12,000 acupuncturists in the United States.

**acupuncture**

A component of traditional Oriental medicine in which fine needles are inserted into the skin to relieve pain, treat addiction and illness, and promote health.

An acupuncture session typically involves inserting thin acupuncture needles superficially or as deep as 1 or more inches, depending on the particular site and the practitioner’s style of treatment. Which of the approximately 2000 acupuncture points are selected, along with the angle and depth of the needle insertion, varies with the symptom. Needles are sometimes twirled, heated, or electrically stimulated to maximize their effect. Acupuncturists often also incorporate herbal medicine and dietary recommendations in their treatment regimen—two other common components of traditional Oriental medicine.

**Acupuncture**

**Acupuncture, originally practiced only in China, has become increasingly popular throughout Western industrialized nations. It has proved most successful in treating pain, although practitioners contend that it rejuvenates the body.**

Toronto Star via Getty Images

**How Is Acupuncture Supposed to Work?**

The honest answer to this question is that no one really knows. Traditional acupuncturists believe that every part of the body corresponds to the whole, whether it’s the ear or the sole of the foot. Classical acupuncture theory identifies 14 “lines of energy” (qi) on the body, called *meridians*. Most acupuncture points, believed to allow for corrections of blockages or deficiencies in qi, lie on these meridians. Treatment typically involves inserting one or more needles at a point at one end of a meridian to produce effects at the other end. Early researchers tried unsuccessfully to match the meridian lines with physical structures in the body.

But many conventional doctors, including those who practice acupuncture, find it hard to accept the concept of an invisible energy path, or qi, preferring instead to explain any treatment success as an example of the placebo effect. Others maintain that the pain of inserting acupuncture needles simply distracts the patient from his or her original pain, or that acupuncture triggers the release of the body’s own natural painkillers (endorphins) and anti-inflammatory agents. None of these explanations, however, is widely accepted.

Today, using tools such as functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) and positron emission tomography (PET), researchers are probing the brain in search of specific acupuncture sites and effects. A recent meta-analysis of 34 studies using fMRI to investigate the effect of acupuncture on the brain reported that acupuncture modulates neural activity in brain regions that are involved not only in somatosensory processing, but also in affective and cognitive processing. Compared to sham acupuncture, needle acupuncture was associated with greater activation in the basal ganglia, brain stem, and cerebellum, and greater deactivation in limbic brain areas such as the amygdala and hippocampus (Huang and others, 2012). These results suggest that acupuncture-induced analgesia may result from activation of descending pain pathways and other brain structures that modulate the perception of pain (see [**Chapters 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03) and [**14**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch14)). Additional evidence that the analgesic effects of acupuncture are reversed by naloxone, which blocks neural receptor sites for endorphins and other opiates, supports the hypothesis that acupuncture triggers the release of opioid peptides (natural painkillers) (Gardea, Gatchel, & Robinson, 2004). In addition, there is some evidence that acupuncture activates the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal (HPA) axis (see [**Chapter 3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch03)) and influences the functioning of the immune system (NIH Consensus Conference, 1998).

**Recent fMRI studies indicate that acupuncture modulates neural activity in brain regions that are involved not only in somatosensory processing, but also in affective and cognitive processing.**

**Source:** Huang, W., Pach, D., Napadow, V., Park, K., Long, X, and others (2012). Characterizing acupuncture stimuli using brain imaging with fMRI—A systematic review and meta-analysis of the literature. *PLoS One*, 7(4).

[**http://www.plosone.org/article/info:doi/10.1371/journal.pone.0032960**](http://www.plosone.org/article/info:doi/10.1371/journal.pone.0032960)

**How Well Does Acupuncture Work?**

The only scientific way to determine the effectiveness of interventions such as acupuncture is through controlled studies. But such studies are difficult to perform for several reasons: First, the highly individualized nature of acupuncture does not lend itself well to standardized tests. Acupuncturists themselves disagree about the appropriate acupuncture needle sites for a given medical condition. Because some studies allow acupuncturists to choose their own points of stimulation, to control the number of sessions, and to use electrical stimulation if desired, it is very difficult for researchers to isolate independent variables or to compare study results.

Double-blind controls, the mainstay of clinical trials, are even more problematic. Needles can be inserted at points that are inappropriate to a patient’s health problem, making the patient blind to treatment, but the acupuncturist has to know whether the points are sham or real, so the study can’t be double-blind. In one clever study, one acupuncturist diagnosed the patient’s condition and another acupuncturist, who was unaware of the diagnosis, inserted the needles *where the first acupuncturist instructed*. In some patients, the needles were inserted into appropriate points that matched the diagnosis; in others, the needles were inserted into sham sites (Warwick-Evans, Masters, & Redstone, 1991).

Research trials that use sham acupuncture often show that it has some effect—and in some cases, the effect is as strong as genuine acupuncture (Ernst and others, 2007). Needless to say, the idea that stabbing patients at random points may be nearly as effective as using real acupuncture points is quite disturbing to acupuncturists who spend years memorizing locations.

Yet another difficulty is that operational definitions of successful acupuncture treatments have been inconsistent at best, woefully vague at worst. In the case of addiction research, success has been defined variously as complete abstinence, decreased use, decreased cravings, diminished withdrawal symptoms, improved outlook, and increased productivity. Thus, one may characterize an intervention as successful because substance use decreased overall, even though more than half the participants relapsed, while another may report similar findings as indicating a failed intervention. Such variations make it impossible to compare one study to another.

**Acupuncture and Pain**

More than 100 randomized clinical trials testing acupuncture’s effectiveness on 10 painful conditions have been conducted. These studies provide evidence, although not statistically conclusive, that acupuncture provides *some* patients with *some* relief from painful conditions such as osteoarthritis, fibromyalgia, neck and low back pain, pelvic pain during pregnancy, migraine headaches, tennis elbow, and postoperative dental and hemorrhoid pain (Sherman, 2012; Wang, 2011). A recent randomized controlled trial of 607 healthy women in labor at full term reported that acupuncture significantly reduced the need for pharmacological and invasive methods during delivery (Borup and others, 2011).

One relatively new form of acupuncture that shows promise *—percutaneous electrical nerve stimulation* (*PENS*)—uses acupuncture-like needles to stimulate peripheral sensory nerves to assist in the management of pain. PENS therapy has been found to be effective in the management of postoperative gynecologic pain (Gavronsky and others, 2012), migraine headache pain (Ahmed and others, 2000), and leg and foot pain from diabetes (Hamza and others, 2000).

**Acupuncture, Substance Abuse, and Depression**

Excluding 12-step programs, acupuncture is the most widely used CAM method for the treatment of substance abuse, especially of nicotine, alcohol, heroin, and cocaine (Carter and others, 2011). More than 2000 alcohol and drug treatment programs in the United States and 40 other countries have added ear acupuncture to their protocol (Smith, 2012). The goals of acupuncture treatment include reducing the symptoms of withdrawal, including drug craving, keeping abusers in treatment programs, and continued abstinence from drug use.

As with other conditions, evidence regarding the effectiveness of acupuncture in treating substance abusers is mixed at best (Margolin, 2003). For example, two controlled studies on the treatment of alcohol relapse—one with 80 patients and another with 54 patients—found that acupuncture treatment was more effective than sham treatment in reducing cravings for alcohol, drinking episodes, and treatment readmissions for detoxification (Bullock and others, 1987; Bullock, Culliton, & Olander, 1989). In the second study, these effects were maintained over a six-month follow-up: the placebo group had more than twice the number of drinking episodes and readmissions to detoxification centers.

On the other hand, two other studies of acupuncture treatment for cocaine addiction reported negative results (Bullock, Kiresuk, & Pheley, 1999). The first study randomly assigned 236 residential abusers to true, sham, or conventional treatment. The second applied true acupuncture to 202 randomly selected clients at three dose levels (8, 16, or 28 treatments). Overall, the true, sham, and conventional groups did not differ significantly on any outcomes, including abstinence, retention, and mood.

Research studies of laboratory rats have shown that acupuncture stimulates the release of serotonin in the *nucleus accumbens* (*NAC*), a brain region that has an important role in pleasure, addiction, the expectation of reward, and the placebo effect (Yoshimoto and others, 2006). Given this effect on the NAC, it may not surprise you to learn that the World Health Organization (WHO) classifies depression as a condition for which acupuncture has been proved through randomized clinical trials to be an effective treatment (WHO, 2013d). In one study, acupuncture was found to be comparable to antidepressant drugs in relieving symptoms of depression (Leo & Ligot, 2007). Another meta-analysis of eight small trials (with a total of 477 patients) concluded that acupuncture “could significantly reduce the severity of depression” (Wang and others, 2008). However, a more recent review of studies analyzed data from 30 trials (with a total of 2812 patients) and found “insufficient evidence of a consistent beneficial effect from acupuncture” in treatment of depression (Smith, Hay, & Macpherson, 2010). This latter review, though, included several studies suggesting that acupuncture may have an additive benefit when combined with standard pharmaceutical treatment of depression. One study of 80 patients with major depressive disorder found that combining a low dose of the antidepressant *fluoxetine* with acupuncture for six weeks was as effective as a standard course of fluoxetine alone (Zhang, Yang, & Zhong, 2009).

Despite the evidence that acupuncture holds some promise in treating pain, addition, and depression, its overall effectiveness remains controversial. A 2007 review concluded that while the number of controlled clinical trials had increased for 13 of the 26 conditions studied, the evidence was favorable for only 7 of them. For 6 of the conditions, the evidence was unfavorable (Ernst and others, 2007). Despite the inconsistency of research evidence for acupuncture’s effectiveness, acupuncture’s success rate is among the highest of all alternative medical interventions, and for some individuals, its effectiveness with some conditions compares favorably with conventional treatments.

Currently, 35 states and the District of Columbia have established clinical practice standards for acupuncturists. These are official statements from professional societies and government agencies that either describe how to care for patients with specific health conditions or illustrate specific techniques. Practitioners who have met these standards are “licensed” or “certified” by the *National Certification Commission for Acupuncture and Oriental Medicine*.

In 1996, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) classified acupuncture needles as a type of medical device, boosting the credibility of acupuncturists and increasing the likelihood that an insurance provider will pay for acupuncture treatments. Although the American Medical Association (AMA) does not officially sanction acupuncture, more than 2000 of the 12,000 acupuncturists in the United States are MDs. As another sign of growing recognition, the WHO has identified some 50 diseases for which it considers acupuncture an appropriate treatment (WHO, 2013).

**Mind–Body Therapies**

The basic premise of mind–body therapies is that cognitive, emotional, and spiritual factors can have profound effects on one’s health (NCCAM, 2008). In this section, we’ll examine three of the most popular mind–body therapies: hypnosis, relaxation and meditation, and spiritual healing and prayer.

**Hypnosis**

[**Hypnosis**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term178) is a psychological state that results from a social interaction in which one person (the hypnotist) suggests to another (the hypnotized person) that certain thoughts, feelings, perceptions, or behaviors will occur. Hypnosis is most often used to treat pain.

**hypnosis**

A social interaction in which one person (the hypnotist) suggests to another that certain thoughts, feelings, perceptions, or behaviors will occur.

Depending on the hypnotherapist, a variety of cognitive processes may come into play during a session of hypnosis, including focused attention, relaxation, imagery, expectation, and role-playing. The most salient feature of hypnosis is the *hypnotic trance*, which is a waking state of attentive and focused concentration in which the subject becomes detached from his or her surroundings and becomes absorbed by the hypnotist’s suggestions.

**The Power of Suggestion**

**The power of hypnosis resides not in the hypnotist, but in the subject’s openness to suggestion.**

SuperStock/Alamy

**Hypnosis and Pain**

A typical hypnosis intervention for pain involves several overlapping stages:

* A prehypnotic stage, in which the therapist builds rapport with the subject
* The use of suggestions and imagery to induce relaxation and the focused attention of the hypnotic trance
* The treatment stage, which may involve various kinds of suggestions and imagery to reduce the experience of pain
* A “consolidation phase” that may incorporate *posthypnotic suggestions* to be carried out after the hypnosis session has ended
* A posthypnotic stage, in which the patient is awakened, given additional instructions, and released. In addition, the hypnotherapist may train patients in self-hypnosis so they can practice the therapy at home.

**Does Hypnosis Work?**

Physiologically, hypnosis resembles other forms of imagery and deep relaxation because it is accompanied by a generalized decrease in sympathetic nervous system activity, a decrease in oxygen consumption and carbon dioxide elimination, a lowering of blood pressure and heart rate, and an increase in certain kinds of brain-wave activity. This suggests to health psychologists that hypnotic phenomena reflect the workings of normal consciousness (Spanos & Coe, 1992). We all probably flow naturally in and out of hypnotic-like states all the time—for example, while watching a mind-numbing television program (Gardea, Gatchel, & Robinson, 2004). Many researchers believe that people often move into trancelike states of focused concentration when they are under stress, such as when they are about to experience an uncomfortable treatment. During such moments, when a person in a position of authority issues an instruction, it may have as strong an effect as a posthypnotic suggestion. Those who are most likely to report pain relief from hypnosis also tend to be highly suggestible, fantasy-prone people and to be very responsive to authority figures. Evidence from electroencephalograph (EEG) recordings suggests that there are indeed differences in frontal lobe and temporal lobe activity between individuals who are high and low in hypnotizability.

**“In childhood, fantasizers had at least one, but usually many, imaginary companions often drawn from storybook characters, real-life playmates who had moved away, and pets and toys whom they believed could talk. One of my subjects had seen the movie *Camelot* as a child and, for two years, imagined being the son of Arthur and Guinevere, commanding the King’s court.”**

**—Deirdre Barrett, hypnotherapist**

For highly hypnotizable people, hypnosis does appear to be more powerful than a placebo for coping with pain (Patterson, Jensen, & Montgomery, 2010). For people who are low in hypnotizability, hypnotic suggestions of analgesia are no more effective than drug placebos (Miller, Barabasz, & Barabasz, 1991). For people who are easily hypnotized, however, hypnosis can be an effective intervention for migraine and tension headaches (Milling, 2008), pain associated with the care of burn wounds (Askay and others, 2007), pain associated with surgery and other invasive medical procedures, and the pain of childbirth (Cyna, McAuliffe, & Andrew, 2004). Hypnosis seems to be most effective in helping people manage acute pain rather than chronic pain.

**Relaxation and Meditation**

As noted in other chapters, relaxation and meditation are related therapies that have proved successful in helping some patients cope with, and recover from, a number of medical conditions. *Meditation* refers to a variety of techniques or practices intended to focus or control attention (NCCAM, 2010). Those who practice *mindfulness meditation* learn to pay nonjudgmental, in-the-moment attention to changing perceptions and thoughts. Conversely, in *transcendental meditation*, the person focuses awareness on a single object or on a word or short phrase, called a *mantra*. Proponents of meditation claim that its practice can influence the experience of chronic illness positively and can serve as a primary, secondary, and/or tertiary prevention strategy (Bonadonna, 2003).

In his classic experiment on relaxation, Herbert Benson (1993) fitted experienced practitioners of transcendental meditation with measurement devices to record changes in a number of physiological functions, including oxygen consumption—a reliable indicator of the body’s overall metabolic state. After recording the participants’ physiological state for a 20-minute baseline period during which they simply sat in a quiet resting position, Benson instructed the participants to begin meditating. The participants were not permitted to change their posture or activity; they simply changed their thoughts to maintain a meditative focus. Following the meditation period, which also lasted 20 minutes, they were instructed to return to their normal state of thinking. The participants consumed significantly less oxygen while meditating than they did in the premeditation period ([**Figure 15.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F15-2)). Other changes occurred during meditation as well: Breathing slowed from a rate of 14 or 15 breaths per minute to approximately 10 or 11 breaths, and brain-wave patterns included more low-frequency alpha, theta, and delta waves—waves associated with rest and relaxation—and significantly fewer high-frequency beta waves associated with higher states of alertness. In addition, during meditation, the level of lactate (a chemical that has been linked to anxiety) in the participants’ bloodstream decreased dramatically.

**Figure 15.2: Oxygen Consumption during Transcendental Meditation**

**The body’s metabolic rate, reflected in the amount of oxygen consumed, decreased significantly in experienced meditators when they switched from simply resting (Before) to meditating (During); it rose when they stopped meditating (After).**

**Source:** Benson, H. (1993). The relaxation response. In D. Goleman & J. Gurin (Eds.), *Mind-body medicine* (pp. 233–257). New York: Consumer Reports Books.

Relaxation, meditation, and other *physiological self-regulation* techniques are effective in helping to manage a variety of disorders (NCCAM, 2010). Recall from [**Chapter 5**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch05) that *mindfulness-based stress reduction* (*MBSR*) and *mindfulness-based cognitive therapy* (*MBCT*) have been used to improve people’s ability to self-regulate negative reactions to stress. MBSR and MBCT have been extensively tested in randomized clinical trials (RCTs) using a standard eight-week instructional format focused on three somatically focused techniques in mediation: body scan, sitting meditation, and mindful yoga (Fjorback and others, 2011). For instance, the first two weeks of the eight-week ST-mindfulness training program involves practice devoted to a meditative body scan of “moving a focused spotlight of attention from one part of the body to another.” This exercise presumably enables practitioners to learn to “control the attention spotlight” even when focusing on painful sensations.

Research has shown that the benefits of mindfulness meditation are far-reaching, from minimizing pain sensitivity to helping people regulate their emotions. Indeed, for patients with chronic pain, meditation is effective, according to a National Institutes of Health review (Lebovits, 2007). For low back pain, relaxation training seems to be more effective than placebo medications or biofeedback (Stuckey, Jacobs, & Goldfarb, 1986). In another study, compared to a control group, patients who received a single hour of relaxation instruction the night before undergoing spinal surgery later required less pain medication, complained less to nurses, and had shorter hospital stays (Lawlis and others, 1985).

A recent study demonstrated the pain-relieving benefits of mindfulness training for people inflammatory rheumatic joint diseases (Zangl and others, 2011). The study included 73 people with rheumatoid arthritis between ages 20 and 70. Half were randomly assigned to perform mindfulness exercises in 10 group sessions for 15 weeks, as well as another session six months after the 10 sessions were completed. The remaining participants received conventional treatment for the condition, as well as a CD that taught them how to do mindfulness exercises. In this particular study, mindfulness training aimed to help people concentrate on their own thoughts, experiences, and pain in the moment, without actively trying to avoid them or evaluate them. At the end of the study, the people who had the group mindfulness training scored significantly lower in measurements of pain, stress, and fatigue than people who didn’t have the training.

Based on multiple RCTs, there is good evidence that mindfulness training is also effective in preventing depression (Piet and Hougaard, 2011); improving quality of life in chronic pain conditions such as fibromyalgia (Schmidt and others, 2011) and low back pain (Morone, Greco, and Weiner, 2008); in chronic functional disorders such as irritable bowel syndrome (Gaylord and others, 2011); and in illnesses such as cancer (Speca and others, 2000) and multiple sclerosis (Grossman and others, 2013). One remarkable study reported that mindfulness meditation also slows the progression of HIV disease, as measured by CD4 T cell count (see [**Chapter 12**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch12); Creswell and others, 2009). ST-mindfulness also helps people cope with difficult life situations such as caring for a loved one with Alzheimer’s disease (Epstein-Lubow and others, 2006).

A smaller group of researchers have suggested that relaxation and meditation are no more effective than placebos in modulating physiological responses. Daniel Eisenberg and his colleagues (1993), for instance, performed a meta-analysis of research on the effects of relaxation, meditation, and biofeedback on blood pressure levels in patients with hypertension. As shown in [**Figure 15.3**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/F15-3), compared to patients who received no treatment or were in a wait-list control group, patients receiving the CAM therapies showed a statistically (and clinically) significant reduction in both systolic and diastolic blood pressure. However, compared to a credible placebo intervention (pseudomeditation or sham biofeedback), the CAM therapies showed a smaller blood pressure effect that was neither statistically nor clinically significant. The analysis also showed that no single CAM technique was more effective than any other in reducing blood pressure.

**Figure 15.3: Relaxation Therapy and Hypertension**

**A meta-analysis of 26 control trials involving 1264 hypertensive patients showed that CAM interventions based on relaxation training, meditation, and biofeedback were significantly more effective than no treatment in reducing systolic and diastolic blood pressure. Compared with credible placebo treatment, however, CAM interventions were much less effective; the difference between the treatments was statistically and clinically insignificant.**

**Source:** Adapted from Eisenberg, D.M., Delbanco, T.L., Berkey, C.S., Kaptchuk, T.J., Kupelnick, B., Kuhl, J., & Chalmers, T.C. (1993). Cognitive behavioral techniques for hypertension: Are they effective? *Annals of Internal Medicine, 118*, 964–972.

**How Might Relaxation and Meditation Promote Health?**

Just how relaxation or meditation might promote health is the subject of ongoing debate (Ospina and others, 2007). One suggestion is that the relaxation at the center of these therapies relieves stress, muscle tension, anxiety, and negative emotionality, all of which might exacerbate physical symptoms and increase a person’s vulnerability to ill health.

Researchers also have suggested that relaxation and meditation may alter a person’s emotional response to symptoms such as pain. “I’m still in constant pain,” notes one woman, who joined the pain reduction program at the University of Massachusetts after a bad fall left her with neck and back injuries and fibromyalgia. “Meditation makes the pain more bearable. I have less pain, muscles are more relaxed, and I have much better mobility” (Eisenberg and others, 1998). This makes sense, according to mind–body therapy advocates, because these techniques alter the way that pain sufferers respond to painful sensations and the way that they feel about them. Relaxation interventions often teach pain sufferers to reinterpret painful sensations, regarding them as “warm, even pleasant” rather than “burning and unpleasant” (Eisenberg and others, 1998).

In addition, relaxation and meditation may bolster the immune system. In one study of 45 elderly people in independent living facilities, one group received relaxation training three times each week, another received social contact three times a week, and the third received no training or social contact. After a month, the relaxation group showed a significant increase in immune functioning, while there were no significant changes in the groups that received social contact or no contact (Kiecolt-Glaser, Glaser, & Williger, 1985). More recently, researchers have reported that meditation is associated with increased activity in cortical areas associated with positive emotions and increased antibody response to influenza vaccine compared to control group subjects (Davidson and others, 2003; Newberg and Iversen, 2005).

**Mind–Body Interventions**

**Relaxation, meditation, and other physiological self-regulation techniques are effective in helping to manage a variety of disorders.**

Radius/SuperStock

Using fMRI and other neuroimaging techniques, other research studies have begun to assemble the brain mechanisms by which meditation modulates the experience of pain. These studies indicate that mindfulness meditation engages several brain mechanisms that subjectively influence the pain experience. For instance, mindfulness training may trigger changes in limbic areas involved in emotional regulation. One study reported decreased amygdala activation after mindfulness training in social anxiety patients who were exposed to socially threatening stimuli (Goldin & Gross, 2010).

Other scientists believe that mindfulness practices are accompanied by reduced pain-related activation of areas in the somatosensory cortex and increased activity in the anterior cingulate cortex (ACC), which, as we have seen, are brain areas involved in pain processing. In one study, mindfulness meditation in the presence of painful stimuli reduced pain intensity ratings significantly (by 40 percent) compared to control conditions (Zeidan and others, 2011). Meditation also was associated with *thalamic deactivation*, suggesting a gating effect between incoming sensory signals and executive-order brain areas. In another study, mindfulness practitioners were able to reduce the unpleasantness and anxiety associated with painful stimuli significantly, by 22 percent and 29 percent, respectively, compared to controls (Gard and others, 2011). These benefits were associated with decreased activation in the prefrontal cortex during painful stimuli and increased activation in the ACC while anticipating pain.

According to other researchers, mindfulness practice—the ability to observe your thoughts and feelings from an objective distance—works as something of a “volume control” for sensations, giving experienced practitioners better control over how the brain processes pain and emotions. In one study, Brown University scientists observed that when people focused their attention on sensations in the left hand, the corresponding “map” for the hand in the cortex showed a significant decrease in the amplitude of alpha brain waves. When the participants shifted their attention away from the body part, the alpha wave amplitude increased. Subsequent studies showed that participants who received eight weeks of mindfulness training produced quicker and larger changes in alpha wave amplitude during the attention shift than did untrained control participants (Orenstein, 2013).

Perhaps most remarkable of all, scientists have reported that mindfulness meditation is linked to actual physical changes in the brain—beneficial changes that enhance the transmission of neural signals (Tang and others, 2012). Brain imaging researchers from the University of Oregon reported that two weeks after practicing mindfulness meditation, the study participants had an increase in *axonal density* in their brain’s anterior cingulate cortex (ACC). After a month, there were even more increases in neural connections, as well as an increase in the myelin coating of axons in the ACC.

**Biofeedback**

First described by Neal Miller in the late 1960s, [**biofeedback**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term51) is a technique for converting certain supposedly involuntary physiological responses—such as skin temperature, muscle activity, heart rate, and blood pressure—into electrical signals and providing visual or auditory feedback about them (Miller, 1969). It is based on the principle that we learn to perform a specific response when we receive information (feedback) about the consequences of that response and then make appropriate adjustments.

**biofeedback**

A system that provides audible or visible feedback information regarding involuntary physiological states.

Using an electronic monitoring device that detects and amplifies internal responses, biofeedback training begins by helping the person gain awareness of a maladaptive response, such as tense forehead muscles. Next, the person focuses attention on a tone, light, or some other signal that identifies desirable changes in the internal response. By attempting to control this biofeedback signal, the patient learns to control his or her physiological state. Finally, the individual learns to transfer control from the laboratory setting to everyday life.

The most common biofeedback technique in clinical use today is *electromyography (EMG) feedback*. EMG biofeedback detects skeletal muscle activity by measuring muscle tension via the electrical discharge of muscle fibers. Electrodes are attached to the skin over the muscles to be monitored. The biofeedback machine responds with an auditory signal that reflects the electrical activity (tension) of the muscle being measured. EMG biofeedback to decrease muscle tension has been used to treat facial tics, spasmodic movements, and other muscular disorders. In addition, it has been used to treat headaches and low back pain.

Another common technique, *thermal biofeedback*, is based on the principle that skin temperature tends to vary in relation to a person’s perceived level of stress. The rationale for this technique is that high stress, which often causes blood vessels in the skin to constrict, may be linked to cooler surface skin temperatures. Accordingly, by placing a temperature-sensitive instrument on the skin’s surface (most often the fingertips), people sometimes are able to raise their skin temperature by monitoring an auditory or visual feedback signal (Sedlacek & Taub, 1996). Thermal biofeedback is often used to help people cope with stress and pain. It is also frequently used with migraine and tension headache patients (Compas and others, 1998).

**How Effective Is Biofeedback?**

Biofeedback has proved to be somewhat beneficial in treating stress-related health problems in some people. For example, research support is relatively strong for alleviation of tension headaches (presumed to involve chronic muscle tension in the neck and head) and migraine headaches (Nestoriuc & Martin, 2007). Other disorders for which there is at least some research support to justify the therapeutic use of biofeedback include asthma, fibromyalgia, irritable bowl syndrome, urinary incontinence, tinnitus, epileptic seizures, and motion sickness (Moss & Gunkelman, 2002).

Despite some promising results, several important questions remain about the medical effectiveness of biofeedback. To date, there have been relatively few well-controlled clinical outcome trials using large numbers of patients who have confirmed medical conditions. Two limitations have emerged in clinical evaluations of biofeedback (Steptoe, 1997). First, people often cannot generalize the training that they receive in clinical settings to everyday situations. Second, research has not confirmed that biofeedback itself enables people to control their internal, involuntary responses. Even when biofeedback is effective, it is not clear why, which raises the possibility that relaxation, suggestion, an enhanced sense of control, or even a placebo effect may be operating (Gatchel, 1997).

The few available studies on the use of biofeedback for maladies such as low back pain and hypertension have produced mixed results. For instance, although biofeedback alone may be no more effective than simple relaxation training (Roelofs and others, 2002) or a drug placebo in treating low back pain (Bush, Ditto, & Feuerstein, 1985), when biofeedback is combined with cognitive behavioral therapy, it may convey some advantages (Flor & Birbaumer, 1993). And although psychologists have reported some success in using biofeedback to treat patients with mild hypertension (Nakao and others, 1997; Paran, Amir, & Yaniv, 1996), the effect apparently is short-lived, disappearing after only a few months (McGrady, 1994). However, because stress is often linked to either momentary or long-term increases in systolic and diastolic blood pressure, biofeedback has been shown to be an effective *complementary* therapy—combined with lifestyle modifications in diet, weight, and exercise—for reducing patients’ dependence on medication in managing hypertension (Goebel, Viol, & Orebaugh, 1993).

After reviewing a number of studies, Paul Lehrer and his colleagues (1994) concluded that although biofeedback can help reduce autonomic arousal, anxiety, and stress-related disorders in *some*people, it conveys no advantage over other behavioral techniques (such as simple relaxation training) that are easier and less expensive to use. The positive effects of biofeedback are more general than its pioneers had originally believed and may be the result of enhanced relaxation, a placebo effect, the passage of time, or suggestion, rather than direct control of specific targets or the physical underpinnings of stress (Gilbert & Moss, 2003). The National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM) considers biofeedback a mind–body therapy that can offer benefits similar to hypnosis, relaxation training, and meditation. Even though researchers aren’t sure exactly how or why biofeedback works, most people who benefit have conditions that appear to be brought on or worsened by stress. Moreover, as with other CAM therapies, some people choose to try biofeedback instead of drugs because of the lack of side effects.

**Chiropractic**

The two most common forms of therapeutic manipulation today *—chiropractic* and *osteopathy*—are the only major forms of CAM originally developed in the United States. The word [**chiropractic**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term78) is derived from the Greek roots *cheir* (“hand”) and *praktikos* (“done by”). Its actual practice can be traced back to September 1895, when Daniel David Palmer, a magnetic healer in Iowa, supposedly cured a patient’s deafness by realigning the man’s spine. Two years later, Palmer founded the first school of chiropractic, based on his belief that the human body has an innate self-healing power and seeks a state of *homeostasis*, or balance. Imbalance is believed to be caused by misalignments of bones within joints or abnormal movements that interfere with the flow of nervous impulses. By manipulating the bones, muscles, and joints, particularly in the spine, chiropractors work to improve the function of the neuromusculoskeletal system and restore homeostasis.

**chiropractic**

A complementary and alternative medicine approach to healing that is concerned with the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of disorders of the neuromusculoskeletal system.

Although Palmer was enough of an ideologue to date things *B.C*. (before chiropractic) and *A.C*. (after chiropractic), osteopathy is actually older. Andrew Taylor Sill, the allopathic physician who founded osteopathy, began teaching its principles in 1892, three years before Palmer’s first chiropractic adjustment (Fugh-Berman, 1997). Although osteopathy is a more complete system of medicine (osteopaths can prescribe drugs, perform surgery, and do just about anything else that MDs can do), chiropractic always has been more pervasive. According to the 2007 *National Health Interview Survey*, which included a comprehensive survey of CAM use by Americans, about 8 percent of adults and nearly 3 percent of children had received chiropractic or osteopathic manipulation in the past 12 months.

Today, chiropractors are divided into two major groups, each of which has its own governing body. *Straight chiropractors* are traditionalists who continue to believe that misalignments cause pain and that manipulation is the best form of treatment. *Mixers* combine traditional manipulation along with a broad range of other CAM therapies, including massage, physical therapy, and nutritional therapy. Straight chiropractors maintain that chiropractic treatment can be beneficial for a wide range of ailments, from asthma to lower back pain to impotence. Mixers, on the other hand, tend to recognize its effectiveness for a more limited range of conditions, especially acute low back pain, headaches, and neck pain.

[**Osteopathic medicine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term244) is a branch of American medicine with a distinct philosophy and approach to patient care. A doctor of osteopathy (DO) receives the same basic four years of medical education as a doctor of medicine (MD), followed by three to eight years of *graduate medical education*consisting of internships, residencies, and fellowships. DOs practice a “whole person” approach to health care and receive special training in the musculoskeletal system to understand better how that system influences the condition of all other body systems. In addition, DOs are trained to identify and correct structural problems, which presumably assist the body’s natural tendency toward health and self-healing. Both DOs and MDs can practice in any specialty of medicine, such as surgery, pediatrics, or family medicine.

**osteopathic medicine**

A form of medical practice that provides all the benefits of conventional allopathic medicine, including prescription drugs and surgery, and emphasizes the interrelationship between the structure and function of the human body.

**What to Expect during a Chiropractic Examination**

Before performing any type of adjustment, the chiropractor will *palpate*, or feel, your vertebrae to detect misalignment of bones or muscular weaknesses. He or she also may test your reflexes to check neural functioning. X-rays may be taken to reveal any underlying joint problems that might interfere with treatment or be worsened by chiropractic adjustment.

During a treatment, the chiropractor will adjust your joints one at a time, using a slight thrusting movement that moves a restricted joint just beyond its limited range of motion. You may be asked to lie on a padded table for a spinal adjustment or to sit or stand for an adjustment of the neck and other joints. Although the treatments are usually painless, it is not uncommon to hear joints crack during an adjustment.

**Does Chiropractic Work?**

Critics charge that chiropractic treatments are at best useless because misaligned vertebrae are common and harmless, and they usually clear up on their own; and at worst, chiropractic manipulation can cause severe damage to the body if there are fractures or tumors present. Others question the premise that a sound nervous system is the foundation of overall health, pointing to quadriplegics, who often have healthy internal organs despite extensive nerve damage. Some critics accept chiropractic treatment as effective for back pain but argue that it should be restricted to this disorder because there is insufficient evidence to support its efficacy in treating other conditions. Some people use chiropractors as their primary care gatekeepers, which is a cause for concern because chiropractors are not all trained to diagnose all medical conditions.

Despite such criticism, chiropractic remains very popular with the general public, forcing Congress, in 1974, to pass legislation requiring Medicare to pay for chiropractic services. Although still considered a form of alternative medicine by many conventional doctors, chiropractic has achieved mainstream acceptance and is licensed in all 50 states. As another testimonial to the growing acceptability of chiropractic, the services of chiropractors generally are covered not only by Medicare and Medicaid, but also by about 85 percent of major insurance plans.

Evidence for chiropractic’s effectiveness in treating back pain has been accumulating since 1952, when a Harvard study reported that this was the most common reason for visiting a chiropractor and that one-fifth of back pain sufferers have used chiropractic successfully (Eisenberg and others, 1993). There have been many controlled clinical trials of *spinal manipulation* (*SM*), but their results are inconsistent and the studies are often of poor quality (Ernst & Canter, 2006). One recent review of such trials reported that with the possible exception of back pain, chiropractic SM has not been shown to be effective for any medical condition. For back pain, the review found strong evidence that SM is similar in effect to conventional care supplemented with exercise. The researchers went on to suggest that many guidelines recommend chiropractic care for low back pain because no therapy has been shown to make a real difference (Ernst, 2008). However, another review found serious flaws in this study and concluded that SM and mobilization are at least as effective for chronic low back pain as other commonly used treatments (Bronfort and others, 2008).

**Naturopathic Medicine**

[**Naturopathic medicine**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term228) aims to provide holistic, or whole-body, health care by returning humans to their “natural state.” This “back-to-nature” movement has been traced to German doctors such as Vincent Preissnitz (1799–1851), who balked at the harsh treatment used by medical doctors. While medical doctors were “treating” their patients with mercury, bloodletting, and other “modern cures,” Preissnitz and other German “nature doctors” were taking patients for walks in the woods and recommending fasting to “detoxify the body,” followed by a simple diet and the healing powers of fresh air, sunlight, and bathing in natural hot springs.

**naturopathic medicine**

The system that aims to provide holistic health care by drawing from several traditional healing systems, including homeopathy, herbal remedies, and traditional Oriental medicine.

At about the same time, a variation of naturopathic medicine called the *hygienic movement* was becoming popular in the United States. This movement, founded by Sylvester Graham (originator of the graham cracker), advocated a strict vegetarian diet, herbal treatments, and an abundance of whole grains. Another dietary mogul who regarded conventional medicine as a fundamentally wrongheaded attempt to improve on nature through artificial means was John Harvey Kellogg, best known as the founder of Kellogg’s cereal company.

Benedict Lust (1869–1945), another advocate of natural treatments, coined the word *naturopath*. A German immigrant, Lust also opened the world’s first health food store in New York City around 1920. From then until the start of World War II, naturopathic medicine was a popular alternative to conventional medicine. By the 1950s, however, naturopathy was forced out of popularity by the increasingly powerful American Medical Association (AMA) and by the discovery of penicillin and other potent antibiotics that were effective against many life-threatening diseases.

With the more recent “return-to-nature” movements, naturopathy has regained some of its earlier popularity. Naturopaths follow seven basic principles, which are in keeping with the major ideals of CAM: *help nature heal, do no harm, find the underlying cause, treat the whole person, encourage prevention, recognize wellness*, and *act as a teacher*. Naturopathic medicine integrates herbal medicine, clinical nutrition, homeopathy, and sometimes other CAM therapies with modern medical methods of diagnosis and treatment.

There are only three accredited naturopathic medical schools in the United States. Elements of naturopathic medicine, therefore, seem destined either to be absorbed into conventional medicine or to become a separate branch of it. Although naturopathic physicians are licensed to practice in only 11 states, the majority of other states allow them to practice in limited ways. Naturopathic practice is regulated by state law, but only a few insurance providers cover naturopathic health care.

**Herbs and Other Natural Products**

People have used plants to treat physical, mental, and behavioral conditions since the dawn of time, and all known cultures have ancient histories of folk medicine that include the use of herbs. This knowledge was often grouped into a collection called a *pharmacopoeia*. The ancient Greek and Roman cultures developed extensive pharmacopoeias. Until the thirteenth century in Europe, *herbology* was traditionally a woman’s art. When the practice of healing was taken over by male-dominated medical schools as early as the thirteenth century, herbology lost favor, and many women herbalists were prosecuted as witches.

In the United States, physicians relied on medicinal plants as primary medicines through the 1930s. In fact, botany was once an important part of the medical school curriculum. But during the second half of the twentieth century, the use of medicinal plants declined due to developments in the ability to produce pharmaceuticals synthetically.

Today, some pharmacists create herbal compounds based on prescriptions written by doctors or naturopaths, but most herbs are marketed as food supplements because it is illegal for doctors to recommend an herb as a treatment for anything. Doing so is considered the same as prescribing an illegal drug. In practice, of course, herbs are widely used as treatments for numerous health conditions, with annual sales reaching into the billions of dollars.

Another natural product that is especially popular today are [**probiotics**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term272)—live microorganisms (e.g., bacteria) that are either the same as or similar to microorganisms found naturally in the human body and may have health benefits. Also referred to as “good bacteria,” probiotics are available in oral products such as capsules, tablets, powders, and yogurts, as well as other products such as creams. Although some probiotic formulations have shown promise in research, and probiotics usually have few side effects, strong empirical evidence to support specific uses of probiotics for most conditions is lacking and the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has not approved any health claims for probiotics (NCCAM, 2013).

**probiotics**

Bacteria that help maintain the natural balance of organisms (microflora) in the intestines and help promote a healthy digestive system.

**Types of Herbs**

Derived from the leaves, stems, roots, bark, flowers, fruits, seeds, and sap of plants, herbs (also called *botanicals*) can be prepared or marketed in different forms—as supplements, medicines, or teas—depending on their intended use. Herbs can be used as tonics and remedies for virtually every known ailment and condition. Herbal teas can be steeped to varying strengths. Roots, bark, and other plant parts can be simmered into potent solutions called *decoctions*. Today, many herbs (in the form of tablets and capsules) are available in health food stores, pharmacies, and even grocery stores. Highly concentrated alcohol-based herb extracts called *tinctures* are also popular.

Herbs play a central role in Chinese medicine, ayurvedic medicine, Native American medicine, and Western herbal medicine. Although many Native Americans prefer to consult an allopathic doctor for health conditions that require antibiotics or surgery, botanical remedies continue to play a major role in the treatment of various ailments. The herbs prescribed by Native American medicine women, medicine men, or [**shamans**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/term310), vary from tribe to tribe, depending on the condition being treated and what herbs are locally available. Some shamans direct that herbs be eaten; others instruct that they be brewed as a tea. In most healing rites, sage, sweet grass, cedar, or other herbs are burned over the patient, allowing the restorative smoke to drift over the person’s body.

**shaman**

A general term used for the practitioner of folk medicine, often through the use of herbs and a range of rituals to cure; also referred to as “medicine man” or “medicine woman.”

Western herbs are categorized in several ways. They may be grouped according to their potency. *Tonics*, or normalizers, have a gentle healing effect on the body, whereas *effectors* have potent actions and are used to treat illness. In addition, herbs are often grouped according to their effects on the body. These categories include anti-inflammatories, diuretics, and laxatives, as well as other, lesser-known classes such as diaphoretics, which promote perspiration and nervousness, which allegedly strengthen the nervous system. Herbs also are often grouped according to which of the body’s systems they affect. The cardiovascular system, for example, is said to respond to ginkgo, buckwheat, linden, and other herbs that are touted as being able to strengthen blood vessels.

**Herbal Medicines**

**Medicine sellers, like this one in Menghan, Yunan Province, China, set up stalls in the open market to display the many herbs used to treat anything—from a toothache to low back pain to cancer.**

Michael S. Yamashita/Corbis

**Do Herbs Work?**

Although roughly 25 percent of our pharmaceutical drugs are derived from herbs, physicians often believe that herbs in general are ineffective and potentially dangerous (McCarthy, 2001). Still, there is at least some evidence that plant-based medicines are effective in treating certain conditions. For example, ginger’s proven anti-inflammatory and anti-rheumatic properties, coming from both human and animal trials, suggest that it may be effective in treating arthritis and perhaps the pain associated with other inflammatory conditions (Rahnama and others, 2012). As another example, *capsaicin*, an extract from the cayenne pepper, is effective in relieving the pain of osteoarthritis. As a third example, *aloe vera* is a succulent plant that is effective in promoting healing, especially of burns (Maenthaisong and others, 2007).

On the other hand, the evidence for the effectiveness of some popular herbs is mixed at best. Recently, a panel of experts convened by the National Institutes of Health reported that exercise, a healthy diet, and supplements may help prevent Alzheimer’s disease and some other chronic conditions but that there is “insufficient evidence to support the use of pharmaceuticals or dietary supplements to prevent cognitive decline” (NIH Consensus Development Program, 2010).

Results such as these make it impossible to offer a definitive, across-the-board answer to the question, “Do herbs work?” At present, the safest conclusion seems to be that certain herbs may be beneficial for certain conditions. In general, however, there simply is not enough good evidence that herbs work as well as many would like to believe (Gardea, Gatchel, & Robinson, 2004). Furthermore, compared to the often-dramatic power of pharmaceutical drugs, herbs usually have fairly subtle effects. *Standardized extracts*, which have long been available in Europe and increasingly so in the United States, do seem to be more effective, perhaps because the dosages used are generally higher than those found in dried herbs.

Many advocates of herbal medicine claim that the presence of many different active and inactive ingredients in synthetic drugs—known and unknown—makes botanical products safer and more effective. This is mostly speculation, however, because there have been few clinical trials directly comparing herbs and pharmaceuticals in their effectiveness in treating specific diseases and conditions (Relman, 1998). Furthermore, advocates of herbal medicine typically neglect to mention the possible adverse side effects created by the lack of purity and standardization of some herbal products.

**Food Supplement Therapy**

The use of vitamins and food supplements is a second major emphasis of naturopathy and is perhaps the best known of all CAM treatments. Look through nearly any popular magazine, and you are sure to find at least one recommended supplement, such as vitamin E, to deter atherosclerosis and prevent premature aging of the skin, or folic acid, to support the immune system. Although most medical experts have yet to endorse nutritional supplementation fully, an estimated 70 percent of adults in the United States take vitamin supplements, 100 million using them regularly (Gardea, Gatchel, & Robinson, 2004).

There is no longer any doubt that food supplements can have important health benefits. There is a large body of convincing research evidence that materials derived from foods can be effective in treating a number of diseases. For example, niacin is effective in lowering cholesterol levels, and glucosamine sulfate is effective in reducing the pain of arthritis. Moreover, food supplements often trigger fewer adverse side effects than do drugs of comparable effectiveness.

Food supplements are generally used in two ways: to correct dietary deficiencies (*nutritional medicine*) or in immense doses, to trigger a specific therapeutic effect (*megadose therapy*). As nutritional medicine, they are useful in correcting fairly common deficiencies in many essential nutrients, including deficiencies in calcium, folic acid, iron, magnesium, zinc, and vitamins A, B6, C, D, and E. Although conventional biomedicine supports eating a balanced diet or, short of that, using nutritional medicine to correct deficiencies in vitamins and minerals, the use of megadose therapy is more controversial. Linus Pauling’s famous recommendation to take 4000 to 10,000 milligrams per day of vitamin C is a prime example. According to naturopaths, this huge dose—equivalent to eating 40 to 100 oranges per day, or 10 to 15 times the official recommended daily allowance (RDA)—is needed because the stresses of modern life and the effects of environmental toxins cause nutritional needs to increase beyond what a normal diet can provide. This claim remains controversial among nutritionists.

**Dietary Medicine**

Naturopaths have always believed that fruits, vegetables, nuts, and whole grains are “natural foods,” and that any refinement of these foods reduces their natural vitality and health-promoting properties. In contrast, until quite recently, conventional biomedicine paid little attention to diet. Only in the past two decades have medical researchers begun to take seriously the idea that what people eat has a major impact on their health. As discussed in [**Chapter 8**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/ch08), the overwhelming evidence from large-scale epidemiological research has shown that diet plays a central role in preventing most of the major chronic diseases, including heart disease, strokes, and cancer of the breast, colon, and prostate.

**Natural Product Therapies**

**Supplements and other forms of CAM seem especially effective with cyclical conditions that naturally improve over time, perhaps because people seek out a supplement when symptoms are worst and presume that it worked when they feel better.**

Alex Segre/Alamy

Despite this agreement, naturopaths typically go well beyond conventional medicine’s recommendations regarding diet. In addition to calling for dramatic reductions in the consumption of meat and saturated fat, they decry the use of food preservatives and the artificial fertilizers, pesticides, and hormones used in modern farming. Instead, they recommend eating organic foods that are produced without these adulterations.

Another popular dietary concept in naturopathic medicine has to do with the idea of *food allergy*or, more accurately, *food sensitivity*. Diets based on avoiding “trigger” foods such as sugar, wheat, or dairy products are prescribed for many conditions, from arthritis to chronic fatigue (Wheelwright, 2001). When a food sensitivity is suspected, naturopaths typically place the patient on a highly restricted elimination diet of a small number of foods (including rice, sweet potatoes, turkey, and applesauce) known to seldom cause allergic reactions. If symptoms begin to clear up after several weeks on the restricted diet, foods are gradually added back into the diet, one at a time, while the patient keeps a journal of symptoms such as sneezing and headaches.

But even naturopaths disagree about the elements of a healthy diet. Proponents of *raw food theory*, a naturopathic concept dating back more than 100 years, believe that cooking foods destroys the “vital life force” (along with the vitamins, enzymes, and micronutrients) found in food. In contrast, the popular theory of *macrobiotics* condemns raw foods as unhealthy, considering them a cause of multiple sclerosis, rheumatoid arthritis, and other diseases. Macrobiotic nutritionists insist that all foods, including vegetables, should be cooked.

**Do Dietary Modifications and Food Supplements Work?**

Epidemiological and experimental studies in animals and humans have provided substantial evidence that diet (in the form of foods or as supplements) can have a major effect on risk factors for certain diseases and the progression of disease. For example, over the past 10 years, plant-based diets, dietary fiber supplementation, and antioxidant supplementation have become increasingly accepted treatments for managing cardiovascular disease. In fact, along with low-fat diets, aerobic exercise, and stress reduction, these treatments, which were considered alternative therapies at one time, are considered today as either complementary or a part of standard medical practice for reducing the risk of cardiovascular disease (Haskell, Luskin, & Marvasti, 1999).

Similarly, low-fat, high-fiber, basically vegetarian diets such as the *Pritikin diet* and the *Ornish diet*have been demonstrated to be effective in lowering blood glucose levels in people with diabetes. In one study, 60 percent of people with Type 2 diabetes on the Ornish diet no longer required insulin (McGrady & Horner, 1999). A number of epidemiological studies also have suggested a possible decrease in the prevalence of cancer in people who consume higher amounts of fruits and vegetables, perhaps due to their antioxidant effects (Primack & Spencer, 1996).

Elimination diets, megavitamin supplementation, and diets that focus on replacing trace elements are popular forms of CAM therapy that have been used to treat *attention deficit hyperactivity disorder* (*ADHD*). The *Feingold diet*, for example, eliminates food colors, artificial flavors, and highly processed foods from the ADHD child’s diet, with mixed results in improving symptoms (Kien, 1990). Despite the inconsistency in research results, the American Academy of Pediatrics recently concluded that a low-additive diet is a valid intervention for children with ADHD (Schonwald, 2008).

The value of food supplements, on the other hand, is not so clear. Certain supplements have been proved to be reasonably effective in treating certain conditions—for example, glucosamine sulfate for osteoarthritis and zinc for prostate enlargement. Despite these successes, however, megadose supplements rarely are as powerful as synthetic drugs, and supplement therapy alone usually is inadequate to manage serious health conditions. For instance, a recent review of clinical trials in the treatment of colds with small and large doses of vitamin C concluded that there is no evidence for the efficacy of this vitamin (Hemila, Chalker, & Douglas, 2010).

**Safety Concerns**

As with herbal medicines, the FDA cautions consumers that some unregulated dietary supplements may contain hazardous substances. For example, in January 1999, the FDA asked dietary supplement manufacturers to recall supplements that contained *gamma butyrolactone* (*GBL*), which were sold via the Internet and in health food stores and health clubs. Marketed under such brand names as Blue Nitro, GH Revitalizer, and Revivarant, the popular supplement was supposed to build muscles, reduce weight, and improve athletic and sexual performance. In fact, GBL contains a chemical also found in commercial floor strippers that affects the central nervous system, slows breathing and heart rate, and can lead to seizures, unconsciousness, and coma. GBL has been linked to at least six deaths and adverse health effects in hundreds of other people (National Drug Intelligence Center, 2001).

As another example, contaminants in the once-popular supplement L-tryptophan—touted as a pain reliever, a remedy for insomnia, and an anti-depressant—caused a serious illness, *eosinophilia myalgia syndrome*. In 1989, 30 people died as a result of using this over-the-counter substance (Berge, 1998).

The FDA also warns against the use of certain herbs and food supplements by those who are also taking prescription medications. For instance, in a February 2000 public health advisory, the FDA cautioned that St. John’s wort had been found to reduce the effectiveness of the AIDS drug indinavir by 57 percent (Piscitelli and others, 2000). The FDA also cited a Zurich, Switzerland, study reporting that this popular herbal remedy for depression reduced levels of a transplant rejection drug (cyclosporin), increasing the odds that a heart transplant patient might reject a donated heart (Fugh-Berman, 2000).

**What to Expect from a Visit to a Naturopath**

The herbal medicines, food supplements, and dietary medicines discussed in this section are provided by naturopaths, who function as primary, preventive care doctors. A visit to a naturopath generally begins with a standard physical exam, possibly one that includes conventional blood and urine tests, and even radiology. In addition, naturopaths will spend considerable time recording the patient’s medical history, focusing on the patient’s lifestyle, including diet, exercise level, stress, and even emotional and spiritual issues.

After this initial examination, the patient and naturopath work together to establish a treatment program. Usually, the program emphasizes noninvasive therapies and lifestyle changes such as eliminating unhealthy behaviors. Then the naturopath may prescribe dietary changes, food supplements, and/or herbal medicine for any specific complaints. Depending on where the naturopath practices, conventional drugs, vaccinations, or even surgery may be recommended.

**Does Naturopathy Work?**

Diseases that are strongly affected by lifestyle and environment are among those for which naturopathic treatment most often is reported to be effective. For example, it has been used effectively to treat allergies, chronic infections, fatigue, arthritis, asthma, headache, hypertension, and depression, to name only a few conditions. In a typical case of hypertension, for example, a naturopathic doctor might prescribe a multifaceted treatment that includes dietary changes, vitamin and mineral supplements, herbal medicine, and lifestyle changes designed to reduce stress. For an arthritis sufferer, the regimen might include dietary modifications, herbal medicine, and massage.

Critics of naturopathic medicine raise several concerns. Chief among these is that unsuspecting consumers are flooded with inaccurate or deceptive information carrying extreme claims about the effectiveness of herbs. In addition herbal therapy is criticized for being untested according to pharmaceutical standards. Herbalists reply that because herbs are natural products (and therefore cannot be patented), the extremely expensive testing required of pharmaceutical drugs is unlikely to happen. Proponents point out that the modern pharmaceutical industry grew out of herbal medicine and that many drugs—from the digitalis used to treat heart disease (derived from the foxglove plant) to morphine (from the opium poppy)—still are made from plant extracts. Another concern is safety. For this reason, most herbalists recommend purchasing herbs rather than harvesting them in the wild. Plants have natural variations that can be misleading, and this has caused more than one death from a person’s ingesting a toxic plant that he or she believed to be a beneficial herb.

**Looking Ahead: Complementary and Alternative Medicine in Our Future**

Growing interest in CAM is viewed by some as one of several indications of a major paradigm shift in medicine and health care in the United States. One of the changes is a shift from the traditional view of the provider–patient relationship, in which patients are willing, passive, and dependent, to one in which patients are activist health consumers. These days, patients are more likely to demand and seek out accurate and timely health information on their own. As a result, patients no longer accept their doctors’ recommendations blindly and are more likely to be critical of traditional medicine and to consider (and use) alternative forms of treatment.

Armed with unprecedented access to health information from the Internet, self-help books, and other media, today’s patients are becoming more empowered to manage their own health. Turning to CAM practitioners is a predictable manifestation of this sense of empowerment—choosing your own treatment approach despite what your physician might suggest.

This assessment of changed patient behavior is supported by the results of a 2008 report on the use of CAM published by the National Center for Complementary and Alternative Medicine (NCCAM). The report indicated that most patients (55 percent) who chose to use CAM did so because they believed that CAM would improve their health when used in combination with conventional medical treatments. Relatively few respondents reported using CAM because they believed that conventional treatments would not help (28 percent) or were too expensive (13 percent). For this reason, it may be more accurate to predict that alternative medicine will become more *complementary*—that is, a supplement to allopathic medicine, rather than an alternative or replacement.

Even the government is jumping on the CAM bandwagon. For example, the NIH’s Office of Alternative Medicine has funded numerous research centers to explore, among other topics, CAM and aging, arthritis, cancer, and cardiovascular disease; chiropractic; botanical supplements and women’s health; and acupuncture.

**The Best of Both Worlds**

In the end, no single approach to health care has all the answers; the search for the best solution to a medical condition often requires a willingness to look beyond one remedy or system of treatment. Already, many insurance companies cover certain alternative methods, including acupuncture. And conventional doctors are incorporating alternative therapies into their treatment regimens. The NIH estimates that more than half of all conventional physicians use some form of CAM themselves or refer their patients to such forms of treatment (NCCAM, 2008). As a result, there is a growing movement to provide CAM instruction as a regular part of the medical school curriculum. A survey of American physicians’ knowledge and use of, training in, and acceptance of CAM as legitimate yielded the range of attitudes summarized in [**Table 15.2**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/T15-2). Diet and exercise, biofeedback, and counseling or psychotherapy were used most often.

Thus, health care in the United States is moving toward a more open-minded view of unconventional medicine. Even the AMA has shifted its views toward greater tolerance. In the mid-1970s, the AMA’s official position was that “the fakes, the frauds, and the quackeries need to be identified, exposed, and, if possible, eradicated” (AMA, 1973). By 1995, however, the AMA had substituted “alternative medicine” for “quackery” and passed a resolution encouraging its members to “become better informed regarding the practices and techniques of alternative or complementary medicine” (AMA, 1995). In November 1998, the prestigious *Journal of the American Medical Association* devoted an entire issue to the subject of alternative medicine. And where there once were none, there are now five peer-reviewed journals devoted to alternative medicine.

Still, “let the buyer beware” is sound advice for consumers considering CAM therapies. Statutory requirements for the practice of CAM differ from state to state. Provider-practice acts for massage exist in 22 states. Licensure is now required in 25 states and the District of Columbia. Naturopathy-practice acts exist in 12 states, although each state defines the scope of such practice differently (AANP, 2006).

**The Politics of Medicine**

The growing acceptability of CAM, however, should not be construed as an indication of its complete acceptance by the biomedical community. One survey of 1150 patients, 333 primary care physicians (PCPs), and 241 CAM practitioners revealed growing acceptance of CAM but differing expectations regarding its use in primary care settings (Ben-Ayre & Frenkel, 2008). Patients expected their family physician to refer them to CAM, to have updated knowledge about CAM, and to offer CAM treatment based on appropriate training. When asked about CAM integration into medical care, more patients expected to receive CAM in a primary care setting compared to PCPs’ expectations of prescribing CAM (62% vs. 30%).

Both alternative and conventional medicine are guilty of discounting one another’s approach to health care, and both conventional medicine and alternative medicine are mixtures of good and bad health practices. The best course is to be an informed consumer and to be skeptical about unsupported claims.

Clearly, the best result would be for patients to have access to the “best of both worlds.” Following a conventional medical evaluation and discussion of conventional allopathic options, patients may choose a CAM consultation. But before doing so, the physician (according to Eisenberg, 1997) should

* ensure that the patient recognizes and understands his or her symptoms,
* maintain a record of all symptoms, including the patient’s own opinions,
* review any potential for harmful interactions, and
* plan for a follow-up visit to review CAM effectiveness.

This approach is designed to help keep communication channels open between patient and provider so that the patient receives the most effective and safest treatment.

**Weigh In on Health**

Respond to each question below based on what you learned in the chapter. **(Tip:** Use the items in “[**Summing Up**](https://jigsaw.vitalsource.com/books/9781464193880/content/id/L15-1-42)” to take into account related biological, psychological, and social concerns.)

* **1.** What general opinion did you have about complementary and alternative medicine before you read the chapter? How have the discussions of CAM in this chapter changed your opinion, if at all, on any CAM methods? In particular, what did you read about research on CAM that influenced how you now think about it?
* **2.** Your roommate suffers from chronic headaches, and her medical doctor has not been able to diagnose their cause yet. She is tempted to try hypnosis, acupuncture, a form of meditation and relaxation, or naturopathy. What can you tell her about these methods of CAM from a biopsychosocial perspective? What has research shown about the efficacy of these approaches?
* **3.** Using what you learned about CAM in this chapter, predict a way in which CAM will influence the way that people and providers in the future approach the prevention or treatment of illness, or the maintenance of well-being.

**Summing Up**

**What Is Complementary and Alternative Medicine?**

* **1.** Conventional medicine (also called *Western* or *allopathic medicine*) is health care as practiced by holders of MD (medical doctor) and DO (doctor of osteopathic medicine) degrees and by allied professionals, including physical therapists, psychologists, and registered nurses.
* **2.** The term *alternative medicine* refers to a broad range of therapeutic approaches and philosophies that are generally defined as health care practices that are not taught widely in medical schools, not generally used in hospitals, and not usually reimbursed by insurance companies.
* **3.** The term *complementary and alternative medicine* (*CAM*) refers to the range of health-promoting interventions that fall outside of conventional, Western biomedicine. Most CAM practitioners work from three fundamental ideals: to provide health treatment that is natural, is holistic, and promotes wellness. Various forms of what we now call CAM have been around for thousands of years, but they were eclipsed during most of the twentieth century by the success of biomedicine.
* **4.** Health care in the United States remains primarily based upon allopathic medicine, yet, according to a recent survey, an estimated 38 percent of adults and 12 percent of children regularly use some form of CAM.
* **5.** CAM is used more by women than men, by people with higher education levels, and by people who have been hospitalized during the past year primarily for back problems, anxiety or depression, sleeping problems, and headaches.

**Medicine or Quackery?**

* **6.** Skeptics of CAM raise several concerns about unconventional treatments. Foremost among these is that many CAM therapies never have been subjected to rigorous empirical scrutiny regarding their effectiveness or safety. When CAM studies are conducted, critics contend, the methods often are poor and the conclusions questionable. Another concern is that people who rely on CAM therapies instead of conventional medicine may delay or lose the opportunity to benefit from scientifically based treatment.
* **7.** Alternative practitioners counter that it is often impossible to conduct the kinds of formal experiments that mainstream medical researchers are most comfortable with. For example, because many CAM therapies are based on a more holistic philosophy, its advocates claim that treatment variables cannot always be studied independently.
* **8.** CAM skeptics also contend that when conventional therapies fail to help, the acupuncturist, chiropractor, or naturopath presents a powerful belief system, and the CAM techniques then seem to work due to the placebo effect. Inert substances can also have adverse health effects. When they do, they have been called *nocebos*.

**Does Complementary and Alternative Medicine Work?**

* **9.** Acupuncture was originally practiced as part of an integrated system of healing. Today, its use is sanctioned in the United States primarily for the treatment of pain and addiction. Brain imaging studies suggest that acupuncture modulates neural activity in brain regions involved not only in somatosensory processing, but also in affective and cognitive processing.
* **10.** Acupuncture-induced analgesia may result from the activation of descending pain pathways that influence the perception of pain. Acupuncture is widely used to treat pain, substance abuse, and depression.
* **11.** The basic premise of mind–body therapies is that cognitive, emotional, and spiritual factors can have profound effects on one’s health. Among the mind–body therapies are hypnosis, relaxation training and meditation, and spiritual healing.
* **12.** Although hypnosis does not involve a unique state of consciousness, it may be effective in relieving pain in some patients. Those who are most likely to report pain relief from hypnosis also tend to be highly suggestible people and to be very responsive to authority figures. Hypnosis seems to be most effective in helping people manage acute pain rather than chronic pain.
* **13.** Relaxation and meditation also may promote health by bolstering the immune system, reducing pain, and lowering stress hormones. Mindfulness practice—the ability to observe one’s thoughts and feelings from an objective distance—may work as something of a “volume control” for sensations, giving experienced practitioners better control over how the brain processes pain and emotions.
* **14.** Research has shown that the benefits of mindfulness meditation are far-reaching, from minimizing pain sensitivity to preventing depression to helping people regulate their emotions. Mindfulness training may trigger changes in limbic areas involved in emotional regulation, as well as reduced pain-related activation of areas in the somatosensory cortex and increased activity and axonal density in the anterior cingulate cortex (ACC).
* **15.** Biofeedback is a technique for converting certain supposedly involuntary physiological responses, such as skin temperature, muscle activity, heart rate, and blood pressure, into electrical signals and providing visual or auditory feedback about them. Although results from studies of biofeedback effectiveness are mixed, the method is a viable means of treating some stress-related disorders when combined with other, more conventional treatments.
* **16.** The two most common forms of therapeutic manipulation today—chiropractic and osteopathy—are the only major forms of CAM originally developed in the United States. Despite criticism as being ineffective, chiropractic remains very popular with the general public, especially for treating low back pain.
* **17.** Naturopathic medicine aims to provide holistic, or whole-body, health care by returning us to our “natural state.” Modern naturopathy draws from several CAM traditions, especially herbal medicine, food supplement therapy, and dietary modification.
* **18.** Roughly 25 percent of our modern-day pharmaceutical drugs are derived from herbs. Certain herbs may be beneficial for certain conditions, but caution must be exercised because many herbs remain untested and may have harmful effects.
* **19.** There is substantial evidence from epidemiological and experimental studies on animals and humans that diet (in the form of foods or as supplements) can have a major effect on risk factors for certain diseases and the progression of disease.

**Looking Ahead: Complementary and Alternative Medicine in Our Future**

* **20.** Growing interest in CAM is viewed by some as one of several indications of a major paradigm shift in medicine and health care in the United States. Even so, a large survey of patients, primary care physicians, and CAM practitioners revealed a growing acceptance of CAM but differing expectations regarding its use in primary care settings.

Reference:

Straub, R. O. (2014). *Health Psychology: A Biopsychosocial Approach, 4th Edition.* [VitalSource Bookshelf Online]. Retrieved from <https://kaplan.vitalsource.com/#/books/9781464193880/>